## Contents

### Endpoint Management
- Integration with Microsoft Intune/EMS .......................................................... 5
- Get started with Endpoint Management ............................................................ 6
- Next steps .............................................................................................................. 7
- Endpoint Management support .......................................................................... 8
- Service Level Agreement ..................................................................................... 8

### What's new
- About the Citrix unified product portfolio ......................................................... 9
- Citrix Endpoint Management integration with Citrix Workspace ......................... 10
- Upcoming change to simplify iOS device enrollment ......................................... 11
- Endpoint Management 19.1.2 ............................................................................ 11
- Endpoint Management 10.19.1 ........................................................................... 11
- Endpoint Management 10.18.20 ....................................................................... 12
- Endpoint Management 10.18.19 ....................................................................... 13
- Endpoint Management 10.18.18 ....................................................................... 15
- Current known issues ......................................................................................... 17

### Third-party notices

### System requirements
- Cloud Connector requirements ........................................................................... 19
- Citrix Gateway requirements ............................................................................. 19
- Citrix Files requirements ................................................................................... 20
- Port requirements ............................................................................................... 21

### Endpoint Management compatibility
- Mobile productivity apps .................................................................................... 29
- MDX Toolkit and MDX Service ........................................................................... 29
- Browser support ................................................................................................. 29

### Supported device operating systems
- Operating system support list ............................................................................ 30
- Android considerations ...................................................................................... 31
- iOS considerations ............................................................................................. 31

### Language support
- Endpoint Management console and the Self Help Portal ................................ 32
- Citrix mobile productivity apps .......................................................................... 32

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
## Certificates and authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Certificates</th>
<th>84</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Management Certificate Administration</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Citrix Gateway and Endpoint Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prerequisites for using the Citrix Gateway configuration script</th>
<th>96</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configure authentication for remote device access to the internal network</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add a Citrix Gateway instance</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure Citrix Gateway for use with Endpoint Management</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure authentication for multiple domains</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Domain or domain plus security token authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To add LDAP connections in Endpoint Management</th>
<th>104</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To add an LDAP-compliant directory</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To edit an LDAP-compliant directory</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To delete an LDAP-compliant directory</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure domain plus security token authentication</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Client certificate or certificate plus domain authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prerequisites</th>
<th>111</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add a certificate snap-in to the Microsoft Management Console</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding the template to Certificate Authority</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating a PFX certificate from the CA server</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uploading the certificate to Endpoint Management</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating the PKI entity for certificate-based authentication</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring credentials providers</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Secure Mail to use certificate-based authentication</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Citrix Gateway certificate delivery in Endpoint Management</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating an Enterprise Hub policy for Windows Phone</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troubleshooting your client certificate configuration</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## PKI entities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common PKI concepts</th>
<th>135</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Generic PKI</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symantec Managed PKI</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure Endpoint Management for Symantec Managed PKI</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Certificate Services</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrix Gateway Certificate Revocation List (CRL)</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discretionary CAs</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Credential providers

Methods of certificate issuance ........................................... 161
Certificate Delivery ......................................................... 162
Certificate Revocation ...................................................... 163
Certificate Renewal .......................................................... 163
Create a credential provider .............................................. 164

## APNs certificates

Apple MDM push certificate migration information ................... 169
To create a CSR by using Microsoft IIS ................................. 169
To create a CSR on a Mac computer .................................... 170
To create a CSR by using OpenSSL .................................... 170
To sign the CSR ............................................................... 171
To submit the signed CSR to Apple to obtain the APNs certificate 173
To create a .pfx APNs certificate by using Microsoft IIS ........... 174
To create a .pfx APNs certificate on a Mac computer ............... 177
To create a .pfx APNs certificate by using OpenSSL ............... 178
To import an APNs certificate into Endpoint Management ........ 178
To renew an APNs certificate ............................................ 179

## SAML for single sign-on with Citrix Files

Prerequisites ................................................................. 180
Configure Citrix Files access ............................................ 181
Set up SAML for Wrapped Citrix Files MDX Apps ................ 182
Configure Citrix Gateway for other Citrix Files clients ............ 183
Modify the Citrix Files.com SSO settings ............................. 187
Validate the configuration ................................................ 189

## Single sign in with Azure Active Directory

Prerequisites for single sign in with Azure Active Directory ...... 190
Configure Citrix Cloud to use Azure Active Directory as your Identity Provider 190
Configure Citrix Identity Platform as the IDP type for Endpoint Management 191
Endpoint Management administrator and user authentication flow 192
Secure Hub authentication flow ........................................... 193

## Derived credentials for iOS

Requirements ............................................................... 194
Architecture .................................................................. 195
Enable derived credentials .............................................. 196
Configure derived credentials ........................................... 197
Configure Endpoint Management for Secure Mail .................. 201

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Enroll iOS devices that use derived credentials ........................................... 201

**User accounts, roles, and enrollment** .................................................. 207
  Configure enrollment modes ................................................................. 208
  Add, edit, or delete local user accounts .................................................. 212
  Import user accounts ............................................................................. 216
  Add or remove groups ........................................................................... 218
  Create and manage workflows ............................................................... 222

**Notifications** ....................................................................................... 224
  Prerequisites .......................................................................................... 225
  Configure an SMTP server and SMS gateway ........................................ 226
  Add an SMTP server ............................................................................. 227
  Add an SMS gateway ............................................................................ 229
  Add a carrier SMS gateway .................................................................. 230
  Create and update notification templates ............................................... 233
  Add a notification template ................................................................... 234
  Edit a notification template .................................................................... 236
  Delete a notification template ................................................................ 236

**Configure roles with RBAC** ............................................................... 236
  Admin Role ............................................................................................ 236
  Device Provisioning Role ...................................................................... 249
  User Role ............................................................................................... 249
  To use the RBAC feature ........................................................................ 251

**Device management** .......................................................................... 255
  Device management workflows ............................................................ 256
  Enrollment invitations ............................................................................ 259
  Security actions ..................................................................................... 270
  Get information about devices ............................................................. 274
  Import devices from a provisioning file .................................................. 275
  Send a notification to devices ............................................................... 276
  Export the Devices table ........................................................................ 278
  Tag user devices manually .................................................................... 278
  Search for devices .................................................................................. 278
  Device provisioning file formats ............................................................ 279
  Shared devices ....................................................................................... 280

**Alexa for Business** .............................................................................. 284
  Authenticate your AWS account to Endpoint Management .................. 285

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Configure policies for Alexa for Business .............................................. 288

Android Enterprise ........................................................................ 294
   Set up Android Enterprise ................................................................. 296
   Configure Android Enterprise device policies ................................. 299
   Choose the user name type for enrollment ..................................... 299
   Provision work-managed device mode in Android Enterprise .......... 300
   Provision work profile mode in Android Enterprise ....................... 309
   Provision COSU Android Enterprise devices .................................. 309
   Security actions ............................................................................ 313

Legacy Android Enterprise for G Suite Customers ......................... 314
   Create an Android Enterprise Account ............................................. 315
   Set up an Android Enterprise service account and download an Android Enterprise certificate 321
   Binding to EMM ............................................................................ 331
   Import the P12 certificate ............................................................... 332
   Set up Android Enterprise server settings ..................................... 333
   Enable SAML-based single-sign-on ................................................. 333
   Set up an Android Enterprise device policy .................................... 335
   Configure Android Enterprise account settings ............................. 336
   Set up G Suite partner access for Endpoint Management ............... 337
   Enrolling Android Enterprise devices ........................................... 342
   Unenrolling an Android Enterprise enterprise ................................ 343
   Provisioning work-managed device mode in Android Enterprise .... 345
   Provision work profile mode in Android Enterprise ....................... 355

Android Enterprise supported device policies and MDX policies .... 355

Android OS ....................................................................................... 359
   Supported enrollment methods ....................................................... 360
   Configure Android device policies ............................................... 363
   Enroll Android devices ................................................................ 364
   Security actions ............................................................................ 365

Firebase Cloud Messaging ............................................................... 366
   Prerequisites ................................................................................... 366
   Architecture ................................................................................. 367
   To configure your Google account for FCM ................................... 367
   To configure Endpoint Management for FCM ................................ 369
   To test your configuration .............................................................. 370
Android SafetyNet

- Estimate how many SafetyNet Attestation API requests you need
- Get the SafetyNet API key
- Enable Android SafetyNet
- View Android SafetyNet results

Samsung KNOX, SEAMS, and SAFE

- Supported enrollment methods
- Deploy Samsung license keys
- Enable Samsung KNOX attestation
- Configure Samsung device policies
- Security actions

Samsung KNOX bulk enrollment

- Prerequisites for KNOX Mobile Enrollment
- Getting access to KNOX Mobile Enrollment
- Setting up KNOX Mobile Enrollment
- Enrollment experience for users
- Enable and disable biometric authentication for Samsung devices

iOS

- Supported enrollment methods
- Configure iOS device policies
- Enroll iOS devices that use user-provided credentials
- Security actions

macOS

- Supported enrollment methods
- Configure macOS device policies
- Enroll macOS devices
- Security actions

Deploy devices through Apple DEP

- Enroll in the Apple Deployment Program
- Order DEP-enabled devices
- Manage DEP-enabled devices
- User experience when enrolling an Apple DEP-enabled device

Bulk enrollment of Apple devices

- Prerequisites
- Integrate your Business Apple DEP account with Endpoint Management

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Configure deployment rules of device policies and apps for DEP accounts .............................................. 439
Configure Apple Configurator settings ................................................................. 440
To renew or update certificates when using the Apple DEP ........................................ 441
To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator ............. 442

Integrate with Apple Education features .............................................................. 442
  Apple School Manager ......................................................................................... 443
  Classroom app for iPad .................................................................................. 444
  Prerequisites .................................................................................................. 444
  Configure Apple School Manager and Endpoint Management ....................... 445
  Configure Shared iPads ................................................................................... 467
  Manage instructor, student, and class data ....................................................... 479
  Manage a lost or stolen device that's enrolled in Apple School Manager DEP ...... 480

Network Access Control ..................................................................................... 482
  iOS NAC configuration ................................................................................ 484
  Configure Network Access Control ............................................................... 488

Chrome OS ........................................................................................................... 489
  Supported enrollment methods .................................................................. 489
  Configure G Suite to install Secure Hub on the Chrome OS device .......... 490
  Connect Endpoint Management to G Suite ................................................. 493
  Configure Chrome OS device policies ....................................................... 495
  Enroll Chrome OS devices in G Suite ......................................................... 495
  Enroll Chrome devices in Endpoint Management ...................................... 495
  Security actions ............................................................................................. 500

Windows Desktop and Tablet ............................................................................. 500
  Supported enrollment methods .................................................................. 501
  Configure Windows Desktop and Tablet device policies ......................... 502
  Enroll Windows Desktop and Tablet devices by using Azure Active Directory . 502
  Enroll Windows devices by using the AutoDiscovery Service ................. 503
  Security actions ............................................................................................. 504

Windows Phone ................................................................................................. 504
  Supported enrollment methods .................................................................. 505
  Configure Windows Phone device policies .............................................. 506
  Enroll Windows Phone devices by using Azure Active Directory ............... 506
  Enroll Windows Phone devices ................................................................. 506
  Security actions ............................................................................................. 507
Bulk enrollment of Windows devices

Assign devices .................................................. 508
Add devices in bulk ............................................. 510
Bulk enroll devices ............................................. 511

Workspace hub device management ................. 511

To add Citrix Ready workspace hubs to Endpoint Management manually .................. 512
To import or export Citrix Ready workspace hub devices in bulk ............................... 515
Configure a Citrix Ready workspace hub .......................................................... 516
Deploy custom configurations to Citrix workspace hub devices ................................... 519
To manage Citrix Ready workspace hub devices .................................................... 520
Deploy the Citrix Workspace configuration to Citrix Ready workspace hub devices .... 521
Configure Workspace hub device policies ............................................................... 522
Deploy and update apps for Citrix workspace hub ..................................................... 523
Security actions ................................................... 524

Device policies .................................................. 524

Prerequisites ....................................................... 525
Add a device policy .............................................. 525
Edit or delete a device policy ................................. 530
Remove a device policy from a device ......................... 531
Filter the list of added device policies ...................... 531
Device policy summaries ........................................ 532

AirPlay mirroring device policy ......................... 543

iOS settings ....................................................... 544
macOS settings .................................................. 545

AirPrint device policy ........................................... 545

iOS settings ....................................................... 546

Android Enterprise app permissions ................. 546

Android Enterprise settings ................................. 547

Android Enterprise Managed Configurations policy .......... 548

Prerequisites ....................................................... 548
Android Enterprise settings ..................................... 548

Android Enterprise permissions ......................... 549

Android Enterprise settings ..................................... 550
APN device policy 551
  iOS settings ........................................ 551
  Android settings .................................. 552

App access device policy 553
  iOS and Android settings ....................... 553

App attributes device policy 554
  iOS settings ....................................... 554

App configuration device policy 554
  iOS settings ....................................... 555
  Windows Phone settings ......................... 556
  Windows Desktop/Tablet settings .............. 556
  Workspace Hub settings ......................... 558

App inventory device policy 559
  iOS, macOS, Android, Windows Desktop/Tablet, and Windows Phone .......... 560
  Inventory and delete Win32 apps ................ 560

Application Guard device policy 561
  Requirements ..................................... 562
  Windows Desktop and Tablet settings .......... 562

App lock device policy 563
  iOS settings ..................................... 564
  Android settings ................................ 565
  Windows Desktop and Tablet settings .......... 566

App network usage device policy 567
  iOS settings ..................................... 567

Apps notifications device policy 567
  iOS settings ..................................... 568

App restrictions device policy 568
  Samsung KNOX settings .......................... 569
  Chrome app settings ............................. 569
  Android app settings ............................ 570

App tunneling device policy 572
  Android settings ................................ 572
App uninstall device policy 573
  iOS settings ............................................. 573
  Android, Samsung KNOX, Android Enterprise, Windows Phone, and Windows Desktop/Tablet settings ............................................. 574
  Automatically uninstall an Enterprise app after the corresponding public app store app installs 574

App uninstall restrictions device policy 574
  Samsung SAFE or Amazon settings ............................................. 575

BitLocker device policy 575
  Requirements ............................................. 575
  Windows Phone settings ............................................. 576
  Windows Desktop and Tablet settings ............................................. 577

Browser device policy 579
  Samsung SAFE and Samsung KNOX settings ............................................. 580

Calendar (CalDav) device policy 580
  iOS settings ............................................. 580
  macOS settings ............................................. 581

Cellular device policy 581
  iOS settings ............................................. 581

Connection scheduling device policy 582
  Android and Android Enterprise settings ............................................. 582
  Defining a connection time frame ............................................. 583
  Chrome OS settings ............................................. 584

Contacts (CardDAV) device policy 584
  iOS settings ............................................. 584
  macOS settings ............................................. 584

Content device policy 585
  Chrome OS Settings ............................................. 585

Copy Apps to Samsung Container device policy 585
  Prerequisites ............................................. 586
  Samsung SEAMS and Samsung KNOX settings ............................................. 586

Credentials device policy 586
  iOS settings ............................................. 587
  macOS settings ............................................. 588
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Android and Android Enterprise settings</td>
<td>589</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Desktop/Tablet settings</td>
<td>590</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Phone settings</td>
<td>591</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workspace Hub settings</td>
<td>592</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Custom XML device policy</strong></td>
<td>592</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Phone, Windows Desktop/Tablet, Zebra Android, and Android Enterprise settings</td>
<td>593</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Windows AutoPilot to set up and configure devices</td>
<td>593</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Defender device policy</strong></td>
<td>594</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Desktop and Tablet settings</td>
<td>595</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Device Guard device policy</strong></td>
<td>596</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>596</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Desktop and Tablet settings</td>
<td>596</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Device Health Attestation device policy</strong></td>
<td>597</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Phone and Windows Desktop/Tablet settings</td>
<td>598</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Device name device policy</strong></td>
<td>598</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iOS and macOS settings</td>
<td>599</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Education Configuration device policy</strong></td>
<td>599</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iOS settings</td>
<td>599</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To edit class information in the policy</td>
<td>601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Endpoint Management options device policy</strong></td>
<td>602</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Android settings</td>
<td>602</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Endpoint Management uninstall device policy</strong></td>
<td>603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Android settings</td>
<td>603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enterprise Hub device policy</strong></td>
<td>603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Phone settings</td>
<td>604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exchange device policy</strong></td>
<td>604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iOS settings</td>
<td>605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macOS settings</td>
<td>606</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Android HTC settings</td>
<td>608</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Android TouchDown settings</td>
<td>609</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Android Enterprise</td>
<td>610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samsung SAFE and Samsung KNOX settings</td>
<td>611</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Phone and Windows Desktop/Tablet settings</td>
<td>612</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Files device policy 613
- Android Enterprise settings ........................................... 613
- Android settings ....................................................... 614

### FileVault device policy 614
- macOS settings ........................................................... 615

### Firewall device policy 617
- Samsung SAFE settings .................................................. 617
- macOS settings ........................................................... 618
- Windows Desktop and Tablet settings ................................ 618

### Font device policy 619
- iOS settings ................................................................. 620
- macOS settings ........................................................... 620

### Home screen layout device policy 620
- iOS settings ................................................................. 621

### Import Device Configuration device policy 621
- Workspace Hub settings ................................................ 622

### Import iOS & macOS Profile device policy 622
- iOS and macOS settings .................................................. 622
- Place an iOS device in Supervised mode with the Apple Configurator ............. 623

### Kiosk device policy 623
- Samsung SAFE settings .................................................. 624
- Windows Desktop and Tablet settings ................................ 625
- Android Enterprise settings ............................................. 628

### Knox Platform for Enterprise device policy 628
- Samsung SAFE platform .................................................. 629

### Launcher configuration device policy for Android 629
- Android settings ........................................................... 630

### LDAP device policy 630
- iOS settings ................................................................. 631
- macOS settings ........................................................... 631

### Location device policy 632
- iOS settings ................................................................. 632
Android settings ........................................ 634

**Lock screen message device policy** 635
iOS settings ........................................ 635

**Mail device policy** 636
iOS and macOS settings .................................. 636

**Managed bookmarks device policy** 638
Chrome OS settings .................................. 638

**Managed domains device policy** 639
iOS settings ........................................ 639

**Maps device policy** 641
Windows Phone settings .................................. 641

**Maximum resident users device policy** 641
iOS settings ........................................ 641

**MDM options device policy** 642
iOS settings ........................................ 643

**Office device policy** 643
Windows Desktop/Tablet settings .................................. 644

**Organization information device policy** 644
iOS settings ........................................ 645

**OS Update device policy** 645
iOS settings ........................................ 646
macOS settings ........................................ 647
Get status for iOS and macOS update actions .................................. 647
Samsung SAFE settings .................................. 649
Windows Desktop and Tablet settings .................................. 650
Android Enterprise settings .................................. 656
Chrome OS settings .................................. 657
Workspace Hub settings .................................. 658

**Passcode device policy** 659
iOS settings ........................................ 659
macOS settings ........................................ 660
Android settings ........................................ 662
Samsung KNOX settings ............................................ 664
Android Enterprise settings ....................................... 666
Windows Phone settings ........................................... 667
Windows Desktop/Tablet settings .............................. 668

Passcode lock grace period device policy ................. 669
   iOS settings ......................................................... 669

Personal hotspot device policy ............................... 670
   iOS settings ......................................................... 670

Power management device policy ........................... 670
   Chrome OS settings .............................................. 671

Profile Removal device policy ............................... 671
   iOS settings ......................................................... 672
   macOS settings .................................................. 672

Provisioning profile device policy ........................... 673
   iOS settings ......................................................... 673

Provisioning profile removal device policy ............... 674
   iOS settings ......................................................... 674

Proxy device policy .............................................. 674
   iOS settings ......................................................... 674

Restrictions device policy .................................... 675
   iOS settings ......................................................... 676
   macOS settings .................................................. 684
   tvOS settings ..................................................... 688
   Android settings ................................................ 689
   Android Enterprise settings ................................. 689
   Samsung SAFE settings ....................................... 691
   Samsung KNOX settings ....................................... 694
   Windows Phone and Windows Desktop/Tablet settings 696
   Amazon settings .................................................. 699
   Chrome OS settings .............................................. 700

Roaming device policy ....................................... 703
   iOS settings ......................................................... 703
Samsung MDM license key device policy 704

- Samsung SAFE settings .................................................. 704
- Configure Samsung E-FOTA settings .............................. 704
- Samsung KNOX settings ................................................. 705

SCEP device policy 706

- iOS settings ................................................................. 706
- macOS settings ......................................................... 708

Siri and dictation policies 709

SSO account device policy 711

- iOS settings ................................................................. 712

Storage encryption device policy 712

- Prerequisites ............................................................... 713
- Samsung SAFE settings .............................................. 713
- Windows Phone settings .............................................. 713
- Android Sony settings ................................................ 713

Store device policy 713

- iOS, Android, and Windows Desktop/Tablet settings .......... 714

Subscribed calendars device policy 714

- Prerequisite ................................................................. 714
- iOS settings ................................................................. 714

Terms and conditions device policy 714

- iOS and Android settings ............................................ 715
- Windows Phone and Windows Tablet settings ................. 715

Verified access device policy 715

- Chrome OS settings .................................................... 716

VPN device policy 716

- iOS settings ................................................................. 717
- macOS settings .......................................................... 732
- Android settings ........................................................ 742
- Samsung SAFE settings .............................................. 744
- Samsung KNOX settings ............................................. 749
- Windows Phone settings ............................................. 754
- Windows Desktop/Tablet settings .................................. 756
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device Policy</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amazon settings</td>
<td>758</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chrome OS settings</td>
<td>761</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wallpaper device policy</td>
<td>765</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iOS settings</td>
<td>765</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web content filter device policy</td>
<td>765</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iOS settings</td>
<td>766</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Webclip device policy</td>
<td>767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iOS settings</td>
<td>767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macOS settings</td>
<td>768</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Android settings</td>
<td>768</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Desktop/Tablet settings</td>
<td>768</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WiFi device policy</td>
<td>768</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>769</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iOS settings</td>
<td>769</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macOS settings</td>
<td>772</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Android settings</td>
<td>774</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Android Enterprise settings</td>
<td>776</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Phone settings</td>
<td>777</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows 10 settings</td>
<td>779</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chrome OS settings</td>
<td>780</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workspace Hub settings</td>
<td>781</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Agent device policy</td>
<td>781</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Desktop and Tablet settings</td>
<td>782</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Hello for Business device policy</td>
<td>783</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Phone and Windows Desktop/Tablet settings</td>
<td>783</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Information Protection device policy</td>
<td>784</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Phone and Windows Desktop/Tablet settings</td>
<td>785</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create a data recovery certificate</td>
<td>787</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User experience</td>
<td>787</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deprecated device policies</td>
<td>789</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APN device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)</td>
<td>789</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App access device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)</td>
<td>790</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App inventory device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)</td>
<td>790</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App uninstall device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)</td>
<td>791</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
App tunneling device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) .................................................. 791
Connection manager device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) ..................................... 792
Connection scheduling device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) ............................... 792
Credentials device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) ...................................................... 794
Custom XML device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) .................................................. 794
Delete files and folders device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) ............................... 795
Delete registry keys and values device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) .................... 795
Files device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) ............................................................... 796
Proxy device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) ............................................................. 797
Registry device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) ........................................................ 797
Restrictions device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) ..................................................... 798
Roaming device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) ......................................................... 799
WiFi device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) ............................................................... 800
Prerequisites .............................................................................................................. 800
Windows CE certificate device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) ................................ 802
Endpoint Management options device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) ................. 802
Endpoint Management uninstall device policy (Windows Mobile/CE) ................. 803

Add apps .................................................................................................................. 803
About silent installations .......................................................................................... 804
How mobile and MDX apps work ........................................................................... 804
About required and optional apps ........................................................................ 805
How Web and SaaS apps work .............................................................................. 807
How enterprise apps work ...................................................................................... 808
How the public app store works .............................................................................. 808
How web links work ................................................................................................. 808
Add an MDX app ...................................................................................................... 808
Create app categories ............................................................................................. 814
Add a public app store app ....................................................................................... 816
Add a Web or SaaS app ............................................................................................ 826
Add an enterprise app .............................................................................................. 833
Add Win32 apps as Enterprise apps ........................................................................ 838
Add a Web link .......................................................................................................... 840
Enable Microsoft 365 apps ..................................................................................... 843
Create and manage workflows ............................................................................... 843
App store and Citrix Secure Hub branding ............................................................ 847
Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops through the app store ....................................... 848

App connector types .............................................................................................. 850

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Citrix Endpoint Management

Citrix Launcher 851

iOS Volume Purchase Program 853

Deploy Microsoft Store for Business apps from Endpoint Management 860
- Prerequisites to access Microsoft Store for Business apps 860
- Connect Endpoint Management to Microsoft Store for Business 861
- Associate your Microsoft Store for Business account with Endpoint Management 862
- Sync apps with the Store for Business 862
- Assign Store for Business apps to delivery groups 863
- Revoke a user license for an app 863

Citrix Files use with Endpoint Management 864
- Citrix Files Enterprise 864
- StorageZone Connectors 865
- Add a StorageZone Connector in Endpoint Management 874

SmartAccess for HDX apps 880
- Export and configure the Endpoint Management server certificate and upload it to the Store-Front store 881
- Configure the SmartAccess policy for Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops 892
- Set automated actions in Endpoint Management 893
- Create the action that sends the notification when a device is marked out of compliance 897

Upgrade MDX or enterprise apps 898

Add media 900
- Prerequisites 900
- Configure iBooks 901
- To configure an iBook for deployment 901

Deploy resources 905
- Deployment Ordering 905
- To add a delivery group 908
- To add policies 910
- To add apps 911
- To add media 912
- To add actions 913
- To apply the Citrix Files configuration 914
- To select an enrollment profile 915
- To review configured options and change deployment order 916
- To edit a delivery group 917

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To enable and disable the AllUsers delivery group</td>
<td>917</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To deploy to delivery groups</td>
<td>918</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To delete delivery groups</td>
<td>919</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To export the Delivery Groups table</td>
<td>919</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macros</td>
<td>920</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macro syntax</td>
<td>920</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macros for default notification templates</td>
<td>923</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macros for specific policies</td>
<td>925</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macros to obtain built-in device properties</td>
<td>926</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macros for all device properties</td>
<td>926</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macros to obtain built-in user properties</td>
<td>944</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macros for all user properties</td>
<td>944</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automated actions</td>
<td>947</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App lock and App wipe actions for MAM-only mode</td>
<td>951</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marking Windows 10 devices out of compliance in Azure AD</td>
<td>954</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor and support</td>
<td>954</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor page for help desk administrators</td>
<td>958</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access to Endpoint Management Tools from the console</td>
<td>960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View and analyze log files in Endpoint Management</td>
<td>961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connectivity checks</td>
<td>962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conducting Endpoint Management Connectivity Checks</td>
<td>962</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conducting Citrix Gateway Connectivity Checks</td>
<td>964</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device screen sharing</td>
<td>965</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile Service Provider</td>
<td>968</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reports</td>
<td>969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To generate a report</td>
<td>969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To view more details of a report</td>
<td>970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To sort, filter, or search a table column, click the column heading</td>
<td>971</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To filter the report by date</td>
<td>971</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To export a chart or table</td>
<td>973</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Management Analyzer</td>
<td>973</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key features</td>
<td>974</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>974</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessing Endpoint Management Analyzer</td>
<td>974</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
### Citrix Endpoint Management

- How Endpoint Management protects data at rest ........................................ 1142
- How Endpoint Management protects data in transit ............................... 1143
- App policies and Use case scenarios .................................................. 1144
- Device policies and Use Case Behavior .............................................. 1148

#### Client properties 1152
- To add a client property ........................................................................ 1153
- To edit a client property ....................................................................... 1154
- To delete a client property .................................................................... 1154
- Client property reference ...................................................................... 1155

#### User enrollment options 1162
- Enrollment Invitation ............................................................................ 1163
- Self Help Portal ..................................................................................... 1164
- Manual Enrollment ............................................................................... 1164
- User Onboarding ................................................................................... 1164
- First Contact with Users ....................................................................... 1165

#### App provisioning and deprovisioning 1166

#### Dashboard-based operations 1168
- Use cases ............................................................................................. 1169
- Reporting .............................................................................................. 1170

#### Role-based access control and Endpoint Management support 1170
- Built-In roles ......................................................................................... 1170
- Admin role .......................................................................................... 1170
- Device provisioning ............................................................................... 1171
- User ....................................................................................................... 1171
- Considerations for a Endpoint Management support model ............... 1171

#### Citrix Support process 1172

#### Sending group enrollment invitations in Endpoint Management 1173
- General steps ....................................................................................... 1173
- Nested group support .......................................................................... 1174
- Troubleshooting and known limitations .............................................. 1174

#### Configuring certificate-based authentication with EWS for Secure Mail push notifications 1175
- Related information ............................................................................... 1178

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved. 25
Configuring an on-premises Device Health Attestation server

Prerequisites for a DHA server .................................................. 1178
Add the DHA server role to the Windows server ......................... 1179
Add the SSL certificate to the certificate store of the server .......... 1179
Retrieve and save the thumbprint of the certificate ..................... 1183
Install the signing and encryption certificates ......................... 1185
Extract the TPM roots certificate and install the trusted certificate package ......................... 1186
Configure the DHA service .................................................. 1186
Check the configuration .................................................. 1188
Citrix Endpoint Management

Endpoint Management

December 3, 2018

Citrix Endpoint Management (formerly XenMobile Service) is a solution for managing endpoints, offering mobile device management (MDM) and mobile application management (MAM) capabilities. With Endpoint Management, you manage device and app policies and deliver apps to users. Your business information stays protected with strict security for identity, devices, apps, data, and networks.

Note about the Citrix unified product portfolio:

If you’ve been a Citrix customer or partner for a while, you’ll notice new names in our products and in this product documentation. The new product and component names stem from the expanding Citrix portfolio and cloud strategy. For more detail about the Citrix unified portfolio, see the Citrix product guide.

Articles in this product documentation also use the following names.

- **Mobile productivity apps:** XenMobile Apps is now mobile productivity apps. Citrix-developed mobile productivity apps are a group of enterprise mobile apps offering IT a secure choice for their users' email, web browsing, and remote access. Mobile productivity apps include Citrix Secure Hub, Citrix Secure Mail, and Citrix Secure Web. The Endpoint Management Store is now the app store.

- **Citrix Workspace app:** The Citrix Workspace app incorporates existing Citrix Receiver technology and the other Citrix Workspace client technologies. It has been enhanced to provide end users with a unified, contextual experience. Users can interact with all the work apps, files, and devices they need to do their best work. For more information, see this blog post.

  For Endpoint Management customers with the workspace experience enabled, users who open Secure Hub and click Add Apps are directed to the workspace. For more information, see Secure Hub.

Implementing this transition in our products and their documentation is an ongoing process.

- In-product content and documentation might still contain former names. For example, you might see instances of earlier names in console text, messages, directory/file names, screenshots, and diagrams.
- It is possible that some items (such as commands and MSIs) might continue to retain their former names to prevent breaking existing customer scripts.
- Related product documentation and other resources (such as videos and blog posts) that are linked from this product’s documentation might still contain former names.

Your patience during this transition is appreciated.

Citrix hosts the Cloud environment in data centers located throughout the world to deliver high perfor-
Citrix Endpoint Management

Citrix Endpoint Management offers enhanced performance, rapid response, and support. With Endpoint Management, you pay a subscription fee instead of purchasing and managing licenses.

Citrix Cloud Operations handles various infrastructure and monitoring tasks. As a result, you can focus on the user experience and on managing devices, apps, and policies.

Citrix responsibilities:

- Endpoint Management server nodes
- Citrix Gateway initial integration and configuration
- Citrix Gateway Load Balancer
- Database
- Cloud Connector software configuration
- SAML authentication integration with Citrix Files
- Endpoint Management site monitoring: Instance, database, enterprise connectivity (LDAP), VPN tunnel (if applicable), public SSL certificate, Endpoint Management licensing

Customer responsibilities:

- Citrix Gateway management and updates
- Machines where Cloud Connectors are installed
- LDAP/Active Directory
- DNS
- Citrix Files: Initial Citrix Files configuration, on-premises StorageZone Controller installation, Citrix Files updates
- Endpoint Management configuration: Devices, policies, apps, delivery groups, actions, and client certificates

You connect to Endpoint Management through Cloud Connector. Cloud Connector serves as a channel for communication between Citrix Cloud and your resource locations. Cloud Connector enables cloud management without requiring any complex networking or infrastructure configuration such as VPNs or IPsec tunnels.

Resource locations contain the resources required to deliver services to your subscribers. For Endpoint Management, resource locations are your Citrix Gateway, LDAP, DNS, and PKI servers.
For more information about Cloud Connector and resource locations, see About Endpoint Management.

**Integration with Microsoft Intune/EMS**

Endpoint Management integrates with Microsoft Enterprise Mobility + Security (EMS)/Intune. That integration adds the value of Endpoint Management micro VPN to Microsoft Intune aware apps, such as Microsoft Managed Browser. With the integration, you can:

- Wrap your own line of business apps with Intune and Citrix to provide micro VPN capabilities inside an Intune mobile app management (MAM) container.
- Manage and deliver Office 365 apps, line of business apps, and Citrix Secure Mail in one container. This management method provides ultimate security and productivity.

Use Endpoint Management MDM or Intune MDM to manage devices. For more information, see Endpoint Management integration with Microsoft Intune/EMS.
Get started with Endpoint Management

Tip: XenMobile Migration Service

If you’re using XenMobile Server on premises, our XenMobile Migration Service can get you started with Endpoint Management. Migration from XenMobile Server to Citrix Endpoint Management doesn’t require you to re-enroll devices.

For more information, contact your local Citrix salesperson, Systems Engineer, or Citrix Partner. These blogs discuss the XenMobile Migration Service:

New XenMobile Migration Service
Making the Case for XenMobile in the Cloud

When you are evaluating or purchasing Endpoint Management, the Endpoint Management Operations team provides ongoing onboarding help. The Operations team also communicates with you to ensure that the core Endpoint Management services are running and configured correctly. This figure shows the onboarding steps.

- Sign up for a Citrix account and request an Endpoint Management Trial
- Discuss integration requirements with Citrix
- Complete settings in the Endpoint Management portal

To sign up for a Citrix account and request a Endpoint Management trial, contact your Citrix Sales Representative. When you’re ready to proceed, go to https://onboarding.cloud.com.

For a quick overview of Endpoint Management onboarding and configuration, watch this video.
Want to learn more before starting? Try these resources:

**Endpoint Management documentation:** Provides full Endpoint Management documentation, from onboarding to initial configuration to advanced configuration. A “What’s new” article describes new features and fixes. Citrix notifies you when that article is available for a new release.

**Citrix Endpoint Management Onboarding Handbook:** Consolidates all the available information around Endpoint Management, so you can proceed in smoothly enabling and onboarding Endpoint Management. You can use the document to record changes for your internal processes and to document your high-level and functional designs.

**Endpoint Management Deployment Handbook:** Planning a Endpoint Management deployment involves many considerations. The handbook includes recommendations, common questions, and use cases for your Endpoint Management environment.

**SalesIQ:** More resources for our Citrix Partners.

**Next steps**

For information about the Endpoint Management onboarding process, see [Onboarding and resource setup](#).
After you complete onboarding, see Prepare to enroll devices and deliver resources.

**Endpoint Management support**

For details on how to access supported related information and tools in the Endpoint Management console, see Monitor and support.

Rolling updates to the Endpoint Management release occur approximately every two weeks. To you, the customer, this process is transparent. Initial updates are applied to Citrix internal sites only, and are then applied to customer environments gradually. Delivering updates incrementally in waves helps to ensure product quality and to maximize availability.

If you are an Endpoint Management customer, you also receive Endpoint Management updates and communications directly from the Endpoint Management Cloud Operations Team. Those updates keep you current with new features, known issues, fixed issues, and so on.

The Citrix Cloud Operations team maintains the Endpoint Management environments with the latest Endpoint Management rolling patches. To obtain specific patches or fixes that are required before the rolling patch, contact Citrix Technical Support.

If you have any issues with your environment, contact Citrix Technical Support or your Citrix Account Team. Such issues might include mobile device enrollment, Endpoint Management console access, or Secure Mail issues.

If you need any integration or changes made on Citrix Gateway in the Cloud or Endpoint Management, submit a request through Citrix Technical Support.

Examples of changes that you might request are:

- Citrix Files integration with Citrix Gateway in the Cloud
- Change Citrix Gateway authentication type
- Validate connectivity to customer data center resources
- Change split tunnel configuration for micro VPN
- Restart Endpoint Management components due to some server configuration changes

**Service Level Agreement**

Citrix Endpoint Management uses industry best practices to achieve cloud scale and a high degree of service availability.

For complete details about Citrix’s commitment for availability of Citrix Cloud services, see the Service Level Agreement.
What’s new

January 25, 2019

A goal of Citrix is to deliver new features and product updates to Endpoint Management customers when they are available. New releases provide more value, so there’s no reason to delay updates. Rolling updates to Endpoint Management release approximately every two weeks.

To you, the customer, this process is transparent. Initial updates are applied to Citrix internal sites only, and are then applied to customer environments gradually. Delivering updates incrementally in waves helps to ensure product quality and to maximize availability.

Endpoint Management customers also receive Endpoint Management updates and communications directly from the Endpoint Management Cloud Operations Team. Those updates keep you current with new features, known issues, fixed issues, and so on.

For details about the Endpoint Management Service Level Agreement for cloud scale and service availability, see Service Level Agreement. To monitor service interruptions and scheduled maintenance, see the Service Health Dashboard.

About the Citrix unified product portfolio

If you’ve been a Citrix customer or partner for a while, you’ll notice new names in our products and in this product documentation. The new product and component names stem from the expanding Citrix portfolio and cloud strategy. For more detail about the Citrix unified portfolio, see the Citrix product guide.

Articles in this product documentation use the following names.

- **Citrix Endpoint Management**: Citrix Endpoint Management is a solution for managing endpoints, offering mobile device management (MDM) and mobile application management (MAM) capabilities. With Endpoint Management, you manage device and app policies and deliver apps to users. Your business information stays protected with strict security for identity, devices, apps, data, and networks. Citrix Endpoint Management was formerly Citrix XenMobile Service.

- **Mobile productivity apps**: XenMobile Apps is now mobile productivity apps. Citrix-developed mobile productivity apps are a group of enterprise mobile apps offering IT a secure choice for their users’ email, web browsing, and remote access. Mobile productivity apps include Citrix Secure Hub, Citrix Secure Mail, and Citrix Secure Web. The Endpoint Management Store is now the app store.

- **Citrix Workspace app**: The Citrix Workspace app incorporates existing Citrix Receiver technology and the other Citrix Workspace client technologies. It has been enhanced to provide end users with a unified, contextual experience. Users can interact with all the work apps, files, and devices they need to do their best work. For more information, see this blog post.
For Endpoint Management customers with the workspace experience enabled, users who open Secure Hub and click **Add Apps** are directed to the workspace. For more information, see Secure Hub.

- **Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops**: The Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops service (formerly XenApp and XenDesktop) offers a virtual app and desktop solution. Provided as a cloud service and as an on-premises product, Virtual Apps and Desktops gives employees the freedom to work from anywhere on any device.

Implementing this transition in our products and their documentation is an ongoing process.

- In-product content and documentation might still contain former names. For example, you might see instances of earlier names in console text, messages, directory/file names, screenshots, and diagrams.
- It is possible that some items (such as commands and MSIs) might continue to retain their former names to prevent breaking existing customer scripts.
- Related product documentation and other resources (such as videos and blog posts) that are linked from this product’s documentation might still contain former names.

Your patience during this transition is appreciated.

**Citrix Endpoint Management integration with Citrix Workspace**

Endpoint Management integration with Citrix Workspace differs for new and existing customers.

- For new Endpoint Management customers (as of August 27, 2018):

  During Workspace configuration (**Workspace Configuration > Service Integrations**), you choose whether to enable Endpoint Management integration with workspace. By default, the integration is enabled.

  - If you enable the integration, the Citrix Workspace app aggregates resources from Endpoint Management and other configured sources. Your users access resources from the Citrix Workspace app. Other configured sources might include Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops and Citrix Content Collaboration.

  - If you disable the integration, Citrix Secure Hub aggregates mobile apps. Your users access apps from Secure Hub.

  **Important:**

  After you configure your integration choice and enroll users: If you later change your integration choice, re-enrollment is required for all users.

- For customers who onboarded before August 27, 2018:
Workspace integration is disabled. Citrix Secure Hub aggregates mobile apps and your users access apps from Secure Hub. Citrix will notify you when migration to Workspace is supported without requiring re-enrollment for all users.

**Upcoming change to simplify iOS device enrollment**

Currently, iOS device users receive two prompts during enrollment, for the root CA and the MDM device certificate. Starting with the Endpoint Management 19.2.0 release, iOS device users will receive only the MDM device certificate prompt during enrollment. To support this change, Citrix will change the value of the server property, `ios.mdm.enrollment.installRootCaIfRequired`, to `false`.

**Endpoint Management 19.1.2**

- **Files device policy now available for Android Enterprise.** You can add script files to Endpoint Management to perform functions on Android Enterprise devices. See [Files device policy](#).
- **Configure time zone settings for Chrome OS devices.** You can now select a time zone for the Chrome device and specify how to detect the time zone. For more information, see [Restrictions device policy](#).
- **The user information shown on the Users and Enrollment Invitations pages is now restricted by an RBAC administrator’s group permissions.** Previously, the Endpoint Management console included information for all local users and domain users on the [Manage > Users](#) and [Manage > Enrollment Invitations](#) pages.
  
  To specify which user groups an RBAC administrator has permission to view and manage, edit the administrator role and specify the user groups. For more information, see [Configure roles with RBAC](#).
- **Launch third-party apps from the Workspace app.** For customers with Citrix Workspace enabled: Before deploying new apps to users, you can add a comma-separated list of URLs to launch the apps from the Workspace app. For more information, see [Add apps](#).

**Fixed issues in Endpoint Management 19.1.2**

You can’t upload Google Play services APK versions later than 11.5.09 in the Endpoint Management console. [CXM-59492]

**Endpoint Management 10.19.1**

The latest version of Endpoint Management has these new features and improvements:
• **Run multiple apps in a kiosk on Windows 10 Desktop and Tablet devices.** You can now run multiple apps in Kiosk mode. With Citrix Endpoint Management 10.19.1 upgrade, your previous Kiosk policy has been removed. Be sure to configure the Kiosk policy for one or more applications. For more information, see **Kiosk device policy**.

• **Connection scheduling policy no longer allows continuous connections for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome devices.** Citrix recommends that you use Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM) to control connection from Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS devices. If you chose not to use FCM, you can use the Connection scheduling policy, but the policy no longer allows you to configure continuous connections for these devices.

• The Android Enterprise App Restriction policy is renamed to Android Enterprise Managed Configurations, to better reflect the scope of the policy settings.

### Fixed issues in Endpoint Management 10.19.1

B2B apps uploaded to Apple Business Manager do not appear in the Endpoint Management console. [CXM-58864]

After the first user enrolls and signs on to a shared Android device with apps deployed: When that user signs off, the message “Please wait while we sign you on” appears. [CXM-59154]

Attempting to send an APNS notification fails with the error “java..lang.NullPointerException”. [CXM-60497]

### Endpoint Management 10.18.20

The latest version of Endpoint Management has these new features and improvements:

• **Improvements to adding public apps from the Google Play store.** When you add a public app, you now search for apps by package ID in the Endpoint Management console. You can upload a custom image for public apps, or leave the image field blank to use the stock Android image. See **Add a public app store app**.

• **New Restrictions device policy settings for Android Enterprise.** New settings for the Restrictions device policy allow users access to these features on Android Enterprise devices: status bar, lock screen keyguard, account management, location sharing, and keeping the device screen on. See **Restrictions device policy**.

• **Android Enterprise WiFi device policy.** You can now create WiFi device policies for Android Enterprise devices. See **WiFi device policy**.

• **Android Enterprise Custom XML device policy.** You can now create Custom XML device policies for Android Enterprise devices. See **Custom XML device policy**.
**Support for Knox Platform for Enterprise (KPE) Premium license keys.** Samsung has upgraded the Knox License (KLM) and renamed it to the Knox Platform for Enterprise (KPE) Premium license key. When you obtain a KPE Premium license key, you can use it in place of the legacy Enterprise Licenses (ELM) and Knox Licenses (KLM). You can continue to use your existing ELM and KLM keys in Citrix Endpoint Management. When you obtain a KPE, you can create a Knox Platform for Enterprise device policy, to replace the Samsung MDM License Key device policy. See [Knox Platform for Enterprise device policy](#).

**Whitelist Android Enterprise apps by adding their package name in the Kiosk policy.** You can now enter the package name that you want to whitelist in the Kiosk device policy for Android Enterprise. For more information, see [Android Enterprise settings](#).

**Changes to the micro VPN access settings in the EMS/Intune console.** The micro VPN access settings are replaced with the following:

- **Network access:** Select whether and how to allow micro VPN access to on-premises resources.
- **micro VPN session required:** If you enable micro VPN access, you can require an online session for the app to work.
- **mVPN tunnel exclusion list:** If you enable micro VPN access, you can specify the domains to exclude from the micro VPN policies.

This update changes the **Network access** setting to **Unrestricted**. Existing apps will work as before. However, if you update an app, you must update your **Network access** setting. The following table shows the **MvpnNetworkAccess** setting to use to match your previous settings for **MvpnRedirectWebTrafficWithSSO** and **MvpnDisableTCPRedirect**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MvpnNetworkAccess</th>
<th>MvpnRedirectWebTrafficWithSSO</th>
<th>MvpnDisableTCPRedirect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unrestricted (Allowed)</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Tunnel</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web SSO</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both (Full Tunnel + WebSSO)</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The prior policy **PermitVPNModeSwitching** is replaced by **Both (Full Tunnel + WebSSO)**.

For more information, see [To add apps to Endpoint Management integration with EMS/Intune console](#).

**Endpoint Management 10.18.19**

The latest version of Endpoint Management has these new features and improvements:
• **Use Firebase Cloud Messaging instead of the Connection scheduling device policy.** For customers who onboard with Endpoint Management 10.18.19, there is no option to set the Connection scheduling device policy to always require devices to connect. Citrix recommends that all customers use Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM) to control notifications for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS devices. For an overview of FCM works, see this Google article, Firebase Cloud Messaging. For information on how to configure FCM with Endpoint Management, see this Endpoint Management article, Firebase Cloud Messaging.

• **More device policy restrictions for Samsung DeX mode.** You can now configure restrictions to:
  - Specify the DeX screen timeout
  - Add an app shortcut to the DeX screen
  - Remove an app shortcut from the DeX screen
  - Specify the app packages to block from Samsung DeX mode

  See the Restrictions device policy section, Samsung KNOX settings.

• **New Chrome OS device policy to restrict user access to your network when their device is out-of-compliance.** Configure the Verified Access policy to restrict user’s access to your network when their Chrome OS device is out of compliance. This policy requires G Suite Chrome configuration. For more information on Verified Access, see the Google article Enable Verified Access with Chrome devices.

• **iOS DEP enrollment default has changed.** The enrollment setting **Require credentials for device enrollment** is now enabled by default. Apple strongly recommends user authentication during enrollment for security reasons.

• **Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) account iOS setup assistant options for iOS 12.** New options in the DEP account iOS setup assistant allow you to prevent users from seeing these screens during DEP device setup:
  - SIM Setup: Prevents the user from seeing the Add Cellular Plan screen.
  - iMessage & FaceTime: Prevents the user from seeing the iMessage and FaceTime screen.

  These options are for DEP devices running iOS 12.0 and later. For more information, see “Step 3: Add a DEP account to Endpoint Management” in Bulk enrollment of Apple devices.

• **Endpoint Management now supports GroundControl.** You can now add a supervision identity to use with GroundControl while setting up Apple DEP. For information about configuring Endpoint Management, see “Step 3: Add a DEP account to Endpoint Management” in Bulk enrollment of Apple devices.

• **Bulk enrollment enhancements for Windows 10 devices.** When adding windows devices to the device whitelist, you can identify the devices by Device Name. You can also search for the associated user instead of typing the name manually. See Bulk enrollment of Windows devices.
• Changes in Citrix Endpoint Management integration with Microsoft Intune/EMS.
  – You can now publish and manage Microsoft Outlook for iOS and Android using Citrix Endpoint Management integration with Microsoft Intune/EMS.
  – Some default values of micro VPN policies changed. The MvpnRedirectWebTrafficWithSSO policy now disables http/https redirection with SSO by default. The MvpnDisableTcpRedirect policy now disables TCP-level full-tunnel redirection by default. For more information, see MDX policies.

Fixed issues in Endpoint Management 10.18.19

For Android devices, the Device administrator disabled property is missing when you navigate to Device management > Device > Properties. [CXM-56099]

When you select certain VPP apps in Configure > Apps and then click Edit, the Search field and some table columns might not appear in the App details page. As a workaround, you can disable the search feature. Go to Settings > Server Properties and change the property enable.vpp.search.enhancement to false. [CXM-57975]

Endpoint Management 10.18.18

The latest version of Endpoint Management has these new features and improvements:

• Delegated Admin Access now available for Endpoint Management. You can now create administrators in Citrix Cloud with custom access for Endpoint Management. Administrators with custom access can only manage services to which they have access. To configure custom access, sign in to Citrix Cloud and navigate to Identity and Access Management > Administrators.
For information about configuring administrators, see Add administrators to a Citrix Cloud account.

- **Device certificate renewal.** You can now request that Citrix Cloud Operations refresh or regenerate the internal PKI certificate authorities (CAs) in your Endpoint Management deployment. Open a Technical Support case for these requests.

  When the new CAs are available, Cloud Operations lets you know that you can proceed with renewing the device certificates for your users.

  For supported iOS, macOS, and Android devices, you can initiate certificate renewal through the security action, Certificate Renewal. You renew device certificates from the Endpoint Management console or the Public REST API. For enrolled Windows devices, users must re-enroll their devices to receive a new device CA.

  For more information, see Device certificate renewal and download the Public API for REST Services PDF. Here are the new APIs for managing CA certificates:

  - Return a list of devices still using the old CA (see section 3.16.2 in the Public API for REST Services PDF)
  - Renew Device Certificate (see section 3.16.58)

- **Simplified Android Enterprise setup.** The process for setting up Android Enterprise is now shorter and simpler for Google Play customers. Management Tools for Endpoint Management are no longer needed to bind Endpoint Management as your enterprise mobility management (EMM) provider. The process for setting up Android Enterprise for G Suite customers is unchanged. For information, see Android Enterprise.

- **More Chrome OS device policies.**
Citrix Endpoint Management

- **Control Chrome OS web content.** The new Content device policy lets you set a specific home page, allow or block popups, and choose pages to load on startup. For information, see Content device policy.

- **Choose a release channel for Chrome OS updates.** Google offers updates over several channels, ranging from a fully tested Stable channel to a Dev channel that might be unstable. By default, Chrome OS updates get distributed over the Stable channel.

  To choose a release channel, configure the **Release channel** setting in the OS Update device policy setting for Chrome OS. For information, see OS Update device policy.

- **WiFi device policy for Citrix Ready workspace hub devices.** You can now manage how users connect their Citrix Ready workspace hub devices to WiFi networks. For information, see WiFi Policy.

- **Caller ID policy.** Secure Mail can now provide contact names and phone numbers for iOS to use in identifying incoming phone calls. The Caller ID Support Enabled policy controls this feature. For information, see MDX Policies for iOS Apps.

**Fixed issues in Endpoint Management 10.18.18**

When enrolling devices using Android Enterprise, users’ UPNs do not map to their existing G Suite User ID. Instead, a new G Suite User ID is created. [CXM-53534]

When you add an administrator to Endpoint Management, certain international characters are incorrectly coded and those accounts aren’t added to delivery groups. [CXM-58051]

After upgrading Endpoint Management, some users can’t access resources using single sign-on. [XMHELP-1675]

**Current known issues**

**Known issues in Endpoint Management 19.1.2**

Editing Windows Desktop and Tablet apps in **Configure > Apps > Public App Store** results in this message: “Application search failed”. Searching for those apps results in this message: “Error connecting to the windows desktop store url: Failed to retrieve public app details”. [CXM-61686]

**Known issues in Endpoint Management 10.19.1**

After you complete the registration process on the **Settings > Android Enterprise** page, the following error message appears: “A configuration error occurred. Please try again”. When you close the error
Citrix Endpoint Management

message, your Android Enterprise configuration is saved, however Enable Android Enterprise is Off. To work around this issue, reduce the number of app categories to 30 or fewer. [CXM-60899]

**Known issues in Endpoint Management 10.18.17**

On Endpoint Management instances installed on Microsoft Azure: Opening the Device Whitelist tab intermittently results in a message that indicates the whitelist service isn’t configured. The whitelist still functions appropriately. [CXM-57318]

**Known issues in Endpoint Management 10.18.5**

When a Chrome app is configured as a required app for Chrome OS devices: Users might need to log off and log back on to install the app. This third-party issue is Google bug ID #76022819. [CXM-48060]

**Known issues in Endpoint Management 10.18.3**

After you delete a Citrix Cloud administrator who has a device enrolled: Endpoint Management doesn’t update the User Role in the Endpoint Management console until after the administrator logs in again from Secure Hub or the Self Help Portal. [CXM-45730]

**Known issues in Endpoint Management 10.7.6**

For a Restrictions device policy for Samsung SAFE: The Browser, YouTube, and Google Play/Marketplace options have been removed. Use the Disable Applications option to enable or disable those features. [CXM-43043]

**Known issues in Endpoint Management 10.7.4**

If you configure Endpoint Management for single sign-on using Citrix Identity Platform with Azure Active Directory: When an Endpoint Management administrator or user gets redirected to the Azure Active Directory sign-in screen, the screen includes the message “Sign-in page for Citrix Secure Hub.” That message should be “Sign-in page for Citrix Endpoint Management console.” [CXM-42309]

**Known issues in Endpoint Management 10.7.3**

For devices running Windows 10 RS3 Version 1709 build 16299.19: App Configuration device policies created by importing a Citrix Receiver ADMX file might fail when pushed to those devices. This third-party issue is Microsoft bug ID #14280113. [CXM-40521]

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Third-party notices

January 28, 2019

Citrix Endpoint Management might include third-party software licensed under the terms defined in the following document:

Citrix Endpoint Management Third-Party Notices

System requirements

January 2, 2019

While waiting for Citrix to provision Endpoint Management, be sure to prepare for your Endpoint Management deployment by installing Cloud Connector. Although Citrix hosts and delivers your Endpoint Management solution, some communication and port setup is required. That setup connects the Endpoint Management infrastructure to corporate services, such as Active Directory.

Cloud Connector requirements

Citrix uses Cloud Connector to integrate the Endpoint Management architecture into your existing infrastructure. Cloud Connector integrates the following resource locations to Endpoint Management securely over port 443: LDAP, PKI Server, internal DNS queries, and Citrix Workspace enumeration.

- At least two dedicated Windows Server 2012 R2 or Windows Server 2016 machines that are joined to your Active Directory domain. The machines can be virtual or physical. The machine where you are installing the Connector must be in sync with UTC time for proper installation and operation. For a full list of the latest requirements, see the deployment materials provided by your Citrix Account Team.
  
The onboarding wizard guides you through installing Cloud Connector on those machines.

- For more platform system requirements, see Citrix Cloud Connector.

Citrix Gateway requirements

Endpoint Management requires a Citrix Gateway installed in your resource location for the following scenarios:

- You require a micro VPN for access to internal network resources for line of business apps. Those apps are wrapped with Citrix MDX technology. The micro VPN needs Citrix Gateway to connect to internal back-end infrastructures.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- You plan to use Citrix mobile productivity apps, such as Citrix Secure Mail.
- You plan to integrate Endpoint Management with Microsoft Intune/EMS.

The requirements:

- Domain (LDAP) authentication
- NetScaler 10.5 build 66.9 or above, with a Platform/Universal license
  For information, see the Citrix Support article, How to License a NetScaler Gateway Appliance.
- Public SSL Certificate
  For information, see the Citrix Support article How to Add an SSL Certificate Bundle on the NetScaler Appliance.
- Unused public IP address for Citrix Gateway Virtual Server
- Publicly resolvable Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) for Citrix Gateway Virtual Server
- Cloud-hosted Endpoint Management Intermediate and Root certificates (provided in the script bundle)
- Unused internal private IP address for the proxy load balancer IP
- For port requirements, see “Citrix Gateway port requirements” later in this article.
- Endpoint Management integration with Microsoft Intune/EMS
- Deploying Citrix NetScaler VPX on Microsoft Azure

For information about NetScaler requirements, see the deployment materials provided by your Citrix Account Team.

Citrix Files requirements

Citrix Files file sync and sharing services are available in the Endpoint Management Premium Service offering. StorageZones Controller extends the Citrix Files software as a service (SaaS) cloud storage by providing your Citrix Files account with private data storage.

StorageZones Controller requirements:

- A dedicated physical or virtual machine
- Windows Server 2012 R2 or Windows Server 2016
- 2 vCPUs
- 4 GB RAM
- 50 GB hard disk space
- Server roles for Web Server (IIS):
  - Application Development: ASP.NET 4.5.2
  - Security: Basic Authentication
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Security: Windows Authentication

Citrix Files platform requirements:
- The Citrix Files installer requires administrative privileges on the Windows Server
- Citrix Files Admin user name

Port requirements

To enable devices and apps to communicate with Endpoint Management, you open specific ports in your firewalls. The following diagram shows the traffic flow for Endpoint Management.

The following sections list the ports that you must open.

Citrix Gateway port requirements

Open ports to allow user connections from Citrix Secure Hub and Citrix Workspace through Citrix Gateway to:
- Endpoint Management
- StoreFront
- Other internal network resources, such as intranet websites

For more information about Citrix Gateway, see Configuration Settings for your Endpoint Management Environment in the Citrix Gateway documentation. For information about IP addresses owned by NetScaler, see How a NetScaler appliance communicates with clients and servers in the NetScaler documentation. That section includes information about the NetScaler IP (NSIP) virtual server IP (VIP) and subnet IP (SNIP) addresses.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TCP Port</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Destination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>53 (TCP and UDP)</td>
<td>Used for DNS connections.</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway SNIP</td>
<td>DNS server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80/443</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway passes the micro VPN connection to the internal network resource through the second firewall.</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway SNIP</td>
<td>Intranet websites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123 (TCP and UDP)</td>
<td>Used for Network Time Protocol (NTP) services.</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway SNIP</td>
<td>NTP server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>389</td>
<td>Used for insecure LDAP connections.</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway NSIP (or, if using a load balancer, SNIP)</td>
<td>LDAP authentication server or Microsoft Active Directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Used for connections to StoreFront from Citrix Workspace to Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops.</td>
<td>Internet</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Used for connections to Endpoint Management for web, mobile, and SaaS app delivery.</td>
<td>Internet</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Used for Cloud Connector communication – LDAP, DNS, PKI &amp; Citrix Workspace enumeration</td>
<td>Cloud Connector Servers</td>
<td>https://<em>.citrixworkspacesapi .net, https://</em>.cloud.com, https ://<em>.blob.core. windows.net/, https://</em>.servicebus. windows.net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>636</td>
<td>Used for secure LDAP connections.</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway NSIP (or, if using a load balancer, SNIP)</td>
<td>LDAP authentication server or Active Directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCP Port</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Destination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1494</td>
<td>Used for ICA connections to Windows-based applications in the internal network. Citrix recommends keeping this port open.</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway SNIP</td>
<td>Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1812</td>
<td>Used for RADIUS connections.</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway NSIP</td>
<td>RADIUS authentication server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2598</td>
<td>Used for connections to Windows-based applications in the internal network using session reliability. Citrix recommends keeping this port open.</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway SNIP</td>
<td>Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3269</td>
<td>Used for Microsoft Global Catalog secure LDAP connections.</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway NSIP (or, if using a load balancer, SNIP)</td>
<td>LDAP authentication server or Active Directory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8443</td>
<td>Used for enrollment, app store, and mobile app management (MAM).</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway SNIP</td>
<td>Endpoint Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8443</td>
<td>Secure Ticket Authority (STA) port used for Secure Mail authentication token</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway SNIP</td>
<td>Endpoint Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4443</td>
<td>Used for accessing the Endpoint Management console by an administrator through the browser.</td>
<td>Access point (browser)</td>
<td>Endpoint Management</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Network and firewall requirements

To enable devices and apps to communicate with Endpoint Management, you open specific ports in your firewalls. The following tables list those ports.

Open ports from the internal network to Citrix Cloud:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TCP port</th>
<th>Source IP</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Destination</th>
<th>Destination IP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
## Citrix Endpoint Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TCP port</th>
<th>Source IP</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Destination</th>
<th>Destination IP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4443</td>
<td></td>
<td>Endpoint Management console access through a browser</td>
<td>Endpoint Management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Open ports from the Internet to the DMZ:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TCP port</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Source IP</th>
<th>Destination</th>
<th>Destination IP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Endpoint Management Client Device</td>
<td></td>
<td>Citrix Gateway IP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Endpoint Management Client Device</td>
<td></td>
<td>NetScaler VIP</td>
<td>Citrix Files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Citrix Files Public IP</td>
<td>CTX208318</td>
<td>NetScaler VIP</td>
<td>Citrix Files</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Open ports from the DMZ to the internal network:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TCP port</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Source IP</th>
<th>Destination</th>
<th>Destination IP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>389 or 636</td>
<td>NetScaler NSIP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Active Directory IP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53 (UDP)</td>
<td>NetScaler NSIP</td>
<td></td>
<td>DNS Server IP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>NetScaler SNIP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Exchange (EAS) Server IP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>NetScaler SNIP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Internal Web Apps/Services</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>NetScaler SNIP</td>
<td></td>
<td>StorageZone Controller IP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Open ports from the internal network to the DMZ:

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TCP port</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Source IP</th>
<th>Destination</th>
<th>Destination IP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Admin Client</td>
<td></td>
<td>NetScaler NSIP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Open ports from the internal network to the Internet:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TCP port</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Source IP</th>
<th>Destination</th>
<th>Destination IP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Exchange (EAS)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Endpoint Management Push</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Notification Listeners (1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Storage Zone</td>
<td></td>
<td>Citrix Files Control Plane</td>
<td>CTX208318</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1)us-east-1.mailboxlistener.xm.citrix.com, eu-west-1.mailboxlistener.xm.citrix.com, ap-southeast-1.mailboxlistener.xm.citrix.com

Open ports from the corporate WiFi to the Internet:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TCP port</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Source IP</th>
<th>Destination</th>
<th>Destination IP</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5223</td>
<td>Endpoint Management Client Device</td>
<td></td>
<td>Apple APNS Servers</td>
<td>17.0.0.0/8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5228</td>
<td>Endpoint Management Client Device</td>
<td></td>
<td>Google Cloud Messaging</td>
<td>android.apis.google.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5229</td>
<td>Endpoint Management Client Device</td>
<td></td>
<td>Google Cloud Messaging</td>
<td>android.apis.google.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5230</td>
<td>Endpoint Management Client Device</td>
<td></td>
<td>Google Cloud Messaging</td>
<td>android.apis.google.com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>443</td>
<td>Endpoint Management Client Device</td>
<td></td>
<td>Windows Push Notification Service</td>
<td>*.notify.windows.com</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Port requirement for Auto Discovery Service connectivity

This port configuration ensures that Android devices connecting from Secure Hub for Android can access the Endpoint Management AutoDiscovery Service (ADS) from within the internal network. The ability to access the ADS is important when downloading any security updates made available through the ADS.

### Note

ADS connections might not support your proxy server. In this scenario, allow the ADS connection.
to bypass the proxy server.

If you want to enable certificate pinning, complete the following prerequisites:

- **Collect Endpoint Management server and NetScaler certificates.** The certificates must be in PEM format and must be a public certificate and not the private key.
- **Contact Citrix Support and place a request to enable certificate pinning.** During this process, you are asked for your certificates.

Certificate pinning requires that devices connect to ADS before the device enrolls. This requirement ensures that the latest security information is available to Secure Hub. For Secure Hub to enroll a device, the device must reach the ADS. Therefore, opening ADS access within the internal network is critical to enabling devices to enroll.

To allow access to the ADS for Secure Hub for Android, open port 443 for the following FQDN and IP addresses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FQDN</th>
<th>IP address</th>
<th>Port</th>
<th>IP and port usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ads.xm.cloud.com</td>
<td>52.5.138.94</td>
<td>443</td>
<td>Secure Hub - ADS Communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ads.xm.cloud.com</td>
<td>52.1.30.122</td>
<td>443</td>
<td>Secure Hub - ADS Communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ads.xm.cloud.com</td>
<td>34.194.83.188</td>
<td>443</td>
<td>Secure Hub - ADS Communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ads.xm.cloud.com</td>
<td>34.193.202.23</td>
<td>443</td>
<td>Secure Hub - ADS Communication</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Endpoint Management compatibility**

October 25, 2018

To use new features, fixes, and policy updates, Citrix recommends that you install the most recent version of the MDX Toolkit and mobile productivity apps (formerly, XenMobile Apps). You can use the MDX Service instead of the MDX Toolkit. For details, see [Endpoint Management MDX Service](#).

This article summarizes the versions of the supported Endpoint Management components that you can integrate.

The latest versions of Secure Hub, MDX Toolkit, and mobile productivity apps are compatible with the latest version and the two prior versions of Endpoint Management.
Mobile productivity apps

The latest version of the mobile productivity apps requires the latest version of Secure Hub. The two previous versions of the apps are compatible with the latest Secure Hub.

For more information about the mobile productivity apps two-week release cadence and phased release process for Secure Mail and Secure Web, see Release timeline. For support details, see Support for mobile productivity apps.

MDX Toolkit and MDX Service

- Citrix supports the latest three releases (n.n.n) of MDX Toolkit. You can also use Endpoint Management MDX Service for wrapping apps. For details, see Endpoint Management MDX Service.
- The latest on-prem toolkit version is MDX Toolkit 10.8.60 (for iOS and Android) for wrapping third-party apps. You can upgrade to MDX Toolkit 10.8.60 from MDX Toolkit 10.7.20 and 10.8.35.

The MDX Toolkit 10.7.10 was the final release that supported the wrapping of mobile productivity apps (formerly, XenMobile Apps). Users access the mobile productivity apps from the public app stores.

Browser support

Endpoint Management supports the following browsers:

- Internet Explorer, although not versions 9 or earlier
- Chrome
- Firefox
- Safari on mobile devices for use with the Self Help Portal

Endpoint Management is compatible with the most current version of the browser and one version before the current version.

Supported device operating systems

January 2, 2019

This article covers supported devices for enterprise mobility management, including app and device management, with Endpoint Management. Because of platform restrictions and security features, Endpoint Management doesn’t support all functionality on all platforms.

For supported device types and operating systems for Citrix mobile productivity apps and MDX, see Support for mobile productivity apps.
Note:
Citrix supports, at a minimum, the current and prior version of each major operating system platform. Not all features of the newer version of Endpoint Management work on older platform releases.

Operating system support list

Citrix Endpoint Management supports the following operating systems:

- **Android**: 6.x, 7.x, 8.x, 9.x
  
  Note:
  Support for Android 5.x ended on December 31, 2018.

- **iOS**: 11.x, 12.x

- **Chrome OS**: Chromebook

- **macOS**: 10.11 El Capitan, 10.12 Sierra, 10.13 High Sierra

- **tvOS**: 10.2 (minimum version). Requires 4th generation Apple TV devices enrolled using DEP.

- **Windows 10 Desktops and Tablets**: Windows 10 RS4 and RS5 (MDM only)

- **Windows Phone**: Windows Phone 8.1, Windows Phone 10, Windows 10 RS4 and RS5 (MDM only)

- **Windows Mobile/CE**: (MDM only). Starting the second quarter of 2018, support for Windows Mobile/CE devices is no longer available to new customers.

- **Raspberry Pi platform**: Citrix Ready workspace hub, built on the Raspberry Pi 3 platform. For more information about Workspace hub requirements, see [Citrix Ready workspace hub](#).

- **Symbian devices**: Starting the second quarter of 2018, support for Symbian devices is no longer available to new customers. The following list includes some of the Symbian devices that Endpoint Management supports for customers who previously configured these devices.
  
  - Symbian 3
  - Symbian S60 5th Edition
  - Symbian S60 3rd Edition, Feature Pack 2
  - Symbian S60 3rd Edition, Feature Pack 1
  - Symbian S60 3rd Edition
  - Symbian S60 2nd Edition, Feature Pack 3
  - Symbian S60 2nd Edition, Feature Pack 2

- **Samsung SAFE and KNOX**: On compatible Samsung devices, Endpoint Management supports and extends both Samsung for Enterprise (SAFE) and Samsung KNOX policies. Endpoint Management requires that you enable the SAFE APIs before you deploy SAFE policies and restric-
Citrix Endpoint Management

To do that, deploy the built-in Samsung Enterprise License Management (ELM) key to a device. To enable the Samsung KNOX API:

1. Purchase a Samsung KNOX license by using the Samsung KNOX License Management System (KLMS).
2. Deploy the Samsung ELM key.

- **HTC:** For HTC-specific policies, HTC API version 0.5.0
- **Sony:** For Sony-specific policies, Sony Enterprise SDK 2.0

**Android considerations**

Before upgrading to the Android P platform: Ensure that your server infrastructure is compliant with security certificates that have a matching hostname in the subjectAltName (SAN) extension. To verify a host name, the server must present a certificate with a matching SAN. Certificates that don’t contain a SAN matching the host name are no longer trusted. For details, see the Android Developer site article on Android P behavior changes.

With the release of Android O (version 8):

- SSLv3 is not supported with Android O. Google no longer supports SSLv3 connections. This means that mobile productivity apps running on Android O devices cannot connect to internal servers that are using SSLv3 connections. If you have servers leveraging SSLv3, it’s important to address this limitations before rolling out Android O to avoid connectivity failures with users.
- Support ended for Android 4.4x as of the version 10.6.20 public app store release of Citrix mobile productivity apps.
- Citrix mobile productivity apps and MDX-wrapped apps are available on Android devices with ARM-based processors. They are not supported on Intel x86 or x64-based Android devices.

**iOS considerations**

With the release of iOS 11:

- Endpoint Management support for iOS 8 devices ended.
- Endpoint Management support for iOS 9 devices running Citrix mobile productivity apps ended October 31, 2017.

Some iOS devices that Endpoint Management supports:

- iPhone X
- iPhone 8, 8 Plus
- iPhone 7 Plus 10.2.1
- iPhone 6, 6 Plus, 6S Plus, 6S+, 5s
Citrix Endpoint Management

- iPhone 5, 5c (iOS 9.x only)
- iPad 2, 3
- iPad Air, iPad Air-2, iPad Mini-4, Mini-3, Mini-2
- iPad Pro

Language support

January 11, 2019

Citrix mobile productivity apps and the Endpoint Management console are adapted for use in languages other than English. The support includes non-English characters and keyboard input even when the app is not localized in the preferred language of a user. For more information about globalization support for all Citrix products, see https://support.citrix.com/article/CTX119253.

This article lists the supported languages in the latest release of Endpoint Management.

Endpoint Management console and the Self Help Portal

- French
- German
- Spanish
- Japanese
- Korean
- Portuguese
- Simplified Chinese

Citrix mobile productivity apps

An X indicates that the app is available in that particular language.

iOS and Android

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Secure Hub</th>
<th>Secure Mail</th>
<th>Secure Web</th>
<th>Secure Notes</th>
<th>Secure Tasks</th>
<th>QuickEdit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simplified Chinese</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
The following table summarizes support for text in Middle Eastern languages for each app. An X indicates that the feature is available for that platform. Right-to-left language support is not available for Windows devices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Secure Hub</th>
<th>Secure Mail</th>
<th>Secure Web</th>
<th>Secure Notes</th>
<th>Secure Tasks</th>
<th>QuickEdit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Traditional Chinese</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portuguese</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dutch</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danish</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swedish</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arabic</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russian</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turkish</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Android only</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polish</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Right-to-left language support**

The following table summarizes support for text in Middle Eastern languages for each app. An X indicates that the feature is available for that platform. Right-to-left language support is not available for Windows devices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App</th>
<th>iOS</th>
<th>Android</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secure Hub</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Mail</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Web</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Tasks</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Notes</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
About Endpoint Management

October 25, 2018

Endpoint Management provides Mobile Device Management (MDM) and Mobile App Management (MAM).

MDM features of Endpoint Management let you:

- Deploy device policies and apps.
- Retrieve asset inventories.
- Carry out actions on devices, such as a device wipe.

MAM features of Endpoint Management let you:

- Secure apps and data on BYO mobile devices.
- Deliver enterprise mobile apps.
- Lock apps and wipe their data.

With a combination of MDM and MAM features, you can:

- Manage a corporate-issued device by using MDM
- Deploy device policies and apps
- Retrieve an asset inventory
- Wipe devices
- Deliver enterprise mobile apps
- Lock apps and wipe the data on devices

Architecture

The device and app management requirements of your organization determine the Endpoint Management components in your Endpoint Management architecture. The components of Endpoint Management are modular and build on each other. For example, your deployment includes Citrix Gateway

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App</th>
<th>iOS</th>
<th>Android</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QuickEdit</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Citrix Endpoint Management

to give users remote access to mobile apps and to track user device types. Endpoint Management is where you manage apps and devices, and Citrix Gateway enables users to connect to your network.

The following diagram shows a general architectural overview of an Endpoint Management cloud deployment and its integration with your data center.

The following subsections contain reference architecture diagrams for the core Endpoint Management and for optional components such as an external Certificate Authority and Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync.

For more information about Citrix ADC and Citrix Gateway requirements, see the Citrix product documentation at docs.citrix.com.

Core reference architecture

For details about port requirements, see System requirements.
Reference architecture with Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops
Reference architecture with Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync
Resource locations

Place resource locations where they best meet your business needs. For example, in a public cloud, in a branch office, private cloud, or a data center. Factors that determine the choice of location include:

- Proximity to subscribers
- Proximity to data
- Scale requirements
- Security attributes

You can build any number of resource locations. For example, you might:

- Build a resource location in your data center for the head office, based on subscribers and applications that require proximity to the data.
- Add a separate resource location for your global users in a public cloud. Alternatively, build separate resource locations in branch offices to provide the applications best served close to the branch workers.
- Add a further resource location on a separate network that provides restricted applications. This setup provides restricted visibility to other resources and subscribers without the need to adjust the other resource locations.
Citrix Endpoint Management

Cloud Connector

Citrix uses Cloud Connector to integrate the Endpoint Management architecture into your existing infrastructure. Cloud Connector authenticates and encrypts all communication between Citrix Cloud and your resource locations. Cloud Connector supports all Endpoint Management authentication types.

The following diagram shows the traffic flow for Cloud Connector.

Cloud Connector establishes connections to Citrix Cloud. Cloud Connector doesn’t accept incoming connections.

A solution that includes Mobile App Management (MAM) requires a micro VPN that is provided by an on-premises Citrix Gateway. Cloud Connector, Citrix Gateway, and your servers for Exchange, web apps, Active Directory, and PKI reside in your data center. Mobile devices communicate with Endpoint Management and your on-premises Citrix Gateway.

Endpoint Management components

Endpoint Management console. You use the Endpoint Management administrator console to configure Endpoint Management. For details about using the Endpoint Management console, see the articles under Endpoint Management. Citrix notifies you when the What’s new articles for Endpoint Management are updated for a new release.

Note these differences between the Endpoint Management service and the on-premises releases:

- The Remote Support client is not available for Endpoint Management.
- Endpoint Management server-side components are not FIPS 140-2 compliant.
- Citrix does not support syslog integration in Endpoint Management with an on-premises syslog server. Instead, you can download the logs from the Support page in the Endpoint Management console. When doing so, you must click Download All.

MDX Service. The Endpoint Management MDX Service securely wraps mobile apps created within your organization or outside the company. For more information, see MDX Service.

Mobile productivity apps. Citrix-developed mobile productivity apps provide a suite of productivity and communication tools within the Endpoint Management environment. Your company policies secure those apps. For more information, see Mobile productivity apps.

Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync. Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync provides secure email access to users who use native mobile email apps. The connector for Exchange ActiveSync provides ActiveSync filtering at the Exchange service level. As a result, filtering only occurs once the mail reaches the Exchange service, rather than when it enters the Endpoint Management environment. The connector doesn’t require the use of Citrix Gateway.
You can deploy the connector without changing routing for the existing ActiveSync traffic. For more information, see Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync.

**Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync.** Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync provides secure email access to users who use native mobile email apps. The connector for Exchange ActiveSync provides ActiveSync filtering at the perimeter, by using Citrix Gateway as a proxy for ActiveSync traffic. As a result, the filtering component sits in the path of mail traffic flow, intercepting mail as it enters or leaves the environment. The connector for Exchange ActiveSync acts an intermediary between Citrix Gateway and the Endpoint Management server. For more information, see Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync.

**Endpoint Management technical security overview**

Citrix Cloud manages the control plane for Endpoint Management environments, including the Endpoint Management server, Citrix ADC load balancer, and a single-tenant database. The cloud service integrates with a customer data center using Citrix Cloud Connector. Endpoint Management customers who use Cloud Connector typically manage Citrix Gateway in their data centers.

The following figure illustrates the service and its security boundaries.

![Endpoint Management technical security overview](image)

The information in this section:

- Provides an introduction to the security functionality of Citrix Cloud.
- Defines the division of responsibility between Citrix and customers for securing the Citrix Cloud deployment.

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Is not intended to serve as configuration and administration guidance for Citrix Cloud or any of its components or services.

Data flow

The control plane has limited read-access to user and group objects from a customer directory and other services such as DNS. The control plane accesses those services over Citrix Cloud Connector, which uses secure HTTPS connections.

Company data, such as email, intranet, and web-app traffic, flows directly between a device and the application servers over Citrix Gateway. Citrix Gateway is deployed in the customer data center.

Data isolation

The control plane stores metadata needed for managing user devices and their mobile applications. The service itself consists of a mix of multi- and single-tenant components. However, per the service architecture, customer metadata is always stored separately for each tenant and secured by using unique credentials.

Credential handling

The service handles the following types of credentials:

- **User credentials**: User credentials are transmitted from the device to the control plane over an HTTPS connection. The control plane validates these credentials with a directory in the customer directory over a secure connection.

- **Administrator credentials**: Administrators authenticate against Citrix Cloud, which uses the sign-on system from Citrix Online. This process generates a one-time signed JSON Web Token (JWT), which gives the administrator access to the service.

- **Active Directory credentials**: The control plane requires bind-credentials to read user metadata from Active Directory. These credentials are encrypted using AES-256 encryption and saved in a per-tenant database.

Deployment considerations

Citrix recommends that you consult the published best practices documentation for deploying Citrix Gateway within your environments.
Citrix Endpoint Management

More resources

See the following resources for more security information:

- Citrix Security Site: https://www.citrix.com/security
- Citrix Cloud Documentation: Secure Deployment Guide for the Citrix Cloud Platform
- Secure Deployment Guide for Citrix ADC

Citrix Endpoint Management integration with Microsoft Intune/EMS

January 24, 2019

Endpoint Management integration with Microsoft Enterprise Mobility + Security (EMS)/Intune adds the value of Endpoint Management micro VPN to Microsoft Intune aware apps, such as Microsoft Managed Browser.

Endpoint Management integration with EMS/Intune also allows enterprises to wrap their own line of business apps with Intune and Citrix to provide micro VPN capabilities inside an Intune mobile app management (MAM) container. Endpoint Management micro VPN enables your apps to access on-premises resources. You can manage and deliver Office 365 apps, line of business apps, and Citrix Secure Mail in one container for ultimate security and productivity.

This release supports the following use cases:

- Intune MAM
- Intune MAM and Intune mobile device management (MDM)
- Intune MAM with Endpoint Management MDM-only
- Intune MAM with Endpoint Management MDM and MAM

Important:

Secure Mail only works in Citrix MAM mode in this use case.

Getting Started Guide

This document is an easy-to-follow, graphical guide to setting up Endpoint Management integration with EMS/Intune.

System requirements

- Citrix Gateway version 12.0.59.x or 12.1.50.x or later. You can download the latest version of Citrix Gateway from the Citrix Gateway download page.
- A Windows desktop running Windows 7 or later (for Android app wrapping only)
**Citrix Endpoint Management**

- A Mac running macOS 10.10 or later (for iOS or Android app wrapping)
- Mobile platforms:
  - iOS 11.x
  - Android 6.x, 7.x, 8.x

**Microsoft**

- Azure AD access (with Tenant Admin privileges)
- Intune-enabled tenant

**Firewall rule**

- Enable a Firewall rule to allow DNS and SSL traffic from a Citrix Gateway subnet IP to *

**Prerequisites**

- **Intune environment:** If you don’t have an Intune environment set up, follow the steps in the Microsoft documentation.
- **Intune app wrappers:** Microsoft hosts the wrappers in a private GitHub repository that you need an invitation to access. After you receive an invitation, download the wrappers from the Citrix GitHub page.
- **Managed Browser:** The Mobile Apps SDK is integrated within the Intune Managed Browser app for iOS and Android. For more information about the Managed Browser, see the Microsoft Managed Browser page.
- **Installations of the Android SDK and the Java JDK.** Install these SDKs on the machine you use to wrap apps. For details about the Intune SDK, see the Microsoft Intune App SDK for Android developer guide.
- **JDK environment variable.** Set the JDK environment variable for the JDK to change the path to match your JDK version and installed location. Example: $env:Path += ";C:\Program Files\Java\jdk1.8.0_121\bin"
- **Citrix Cloud account.** To sign up for a Citrix account and request a Citrix Endpoint Management trial, contact your Citrix Sales Representative. When you’re ready to proceed, go to https://onboarding.cloud.com. For more information on requesting a Citrix Cloud account, see Sign up for Citrix Cloud. **Note:** The email you supply must be an address that is not associated with Azure AD. You can use any free email service.
• **APNs certificates for iOS.** Ensure that you configure APNs certificates for iOS. To learn more about setting up these certificates, see this Citrix blog post: [Creating and Importing APNs Certificates](#).

• **Azure AD Sync.** Set up synchronization between Azure AD and on-premises Active Directory. Do not install the AD sync tool on the domain controller machine. For more information on setting up this sync, see the Microsoft documentation, [Integrate your on-premises directories with Azure Active Directory](#).

**Consenting to delegated permission prompts**

For managed apps that require users to authenticate, the apps request application permissions exposed by Microsoft Graph. By consenting to these permission prompts, the app can access required resources and APIs. Some apps require consent by the Azure AD global administrator for Microsoft Azure AD. For these delegated permissions, the global administrator must grant Citrix Cloud permission to request tokens. The tokens then enable the following permissions. For more details, see the [Microsoft Graph permissions reference](#).

- **Sign in and read user profile.** This permission allows users to sign in and connect to Azure AD. Note that Citrix does not view user credentials.
- **Read all users’ basic profiles.** The app reads profile properties on behalf of users in the organization. The properties include display name, first and last name, and email address and photo of users in the organization.
- **Read all groups.** This permission enables Azure AD groups to be enumerated for app and policy assignment.
- **Access directory as the signed-in user.** This permission verifies the Intune subscription and enables Citrix Gateway and VPN configurations.
- **Read and write Microsoft Intune apps.** The app can read and write Microsoft-managed properties, group assignments and the status of apps, app configurations, and app protection policies.

In addition, during the Citrix Gateway configuration, the Azure AD global administrator must approve the Active Directory chosen for micro VPN. The global administrator must also generate a client secret that Citrix Gateway uses to communicate with AAD and Intune.

The global administrator must not have the role of Citrix administrator. Instead, the Citrix administrator assigns Azure AD accounts to users with appropriate Intune application admin privileges. The Intune administrator then serves the role of a Citrix Cloud admin to manage Intune from within Citrix Cloud.

**Note:**

Citrix only uses the Intune Global Administrator password during setup and redirects the authentication to Microsoft. Citrix never has access to the password.
To configure Endpoint Management integration with EMS/Intune

1. Log on to the Citrix Cloud site and request a trial for Endpoint Management.
2. A sales engineer schedules an onboarding meeting with you. Let them know that you want Endpoint Management integration with EMS/Intune. When your request is approved, click Manage.
3. Follow the link in the first step to the Identity and Access Management page.
4. Do one of the following:
   - Click Connect to connect your Azure AD installation.
   - If you have already federated your Azure AD installation, click Upgrade.
5. Enter a unique logon URL that the Azure AD administrator uses to log on and then click Connect.
6. Add an Azure AD global administrator account and then accept the permissions request.
7. Confirm that your Azure AD instance connects successfully. To indicate a successful connection, the Connect button changes to say Disconnect.
8. Click the Administrators tab and then add your Azure AD Intune administrator as a Citrix Cloud administrator.
   As a result, the Azure AD Intune administrator receives an email invitation to create a password and sign in to Citrix Cloud. Before the administrator signs in, ensure that you sign out of all other accounts.
   The Azure AD Intune administrator must follow the remaining steps in this procedure.
9. After signing in with the new account, under Endpoint Management, click Manage. If everything is configured correctly, the page shows that the Azure AD administrator is signed in and that your Intune subscription is valid.

Video help

Watch this video to see, step by step, how to connect Endpoint Management integration with Intune/EMS.
To configure Citrix Gateway for micro VPN

To use micro VPN with Intune, you must configure Citrix Gateway to authenticate to Azure AD. An existing Citrix Gateway virtual server does not work for this use case.

First, configure Azure AD to sync with the on-premises Active Directory. This step is necessary to ensure that authentication between Intune and Citrix Gateway occurs properly.

1. From the Citrix Cloud console, under **Endpoint Management**, click **Manage**.

2. Next to **Micro VPN**, click **Configure Micro VPN**.

3. Enter a name for the micro VPN service and the external URL for your Citrix Gateway and then click **Next**.

   This script configures Citrix Gateway to support Azure AD and the Intune apps.

4. Click **Download Script**. The .zip file includes a readme with instructions for implementing the script. Even though you can Save and Exit from here, the Micro VPN is not set up until you run the script on your Citrix Gateway installation.
To configure device management

If you want to manage devices in addition to apps, choose a method of device management. You can use Endpoint Management MDM or Intune MDM.

**Note:** By default, Intune MDM is selected for the console. To use Intune as your MDM provider, follow Microsoft documentation at Set the mobile device management authority.

1. From the Citrix Cloud console, under Endpoint Management integration with EMS/Intune, click Manage. Next to Device Management - Optional, click Configure MDM.
2. Enter a unique site name, select the Cloud region closest to you and then click Request a Site. A prompt lets you know that you receive an email when your site is ready.
3. Click OK to close the prompt. Select an Active Directory Location to associate with your site or create a resource location and then click Next.
4. Click Download Cloud Connector and follow the instructions on screen to install the cloud connector. After installation, click Test Connection to verify the connection between Citrix Cloud and the Cloud Connector.
5. Click Save & Exit to finish. Your resource location appears. Clicking Finish takes you back to the settings screen.
6. You can now access the Endpoint Management console from your site tile. From here, you can perform MDM management tasks and assign device policies. For more information on device policies, see Device Policies.

Wrapping iOS apps

Microsoft has enhanced their Intune App Wrapping Tool to add the optional parameter “-citrix”. As a final step, this parameter invokes the MDX Toolkit command line interface (CLI) CGAppCLPrepTool to wrap the application. To wrap the app with Intune, follow the instructions at Prepare line of business apps for MAM.

**Important:** Ensure that you use the wrapping tool supplied for this release and not the one linked to from the article.

Several MDX options exist. See the list below for a description of each MDX Variant.

- **MDX network-only wrapper:** Only Intune MDM, Intune MAM, or Endpoint Management MDM-only can manage this wrapper. Wrap the app by using the Intune App Wrapping Tool and specify
the “-citrix” option. This wrapper is a minimal version of MDX that only has support for micro VPN without containment or encryption.

- **MDX Wrapper**: Has support for other types of policies, including containment. Does not support encryption. Wrap the app with the Intune App Wrapping tool and then the MDX Toolkit.
- **Citrix Mobile Apps SDK**: Use the Citrix Mobile Apps SDK when developing an app to access all MDX features, including encryption.

You can achieve the same result if, when building your iOS app, you link the Citrix Mobile Apps SDK framework and Intune SDK framework. For more information on the Citrix Mobile Apps SDK and Intune SDK, see [MDX Developer Guide](#) and [Intune App SDK overview](#) respectively.

Customer line of business apps that consume the Intune SDK for containment or networking purposes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use case example</th>
<th>Intune</th>
<th>Citrix MDX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Customer Line of Business consuming Intune SDK needing containment or networking.</td>
<td>Intune SDK</td>
<td>MDX network-only wrapper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrix mobile productivity apps or Line of Business apps that require containment and networking capabilities.</td>
<td>Intune SDK</td>
<td>Citrix Mobile Apps SDK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line of Business apps for network-only wrapper.</td>
<td>Intune wrapper</td>
<td>MDX network-only wrapper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of the Microsoft Managed Browser.</td>
<td>Intune SDK already embedded in the app</td>
<td>MDX network-only support already embedded in the app</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Wrapping Android apps**

Wrapping an Android app works similarly to iOS. The tool you use to wrap Android apps is the ManagedAppUtility.jar. You can use the ManagedAppUtility.jar to wrap apps with the full version of MDX or with the network-only version. To use the network-only wrapper, use the “-mVPN” parameter.

See the following table for examples of when to use each wrapping variant.

**Android wrapping scenarios**
To add apps to Endpoint Management integration with EMS/Intune console

To add Intune managed apps, follow these steps.

1. From the Citrix Cloud console, click the menu icon and then click **Library**.
2. Click the blue plus sign icon on the upper-right and then click **Add a Mobile app**.
   You may need to wait a minute for the options to populate the list.
3. Select an app template to customize or click **Upload my own App**.
   Citrix supplies the existing app templates, each of which comes with a set of preconfigured default policies. For apps that customers upload, the following policies apply:
   - **MDX Files**: Includes MDX wrapped apps, such as Intune app protection policies and the default MDX policies contained in the package; and public store apps, such as Intune app protection policies and default MDX policies that match the bundle ID or package ID.
   - **IPA Files**: Intune App protection policies.
   - **APK Files**: Intune app protection policies.
   
   **Note**: If the app is not wrapped with Intune, Intune app protection policies do not apply.
4. If you clicked **Upload my own App**, upload your .mdx or Intune wrapped file.
5. Enter a name and description for the app, choose whether the app is featured or required, and then click **Next**.
6. Set the **Network access** policy to select whether and how to allow micro VPN access. Enabling micro VPN allows the app controlled access to on-premises resources.
   - **Unrestricted**: Disables micro VPN access. The app has access to the network with no restrictions, without using the micro VPN. This is the default setting.
   
   **Note**: In version 18.12.0: If you configure unrestricted network access and set the **micro VPN session required** policy to **Yes**, the network is unavailable.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- **Tunneled - Full VPN**: Enables micro VPN full tunnel (TCP level) redirection.

- **Tunneled - Web SSO**: Enables HTTP/HTTPS redirection (with SSO) redirection for micro VPN.

- **Tunneled - Full VPN and Web SSO**: Enables micro VPN full tunnel (TCP level) redirection and HTTP/HTTPS redirection (with SSO) redirection.

  This option allows automatic switching between full VPN and Web SSO modes as needed. If a network request fails due to an authentication request that cannot be handled in full VPN mode, the request is retried in the alternate mode. For example, the full VPN can accommodate server challenges for client certificates. Web SSO mode is more likely to service HTTP authentication challenges.

  This setting is the equivalent to the now deprecated policy, PermitVPNModeSwitching.

7. If you enable micro VPN access, set the **micro VPN session required** policy to select whether to require an online session for the app to work. Select **Yes** to require an online session. The default is **No**.

8. If you enable micro VPN access, you can specify an **mVPN tunnel exclusion list**. Enter domains, separated by commas, that you want to exclude from the micro VPN policies.

   For more information on these policies, see MDX Policies.

9. Configure more policies for the app and then click **Next**. For a complete list of app policies, see **MDX Policies at a Glance**.

   **Note**: Not all of these policies are available.

10. There are no deployment policies to configure. Click **Next**.

11. Review the summary of the app and then click **Finish**.

   This app configuration process may take a few minutes. When the process completes, a message indicates that the app has been published to the library.

12. To assign user groups to the app, click **Assign Users**.

13. From the **Add Subscribers** list, select your AAD instance. Then, in the search box, search for user groups and click to add them. You cannot add individual users.

14. Added groups show up as pending and then move to a ready status. When you have added all groups and they appear as ready, you can close the window by clicking the X.

   You may encounter an error when adding user groups. This error occurs when the user group has not been synchronized to Local Active Directory.
**MDX policies**

When you wrap an app with MDX technology or you use the Citrix Mobile Apps SDK to build the app, Intune administrators can configure the MDX policies. These policies include a subset of Citrix MDX policies that do not require Secure Hub to manage the app. Citrix recommends that you use the following MDX policies.

The following set of Intune-specific network management policies control the network policy configuration for MDX (full or network only) when managed by Intune. Some of these policies correspond to existing Citrix MDX network containment policies. Others are specific to Intune configuration and control.

**Important:**

The MDX Toolkit version 18.12.0 release included new policies that combined or replaced older policies.

The Network Access policy combines Network access, Preferred VPN mode, and Permit VPN mode switching. The Exclusion list policy replaces Split tunnel exclusion list. The micro VPN session required policy replaces micro VPN session required. For details, see [What’s new in the MDX Toolkit 18.12.0](#).

Tunneled - Web SSO is the name for Secure Browse in the settings. The behavior is the same.

- **Enable http/https redirection.** Enables or disables HTTP/HTTPS redirection through the Citrix Gateway reverse web proxy endpoint, also known as Tunneled - Web SSO. When On, Tunneled - Web SSO is used for web traffic. When using the Tunneled - Web SSO endpoint, the gateway is able to respond to HTTP authentication challenges inline, providing a single-sign-on (SSO) experience. In order to use Tunneled - Web SSO, set this policy to On. Full-tunnel redirection is required for apps that use client certificates for end-to-end SSL with mutual authentication. For those apps, this option needs to be disabled. Default value is On.

- **Disable mVPN full tunnel (TCP level) redirection.** Enable or disable TCP level network level redirection through the Citrix Gateway VPN tunneling endpoint. Under normal circumstances, always leave this policy enabled. However, troubleshooting web SSO issues is often easier when preventing TCP level interception of web traffic that standard web interception functions do not catch. Default value is On.

- **mVPN session required.** If On, the SDK ensures that the configured gateway is reachable and a valid micro VPN session is available before allowing app to become active. If there is no network, the gateway is unreachable or a logon session cannot be established. The app remains blocked until a working micro VPN session can be confirmed. If Off, the app opens regardless of network condition. A micro VPN session is initialized as needed when an app configured for tunneled access attempts to use one of the redirected network APIs. Default value is Off.

- **mVPN tunnel exclusion list.** Comma-separated list of host or domain names to be excluded
from being routed through the Citrix Gateway reverse web proxy. The host or domain names are excluded even though the gateway configured split DNS settings might otherwise select the domain or host.

**Note:** This policy is only enforced for Tunneled - Web SSO connections. If Enable http/https redirection is Off, this policy is ignored.

For more information about these policies, see MDX Policies for iOS Apps.

**Deploying policies for line of business apps**

After you’ve uploaded your apps to Intune, follow this procedure to apply policies to those apps.

2. Under Manage, click App configuration policies.
3. Click Add and then enter a name for the policy you want to create. For Enrollment Type, select Not Enrolled with Intune. This selection is a limitation of the current system.
4. Click Associated App, select the apps to which you want to apply the policy, and then click OK.
5. Click Configuration Settings.
6. In the Name field, enter the name of one of the policies noted in the following section in this article.
7. In the Value field, enter the value you want to apply for that policy. Click off the field to add the policy to the list. You can add multiple policies.
8. Click OK and then click Add. The policy is added to your list of policies.
9. You can delete the policy. To do so, select the policy and then click Delete Policy on the right.

**Line of business policies**

The following table lists the policies you can deploy for line of business apps. In addition to these policies, you can also use the policies listed earlier in this article for MDX. For more information about these policies, see MDX Policies at a Glance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name (iOS/Android)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AppLogLevel/DefaultLoggerLevel</td>
<td>Controls default verbosity of the mobile productivity app diagnostic logging facility. Higher-level numbers include more detailed logging.</td>
<td>1-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Citrix Endpoint Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name (iOS/Android)</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>AppLogTarget/DefaultLoggerOut</strong></td>
<td>Determines which output media are used by the mobile productivity app diagnostic logging facilities by default.</td>
<td>File, Console, or Both</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AppLogFileSize/MaxLogFileSize</strong></td>
<td>Limits the size in MB of the log files retained by the mobile productivity app diagnostic logging facility before rolling over. Minimum is 1 MB. Maximum is 5 MB.</td>
<td>1-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AppLogFileCount/MaxLogFiles</strong></td>
<td>Limits the number of log files retained by the mobile productivity app diagnostic logging facility before rolling over. Minimum is 2. Maximum is 8.</td>
<td>2-8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## To configure Secure Mail

Secure Mail now supports various configurations. You can wrap Secure Mail in an Intune MAM container connecting to an on-premises Exchange Server. You can connect Secure Mail to hosted Exchange or Office 365 accounts. This release does not support certificate-based authentication, however, so use LDAP instead.

**Important:**

In order to use Secure Mail in MDM mode, you must use Citrix Endpoint Management MDM and MAM.

Secure Mail also automatically populates user names. To enable this feature, you must configure the following custom policies first.

1. From your Endpoint Management console, go to **Settings > Server Properties** and then click **Add**.
2. In the list, click **Custom Key** and then in the **Key** field, type `*xms.store.idpuser\_attrs*.
3. Set the value to **true** and then in **Display name**, type `*xms.store.idpuser\_attrs*`. Click **Save**.
4. Click **Client Properties** and then click **Add**.
5. Select **Custom Key** and then type **SEND_LDAP_ATTRIBUTES** in the **Key** field.

6. Type:

```plaintext
*userPrincipalName=${ user.userprincipalname } ,email=${ user.mail } ,displayName=${ user.displayname } ,sAMAccountName=${ user.samaccountname } ,aadupn=${ user.id\_token.upn } ,aadtid=${ user.id\_token.tid }
```

in the **Value** field, enter a description and then click **Save**.

The following steps only apply for iOS devices.

7. Go to **Configure > Device Policies**, click Add, and then select the **App Configuration** policy.

8. Enter a policy name and then click **Next**.

In the Identifier list, click **Add new**. In the text box that appears, enter the bundle ID for your Secure Mail app.

9. In the **Dictionary** content box, type the following text.

```
<dict>
<key>XenMobileUserAttributes</key>
<dict>
<key>userPrincipalName</key>
<string>${ user.userprincipalname }</string>
<key>email</key>
<string>${ user.mail }</string>
<key>displayName</key>
<string>${ user.displayname }</string>
<key>sAMAccountName</key>
<string>${ user.samaccountname }</string>
```
10. Clear the Windows Phone and Windows Desktop/Tablet check boxes and then click Next.

11. Select the user groups to which you want the policy deployed and then click Save.

**Troubleshooting**

**General Issues**

**Issue:** When opening an app, the following error message appears: App Policy Required.

**Resolution:** Add policies in the Microsoft Graph API.

**Issue:** You have policy conflicts.

**Resolution:** Only a single policy per app is allowed.

**Issue:** When wrapping an app, the following error appears:

Failed to package app.

com.microsoft.intune.mam.apppackager.utils.AppPackagerException: This app already has the MAM SDK integrated.

Citrix Endpoint Management

com.microsoft.intune.mam.apppackager.PackagerMain.mainInternal(PackagerMain.java:198)
com.microsoft.intune.mam.apppackager.PackagerMain.main(PackagerMain.java:56)

The application could not be wrapped.

**Resolution:** The app is integrated with the Intune SDK. You do not need to wrap the app with the Intune wrapper.

**Issue:** Your app can’t connect to internal resources.

**Resolution:** Ensure that the correct firewall ports are open, you correct tenant ID, and so on.

**Citrix Gateway issues**

The following table lists common issues with Citrix Gateway configurations and their solutions. For troubleshooting, enable more logs and check them by doing the following:

1. In the command-line interface, run the following command: `set audit syslogParams - logLevel ALL`
2. Check the logs from shell using `tail -f /var/log/ns.log`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Issue</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The permissions required to be configured for Gateway App on Azure are unavailable.</td>
<td>Check if a proper Intune license is available. Try using the manage.windowsazure.com portal to see if the permission can be added. Contact Microsoft support if the issue persists.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrix Gateway cannot reach <code>login.microsoftonline.com</code> and <code>graph.windows.net</code>.</td>
<td>From NS Shell, check if you are able to reach the following Microsoft website: <code>curl -v -k https://login.microsoftonline.com</code>. Then, check whether DNS is configured on Citrix Gateway and that the firewall settings are correct (in case DNS requests are firewalled).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An error appears in <code>ns.log</code> after you configure <code>OAuthAction</code>.</td>
<td>Check if Intune licensing is enabled and the Azure Gateway app has the proper permissions set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sh <code>OAuthAction</code> command does not show <code>OAuth status as complete</code>.</td>
<td>Check the DNS settings and configured permissions on the Azure Gateway App.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Android or iOS device does not show the dual authentication prompt.

Check if the Dual Factor Device ID logonSchema is bound to the authentication virtual server.

**OAuth error condition and status**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Error Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COMPLETE</td>
<td>Success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AADFORGRAPH</td>
<td>Invalid secret, URL not resolved, connection timeout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDMINFO</td>
<td>*manage.microsoft.com is down or unreachable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRAPH</td>
<td>Graph endpoint is down unreachable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CERTFETCH</td>
<td>Cannot talk to “Token Endpoint: <a href="https://login.microsoftonline.com">https://login.microsoftonline.com</a> because of a DNS error. To validate this configuration, go to shell and type curl <a href="https://login.microsoftonline.com">https://login.microsoftonline.com</a>. This command must validate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Known issues**

When you deploy apps with Citrix and Intune to support micro VPN: When users provide their user name and password to access digest sites, even though their credentials are valid, an error appears. [CXM-25227]

After changing Split tunnel from **On** to **Off** and waiting for the current gateway session to expire: External traffic passes directly on without going through Citrix Gateway until the user launches an internal site in Full VPN mode. [CXM-34922]

After changing the Open-in policy from **Managed apps** only to **All apps**, users cannot open documents in unmanaged apps until they close and relaunch Secure Mail. [CXM-34990]

When split tunnel is **On** in Full VPN mode, and the split DNS changes from local to remote, internal sites fail to load. [CXM-35168]
When the mVPN policy **Enable http/https redirection (with SSO)** is disabled, Secure Mail does not function. [CXM-58886]

**Third-party known issues**

On Secure Mail for Android, when a user taps **Create New Event**, the new event creation page does not display. [CXM-23917]

When you deploy Citrix Secure Mail for iOS with Citrix and Intune to support micro VPN: The app policy that obscures the Secure Mail screen when users move the app to the background is not enforced. [CXM-25032]

When users first run Secure Mail on Intune MDM+MAM, the setup takes users through a workflow to select Intune MAM/Endpoint Management. [CXM-31272]

**Onboarding and resource setup**

December 17, 2018

To sign up for a Citrix account and request a Endpoint Management trial, contact your Citrix Sales Representative. When you’re ready to proceed, go to [https://onboarding.cloud.com](https://onboarding.cloud.com).

After you log in, a screen similar to the following appears. Next to **Endpoint Management**, click **Request Trial**.

The button then changes to **Trial Requested**. After you request a trial, a Citrix Sales Engineer follows up on the trial request by completing a Podio form. The information that you must provide is included in the **Onboarding Handbook** under “Endpoint Management Trial Sales Engineer engagement.” You receive an email to notify you when your trial becomes available.
While waiting for the trial, be sure to prepare for your Endpoint Management deployment by reviewing System requirements. Although Citrix hosts and delivers your Endpoint Management solution, some communication and port requirements are required. That setup connects the Endpoint Management infrastructure to corporate services, such as Active Directory.

After you are authorized to access the trial, the button for Endpoint Management changes to Manage, which opens a wizard. Follow the instructions in that wizard to configure your connection to Endpoint Management.

The following diagram shows the first screen that you see when starting a trial. The setup wizard first prompts you to configure details such as a site name and IP address range for the cloud-hosted components.

After you set up resource locations in the setup wizard, the wizard guides you through the initial configuration of Endpoint Management, starting with LDAP.
After you complete the wizard, Citrix Cloud Operations group integrates Endpoint Management on Citrix Cloud. Meanwhile, you can start the process of preparing to support Android, iOS, and Windows platforms. For more information, see “Mobile platform support” in Endpoint Management.

The following sections describe more setup to perform when you can access the Endpoint Management console.

**Configure allowed URLs for resource locations**

To specify the allowed URLs for a resource location, go to Settings > Cloud Connector Whitelist, click Add, and choose a Resource Location. Then, specify the Allowed/Whitelisted URLs for that location.

- **Allowed/Whitelisted URLs**: Specify one URL per line. You can use the asterisk (*) or question mark (?) wildcards.
Configure users and groups

A **User type** column appears on the Manage > Users page of the Endpoint Management console. That column indicates whether each user is a local, Active Directory, or cloud user.

For local users and AD users, you can perform all user management functions described in **User accounts, roles, and enrollment**.

A cloud user is a special user account that Citrix Cloud creates and manages on the Endpoint Management server. Citrix Cloud creates a cloud user account when an administrator is added to your Citrix Cloud customer account. A cloud user account uses the same username as the administrator account. The cloud user account provides single sign-on and performs other administrative functions.

For cloud users:

- You can change the roles and user properties of cloud users through the Endpoint Management console.
- You cannot change cloud user passwords through the Endpoint Management console.
- You can change a cloud user password from **Identity and access management** in Citrix Cloud.
- You cannot delete cloud users.
- You cannot give cloud users membership in a group.

Configure delivery groups

When you create a delivery group, you specify whether the user assignments are managed in Endpoint Management or in Citrix Cloud. You cannot change this specification after you create the delivery group.

If you plan to use the delivery group to deliver other services available through Citrix Cloud, specify that the user assignments are managed in Citrix Cloud. Other services include Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops, Life Cycle Management, Citrix Content Collaboration, or Secure Browser Service. You can only add Active Directory users to these delivery groups.
If you only need mobility management for a delivery group of users and apps, set Manage user assignments to In Endpoint Management. Delivery groups with users managed in Endpoint Management are not visible in Citrix Cloud. Therefore, you cannot use delivery groups managed in Endpoint Management to deliver other services.

You can perform all Endpoint Management delivery group management functions through the Endpoint Management console, as described in Deploy Resources.

To add a delivery group and specify how its user assignments are managed:

1. In the console, click Configure > Delivery Groups.
2. From the Delivery Groups page, click Add. The Delivery Group Information page appears.
3. Enter a name and description for the delivery group and click Next.
4. On the User Assignments page, specify how to manage the delivery group user assignments.
   - In Endpoint Management. Select this option if you plan to create a delivery group for users and apps that only need mobility management. Delivery groups whose user assignments are managed in Endpoint Management are not visible in Citrix Cloud and cannot be used to deliver other services.
   - In Citrix Cloud. Select this option if you plan to use the delivery group to deliver other services, such as Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops or Citrix Content Collaboration.
**Important**

You cannot change the **Manage user assignments** setting after the user group is created.

1. Add users to the delivery group and click **Next**.
2. Add optional resources to the delivery group, as described in **Deploy Resources**.
3. Review the Summary page.
4. Click **Save** to create the delivery group.

**Configure resource locations for PKI entity connections**

To use Cloud Connector for Microsoft Certificate Services entity connections, go to **Settings > PKI Entities**. When you add or edit a PKI entity, change **Use Cloud Connector** to **ON**. Then, specify a **Resource Location** and **Allowed Relative Paths** for those locations.

- **Resource Location**: Choose from the resource locations defined in Citrix Cloud Connector.
- **Allowed Relative Paths**: The relative paths allowed for the specified resource location. Specify one path per line. You can use the asterisk (*) wildcard.

Suppose that the resource location is `https://www.ServiceRoot/certsrv`. To provide access to all URLs in that path, enter `*` in **Allowed Relative Paths**.
Configure resource locations for Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops connections

To use Cloud Connector for Virtual Apps and Desktops connections, go to Settings > XenApp/XenDesktop. Then, change Use Cloud Connector to ON and specify the following options for those locations.

- **Resource Location:** Choose from the resource locations defined in Citrix Cloud Connector.

- **Allowed Relative Paths:** The relative paths allowed for the specified resource location. Specify one path per line. You can use the asterisk (*) wildcard.

  Suppose that the resource location is https://storefront.company.com and you want to provide access to the following URLs:

  - https://storefront.company.com/Citrix/PNAgent/Config.xml

  To allow all requests with the URL https://storefront.company.com/Citrix/PNAgent/*, enter this path: /Citrix/PNAgent/*

  Endpoint Management blocks all other paths.
Configure an on-premises Citrix Gateway for use with Endpoint Management

To configure an on-premises Citrix Gateway for use with Endpoint Management, you perform the following general steps, detailed in this section:

1. Download a script and related files from the Endpoint Management console.
2. Update the script for your environment.
3. Run the script on NetScaler. You can use the script to configure multiple Citrix Gateways.

The script configures these Citrix Gateway settings required by Endpoint Management:

- Citrix Gateway virtual servers needed for MDM and MAM
- Session policies for the Citrix Gateway virtual servers
- Endpoint Management server details
- Proxy load balancer for certificate validation
- LDAP server details (The script includes comments about the LDAP configuration details.)
- Traffic actions and policies for the proxy server
- Clientless access profile
- Static local DNS record on NetScaler
- Bindings: Service and traffic policy; CA certificate and service

The script doesn't handle the following configuration:

- Exchange load balancing
• Citrix Content Collaboration load balancing
• ICA Proxy configuration

The rest of this section describes these general steps for using the script. See the readme file provided with the script for the latest detailed instructions.

1. Verify that your environment meets the prerequisites. For information, see System requirements.

2. Download the script bundle, update the script placeholders with details from your environment, and then run the script.

3. Test the configuration.

Download the script bundle and update the script for your environment

Note:
NetScaler Gateway is now renamed to Citrix Gateway. The old name is still shown in the console UI.

1. To download the script bundle, go to the Settings > NetScaler Gateway page, select a gateway, click Export Configuration Script, and then click Download.

The Export Configuration Script button also appears on the page where you add a Citrix Gateway.

The script bundle includes a:

• Readme file with detailed instructions
• Script that contains the NetScaler CLI commands used to configure the required components in NetScaler
• Public Root CA certificate and the Intermediate CA certificate

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
• Script that contains the NetScaler CLI commands used to remove the NetScaler configuration

2. Upload and install the certificate files (provided in the script bundle) on the NetScaler appliance in the /nsconfig/ssl/ directory.

   The following examples show how to install the root certificate.
Ensure that you install both the root and intermediate certificates.

3. Edit the script (OfflineNSGConfigBundle_CREATESCRIPT) to replace all placeholders with details from your environment.
4. Run your edited script in the NetScaler bash shell, as described in the readme file included in the script bundle. For example:

```
/netscaler/nscli -U:<NetScaler Management Username>:<NetScaler Management Password> batch -f "/var/OfflineNSGConfigBundle_CREATESCRIPT.txt"
```

When the script completes, the following lines appear.

```
exec: save ns config
Done
Done
root@ns#  
```

**Test the configuration**

To validate the configuration:

1. Validate that the Citrix Gateway Virtual Server shows a state of **UP**.
2. Validate that the Proxy Load Balancing Virtual Server shows a state of **UP**.

3. Open a web browser, connect to the Citrix Gateway URL, and attempt to authenticate. If the authentication succeeds, you are redirected to an “HTTP Status 404 - Not Found” message.

4. Enroll a device and ensure it gets both MDM and MAM enrollment.

**Endpoint Management administration**

Endpoint Management is fully configured after you create delivery groups and assign users to the delivery groups through the Cloud Library. From this point on, Endpoint Management administration takes place within Citrix Cloud. The combined interface simplifies switching between Citrix Cloud and Endpoint Management.

All Citrix Cloud administrators also are created as Endpoint Management administrators by default unless those administrators were created with custom access that doesn’t include Endpoint Manage-
Citrix Endpoint Management

To change a role at any time, access the Endpoint Management console from the Citrix Cloud dashboard. For more information about adding and editing administrators, see Add, edit, or delete local user accounts for Endpoint Management and Add administrators for Citrix Cloud. You can change only the role and membership of a user. You cannot change user names or passwords, nor delete or edit local users, from the Endpoint Management console. Instead, make those changes within Citrix Cloud.

Link an existing Citrix Content Collaboration account to Citrix Cloud

If you have a Citrix Content Collaboration account that existed before you signed up with Citrix Cloud, you must link that account to Citrix Cloud. To link your account, your email address must be an administrator of the Citrix Content Collaboration account. When you’re ready to proceed, go to https://onboarding.cloud.com.

1. After you log in, a screen similar to the following appears.

2. In the Citrix Content Collaboration tile, choose Link Account.
After we confirm your Citrix Content Collaboration account, the following page appears:

Add Content Collaboration Account

GEO Location
Select the geographical location for the account.

[ ] USA  [ ] EU

I understand that I cannot change the region after setup.

Select a subdomain
Your subdomain is your unique URL for your Content Collaboration account. You can change this later.

https:// sharefile.com

3. Click the **Link Account** tab to complete the process. You can immediately manage your Citrix Content Collaboration account from within Citrix Cloud.
Next steps

After you complete the onboarding and resource setup described in this article, continue your configuration in the Endpoint Management console. For information about next steps, see Prepare to enroll devices and deliver resources.

Prepare to enroll devices and deliver resources

January 2, 2019

Important:
Before proceeding, be sure to complete all tasks described in Onboarding and resource setup.

Endpoint Management supports various enrollment options. This article covers the basic setup required to enable all supported devices to enroll. The following diagram summarizes the basic setup.

For a list of supported devices, see Supported device operating systems.

Set up an Apple Push Notification service (APNs) certificate for iOS devices

Endpoint Management requires an Apple Push Notification service (APNs) certificate from Apple to enroll and manage iOS devices. Endpoint Management also requires an APNs certificate if you plan to use push notifications for Secure Mail for iOS.

- To obtain a certificate from Apple requires an Apple ID and developer account. For details, see the Apple Developer Program website.
- To obtain an APNs certificate and import it into Endpoint Management, see APNs certificates.
For more information about Endpoint Management and APNs, see Push Notifications for Secure Mail for iOS.

**Set up Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM) for Android devices**

Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM) controls how and when Android devices connect to the Endpoint Management service. Any security action or deployment command triggers a push notification to prompt users to reconnect to Endpoint Management.

- FCM setup requires that you configure your Google account. To create Google Play credentials, see Manage your developer account information. You also use Google Play to add, buy, and approve apps for deployment to the Android Enterprise workspace on a device. You can use Google Play to deploy your private Android apps, public apps, and third-party apps.

- To set up FCM, see Firebase Cloud Messaging.

**Set up Endpoint Management AutoDiscovery Service**

**Important:**

As of December 31, 2018, the AutoDiscovery Service URL discovery.mdm.zenprise.com is replaced with ads.xm.cloud.com. For more information, see the Citrix support article https://support.citrix.com/article/CTX202044.

Autodiscovery is an important part of many Endpoint Management deployments. Autodiscovery simplifies the enrollment process for users. They can use their network user names and Active Directory passwords to enroll their devices. They don't need to enter details about Endpoint Management.
Users enter their user name in user principal name (UPN) format; for example, user@mycompany.com. The Endpoint Management AutoDiscovery Service enables you to create or edit an autodiscovery record without assistance from Citrix support.

AutoDiscovery is recommended for high security environments. AutoDiscovery supports certificate pinning, which prevents man-in-the-middle attacks. Certificate pinning ensures that the certificate signed by your enterprise is used when Citrix clients communicate with Endpoint Management. For information about certificate pinning, see Certificate pinning.

To access the Endpoint Management AutoDiscovery Service, navigate to https://tools.xm.cloud.com and then click **Request AutoDiscovery**.

**Request AutoDiscovery**

1. On the AutoDiscovery Service page, claim a domain. Click **Add Domain**.

2. In the dialog box that opens, enter the domain name of your Endpoint Management environment and then click **Next**.
3. The next screen provides instructions on verifying that you own the domain.

- Copy the DNS token provided in the Endpoint Management Tools Portal.
- Create a DNS TXT record in the zone file for your domain in your domain hosting provider portal.

To create a DNS TXT record, log in to the Domain Hosting Provider portal for the domain you added in the previous step. You can edit your Domain Name Server Records and add a custom TXT record.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Paste the Domain Token in your DNS TXT record and save your Domain name Server record.
- Back in the Endpoint Management Tools Portal, click **Done** to start the DNS check.

The system detects your DNS TXT record. Alternatively, you can click **I’ll update later**, and the record is saved. The DNS check doesn’t start until you select the record that has a status of “Waiting” and then click **DNS Check**.

This check ideally takes about an hour, but it can take up to two days to return a response. To see the status change, you might need to leave the portal and return.

4. After you claim your domain, you provide information about the AutoDiscovery Service. Right-click the domain record for which you want to request autodiscovery and then click **Add ADS**.

5. Enter the requested information and then click **Next**. If you are unsure about your instance name, add a default instance of **zdm**.
6. Enter the following information for Secure Hub and then click **Next**.

- **User ID Type**: Select the type of ID with which users sign on as either **E-mail address** or **UPN**.
  
  Use **UPN** when the user’s User Principal Name is the same as their email address. Both methods use the domain entered to find the server address. If you choose **E-mail address**, users are prompted to enter their user name and password. If you choose **UPN**, users are prompted to enter their password.

- **HTTPS Port**: Enter the port used to access Secure Hub over HTTPS. Typically, the HTTPS port is 443.

- **iOS Enrollment Port**: Enter the port used to access Secure Hub for iOS enrollment. Typically, this port is 8443.

- **Required Trusted CA for Endpoint Management**: Indicate whether a trusted certificate is required to access Endpoint Management or not. This option can be **OFF** or **ON**. Currently, the ability to upload a certificate for this feature does not exist. If you want to use this feature, call Citrix Support and request that they to set up autodiscovery. To learn more about certificate pinning, see the section on certificate pinning in **Secure Hub**. To read about the ports required for certificate pinning to work, see the support article on
Endpoint Management Port Requirements for ADS Connectivity.

7. A summary page displays all the information you entered in the preceding steps. Verify that the data is correct then click **Save**.

At this point, you can enroll all supported devices. Proceed to the next section to prepare to deliver resources to devices.

**Continue your Endpoint Management configuration**

After you complete the basic setup for device enrollment, how you configure Endpoint Management varies widely based on your use cases. For example:

- What are your security requirements and how do you want to balance those requirements with user experience?
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Which device platforms do you support?
- Do your users own their devices or use corporate-owned devices?
- What device policies do you need to push to devices?
- What types of apps do you provide users?

This section helps you navigate through the many configuration choices by directing you to articles in this documentation set.

As you complete configuration in third-party sites, make note of the information and its location, for reference when you configure Endpoint Management console settings.

**Security and authentication**

Endpoint Management uses certificates to create secure connections and authenticate users. Citrix provides wildcard certificates for your Endpoint Management instance.

**Recommended background reading:**

For a discussion of authentication components and recommended configurations by security level, see the “Advanced concepts” article, **Authentication**.

See also, **Security and user experience**.

For an overview of the authentication components used during Endpoint Management operations, see **Certificates and authentication**.

You can choose from the following types of authentication. Configuring authentication includes tasks in the Endpoint Management and Citrix Gateway consoles.

- Domain or domain plus security token authentication
- Client certificate or certificate plus domain authentication

To deliver certificates to users, configure:

- PKI entities
- Credential providers

For other authentication options, see other articles under **Certificates and authentication**.

**Device enrollment**

You configure device enrollment modes to allow users to enroll their devices in Endpoint Management. Endpoint Management offers seven modes, each with its own level of security and steps users must take to enroll their devices.

- For information about Endpoint Management enrollment options, see **Configure enrollment modes**.
Azure Active Directory enrollment is supported for iOS, Android, and Windows 10 devices. For information about configuring Azure as your identity provider (IdP), see Single sign in with Azure Active Directory.

- Other enrollment options:
  - Deploy devices through Apple DEP
  - Bulk enrollment of Apple devices
  - Create an Android Enterprise administrator account. For details, see Android Enterprise.
    Or, see Legacy Android Enterprise for G Suite Customers.
  - Samsung KNOX Bulk Enrollment
  - Bulk enrollment of Windows devices
  - Configure G Suite for Chrome OS device enrollment from your G Suite account. For details, see Chrome OS.
  - Workspace hub device management

- You can send notifications for enrollment. For information, see Notifications. You can also use notifications for automated actions and standard messages sent to users.

- For more information about enrollment, see Device management and articles under that node.

Device policies and management

- Device (MDM) policies
  - All Endpoint Management device policies are documented under Device policies. For information about some commonly used device policies, see Device Policies and Use Case Behavior.
  - Some policies are common across multiple platforms and some policies are platform-specific.

  You can filter device policy lists in the Endpoint Management console. For example, you can filter by platform to see a list of policies most often used for that platform. For information, see Device policies.

- Client properties
  - Client properties contain information that is provided directly to Secure Hub on user devices. For information, see Client properties and Endpoint Management client properties.

- Delivery groups
  - For a sample use case related to delivery groups, see User Communities. For more information, see To add a delivery group.
Citrix Endpoint Management

Prepare apps for deployment

For information about the apps supported by Endpoint Management, see Add apps.

- You can manage iOS app licensing by using the Apple iOS Volume Purchase Program (VPP). For information, see iOS Volume Purchase Program.
  
  You can use Endpoint Management to deploy iBooks that you obtain through the Apple Volume Purchase Program (VPP). For information, see Add media.

- You can connect Citrix Endpoint Management to Microsoft Store for Business. For information, see Deploy Microsoft Store for Business apps from Endpoint Management.

- Citrix provides mobile productivity apps, including Secure Mail and Secure Web. For information, see About mobile productivity apps.
  - As an alternative to Secure Mail, you can deliver native mail to devices. For a general discussion of email choices, see Email strategy. See also:
    * Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync
    * Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync

- Citrix Secure Mail, Citrix Secure Web, and Citrix Files offer the option of opening the MDX container to allow users to transfer docs and data to Microsoft Office 365 apps. You manage this capability for iOS and Android platforms through the open-in policies on the Endpoint Management console. See Allowing Secure Interaction with Office 365 Apps and Office device policy.

- For general information about app policies, see App Policies and Use Case Scenario.

- The MDX Service and MDX Toolkit are app wrapping technologies that prepare enterprise apps for secure deployment with Endpoint Management.

  For information about Endpoint Management MDX Service, our cloud tool, see Endpoint Management MDX Service.

  For information about Endpoint Management MDX Toolkit, the traditional MDX wrapping process, see MDX Toolkit.

- For more information about apps, see other articles under Add apps.

Other configuration

- The Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) feature in Endpoint Management lets you assign predefined roles, or sets of permissions, to users and groups. These permissions control the level of access users have to system functions. For information, see Configure roles with RBAC.

- You create automated actions in Endpoint Management to specify the action to take in reaction to events, certain settings, or the presence of apps on user devices. For information, see Automated actions.
Several components play a role in authentication during Endpoint Management operations:

- **Endpoint Management**: The Endpoint Management server is where you define enrollment security and the enrollment experience. Options for onboarding users include:
  - Whether to make the enrollment open for all or by invitation only.
  - Whether to require two-factor authentication or three-factor authentication. Through client properties in Endpoint Management, you can enable Citrix PIN authentication and configure the complexity and expiration time of the PIN.

- **Citrix Gateway**: Citrix Gateway provides termination for micro VPN SSL sessions. Citrix Gateway also provides network in-transit security, and lets you define the authentication experience used each time a user accesses an app.

- **Secure Hub**: Secure Hub and Endpoint Management work together in enrollment operations. Secure Hub is the entity on a device that talks to Citrix Gateway: When a session expires, Secure Hub gets an authentication ticket from Citrix Gateway and passes the ticket to the MDX apps. Citrix recommends use of certificate pinning, which prevents man-in-the-middle attacks. For more information, see this section in the Secure Hub article: Certificate pinning.

  Secure Hub also facilitates the MDX security container: Secure Hub pushes policies, creates a session with Citrix Gateway when an app times out, and defines the MDX timeout and authentication experience. Secure Hub is also responsible for jailbreak detection, geolocation checks, and any policies you apply.

- **MDX policies**: MDX policies create the data vault on the device. MDX policies direct micro VPN connections back to Citrix Gateway, enforce offline mode restrictions, and enforce client policies, such as time-outs.

For more information about configuring authentication, including an overview of single-factor and two-factor authentication methods, see the Deployment Handbook article, **Authentication**.

You use certificates in Endpoint Management to create secure connections and authenticate users. The remainder of this article discusses certificates. For other configuration details, see the following articles:

- Domain or domain plus security token authentication
- Client certificate or certificate plus domain authentication
- PKI entities
- Credential providers
- APNs certificates
- SAML for single sign-on with Citrix Files
• Single sign in with Azure Active Directory

Certificates

By default, Endpoint Management comes with a self-signed Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) certificate that is generated during installation to secure the communication flows to the server. Citrix recommends that you replace the SSL certificate with a trusted SSL certificate from a well-known certificate authority (CA).

Note:
To enroll iOS devices in Endpoint Management, you must use trusted SSL certificates in Endpoint Management.

Endpoint Management also uses its own Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) service or obtains certificates from the CA for client certificates. All Citrix products support wildcard and Subject Alternative Name (SAN) certificates. For most deployments, you only need two wildcard or SAN certificates.

Client certificate authentication provides an extra layer of security for mobile apps and lets users seamlessly access HDX Apps. When client certificate authentication is configured, users type their Citrix PIN for single sign-on (SSO) access to Endpoint Management-enabled apps. Citrix PIN also simplifies the user authentication experience. Citrix PIN is used to secure a client certificate or save Active Directory credentials locally on the device.

To enroll and manage iOS devices with Endpoint Management, set up and create an Apple Push Notification Service (APNs) certificate from Apple. For steps, see APNs certificates.

The following table shows the certificate format and type for each Endpoint Management component:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endpoint Management component</th>
<th>Certificate format</th>
<th>Required certificate type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Citrix Gateway</td>
<td>PEM (BASE64), PFX (PKCS #12)</td>
<td>SSL, Root (Citrix Gateway converts PFX to PEM automatically)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Endpoint Management supports client certificates with bit lengths of 4096, 2048, and 1024. Be aware that 1024-bit certificates are easily compromised.

For Citrix Gateway and Endpoint Management, Citrix recommends obtaining server certificates from a public CA, such as Verisign, DigiCert, or Thawte. You can create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) from the Citrix Gateway or the Endpoint Management configuration utility. After you create the CSR, you submit it to the CA for signing. When the CA returns the signed certificate, you can install the certificate on Citrix Gateway or Endpoint Management.

### Uploading certificates in Endpoint Management

Each certificate you upload has an entry in the Certificates table, including a summary of its contents. When you configure PKI integration components that require a certificate, you choose a server certificate that satisfies the context-dependent criteria. For example, you might want to configure Endpoint Management to integrate with your Microsoft CA. The connection to the Microsoft CA must be authenticated by using a client certificate.

This section provides general procedures for uploading certificates. For details about creating, uploading, and configuring client certificates, see [Client certificate or certificate plus domain authentication](#).

### Private key requirements

Endpoint Management may or may not possess the private key for a given certificate. Likewise, Endpoint Management may or may not require a private key for certificates you upload.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endpoint Management</th>
<th>.p12 (.pfx on Windows-based computers)</th>
<th>SSL, SAML, APNs (Endpoint Management also generates a full PKI during the installation process.) <strong>Important:</strong> Endpoint Management doesn’t support certificates with a .pem extension. To use a .pem certificate, split the .pem file into a certificate and key and import each into Endpoint Management.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>StoreFront</td>
<td>PFX (PKCS #12)</td>
<td>SSL, Root</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Uploading certificates to the console

When uploading certificates to the console, you have two main options:

- You can click to import a keystore. Then, you identify the entry in the keystore repository you want to install, unless you are uploading a PKCS #12 format.
- You can click to import a certificate.

You can upload the CA certificate (without the private key) that the CA uses to sign requests. You can also upload an SSL client certificate (with the private key) for client authentication.

When configuring the Microsoft CA entity, you specify the CA certificate. You select the CA certificate from a list of all server certificates that are CA certificates. Likewise, when configuring client authentication, you can select from a list of all the server certificates for which Endpoint Management has the private key.

To import a keystore

By design, keystores, which are repositories of security certificates, can contain multiple entries. When loading from a keystore, therefore, you are prompted to specify the entry alias that identifies the entry you want to load. If you do not specify an alias, the first entry from the store is loaded. Because PKCS #12 files usually contain only one entry, the alias field does not appear when you select PKCS #12 as the keystore type.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The Settings page appears.
2. Click Certificates. The Certificates page appears.
3. Click **Import**. The **Import** dialog box appears.

4. Configure these settings:
   - **Import**: In the list, click **Keystore**. The **Import** dialog box changes to reflect available keystore options.
• **Keystore type**: In the list, click PKCS #12.
• **Use as**: In the list, click how you plan to use the certificate. The available options are:
  – **Server**. Server certificates are certificates used functionally by Endpoint Management. You upload server certificates to the Endpoint Management web console. Those certificates include CA certificates, RA certificates, and certificates for client authentication with other components of your infrastructure. In addition, you can use server certificates as storage for certificates you want to deploy to devices. This use especially applies to CAs used to establish trust on the device.
  – **SAML**. Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) certification allows you to provide SSO access to servers, websites, and apps.
  – **APNs**. APNs certificates from Apple enable mobile device management via the Apple Push Network.
  – **SSL Listener**. The Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) Listener notifies Endpoint Management of SSL cryptographic activity.
• **Keystore file**: Browse to find the keystore you want to import of the file type .p12 (or .pfx on Windows-based computers).
• **Password**: Type the password assigned to the certificate.
To import a certificate

When importing a certificate, either from a file or a keystore entry, Endpoint Management attempts to construct a certificate chain from the input. Endpoint Management imports all certificates in that chain to create a server certificate entry for each. This operation only works if the certificates in the file or keystore entry do form a chain. For example, if each subsequent certificate in the chain is the issuer of the previous certificate.

You can add an optional description for the imported certificate. The description only attaches to the first certificate in the chain. You can update the description of the remaining certificates later.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console and then click Certificates.
2. On the Certificates page, click Import. The Import dialog box appears.
3. In the Import dialog box, in Import, if it is not already selected, click Certificate.
4. The Import dialog box changes to reflect available certificate options. In Use as, select how you plan to use the keystore. The available options are:
   - **Server.** Server certificates are certificates used functionally by Endpoint Management. You upload server certificates to the Endpoint Management web console. Those certificates include CA certificates, RA certificates, and certificates for client authentication with other components of your infrastructure. In addition, you can use server certificates as storage for certificates you want to deploy to devices. This option especially applies to CAs used to establish trust on the device.
   - **SAML.** Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) certification allows you to provide single sign-on (SSO) access to servers, websites, and apps.
   - **SSL Listener.** The Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) Listener notifies Endpoint Management of SSL cryptographic activity.
5. Browse to find the keystore you want to import of the file type .p12 (or .pfx on Windows-based computers).
6. Browse to find an optional private key file for the certificate. The private key is used for encryption and decryption along with the certificate.
7. Type a description for the certificate, optionally, to help you identify it from your other certificates.
8. Click Import. The certificate is added to the Certificates table.
Updating a certificate

Endpoint Management only allows one certificate per public key to exist in the system at a time. If you attempt to import a certificate for the same key pair as an already imported certificate: You can either replace the existing entry or delete the entry.

To most effectively update your certificates, in the Endpoint Management console, do the following. Click the gear icon on the upper-right corner of the console to open the Settings page and then click Certificates. In the Import dialog box, import the new certificate.

When you update a server certificate, components that were using the previous certificate automatically switch to using the new certificate. Likewise, if you have deployed the server certificate on devices, the certificate automatically updates on the next deployment.

Endpoint Management Certificate Administration

We recommend that you list the certificates you use in your Endpoint Management deployment, especially on their expiration dates and associated passwords. This section intends to help you make certificate administration in Endpoint Management easier.

Your environment may include some or all of the following certificates:

- **Endpoint Management server**
  - SSL Certificate for MDM FQDN
  - SAML Certificate (For Citrix Files)
  - Root and Intermediate CA Certificates for the preceding certificates and any other internal resources (StoreFront/Proxy, and so on)
  - APN Certificate for iOS Device Management
  - Internal APNs Certificate for Endpoint Management server Secure Hub Notifications
  - PKI User Certificate for connectivity to PKI

- **MDX Service or MDX Toolkit**
  - Apple Developer Certificate
  - Apple Provisioning Profile (per application)
  - Apple APNs Certificate (for use with Citrix Secure Mail)
  - Android Keystore File
  - Windows Phone – Symantec Certificate

- **Citrix Gateway**
  - SSL Certificate for MDM FQDN
  - SSL Certificate for Gateway FQDN
  - SSL Certificate for ShareFile SZC FQDN
  - SSL Certificate for Exchange Load Balancing (offload configuration)
  - SSL Certificate for StoreFront Load Balancing
  - Root & Intermediate CA Certificates for the preceding certificates
Device certificate renewal

You can now request that Citrix Cloud Operations refresh or regenerate the internal PKI certificate authorities (CAs) in your Endpoint Management deployment. Open a Technical Support case for these requests.

When the new CAs are available, Cloud Operations lets you know that you can proceed with renewing the device certificates for your users.

For supported iOS, macOS, and Android devices, you can initiate certificate renewal through the security action, Certificate Renewal. You renew device certificates from the Endpoint Management console or the Public REST API. For enrolled Windows devices, users must re-enroll their devices to receive a new device CA.

If your Citrix Gateway is set up for SSL offload, ensure that you update your load balancer with the new cacert.pem.

The next time that devices connect back to Endpoint Management, the Endpoint Management server issues new device certificates based on the new CA.

To renew device certificates by using the console

1. Go to Manage > Devices and select the devices for which you want to renew device certificates.
2. Click Secure and then click Certificate Renewal.

![Security Actions](image)

Already enrolled devices continue to work without disruption. Endpoint Management issues a device certificate when a device connects back to the server.
To query for the devices that are in a specific device certificate issuer CA group:

1. In **Manage > Devices**, expand the **Filters** pane if it’s closed.

2. In the **Filters** pane, expand **Device Certificate Issuer CA** and then select the issuer CAs that you want to renew.

   In the table of devices, the devices for the selected issuer CAs appear.

---

**To renew device certificates by using the REST API**

Endpoint Management uses the following certificate authorities (CAs) internally for PKI: Root CA, device CA, and server CA. Those CAs are a logical group and have a group name. During Endpoint Management provisioning, the server generates three CAs and gives them the group name “default”.

You can use the following APIs to manage and renew the device certificates that are issued by the CAs. Already enrolled devices continue to work without disruption. Endpoint Management issues a device certificate when a device connects back to the server. For more information, download the **Public API for REST Services PDF**.

- Return a list of devices still using the old CA (see section 3.16.2 in the Public API for REST Services PDF)
- Renew Device Certificate (see section 3.16.58)
- Get all CA groups (see section 3.23.1)

---

**Endpoint Management Certificate Expiration Policy**

If you allow a certificate to expire, the certificate becomes invalid. You can no longer run secure transactions on your environment and you cannot access Endpoint Management resources.

**Note:**

The Certification Authority (CA) prompts you to renew your SSL certificate before the expiration date.
**APNs certificate for Citrix Secure Mail**

Apple Push Notification Service (APNs) certificates expire every year. Be sure to create an APNs SSL certificate and update it in the Citrix portal before the certificate expires. If the certificate expires, users face inconsistency with Secure Mail push notifications. Also, you can no longer send push notifications for your apps.

**APNs certificate for iOS device management**

To enroll and manage iOS devices with Endpoint Management, set up and create an APNs certificate from Apple. If the certificate expires, users cannot enroll in Endpoint Management and you cannot manage their iOS devices. For details, see APNs certificates.

You can view the APNs certificate status and expiration date by logging on to the Apple Push Certificates Portal. Be sure to log on as the same user who created the certificate.

You also receive an email notification from Apple 30 and 10 days before the expiration date. The notification includes the following information:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>The following Apple Push Notification Service certificate, created for Apple ID CustomerID will expire on Date. Revoking or allowing this certificate to expire will require existing devices to be re-enrolled with a new push certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Please contact your vendor to generate a new request (a signed CSR), then visit <a href="https://identity.apple.com/pushcert">https://identity.apple.com/pushcert</a> to renew your Apple Push Notification Service certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Thank You,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Apple Push Notification Service</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MDX Service or MDX Toolkit (iOS distribution certificate)**

An app that runs on a physical iOS device (other than apps in the Apple App Store) have these signing requirements:

- Sign the app with a provisioning profile.
- Sign the app with a corresponding distribution certificate.

To verify that you have a valid iOS distribution certificate, do the following:

1. From the Apple Enterprise Developer portal, create an explicit App ID for each app you plan to wrap with MDX. An example of an acceptable App ID is: com.CompanyName.ProductName.
2. From the Apple Enterprise Developer portal, go to Provisioning Profiles > Distribution and create an in-house provisioning profile. Repeat this step for each App ID created in the previous step.
3. Download all provisioning profiles. For details, see Wrapping iOS Mobile Apps.

To confirm that all Endpoint Management server certificates are valid, do the following:

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click Settings > Certificates.
2. Check that all certificates including APNs, SSL Listener, Root, and Intermediate certificate are valid.

### Android keystore

The keystore is a file that contains certificates used to sign your Android app. When your key validity period expires, users can no longer seamlessly upgrade to new versions of your app.

### Enterprise certificate from Symantec for Windows phones

Symantec is the exclusive provider of code signing certificates for Microsoft App Hub service. Developers and software publishers join App Hub to distribute Windows Phone and Xbox 360 applications for download through the Windows Marketplace. For details, see Symantec Code Signing Certificates for Windows Phone in the Symantec documentation.

If the certificate expires, Windows phone users cannot enroll. The users cannot install an app published and signed by the company, or start a company app that was installed on the phone.

### Citrix Gateway

For details on how to handle certificate expiration for Citrix Gateway, see How to handle certificate expiry on NetScaler in the Citrix Support Knowledge Center.

An expired Citrix Gateway certificate prevents users from enrolling and accessing the Store. The expired certificate also prevents users from connecting to Exchange Server when using Secure Mail. In addition, users cannot enumerate and open HDX apps (depending on which certificate expired).

The Expiry Monitor and Command Center can help you to track your Citrix Gateway certificates. The Center notifies you when the certificate expires. These tools assist to monitor the following Citrix Gateway certificates:

- SSL Certificate for MDM FQDN
- SSL Certificate for Gateway FQDN
- SSL Certificate for ShareFile SZC FQDN
- SSL Certificate for Exchange Load Balancing (offload configuration)
When you configure Citrix Endpoint Management to use Citrix Gateway, you establish the authentication mechanism for remote device access to the internal network. That setup enables apps on a mobile device to access corporate servers located in the intranet. Endpoint Management creates a micro VPN from the apps on the device to Citrix Gateway.

You configure Citrix Gateway for use with Endpoint Management by exporting a script from Endpoint Management that you run on Citrix Gateway.

Prerequisites for using the Citrix Gateway configuration script

Citrix Gateway requirements:

- Citrix Gateway (minimum version 11.0, Build 70.12).
- Citrix Gateway IP address is configured and has connectivity to the LDAP server, unless LDAP is load balanced.
- Citrix Gateway Subnet (SNIP) IP address is configured, has connectivity to the necessary back end servers, and has public network access over port 8443/TCP.
- DNS can resolve public domains.
- Citrix Gateway is licensed with Platform/Universal or Trial licenses. For information, see https://support.citrix.com/article/CTX126049.
- A Citrix Gateway SSL certificate is uploaded and installed on the Citrix Gateway. For information see, https://support.citrix.com/article/CTX136023.

Endpoint Management requirements:

- LDAP server is configured.

Configure authentication for remote device access to the internal network

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The Settings page appears.

2. Under Server, click NetScaler Gateway. The NetScaler Gateway page appears. In the following example, a Citrix Gateway instance exists.
3. Configure these settings:
   - **Authentication**: Select whether to enable authentication. The default is ON.
   - **Deliver user certificate for authentication**: Select whether you want Endpoint Management to share the authentication certificate with Secure Hub so that the Citrix Gateway handles client certificate authentication. The default is OFF.
   - **Credential Provider**: In the list, click the credential provider to use. For more information, see Credential providers.

4. Click **Save**.

### Add a Citrix Gateway instance

After you save the authentication settings, you add a Citrix Gateway instance to Endpoint Management.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page opens.
2. Under **Server**, click **NetScaler Gateway**. The **NetScaler Gateway** page appears.
3. Click **Add**. The **Add New NetScaler Gateway** page appears.
4. Configure these settings:

- **Name**: Type a name for the Citrix Gateway instance.
- **Alias**: Optionally include an alias name for the Citrix Gateway.
- **External URL**: Type the publicly accessible URL for Citrix Gateway. For example, https://receiver.com.
- **Logon Type**: Choose a logon type. Types include **Domain only**, **Security token only**, **Domain and security token**, **Certificate**, **Certificate and domain**, and **Certificate and security token**. The default setting for the **Password Required** field changes based on the **Logon Type** you select. The default is **Domain only**.

If you have multiple domains, use **Certificate and domain**. For more information about configuring multiple-domain authentication with Citrix Endpoint Management and Citrix Gateway, see Configure authentication for multiple domains.

If you use **Certificate and security token**, some additional configuration is required on Citrix Gateway to support Secure Hub. For information, see Configuring Endpoint Management for Certificate and Security Token Authentication.

For more information, see Authentication in the Deployment Handbook.

- **Password Required**: Select whether you want to require password authentication. The default varies based on the **Logon Type** chosen.
- **Set as Default**: Select whether to use this Citrix Gateway as the default. The default is **OFF**.
- **Export Configuration Script**: Click the button to export a configuration bundle that you upload to Citrix Gateway to configure it with Endpoint Management settings. For information, see “Configure an on-premises Citrix Gateway for use with Endpoint Management” after these steps.
5. Click **Save**.

The new Citrix Gateway is added and appears in the table. To edit or delete an instance, click the name in the list.

### Configure Citrix Gateway for use with Endpoint Management

To configure an on-premises Citrix Gateway for use with Endpoint Management, you perform the following general steps, detailed in this article:

1. Download a script and related files from Endpoint Management server. See the readme file provided with the script for the latest detailed instructions.
2. Verify that your environment meets the prerequisites.
3. Update the script for your environment.
4. Run the script on Citrix Gateway.
5. Test the configuration.

The script configures these Citrix Gateway settings required by Endpoint Management:

- Citrix Gateway virtual servers needed for MDM and MAM
- Session policies for the Citrix Gateway virtual servers
- Endpoint Management server details
- Authentication Policies and Actions for the NSG virtual server. The script describes the LDAP configuration settings.
- Traffic actions and policies for the proxy server
- Clientless access profile
- Static local DNS record on Citrix Gateway
- Other bindings: Service policy, CA certificate

The script doesn’t handle the following configuration:

- Exchange load balancing
- Citrix Files load balancing
- ICA Proxy configuration
- SSL Offload

### To download, update, and run the script

1. If you’re adding a Citrix Gateway, click **Export Configuration Script** on the **Add New NetScaler Gateway** page.
Or, if you add a Citrix Gateway instance and click **Save** before you export the script: Return to **Settings > NetScaler Gateway**, select the Citrix Gateway, click **Export Configuration Script**, and then click **Download**.

After you click **Export Configuration Script**, Endpoint Management creates a .tar.gz script bundle. The script bundle includes:

- Readme file with detailed instructions
- Script that contains the Citrix Gateway CLI commands used to configure the required components in Citrix Gateway
- Public Root CA certificate and the Intermediate CA certificate of Endpoint Management server (these certificates, for SSL offload, are not needed for the current release)
- Script that contains the Citrix Gateway CLI commands used to remove the Citrix Gateway configuration
2. Edit the script (NSGConfigBundle_CREATESCRIPT.txt) to replace all placeholders with details from your environment.

3. Run your edited script in the Citrix Gateway bash shell, as described in the readme file included in the script bundle. For example:

   ```bash
   /netscaler/nscli -U :<NetScaler Management Username>:<NetScaler Management Password> batch -f "/var/NSGConfigBundle_CREATESCRIPT.txt"
   ``

When the script completes, the following lines appear.

   ```bash
   exec: save ns config
   Done
   Done
   root@ns# 
   ```

**Test the configuration**

1. Validate that the Citrix Gateway Virtual Server shows a state of **UP**.
2. Validate that the Proxy Load Balancing Virtual Server shows a state of **UP**.

3. Open a web browser, connect to the Citrix Gateway URL, and attempt to authenticate. If the authentication fails, this message appears: HTTP Status 404 - Not Found

4. Enroll a device and ensure it gets both MDM and MAM enrollment.

**Configure authentication for multiple domains**

If you have multiple Endpoint Management instances, such as for test, development, and production environments, you configure Citrix Gateway for the additional environments manually. (You can use the NetScaler for XenMobile wizard only one time.)
Citrix Endpoint Management

Citrix Gateway configuration

To configure Citrix Gateway authentication policies and a session policy for a multi-domain environment:

1. In the Citrix Gateway configuration utility, on the Configuration tab, expand NetScaler Gateway > Policies > Authentication.
2. In the navigation pane, click LDAP.
3. Click to edit the LDAP profile. Change the Server Logon Name Attribute to userPrincipalName or the attribute you want to use for searches. Make a note of the attribute that you specify. You must provide it when configuring LDAP settings in the Endpoint Management console.

4. Repeat those steps for each LDAP policy. A separate LDAP policy is required for each domain.
5. In the session policy bound to the Citrix Gateway virtual server, navigate to Edit session profile > Published Applications. Make sure that Single Sign-On Domain is blank.

Endpoint Management configuration

To configure Endpoint Management LDAP for a multi-domain environment:

1. In the Endpoint Management console, go to Settings > LDAP and add or edit a directory.
2. Provide the information.

- In **Domain Alias**, specify each domain to use for user authentication. Separate the domains with a comma and don’t use spaces between the domains. For example: domain1.com, domain2.com, domain3.com

- Ensure that the **User search by** field matches the **Server Logon Name Attribute** specified in the Citrix Gateway LDAP policy.

---

**Domain or domain plus security token authentication**

October 26, 2018

Endpoint Management supports domain-based authentication against one or more directories that are compliant with the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP). You can configure a connection in Endpoint Management to one or more directories and then use the LDAP configuration to import groups, user accounts, and related properties.

LDAP is an open-source, vendor-neutral application protocol for accessing and maintaining distributed directory information services over an Internet Protocol (IP) network. Directory information services are used to share information about users, systems, networks, services, and applications available throughout the network.

A common usage of LDAP is to provide single sign-on (SSO) for users, where a single password (per user) is shared among multiple services. Single sign-on enables a user to log on one time to a company website, for authenticated access to the corporate intranet.

A client starts an LDAP session by connecting to an LDAP server, known as a Directory System Agent (DSA). The client then sends an operation request to the server, and the server responds with the appropriate authentication.
**Important:**
Endpoint Management doesn’t support changing the authentication mode from domain authentication to a different authentication mode after users enroll devices in Endpoint Management.

**To add LDAP connections in Endpoint Management**

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Under **Server**, click **LDAP**. The **LDAP** page appears. You can add, edit, or delete LDAP-compliant directories, as described in this article.

![Add LDAP connection](image)

**To add an LDAP-compliant directory**

1. On the **LDAP** page, click **Add**. The **Add LDAP** page appears.
2. Configure these settings:

- **Directory type**: In the list, click the appropriate directory type. The default is Microsoft Active Directory.
- **Primary server**: Type the primary server used for LDAP; you can enter either the IP address or the fully qualified domain name (FQDN).
- **Secondary server**: Optionally, if a secondary server has been configured, enter the IP address or FQDN for the secondary server. This server is a failover server used if the primary server cannot be reached.
- **Port**: Type the port number used by the LDAP server. By default, the port number is set to 389 for unsecured LDAP connections. Use port number 636 for secure LDAP connections, use 3268 for Microsoft unsecure LDAP connections, or 3269 for Microsoft secure LDAP con-
Citrix Endpoint Management

- **Domain name:** Type the domain name.
- **User base DN:** Type the location of users in Active Directory through a unique identifier. Syntax examples include: `ou=users, dc=example, or dc=com`.
- **Group base DN:** Type the location of groups in Active Directory. For example, `cn=users, dc=domain, dc=net` where `cn=users` represents the container name of the groups and `dc` represents the domain component of Active Directory.
- **User ID:** Type the user ID associated with the Active Directory account.
- **Password:** Type the password associated with the user.
- **Domain alias:** Type an alias for the domain name.
- **Endpoint Management Lockout Limit:** Type a number between 0 and 999 for the number of failed logon attempts. A value of 0 means that Endpoint Management never locks out the user based on failed logon attempts.
- **Endpoint Management Lockout Time:** Type a number between 0 and 99999 representing the number of minutes a user must wait after exceeding the lockout limit. A value of 0 means that the user isn’t forced to wait after a lockout.
- **Global Catalog TCP Port:** Type the TCP port number for the Global Catalog server. By default, the TCP port number is set to 3268; for SSL connections, use port number 3269.
- **Global Catalog Root Context:** Optionally, type the Global Root Context value used to enable a global catalog search in Active Directory. This search is in addition to the standard LDAP search, in any domain without the need to specify the actual domain name.
- **User search by:** In the list, click either `userPrincipalName`, or `sAMAccountName`. The default is `userPrincipalName`.
- **Use secure connection:** Select whether to use secure connections. The default is **NO**.

3. Click **Save**.

To edit an LDAP-compliant directory

1. In the **LDAP** table, select the directory to edit.

When you select the check box next to a directory, the options menu appears above the LDAP list. Click anywhere else in the list and the options menu appears on the right side of the listing.

2. Click **Edit**. The **Edit LDAP** page appears.
3. Change the following information as appropriate:

- **Directory type**: In the list, click the appropriate directory type.
- **Primary server**: Type the primary server used for LDAP; you can enter either the IP address or the fully qualified domain name (FQDN).
- **Secondary server**: Optionally, type the IP address or FQDN for the secondary server (if one has been configured).
- **Port**: Type the port number used by the LDAP server. By default, the port number is set to 389 for unsecured LDAP connections. Use port number 636 for secure LDAP connections, use 3268 for Microsoft unsecure LDAP connections, or 3269 for Microsoft secure LDAP connections.
- **Domain name**: You cannot change this field.
- **User base DN**: Type the location of users in Active Directory through a unique identifier. Syntax examples include: ou=users, dc=example, or ou=example, dc=com.
- **Group base DN**: Type the group base DN group name specified as cn=groupname. For example, cn=users, dc=servername, dc=net where cn=users is the group name. DN and servername represent the name of the server running Active Directory.
- **UserID**: Type the user ID associated with the Active Directory account.
- **Password**: Type the password associated with the user.
- **Domain alias**: Type an alias for the domain name.
- **Endpoint Management Lockout Limit**: Type a number between 0 and 999 for the number of failed logon attempts. A value of 0 means that Endpoint Management never locks out the user based on failed logon attempts.
- **Endpoint Management Lockout Time**: Type a number between 0 and 99999 representing the number of minutes a user must wait after exceeding the lockout limit. A value of 0
means that the user isn’t forced to wait after a lockout.

- **Global Catalog TCP Port**: Type the TCP port number for the Global Catalog server. By default, the TCP port number is set to 3268; for SSL connections, use port number 3269.
- **Global Catalog Root Context**: Optionally, type the Global Root Context value used to enable a global catalog search in Active Directory. This search is in addition to the standard LDAP search, in any domain without the need to specify the actual domain name.
- **User search by**: In the list, click either `userPrincipalName`, or `sAMAccountName`.
- **Use secure connection**: Select whether to use secure connections.

4. Click **Save** to save your changes or **Cancel** to leave the property unchanged.

### To delete an LDAP-compliant directory

1. In the **LDAP** table, select the directory you want to delete.
   
   You can select more than one property to delete by selecting the check box next to each property.

2. Click **Delete**. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** again.

### Configure domain plus security token authentication

You can configure Endpoint Management to require users to authenticate with their LDAP credentials plus a one-time password, using the RADIUS protocol.

For optimal usability, you can combine this configuration with Citrix PIN and Active Directory password caching. With that configuration, users don’t have to enter their LDAP user names and passwords repeatedly. Users enter user names and passwords for enrollment, password expiration, and account lockout.

### Configure LDAP settings

Use of LDAP for authentication requires that you install an SSL certificate from a Certificate Authority on Endpoint Management. For information, see [Uploading certificates in Endpoint Management](#).

1. In **Settings**, click **LDAP**.

2. Select **Microsoft Active Directory** and then click **Edit**.
3. Verify that the Port is 636, which is for secure LDAP connections, or 3269 for Microsoft secure LDAP connections.

4. Change **Use secure connection** to **Yes**.

---

**Configure Citrix Gateway settings**

The following steps assume that you already have added a Citrix Gateway instance to Endpoint Management. To add a Citrix Gateway instance, see [Add a Citrix Gateway instance](#).

1. In **Settings**, click **NetScaler Gateway**.
2. Select the **NetScaler Gateway** and then click **Edit**.
3. From **Logon Type**, select **Domain and security token**.
Enable Citrix PIN and user password caching

To enable Citrix PIN and user password caching, go to Settings > Client Properties and select these check boxes: Enable Citrix PIN Authentication and Enable User Password Caching. For more information, see Client properties.

Configure Citrix Gateway for domain and security token authentication

Configure Citrix Gateway session profiles and policies for your virtual servers used with Endpoint Management. For information, see the Citrix Gateway documentation.

Client certificate or certificate plus domain authentication

October 26, 2018

The default configuration for Endpoint Management is user name and password authentication. To add another layer of security for enrollment and access to Endpoint Management environment, consider using certificate-based authentication. In the Endpoint Management environment, this configuration is the best combination of security and user experience. Certificate plus domain authentication has the best SSO possibilities coupled with security provided by two-factor authentication at Citrix Gateway.

For optimal usability, you can combine certificate plus domain authentication with Citrix PIN and Active Directory password caching. As a result, users don’t have to enter their LDAP user names and
Citrix Endpoint Management

Passwords are repeatedly entered. Users enter user names and passwords for enrollment, password expiration, and account lockout.

Important:

Endpoint Management doesn’t support changing the authentication mode from domain authentication to some other authentication mode after users enroll devices in Endpoint Management.

If you don’t allow LDAP and use smart cards or similar methods, configuring certificates allows you to represent a smart card to Endpoint Management. Users then enroll using a unique PIN that Endpoint Management generates for them. After a user has access, Endpoint Management then creates and deploys the certificate used to authenticate to the Endpoint Management environment.

You can use the NetScaler for XenMobile wizard to perform the configuration required for Endpoint Management when using Citrix Gateway certificate-only authentication or certificate plus domain authentication. You can run the NetScaler for XenMobile wizard one time only.

In highly secure environments, usage of LDAP credentials outside of an organization in public or insecure networks is considered a prime security threat for the organization. For highly secure environments, two-factor authentication that uses a client certificate and a security token is an option. For information, see Configuring Endpoint Management for Certificate and Security Token Authentication.

Client certificate authentication is available for Endpoint Management MAM mode (MAM-only) and ENT mode (when users enroll into MDM). Client certificate authentication isn’t available for Endpoint Management ENT mode when users enroll into legacy MAM mode. To use client certificate authentication for Endpoint Management ENT and MAM modes, you must configure the Microsoft server, the Endpoint Management server, and then Citrix Gateway. Follow these general steps, as described in this article.

On the Microsoft server:

1. Add a certificate snap-in to the Microsoft Management Console.
2. Add the template to Certificate Authority (CA).
3. Create a PFX certificate from the CA server.

On the Endpoint Management server:

1. Upload the certificate to Endpoint Management.
2. Create the PKI entity for certificate-based authentication.
3. Configure credentials providers.
4. Configure Citrix Gateway to deliver a user certificate for authentication.

On Citrix Gateway, configure as described in the Citrix Gateway documentation.
Prerequisites

• When you create a Microsoft Certificate Services Entity template, avoid possible authentication issues with enrolled devices by excluding special characters. For example, don’t use these characters in the template name: : ! $ ()## % + * ~ ? | { } []

• To configure Certificate-based Authentication for Exchange ActiveSync, see this Microsoft blog.

• If you use private server certificates to secure the ActiveSync traffic to the Exchange Server, ensure that the mobile devices have all of the Root/Intermediate certificates. Otherwise, certificate-based authentication fails during the mailbox setup in Secure Mail. In the Exchange IIS Console, you must:
  – Add a website for Endpoint Management use with Exchange and bind the web server certificate.
  – Use port 9443.
  – For that website, you must add two applications, one for “Microsoft-Server-ActiveSync” and one for “EWS”. For both of those applications, under SSL Settings, select Require SSL.

Add a certificate snap-in to the Microsoft Management Console

1. Open the console and then click Add/Remove Snap-ins.

2. Add the following snap-ins:
   • Certificate Templates
   • Certificates (Local Computer)
   • Certificates - Current User
   • Certificate Authority (Local)
3. Expand **Certificate Templates**.

4. Select the **User** template and **Duplicate Template**.
5. Provide the Template display name.

Important:

Select the Publish certificate in Active Directory check box only if necessary. If this option is selected, all user client certificates are created in Active Directory, which might clutter your Active Directory database.


7. Under Security, click Add and then select the AD user account that Endpoint Management will use to generate certificates. Important: Add only the service account user here. Add the Enroll permission only to this AD user account.

As described later in this article, you will create a user .pfx certificate using the service account. For information, see Creating a PFX certificate from the CA server.
8. Under **Cryptography**, ensure that you provide the key size. You later enter the key size during Endpoint Management configuration.
9. Under **Subject Name**, select **Supply in the request**. Apply the changes and then save.

**Adding the template to Certificate Authority**

1. Go to **Certificate Authority** and select **Certificate Templates**.
2. Right-click in the right pane and then select **New > Certificate Template to Issue**.

3. Select the template you created in the previous step and then click **OK** to add it into the **Certificate Authority**.
Creating a PFX certificate from the CA server

1. Create a user .pfx cert using the service account with which you logged in. The .pfx is uploaded to Endpoint Management, which then requests a user certificate on behalf of the users who enroll their devices.

2. Under Current User, expand Certificates.

3. Right-click in the right pane and then click Request New Certificate.

5. Select **Active Directory Enrollment Policy** and then click **Next**.
6. Select the **User** template and then click **Enroll**.
7. Export the .pfx file that you created in the previous step.

8. Click **Yes, export the private key**.
9. Select Include all certificates in the certification path if possible and select the Export all extended properties check box.
10. Set a password to use when uploading this certificate into Endpoint Management.
11. Save the certificate onto your hard drive.

**Uploading the certificate to Endpoint Management**

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** screen appears.

2. Click **Certificates** and then click **Import**.

3. Enter the following parameters:
   
   - **Import**: Keystore
   - **Keystore type**: PKCS #12
   - **Use as**: Server
   - **Keystore file**: Click Browse to select the .pfx certificate you just created.
   - **Password**: Enter the password you created for this certificate.
4. Click **Import**.

5. Verify that the certificate installed correctly. A correctly installed certificate displays as a User certificate.

**Creating the PKI entity for certificate-based authentication**

1. In **Settings**, go to **More > Certificate Management > PKI Entities**.

2. Click **Add** and then click **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity**. The **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: General Information** screen appears.

3. Enter the following parameters:
   - **Name**: Type any name
   - **Web enrollment service root URL**: `https://RootCA-URL/certsrv/` (Be sure to add the last slash, /, in the URL path.)
   - **certnew.cer page name**: certnew.cer (default value)
   - **certfnsh.asp**: certfnsh.asp (default value)
   - **Authentication type**: Client certificate
SSL client certificate: Select the User Certificate to be used to issue the Endpoint Management client certificate.

4. Under Templates, add the template that you created when configuring the Microsoft certificate. Don’t add spaces.

5. Skip HTTP Parameters and then click CA Certificates.

6. Select the root CA name that corresponds to your environment. This root CA is part of the chain imported from the Endpoint Management client certificate.

7. Click Save.

Configuring credentials providers

1. In Settings, go to More > Certificate Management > Credential Providers.

2. Click Add.

3. Under General, enter the following parameters:
   - Name: Type any name.
• **Description:** Type any description.
• **Issuing entity:** Select the PKI entity created earlier.
• **Issuing method:** SIGN
• **Templates:** Select the template added under the PKI entity.

4. Click **Certificate Signing Request** and then enter the following parameters:
   - **Key algorithm:** RSA
   - **Key size:** 2048
   - **Signature algorithm:** SHA1withRSA
   - **Subject name:** cn=$user.username

   For **Subject Alternative Names**, click **Add** and then enter the following parameters:
   - **Type:** User Principal name
   - **Value:** $user.userprincipalname

5. Click **Distribution** and enter the following parameters:
   - **Issuing CA certificate:** Select the Issuing CA that signed the Endpoint Management Client Certificate.
   - **Select distribution mode:** Select **Prefer centralized: Server-side key generation.**
6. For the next two sections, **Revocation Endpoint Management** and **Revocation PKI**, set the parameters as required. In this example, both options are skipped.

7. Click **Renewal**.

8. For **Renew certificates when they expire**, select **ON**.

9. Leave all other settings as default or change them as required.

10. Click **Save**.

**Configuring Secure Mail to use certificate-based authentication**

When you add Secure Mail to Endpoint Management, be sure to configure the Exchange settings under **App Settings**.
Configuring Citrix Gateway certificate delivery in Endpoint Management

1. Log on to the Endpoint Management console and click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The Settings screen appears.

2. Under Server, click NetScaler Gateway.

3. If Citrix Gateway isn’t already added, click Add and specify the settings:
   - External URL: https://YourCitrixGatewayURL
   - Logon Type: Certificate
   - Password Required: OFF
   - Set as Default: ON

4. For Deliver user certificate for authentication, select On.

5. For Credential Provider, select a provider and then click Save.

6. To use sAMAccount attributes in the user certificates as an alternative to User Principal Name (UPN), configure the LDAP connector in Endpoint Management as follows: Go to Settings > LDAP, select the directory and click Edit, and select sAMAccountName in User search by.
Enable Citrix PIN and user password caching

To enable Citrix PIN and user password caching, go to Settings > Client Properties and select these checkboxes: Enable Citrix PIN Authentication and Enable User Password Caching. For more information, see Client properties.

Creating an Enterprise Hub policy for Windows Phone

For Windows Phone devices, you must create an Enterprise Hub device policy to deliver the AETX file and the Secure Hub client.

**Note:**

Ensure that the AETX and Secure Hub files both use the:

- Same enterprise certificate from the certificate provider.
- Same Publisher ID from the Windows Store developer account.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click Configure > Device Policies.
2. Click Add and then, under More > Endpoint Management Agent, click Enterprise Hub.
3. After naming the policy, be sure to select the correct .AETX file and signed Secure Hub app for the Enterprise Hub.
4. Assign the policy to delivery groups and save it.

**Troubleshooting your client certificate configuration**

After a successful configuration of the preceding configuration plus the Citrix Gateway configuration, the user workflow is as follows:

1. Users enroll their mobile device.
2. Endpoint Management prompts users to create a Citrix PIN.
3. Users are then redirected to the app store.
4. When users start Secure Mail, Endpoint Management doesn’t prompt them for user credentials for mailbox configuration. Instead, Secure Mail requests the client certificate from Secure Hub and submits it to Microsoft Exchange Server for authentication. If Endpoint Management prompts for credentials when users start Secure Mail, check your configuration.

If users can download and install Secure Mail, but during the mailbox configuration Secure Mail fails to finish the configuration:

1. If Microsoft Exchange Server ActiveSync uses private SSL server certificates to secure the traffic, verify that the Root/Intermediate certificates installed on the mobile device.
2. Verify that the authentication type selected for ActiveSync is **Require client certificates**.
3. On Microsoft Exchange Server, check the **Microsoft-Server-ActiveSync** site to verify that client certificate mapping authentication is enabled. By default, client certificate mapping authentication is disabled. The option is under **Configuration Editor > Security > Authentication**.
After selecting **True**, be sure to click **Apply** for the changes to take effect.

4. Check the Citrix Gateway settings in the Endpoint Management console: Ensure that **Deliver user certificate for authentication** is **ON** and that **Credential provider** has the correct profile selected.

**To determine if the client certificate was delivered to a mobile device**

1. In the Endpoint Management console, go to **Manage > Devices** and select the device.
2. Click **Edit** or **Show More**.
3. Go to the **Delivery Groups** section, and search for this entry:
   
   **NetScaler Gateway Credentials: Requested credential, CertId=**

**To validate whether client certificate negotiation is enabled**

1. Run this **netsh** command to show the SSL Certificate configuration that is bound on the IIS website:
   
   ```
   netsh http show sslcert
   ```
If the value for **Negotiate Client Certificate** is **Disabled**, run the following command to enable it:

```
netsh http delete sslcert ipport=0.0.0.0:443
netsh http add sslcert ipport=0.0.0.0:443 certhash=cert_hash appid={app_id} certstorename=store_name verifyclientcertrevocation=Enable VerifyRevocationWithCachedClientCertOnly=Disable UsageCheck=Enable clientcertnegotiation=Enable
```

For example:

```
netsh http add sslcert ipport=0.0.0.0:443 certhash=609da5df2880d1f5ad7deb714fd26c54 appid={4dc3e181-e14b-4ad2-b022-59f669b0914} certstorename=ExampleCertStoreName verifyclientcertrevocation=Enable VerifyRevocationWithCachedClientCertOnly=Disable UsageCheck=Enable clientcertnegotiation=Enable
```

If you cannot deliver Root/Intermediate certificates to a Windows Phone 8.1 device through Endpoint Management:

- Send Root/Intermediate certificates (.cer) files through email to the Windows Phone 8.1 device and install them directly.

If Secure Mail doesn't install successfully on Windows Phone 8.1, verify the following:

- The Application Enrollment Token (.AETX file) is delivered through Endpoint Management using the Enterprise Hub device policy.
- The Application Enrollment Token was created using the same Enterprise Certificate from the certificate provider used to wrap Secure Mail and sign Secure Hub apps.
- The same Publisher ID is used to sign and wrap Secure Hub, Secure Mail, and the Application Enrollment Token.

## PKI entities

October 25, 2018

An Endpoint Management Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) entity configuration represents a component performing actual PKI operations (issuance, revocation, and status information). These components are either internal or external to Endpoint Management. Internal components are referred to as discretionary. External components are part of your corporate infrastructure.

Endpoint Management supports the following types of PKI entities:

- Generic PKIs (GPKIs)

Endpoint Management GPKI support includes Symantec Managed PKI.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Microsoft Certificate Services
- Discretionary Certificate Authorities (CAs)

Endpoint Management supports the following CA servers:

- Windows Server 2008 R2
- Windows Server 2012
- Windows Server 2012 R2

Common PKI concepts

Regardless of its type, every PKI entity has a subset of the following capabilities:

- **Sign**: Issuing a new certificate, based on a Certificate Signing Request (CSR).
- **Fetch**: Recovering an existing certificate and key pair.
- **Revoke**: Revoking a client certificate.

About CA Certificates

When you configure a PKI entity, indicate to Endpoint Management which CA certificate is the signer of certificates issued by (or recovered from) that entity. That PKI entity can return (fetched or newly signed) certificates signed by any number of different CAs.

Provide the certificate of each of these CAs as part of the PKI entity configuration. To do so, upload the certificates to Endpoint Management and then reference them in the PKI entity. For discretionary CAs, the certificate is implicitly the signing CA certificate. For external entities, you must specify the certificate manually.

**Important:**

When you create a Microsoft Certificate Services Entity template, avoid possible authentication issues with enrolled devices: Don’t use special characters in the template name. For example, don’t use: ! : $ ( )## % + * ~ ? | { } [ ]

Generic PKI

The Generic PKI (GPKI) protocol is a proprietary Endpoint Management protocol running over a SOAP Web Service layer for purposes of uniform interfacing with various PKI solutions. The GPKI protocol defines the following three fundamental PKI operations:

- **Sign**: The adapter can take CSRs, transmit them to the PKI, and return newly signed certificates.
- **Fetch**: The adapter can retrieve (recover) existing certificates and key pairs (depending on input parameters) from the PKI.

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
- **Revoke**: The adapter can cause the PKI to revoke a given certificate.

The receiving end of the GPKI protocol is the GPKI adapter. The adapter translates the fundamental operations to the specific type of PKI for which it was built. For example, there are GPKI adapters for RSA and Entrust.

The GPKI adapter, as a SOAP Web Services endpoint, publishes a self-describing Web Services Description Language (WSDL) definition. Creating a GPKI PKI entity amounts to providing Endpoint Management with that WSDL definition, either through a URL or by uploading the file itself.

Support for each of the PKI operations in an adapter is optional. If an adapter supports a given operation, the adapter is said to have the corresponding capability (sign, fetch, or revoke). Each of these capabilities may be associated with a set of user parameters.

User parameters are parameters that the GPKI adapter defines for a specific operation and for which you must provide values to Endpoint Management. Endpoint Management parses the WSDL file to determine which operations the adapter has and which parameters the adapter requires for each of those operations. If you choose, use SSL client authentication to secure the connection between Endpoint Management and the GPKI adapter.

### To add a generic PKI

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click **Settings > PKI Entities**.

2. On the **PKI Entities** page, click **Add**.

   A menu of PKI entity types appears.

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
3. Click **Generic PKI Entity**.

The Generic PKI Entity: General Information page appears.

4. On the **Generic PKI Entity: General Information** page, do the following:
   - **Name**: Type a descriptive name for the PKI entity.
   - **WSDL URL**: Type the location of the WSDL describing the adapter.
   - **Authentication type**: Click the authentication method you want to use.
     - **None**
     - **HTTP Basic**: Provide the user name and password required to connect to the adapter.
     - **Client certificate**: Select the correct SSL client certificate.

5. Click **Next**.

The Generic PKI Entity: Adapter Capabilities page appears.
6. On the **Generic PKI Entity: Adapter Capabilities** page, review the capabilities and parameters associated with your adapter and then click **Next**.

The **Generic PKI Entity: Issuing CA Certificates** page appears.

7. On the Generic PKI Entity: Issuing CA Certificates page, select the certificates you want to use for the entity.

Although entities may return certificates signed by different CAs, the same CA must sign all certificates obtained through a given certificate provider. Thus, when configuring the **Credential Provider** setting, on the **Distribution** page, select one of the certificates configured here.

8. Click **Save**.

The entity appears on the PKI Entities table.

**Symantec Managed PKI**

Endpoint Management GPKI support includes Symantec Managed PKI, also referred to as MPKI. This section describes how to set up Windows Server and Endpoint Management for Symantec Managed PKI.

**Prerequisites**

- Access to Symantec Managed PKI Infrastructure
- Windows Server 2012 R2 server with the following components installed, as described in this article:
  - Java
  - Apache Tomcat
  - Symantec PKI Client
  - Portecle
- Access to the Endpoint Management downloads site

**Install Java on Windows Server**

Download Java from [https://java.com/en/download/faq/java_win64bit.xml](https://java.com/en/download/faq/java_win64bit.xml) and then install it. In the Security Warning dialog box, click **Run**.

**Install Apache Tomcat on Windows Server**

Download the Apache Tomcat 32-bit/64-bit Windows Service Installer from [https://tomcat.apache.org/download-80.cgi](https://tomcat.apache.org/download-80.cgi) and then install it. In the Security Warning dialog box, click **Run**. Complete the
Apache Tomcat setup, using the following examples as a guide.
Next, go to Windows Services and change **Startup Type** from **Manual** to **Automatic**.
Install Symantec PKI Client on Windows Server

Download the installer from the PKI Manager console. If you don’t have access to that console, download the installer from the Symantec support page How to download Symantec PKI Client. Unzip and run the installer.

In the Security Warning dialog box, be sure to click Run. Follow the instructions in the installer to complete the setup. When the installer completes, it prompts you to restart.
Install Portecle on Windows Server

Download the installer from https://sourceforge.net/projects/portecleinstall/files/ and then unzip and run the installer.

Generate the registration authority (RA) certificate for Symantec Managed PKI

The keystore for client certificate authentication is contained in a registration authority (RA) certificate, named RA.jks. The following steps describe how to generate that certificate by using Portecle. You can also generate the RA certificate by using the Java CLI.

This article also describes how to upload the RA and public certificates.

1. In Portecle, go to Tools > Generate Key Pair, provide the required information, and generate the key pair.

2. Right-click the key pair and then click Generate Certification Request.
3. Copy the CSR.

4. In Symantec PKI Manager, generate an RA certificate: Click **Settings**, click **Get a RA Certificate**, paste the CSR, and then click **Continue**.
5. Click **Download** to download the generated RA certificate.

   ![Symantec PKI Certificate Service](image)

   **Your RA certificate is ready**
   
   Your RA certificate must be installed on the server where your PKI Enterprise Gateway or PKI Web Services is installed.

   **Install your RA certificate**
   
   1. Download your RA certificate.
   
   Issued to:
   Citrix

   Expiration date:
   Jul 2, 2014

   Filo format:
   PKCS #7

   ![Download](image)

   2. Forward the RA certificate to your server administrator. Your administrator must follow the instructions in the installation guide for your service. You can download the appropriate installation guide from the resources page by clicking on the icon on the dashboard.

6. In Portecle, import the RA certificate: Right-click the key pair and then click **Import CA Reply**.
7. In Symantec PKI Manager: Go to **Resources** > **Web Services** and then download the CA certificates.
8. In Portecle, import the RA intermediate and root certificates into the keystore: Go to **Tools > Import Trusted Certificates.**
9. After importing the CAs, save the keystore as RA.jks under the C:\Symantec folder on the Windows server.
Configure Symantec PKI Adapter on Windows Server

1. Log in to Windows Server as an administrator.

2. Upload the RA.jks file that you generated in the preceding section. Also upload the public certificates (cacerts.jks) for your Symantec MPKI server.

3. From the Citrix XenMobile download page, expand Tools, and download the Symantec PKI Adapter file. The filename is Endpoint Management_Symantec_PKI_Adapter.zip. Unzip the file and copy these files to the Windows Server C: drive:

   • custom_gpki_adapter.properties
   • Symantec.war

4. Open custom_gpki_adapter.properties in Notepad and edit the following values:

   ```
   2
   3 # keystore for client-cert auth
   ```
Copy Symantec.war under the folder `<tomcat_dir>/webapps` and then start Tomcat.

6. Verify that the application deployed: Open a web browser and navigate to `https://localhost/Symantec`. (If you get a certificate error, consider connecting with http instead.)

7. Navigate to the folder `<tomcat_dir>/webapps/Symantec WEB-INF/classes` and edit `gpki_adapter.properties`. Modify the property `CustomProperties` to point it to the custom `gpki_adapter` file under the `C:\Symantec` folder:

```
CustomProperties=C:\\Symantec\\custom_gpki_adapter.properties
```

8. Restart Tomcat, navigate to `https://localhost/Symantec`, and then copy the endpoint address. In the next section, you paste that address when configuring the PKI adapter.

Configure Endpoint Management for Symantec Managed PKI

Complete the Windows Server setup before performing the following Endpoint Management configuration.

To import the Symantec CA certificates and configure the PKI Entity

1. Import the Symantec CA certificates that issue the end-user certificate: In the Endpoint Management console, go to Settings > Certificates and click Import.
2. Add and configure the PKI Entity: Go to Settings > PKI Entities, click Add, and then choose **Generic PKI Entity**. In WSDL URL, paste the endpoint address that you copied when configuring the PKI adapter in the previous section, and then append \?wsdl as shown below.

3. Click **Next**. Endpoint Management populates the parameter names from the WSDL.

4. Click **Next**, select the correct CA certificate, and then click **Save**.
5. On the **Settings > PKI Entities** page, verify that the **State** of the PKI Entity you added is **Valid**.

To create the credential provider for Symantec Managed PKI

1. In the Symantec PKI Manager console, copy the **Certificate Profile OID** from the Certificate Template.

2. In the Endpoint Management console, go to **Settings > Credential Providers**, click **Add**, and then configure the settings as follows.
   - **Name**: Type a unique name for the new provider configuration. This name is used to refer to the configuration in other parts of the Endpoint Management console.
• **Description:** Describe the credential provider. Although this field is optional, a description can be useful when you need details about the credential provider.

• **Issuing entity:** Choose the certificate issuing entity.

• **Issuing method:** Choose **Sign** as the method that the system uses to obtain client certificates from the configured entity.

• **certParams:** Add the following value: `commonName=${user.mail},otherNameUPN=${user.userprincipalname},mail=${user.mail}`

• **certificateProfileid:** Paste the Certificate Profile OID that you copied in Step 1.

3. Click **Next**. On each of the remaining pages (Certificate Signing Request through Renewal), accept the default settings. When you are finished, click **Save**.

**To test and troubleshoot the configuration**

1. Create a Credentials device policy: Go to **Configure > Device Policies**, click **Add**, start typing **Credentials**, and then click **Credentials**.

2. Specify a **Policy Name**.

3. Configure the platform settings as follows:

   • **Credential type:** Choose **Credential Provider**.

   • **Credential provider:** Choose the Symantec provider.
4. After you complete the platform settings, continue to the **Assignment** page, assign the policy to delivery groups, and click **Save**.

5. To check whether the policy deployed to the device, go to **Manage > Devices**, select the device, click **Edit**, and click **Assigned Policies**. The following example shows a successful policy deployment.

If the policy didn’t deploy, log in to the Windows Server and check if the WSDL is loading properly.
Microsoft Certificate Services

Endpoint Management interfaces with Microsoft Certificate Services through its web enrollment interface. Endpoint Management only supports the issuing of new certificates through that interface (the equivalent of the GPKI sign capability). If the Microsoft CA generates a Citrix Gateway user certificate, Citrix Gateway supports renewal and revocation for those certificates.

To create a Microsoft CA PKI entity in Endpoint Management, you must specify the base URL of the Certificate Services web interface. If you choose, use SSL client authentication to secure the connection between Endpoint Management and the Certificate Services web interface.

Add a Microsoft Certificate Services entity

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console and then click PKI Entities.

2. On the PKI Entities page, click Add.

   A menu of PKI entity types appears.

3. Click Microsoft Certificate Services Entity.

   The Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: General Information page appears.
4. On the **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: General Information** page, configure these settings:

- **Name**: Type a name for your new entity, which you use later to refer to that entity. Entity names must be unique.
- **Web enrollment service root URL**: Type the base URL of your Microsoft CA web enrollment service; for example, `https://192.0.2.13/certsrv/`. The URL may use plain HTTP or HTTP-over-SSL.
- **certnew.cer page name**: The name of the certnew.cer page. Use the default name unless you have renamed it for some reason.
- **certfnsh.asp**: The name of the certfnsh.asp page. Use the default name unless you have renamed it for some reason.
- **Authentication type**: Choose the authentication method you want to use.
  - **None**
  - **HTTP Basic**: Type the user name and password required to connect.
  - **Client certificate**: Choose the correct SSL client certificate.

5. Click **Test Connection** to ensure that the server is accessible. If it is not accessible, a message appears, stating that the connection failed. Check your configuration settings.

6. Click **Next**.

The **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: Templates** page appears. On this page, you specify the internal names of the templates your Microsoft CA supports. When creating credential providers, you select a template from the list defined here. Every credential provider using this entity uses exactly one such template.

For Microsoft Certificate Services templates requirements, see the Microsoft documentation for your Microsoft Server version. Endpoint Management doesn’t have requirements for the certificates it distributes other than the certificate formats noted in **Certificates**.

7. On the **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: Templates** page, click **Add**, type the name of the template and then click **Save**. Repeat this step for each template you want to add.

8. Click **Next**.

The **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: HTTP parameters** page appears. On this page, you specify custom parameters for Endpoint Management to add to the HTTP request to the Microsoft Web Enrollment interface. Custom parameters are useful only for customized scripts running on the CA.

9. On the **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: HTTP parameters** page, click **Add**, type the name and value of the HTTP parameters you want to add, and then click **Next**.

The **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: CA Certificates** page appears. On this page, you must inform Endpoint Management of the signers of the certificates that the system obtains
through this entity. When your CA certificate is renewed, update it in Endpoint Management. Endpoint Management applies the change to the entity transparently.

10. On the **Microsoft Certificate Services Entity: CA Certificates** page, select the certificates you want to use for this entity.

11. Click **Save**.

The entity appears on the PKI Entities table.

### Citrix Gateway Certificate Revocation List (CRL)

Endpoint Management supports Certificate Revocation List (CRL) only for a third-party Certificate Authority. If you have a Microsoft CA configured, Endpoint Management uses Citrix Gateway to manage revocation.

When you configure client certificate-based authentication, consider whether to configure the Citrix Gateway Certificate Revocation List (CRL) setting, **Enable CRL Auto Refresh**. This step ensures that the user of a device in MAM-only mode can’t authenticate using an existing certificate on the device.

Endpoint Management reissues a new certificate, because it doesn’t restrict a user from generating a user certificate after one is revoked. This setting increases the security of PKI entities when the CRL checks for expired PKI entities.

### Discretionary CAs

A discretionary CA is created when you provide Endpoint Management with a CA certificate and the associated private key. Endpoint Management handles certificate issuance, revocation, and status information internally, according to the parameters you specify.

When configuring a discretionary CA, you can activate Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) support for that CA. If, and only if you enable OCSP support, the CA adds the extension `id-pe-authorityInfoAccess` to the certificates that the CA issues. The extension points to the Endpoint Management internal OCSP Responder at the following location:

`https://<server>/<instance>/ocsp`

When configuring the OCSP service, specify an OCSP signing certificate for the discretionary entity in question. You can use the CA certificate itself as the signer. To avoid the unnecessary exposure of your CA private key (recommended): Create a delegate OCSP signing certificate, signed by the CA certificate, and include this extension: `id-kp-OCSPSigning extendedKeyUsage`.

The Endpoint Management OCSP responder service supports basic OCSP responses and the following hashing algorithms in requests:

- SHA-1
Citrix Endpoint Management

- SHA-224
- SHA-256
- SHA-384
- SHA-512

Responses are signed with SHA-256 and the signing certificate key algorithm (DSA, RSA, or ECDSA).

**Add discretionary CAs**

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console and then click **More > PKI Entities**.
2. On the **PKI Entities** page, click **Add**.
   
   A menu of PKI entity types appears.
3. Click **Discretionary CA**.
   
   The **Discretionary CA: General Information** page appears.
4. On the **Discretionary CA: General Information** page, do the following:
   - **Name**: Type a descriptive name for the discretionary CA.
   - **CA certificate to sign certificate requests**: Click a certificate for the discretionary CA to use to sign certificate requests.
     
     This list of certificates is generated from the CA certificates with private keys you uploaded at Endpoint Management at **Configure > Settings > Certificates**.
5. Click **Next**.
   
   The **Discretionary CA: Parameters** page appears.
6. On the **Discretionary CA: Parameters** page, do the following:
   - **Serial number generator**: The discretionary CA generates serial numbers for the certificates it issues. From this list, click **Sequential** or **Non-sequential** to determine how the numbers are generated.
   - **Next serial number**: Type a value to determine the next number issued.
   - **Certificate valid for**: Type the number of days the certificate is valid.
   - **Key usage**: Identify the purpose of the certificates issued by the discretionary CA by setting the appropriate keys to **On**. Once set, the CA is limited issuing certificates for those purposes.
   - **Extended key usage**: To add more parameters, click **Add**, type the key name and then click **Save**.
7. Click **Next**.

   The **Discretionary CA: Distribution** page appears.
8. On the **Discretionary CA: Distribution** page, select a distribution mode:

- **Centralized: server-side key generation.** Citrix recommends the centralized option. The private keys are generated and stored on the server and distributed to user devices.
- **Distributed: device-side key generation.** The private keys are generated on the user devices. This distributed mode uses SCEP and requires an RA encryption certificate with the **keyUsage keyEncryption** extension and an RA signing certificate with the **keyUsage digitalSignature** extension. The same certificate can be used for both encryption and signing.

9. Click **Next**.

   The **Discretionary CA: Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP)** page appears.

   On the **Discretionary CA: Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP)** page, do the following:

   - If you want to add an **AuthorityInfoAccess** (RFC2459) extension to the certificates signed by this CA, set **Enable OCSP support for this CA** to **On**. This extension points to the CA OCSP responder at `https://<server>/<instance>/ocsp`.
   - If you enabled OCSP support, select an OCSP signing CA certificate. This list of certificates is generated from the CA certificates you uploaded to Endpoint Management.

10. Click **Save**.

    The discretionary CA appears on the PKI Entities table.

---

**Credential providers**

October 25, 2018

Credential providers are the actual certificate configurations you use in the various parts of the Endpoint Management system. Credential providers define the sources, parameters, and life cycles of your certificates. Those operations occur whether the certificates are part of device configurations or are standalone (that is, pushed as is to the device).

Device enrollment constrains the certificate life cycle. That is, Endpoint Management does not issue certificates before enrollment, although Endpoint Management may issue some certificates as part of enrollment. In addition, certificates issued from the internal PKI within the context of one enrollment are revoked when the enrollment is revoked. After the management relationship terminates, no valid certificate remains.

You may use one credential provider configuration in multiple places, to the effect that one configuration may govern any number of certificates at the same time. The unity, then, is on the deployment resource and the deployment. For example, if Credential Provider P is deployed to device D as part of configuration C: The issuance settings for P determine the certificate that is deployed to D. Likewise,
the renewal settings for D apply when C is updated. And, the revocation settings for D also apply when C is deleted or when D is revoked.

According to those rules, the credential provider configuration in Endpoint Management determines the following:

- The source of certificates.
- The method in which certificates are obtained: Signing a new certificate or fetching (recovering) an existing certificate and key pair.
- The parameters for issuance or recovery. For example, Certificate Signing Request (CSR) parameters, such as key size, key algorithm, and certificate extensions.
- The manner in which certificates are delivered to the device.
- Revocation conditions. Although all certificates are revoked in Endpoint Management when the management relationship is severed, the configuration may specify an earlier revocation. For instance, the configuration can specify to revoke a certificate when the associated device configuration is deleted. In addition, under some conditions, the revocation of the associated certificate in Endpoint Management may be sent to the back-end public key infrastructure (PKI). That is, certificate revocation in Endpoint Management may cause certificate revocation on the PKI.
- Renewal settings. Certificates obtained through a given credential provider can automatically renew when they near expiration. Or, separately from that situation, notifications can be issued when that expiration approaches.

The availability of configuration options mainly depends on the type of PKI Entity and issuance method that you select for a credential provider.

**Methods of certificate issuance**

You can obtain a certificate, which is known as methods of issuance in two ways:

- **Sign:** With this method, the issuance involves creating a new private key, creating a CSR, and submitting the CSR to a Certificate Authority (CA) for signature. Endpoint Management supports the sign method for the three PKI entities (MS Certificate Services Entity, Generic PKI, and Discretionary CA).
- **Fetch:** With this method, the issuance, for the purposes of Endpoint Management, is a recovery of an existing key pair. Endpoint Management supports the fetch method only for Generic PKI.

A credential provider uses the sign or fetch method of issuance. The selected method affects the available configuration options. Notably, CSR configuration and distributed delivery are available only if the issuing method is sign. A fetched certificate is always sent to the device as a PKCS #12, the equivalent of centralized delivery mode for the sign method.
**Certificate Delivery**

Two modes of certificate delivery are available in Endpoint Management: centralized and distributed. Distributed mode uses Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) and is only available in situations in which the client supports the protocol (iOS only). Distributed mode is mandatory in some situations.

For a credential provider to support distributed (SCEP-assisted) delivery, a special configuration step is necessary: Setting up Registration Authority (RA) certificates. The RA certificates are required, because, if you use the SCEP protocol, Endpoint Management acts like a delegate (a registrar) to the actual certificate authority. Endpoint Management must prove to the client that it has the authority to act as such. That authority is established by uploading the previously mentioned certificates to Endpoint Management.

Two distinct certificate roles are required (although a single certificate can fulfill both requirements): RA signature and RA encryption. The constraints for these roles are as follows:

- The RA signing certificate must have the X.509 key usage digital signature.
- The RA encryption certificate must have the X.509 key usage key encipherment.

To configure the credential provider RA certificates, you upload the certificates to Endpoint Management and then link to them in the credential provider.

A credential provider is considered to support distributed delivery only if the provider has a certificate configured for certificate roles. You can configure each credential provider to either prefer centralized mode, to prefer distributed mode, or to require distributed mode. The actual result depends on the context: If the context does not support distributed mode, but the credential provider requires this mode, deployment fails. Likewise, if the context requires distributed mode, but the credential provider does not support distributed mode, deployment fails. In all other cases, the preferred setting is honored.

The following table shows SCEP distribution throughout Endpoint Management:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Context</th>
<th>SCEP supported</th>
<th>SCEP required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iOS Profile Service</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iOS mobile device management enrollment</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iOS configuration profiles</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHTP enrollment</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHTP configuration</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Phone and Tablet enrollment</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Certificate Revocation

There are three types of revocation.

- **Internal revocation**: Internal revocation affects the certificate status as maintained by Endpoint Management. Endpoint Management considers this status when evaluating a presented certificate, or when providing OCSP status information for a certificate. The credential provider configuration determines how this status is affected under various conditions. For instance, the credential provider might specify to flag certificates as revoked when the certificates are deleted from the device.

- **Externally propagated revocation**: Also known as Revocation Endpoint Management, this type of revocation applies to certificates obtained from an external PKI. The certificate is revoked on the PKI when Endpoint Management internally revokes the certificate, under the conditions defined by the credential provider configuration. The call to perform the revocation requires a revoke-capable General PKI (GPKI) entity.

- **Externally induced revocation**: Also known as Revocation PKI, this type of revocation also only applies to certificates obtained from an external PKI. Whenever Endpoint Management evaluates a given certificate status, Endpoint Management queries the PKI as to that status. If the certificate is revoked, Endpoint Management internally revokes the certificate. This mechanism uses the OCSP protocol.

These three types are not exclusive, but rather apply together. An external revocation or independent finding can cause an internal revocation. An internal revocation potentially affects an external revocation.

Certificate Renewal

A certificate renewal is the combination of a revocation of the existing certificate and an issuance of another certificate.

Endpoint Management first attempts to obtain the new certificate before revoking the previous certificate, to avoid discontinuation of service when issuance fails. For distributed (SCEP-supported) delivery, the revocation also only happens after the certificate has been successfully installed on the device.
device. Otherwise, the revocation occurs before the new certificate is sent to the device. That revocation is independent of the success or failure of certificate installation.

The revocation configuration requires that you specify a certain duration (in days). When the device connects, the server verifies whether the certificate NotAfter date is later than the current date, minus the specified duration. If the certificate meets that condition, Endpoint Management attempts to renew the certificate.

**Create a credential provider**

Configuring a credential provider varies mostly as a factor of which issuing entity and which issuing method you select for the credential provider. You can distinguish between credential providers that use an internal entity or an external entity:

- A discretionary entity, which is internal to Endpoint Management, is an internal entity. The issuing method for a discretionary entity is always sign. Sign means that with each issuing operation, Endpoint Management signs a new key pair with the CA certificate selected for the entity. Whether the key pair is generated on the device or on the server depends on the distribution method you select.

- An external entity, which is part of your corporate infrastructure, includes Microsoft CA or a GPKI. For detailed information about setting up Symantec Managed PKI, including creating the credential provider, see “Symantec Managed PKI” in PKI entities.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner and then click **Settings > Credential Providers**.

2. On the **Credential Providers** page, click **Add**. The **Credential Providers: General Information** page appears.

3. On the **Credential Providers: General Information** page, do the following:
   - **Name**: Type a unique name for the new provider configuration. This name is used later to identify the configuration in other parts of the Endpoint Management console.
   - **Description**: Describe the credential provider. Although this field is optional, a description can provide useful details about this credential provider.
   - **Issuing entity**: Click the certificate issuing entity.
   - **Issuing method**: Click **Sign** or **Fetch** to serve as the method that the system uses to obtain certificates from the configured entity. For client certificate authentication, use **Sign**.
   - If the **Template** list is available, select the template that you added under the PKI entity for the credential provider.
These templates become available when Microsoft Certificate Services Entities are added at **Settings > PKI Entities**.

4. Click **Next**.

The **Credential Providers: Certificate Signing Request** page appears.

5. On the **Credential Providers: Certificate Signing Request** page, configure the following according to your certificate configuration:

   - **Key algorithm**: Choose the key algorithm for the new key pair. Available values are **RSA**, **DSA**, and **ECDSA**.
   - **Key size**: Type the size, in bits, of the key pair. This field is required.

   The permissible values depend on the key type. For example, the maximum size for DSA keys is 1024 bits. To avoid false negatives, which depends on the underlying hardware and software, Endpoint Management doesn’t enforce key sizes. Always test credential provider configurations in a test environment before activating them in production.
   - **Signature algorithm**: Click a value for the new certificate. Values depend on the key algorithm.
   - **Subject name**: Required. Type the Distinguished Name (DN) of the new certificate subject. For example:

     ```
     CN=$\{\ user.username \} , OU=$\{\ user.department \} , O=$\{\ user.companyname \} , C=$\{\ user.c \} 
     ```

     For example, for client certificate authentication, use these settings:

     - **Key algorithm**: RSA
     - **Key size**: 2048
     - **Signature algorithm**: SHA1withRSA
     - **Subject name**: `cn=$user.username`

   - To add an entry to the **Subject alternative names** table, click **Add**. Select the type of alternative name and then type a value in the second column.

   For client certificate authentication, specify:

   - **Type**: User Principal name
   - **Value**: `$user.userprincipalname`

   As with Subject name, you can use Endpoint Management macros in the value field.

6. Click **Next**.

The **Credential Providers: Distribution** page appears.

7. On the **Credential Providers: Distribution** page, do the following:
In the **Issuing CA certificate** list, click the offered CA certificate. Because the credential provider uses a discretionary CA entity, the CA certificate for the credential provider is always the CA certificate configured on the entity itself. The CA certificate is presented here for consistency with configurations that use external entities.

- **In Select distribution mode**, click one of the following ways of generating and distributing keys:
  - **Prefer centralized: Server-side key generation**: Citrix recommends this centralized option. It supports all platforms supported by Endpoint Management and is required when using Citrix Gateway authentication. The private keys are generated and stored on the server and distributed to user devices.
  - **Prefer distributed: Device-side key generation**: The private keys are generated and stored on the user devices. This distributed mode uses SCEP and requires an RA encryption certificate with the keyUsage keyEncryption and an RA signing certificate with the KeyUsage digitalSignature. The same certificate can be used for both encryption and signing.
  - **Only distributed: Device-side key generation**: This option works the same as Prefer distributed: Device-side key generation, except that since it is “Only,” rather than “Prefer,” no option is available if device-side key generation fails or is unavailable.

  If you selected **Prefer distributed: Device-side key generation** or **Only distributed: Device-side key generation**, click the RA signing certificate and RA encryption certificate. The same certificate can be used for both. New fields appear for these certificates.

8. Click **Next**.

The **Credential Providers: Revocation Endpoint Management** page appears. On this page, you configure the conditions under which Endpoint Management internally flags certificates, issued through this provider configuration, as revoked.

9. On the **Credential Providers: Revocation Endpoint Management** page, do the following:

   - In **Revoke issued certificates**, select one of the options indicating when to revoke certificates.

   - To direct Endpoint Management to send a notification when the certificate is revoked: Set the value of **Send notification** to **On** and choose a notification template.

   - To revoke the certificate on PKI when the certificate is revoked from Endpoint Management: Set **Revoke certificate on PKI** to **On** and, in the **Entity list**, click a template. The Entity list shows all available GPKI entities with revocation capabilities. When the certificate is revoked from Endpoint Management, a revocation call is sent to the PKI selected from the Entity list.

10. Click **Next**.
The **Credential Providers: Revocation PKI** page appears. On this page, you identify what actions to take on the PKI if the certificate is revoked. You also have the option of creating a notification message.

11. On the **Credential Providers: Revocation PKI** page, do the following if you want to revoke certificates from the PKI:

   - Change the setting of **Enable external revocation checks** to **On**. More fields related to revocation PKI appear.

   - In the **OCSP responder CA certificate** list, click the distinguished name (DN) of the certificate’s subject.

     You can use Endpoint Management macros for the DN field values. For example: *CN=${user.username}, OU=${user.department}, O=${user.companyname}, C=${user.c}*

   - In the **When certificate is revoked** list, click one of the following actions to take on the PKI entity when the certificate is revoked:

     - Do nothing.
     - Renew the certificate.
     - Revoke and wipe the device.

   - To direct Endpoint Management to send a notification when the certificate is revoked: Set the value of **Send notification** to **On**.

     You can choose between two notification options:

     - If you select **Select notification template**, you can select a pre-written notification message which you can then customize. These templates are in the Notification template list.

     - If you select **Enter notification details**, you can write your own notification message. In addition to providing the recipient’s email address and the message, you can set how often the notification is sent.

12. Click **Next**.

The **Credential Providers: Renewal** page appears. On this page, you can configure Endpoint Management to do the following:

   - Renew the certificate. You can optionally send a notification notification on renewal, and optionally exclude already expired certificates from the operation.

   - Issue a notification for certificates that near expiration (notification before renewal).

13. On the **Credential Providers: Renewal** page, do the following if you want to renew certificates when they expire:

   - Set **Renew certificates** when they expire to **On**. More fields appear.
• In the **Renew when the certificate comes within** field, type how many days before expiration to renew the certificate.

• Optionally, select **Do not renew certificates that have already expired**. In this case, “already expired” means that the **NotAfter** date is in the past, not that it has been revoked. Endpoint Management doesn’t renew certificates after they are internally revoked.

To direct Endpoint Management to send a notification when the certificate has been renewed: Set **Send notification** to **On**. To direct Endpoint Management to send a notification when the certificate nears expiration: Set **Notify when certificate nears expiration** to **On**.

For either of those choices, you can choose between two notification options:

• **Select notification template:** Select a pre-written notification message which you can then customize. These templates are in the **Notification template list**.

• **Enter notification details:** Write your own notification message. Provide the recipient’s email address, a message, and a frequency for sending the notification.

In the **Notify when the certificate comes within** field, type how many days before the certificate’s expiration to send the notification.

14. Click **Save**.

The credential provider appears in the Credential Provider table.

**APNs certificates**

November 15, 2018

To enroll and manage iOS devices in Endpoint Management, you set up an Apple Push Notification service (APNs) certificate from Apple.

**Note:**

• The APNs certificate from Apple enables mobile device management via the Apple Push Network. If you accidentally or intentionally revoke the certificate, you lose the ability to manage your devices.

• If you used the iOS Developer Enterprise Program to create a mobile device manager push certificate: You might need to take action due to the migration of existing certificates to the Apple Push Certificates Portal.

The topics that outline the step-by-step procedures are listed in order in this section. Here’s a summary of the process.

**Step 1:** For Windows, generate a CSR with a Windows Server 2012 R2 or Windows 2008 R2 Server and Microsoft IIS. For Mac, generate a CSR on a Mac computer. Citrix recommends this method.
**Step 2:** Submit the CSR to Citrix. Citrix signs the CSR with its mobile device management signing certificate and returns the signed file in a .plist format.

**Step 3:** Submit the signed CSR to Apple and then download the APNs certificate from Apple.

**Step 4:** Export the APNs certificate as a PCKS #12 (.pfx) certificate (on IIS, Mac, or SSL).

**Step 5:** Import an APNs certificate into Endpoint Management.

### Apple MDM push certificate migration information

Mobile device management (MDM) push certificates created in the iOS Developer Enterprise Program have been migrated to the Apple Push Certificates Portal. This migration affects the creation of new MDM push certificates and the renewal, revocation, and downloading of existing MDM push certificates. The migration does not affect other (non-MDM) APNs certificates.

If your MDM push certificate was created in the iOS Developer Enterprise Program, the following situations apply:

- The certificate has been migrated for you automatically.
- You can renew the certificate in the Apple Push Certificates Portal without affecting your users.
- You need to use the iOS Developer Enterprise Program to revoke or download a pre-existing certificate.

If your MDM push certificates aren’t near expiration, there is no action required. If you do have an MDM push certificate that is approaching expiration, contact your MDM solution provider. Then, have your iOS Developer Program Agent log on to the Apple Push Certificates Portal with their Apple ID.

All new MDM push certificates must be created in the Apple Push Certificates Portal. The iOS Developer Enterprise Program no longer allows the creation of an App ID with a Bundle Identifier (APNs topic) that contains `com.apple.mgmt`.

#### Important:

Note the Apple ID used to create the certificate. In addition, the Apple ID must be a corporate ID and not a personal ID.

### To create a CSR by using Microsoft IIS

The first step for generating an APNs certificate request for iOS devices is to create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR). On a Windows 2012 R2 or Windows 2008 R2 Server, you can generate a CSR by using Microsoft IIS.

1. Open Microsoft IIS.
2. Double-click the Server Certificates icon for IIS.
3. In the Server Certificates window, click Create Certificate Request.
4. Type the appropriate Distinguished Name (DN) information and then click Next.
5. Select Microsoft RSA SChannel Cryptographic Provider for the Cryptographic Service Provider and 2048 for bit length and then click Next.
6. Enter a file name and specify a location to save the CSR and then click Finish.

To create a CSR on a Mac computer

1. On a Mac computer running macOS, under Applications > Utilities, start the Keychain Access application.
2. Open the Keychain Access menu and then click Preferences.
3. Click the Certificates tab, change the options for OCSP and CRL to Off and then close the Preferences window.
5. The Certificate Assistant prompts you to enter the following information:
   - Email Address: Email address of the individual or role account who is responsible for managing the certificate.
   - Common Name: Common name of the individual or a role account who is responsible for managing the certificate.
   - CA Email Address: Email address of the Certificate Authority.
6. Select the Saved to disk and Let me specify key pair information options and then click Continue.
7. Enter a name for the CSR file, save the file on your computer, and then click Save.
8. Specify the key pair information: Select the Key Size of 2048 bits and the RSA algorithm and then click Continue. The CSR file is ready for you to upload as part of the APNs certificate process.
9. Click Done when the Certificate Assistant completes the CSR process.

To create a CSR by using OpenSSL

If you cannot use a Mac computer or a supported Windows Server and Microsoft IIS to generate a CSR: You can use OpenSSL instead.

To use OpenSSL to create a CSR, first download and install OpenSSL from the OpenSSL website.

1. On the computer where you installed OpenSSL, execute the following command from a command prompt or shell.

   openssl req -new -keyout Customer.key.pem -out CompanyAPNScertificate.csr -newkey rsa:2048
2. The following message for certificate naming information appears. Enter the information as requested.

```plaintext
1 You are about to be asked to enter information that will be incorporated into your certificate request.
2 What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name or a DN.
3 There are quite a few fields but you can leave some blank
4 For some fields there will be a default value,
5 If you enter ".", the field will be left blank.
6 ----- 
7 Country Name (2 letter code) [AU]: US
8 State or Province Name (full name) [Some-State]: CA
9 Locality Name (eg, city) []: RWC
10 Organization Name (eg, company) [Internet Widgits Pty Ltd]: Customer
11 Organizational Unit Name (eg, section) [:Marketing
12 Common Name (eg, YOUR name) []: John Doe
13 Email Address []: john.doe@customer.com
```

3. At the next message, enter a password for the CSR private key.

```plaintext
1 Please enter the following 'extra' attributes
2 to be sent with your certificate request
3 A challenge password []:
4 An optional company name []:
```

**To sign the CSR**

Before you can submit the certificate to Apple, submit the certificate to Citrix for signing so it can be used with Endpoint Management.

1. In your browser, go to the Endpoint Management Tools website and then click Request push notification certificate signature.
2. On the **Creating a new certificate page**, click **Upload the CSR**.
3. Browse to and select the certificate.
   The certificate must be in .pem/txt format.

4. On the Endpoint Management APNs CSR Signing page, click Sign. The CSR is signed and automatically saved to your configured download folder.

**To submit the signed CSR to Apple to obtain the APNs certificate**

After receiving your signed Certificate Signing Request (CSR) from Citrix, submit it to Apple to obtain the APNs certificate.

**Note:**
Some users have reported problems logging into the Apple Push Portal. As an alternative, you can log on to the Apple Developer Portal before going to the identity.apple.com link in Step 1.

1. In a browser, go to https://identity.apple.com/pushcert.
2. Click Create a Certificate.
3. The first time that you create a certificate with Apple: Select the **I have read and agree to these terms and conditions** check box and then click **Accept**.

4. Click **Choose File**, browse to the signed CSR on your computer, and then click **Upload**. A confirmation message indicates that the upload is successful.

5. Click **Download** to retrieve the .pem certificate.

   If you are using Internet Explorer and the file name extension is missing, click **Cancel** two times and then download from the next window.

---

**To create a .pfx APNs certificate by using Microsoft IIS**

To use the APNs certificate from Apple with Endpoint Management: Complete the certificate request in Microsoft IIS, export the certificate as a PCKS #12 (.pfx) file, and then import the APNs certificate into Endpoint Management.

**Important:**

Use the same IIS server for this task as the server you used to generate the CSR.

1. Open Microsoft IIS.

2. Click the Server Certificates icon.

3. In the **Server Certificates** window, click **Complete Certificate Request**.

4. Browse to the Certificate.pem file from Apple. Then, type a friendly name or the certificate name and click **OK**. Don’t include space characters in the name.

5. Select the certificate that you identified in Step 4 and then click **Export**.

6. Specify a location and file name for the .pfx certificate and a password and then click **OK**.

   You need the password for the certificate during Endpoint Management installation.

7. Copy the .pfx certificate to the server on which you plan to install Endpoint Management.

8. Sign on to the Endpoint Management console as an administrator.

9. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
10. Click **Certificates**. The **Certificates** page appears.

11. Click **Import**. The **Import** dialog box appears.
12. From the **Import** menu, choose **Keystore**.

13. From **Use as**, choose **APNs**.
14. In **Keystore** file, select the keystore file you want to import by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file’s location.

15. In **Password**, type the password assigned to the certificate.

16. Click **Import**.

**To create a .pfx APNs certificate on a Mac computer**

1. On the same Mac computer running macOS that you used to generate the CSR, locate the Production identity (.pem) certificate that you received from Apple.

2. Double-click the certificate file to import the file into the keychain.

3. If you are prompted to add the certificate to a specific keychain, keep the default login keychain selected and then click **OK**. The newly added certificate appears in your list of certificates.

4. Click the certificate and then on the **File** menu, click **Export** to begin exporting the certificate into a PCKS #12 (.pfx) certificate.
5. Give the certificate file a unique name for use with the Endpoint Management server. Don’t include space characters in the name. Then, choose a folder location for the saved certificate, select the .pfx file format, and click **Save**.

6. Enter a password for exporting the certificate. Citrix recommends that you use a unique, strong password. Also, be sure to keep the certificate and password safe for later use and reference.

7. The Keychain Access application prompts you for the login password or selected keychain. Enter the password and then click **OK**. The saved certificate is now ready for use with the Endpoint Management server.

   **Note:**
   If you don’t plan to keep the computer and user account that you originally used to generate the CSR and complete the certificate export process: Citrix recommends that you save or export the Personal and Public Keys from the local system. Otherwise, access to the APNs certificates for reuse is voided and you must then repeat the entire CSR and APNs process.

---

**To create a .pfx APNs certificate by using OpenSSL**

After you use OpenSSL to create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR), you can also use OpenSSL to create a .pfx APNs certificate.

1. At a command prompt or shell, execute the following command.

   ```
   openssl pkcs12 -export -in MDM_Zenprise_Certificate.pem -inkey Customer.key.pem -out apns_identity.p12
   ```

2. Enter a password for the .pfx certificate file. Remember this password because you use the password again when you upload the certificate to Endpoint Management.

3. Note the location for the .pfx certificate file. Then, copy the file to the Endpoint Management server so you can use the console to upload the file.

---

**To import an APNs certificate into Endpoint Management**

After you request and receive a new APNs certificate: Import the APNs certificate into Endpoint Management to either add the certificate for the first time or to replace a certificate.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Click **Certificates**. The **Certificates** page appears.
3. Click **Import**. The **Import** dialog box appears.
4. From the **Import** menu, choose **Keystore**.
5. From **Use as**, choose **APNs**.
6. Browse to the .p12 file on your computer.
7. Enter a password and then click **Import**.

For more information about certificates in Endpoint Management, see [Certificates and authentication](#).

**To renew an APNs certificate**

To renew an APNs certificate, perform the same steps you would if you were creating a certificate. Then, visit the [Apple Push Certificates Portal](#) and upload the new certificate. After logging on, you see your existing certificate or you might see a certificate that was imported from your previous Apple Developers account.

On the Certificates Portal, the only difference when renewing the certificate is that you click **Renew**. You must have a developer account with the Certificates Portal to access the site. When you are renewing your certificate, ensure that you use the same organization name and Apple ID.

To determine when your APNs certificate expires, in the Endpoint Management console, click **Configure > Settings > Certificates**. If the certificate is expired, however, do not revoke the certificate.

**Note:**

Do not use an Internet Explorer browser, or else step 7 outputs a .json file instead of a .pem file.

1. Generate a CSR, using IIS (Microsoft), OpenSSL, or Keychain Access (macOS).
2. In your browser, go to the [Endpoint Management Tools](#) website and then click **Request push notification certificate signature**.
3. Click **Upload the CSR**. Then, in the dialog box, navigate to the CSR, click **Open**, and click **Sign**.
4. When you receive a .plist file, save it.
5. Click **Apple Push Certificates Portal** and sign on.
6. Select the certificate that you want to renew and click **Renew**.
7. Upload the .plist file. You receive a .pem file as the output. Save the .pem file.
8. Using that .pem file, complete the CSR (according to the method you used to create the CSR in Step 1).

In the Endpoint Management console, import the .pfx file and complete the configuration as follows:

1. Go to **Settings > Certificate Management**.
2. On the **Certificates** page, click **Import**.
3. From the **Import menu**, choose **Keystore**.
4. From **Keystore type**, choose **PKCS #12**.
5. From **Use as**, choose **APNs**.
6. For Keystore file, click Browse and navigate to the file.
7. In Password, type the certificate password.
8. Type an optional Description.
9. Click Import.

Endpoint Management redirects you back to the Certificates page. The Name, Status, Valid from, and Valid to fields update.

Note:
If you use a different Apple ID for the renewal process, devices need to be re-enrolled.

SAML for single sign-on with Citrix Files

December 6, 2018

You can configure Endpoint Management and Citrix Files to use Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) to provide single sign-on (SSO) access to Citrix Files mobile apps. This functionality includes Citrix Files apps that are wrapped with the MDX Service or MDX Toolkit and non-wrapped Citrix Files clients, such as the website, Outlook plug-in, or sync clients.

- **For wrapped Citrix Files apps.** Users who log on to Citrix Files through the Citrix Files mobile app are redirected to Secure Hub for user authentication and to acquire a SAML token. After successful authentication, the Citrix Files mobile app sends the SAML token to Citrix Files. After the initial logon, users can access the Citrix Files mobile app through SSO. They can also attach documents from Citrix Files to Secure Mail mails without logging on each time.

- **For non-wrapped Citrix Files clients.** Users who log on to Citrix Files using a web browser or other Citrix Files client are redirected to Endpoint Management. Endpoint Management authenticates the users, who then acquire a SAML token which is sent to Citrix Files. After the initial logon, users can access Citrix Files clients through SSO without logging on each time.

To use Endpoint Management as a SAML identity provider (IdP) to Citrix Files, you must configure Endpoint Management to use Citrix Files Enterprise, as described in this article. Alternatively, you can configure Endpoint Management to work only with StorageZone Connectors. For more information, see Citrix Files use with Endpoint Management.

For a detailed reference architecture diagram, see Architecture.

Prerequisites

Complete the following prerequisites before you can configure SSO with Endpoint Management and Citrix Files apps:
Citrix Endpoint Management

- The MDX Service or a compatible version of the MDX Toolkit (for Citrix Files mobile apps).
  For more information, see Endpoint Management compatibility.
- A compatible version of Citrix Files mobile apps and Secure Hub.
- Citrix Files administrator account.
- Connectivity verified between Endpoint Management and Citrix Files.

Configure Citrix Files access

Before setting up SAML for Citrix Files, provide Citrix Files access information as follows:

1. In the Endpoint Management web console, click Configure > ShareFile. The ShareFile configuration page appears.

2. Configure these settings:

   - **Domain**: Type your Citrix Files subdomain name. For example: example.sharefile.com.
   - **Assign to delivery groups**: Select or search for the delivery groups that you want to be able to use SSO with ShareFile.
   - **ShareFile Administrator Account Logon**
     - **User name**: Type the Citrix Files administrator user name. This user must have administrator privileges.
**Citrix Endpoint Management**

- **Password:** Type the Citrix Files administrator password.
- **User account provisioning:** To enable user provisioning in Endpoint Management, enable this setting. To use the Citrix Files User Management Tool for user provisioning, leave this setting disabled.

**Note:**

If a user without a Citrix Files account is included in the selected roles and you enable User account provisioning: Endpoint Management automatically provisions a Citrix Files account for that user. Citrix recommends that you use a role with a small membership for testing the configuration. Doing so avoids the potential of many users without Citrix Files accounts.

3. Click **Test Connection** to verify that the user name and password for the Citrix Files administrator account authenticate to the specified Citrix Files account.

4. Click **Save**. Endpoint Management syncs with Citrix Files and updates the Citrix Files settings **ShareFile Issuer/Entity ID** and **Login URL**.

**Set up SAML for Wrapped Citrix Files MDX Apps**

The following steps apply to iOS and Android apps and devices.

1. Wrap the Citrix Files mobile app with MDX. For details, see **Endpoint Management MDX Service**.

2. In the Endpoint Management console, upload the wrapped Citrix Files mobile app. For information about uploading MDX apps, see **To add an MDX app to Endpoint Management**.

3. Verify the SAML settings: Log on to Citrix Files with the administrator user name and password you configured above.

4. Verify that Citrix Files and Endpoint Management are configured for the same time zone. Ensure that Endpoint Management shows the correct time for the configured time zone. If not, SSO might fail.

**Validate the Citrix Files mobile app**

1. On the user device, install and configure Secure Hub.

2. From the app store, download and install the Citrix Files mobile app.

3. Start the Citrix Files mobile app. Citrix Files starts without prompting for user name or password.

**Validate with Secure Mail**

1. On the user device, if it has not already been done, install and configure Secure Hub.
2. From the app store, download, install, and set up Secure Mail.

3. Open a new email form and then tap **Attach from ShareFile**. Files available to attach to the email are shown without asking for user name or password.

**Configure Citrix Gateway for other Citrix Files clients**

To configure access for non-wrapped Citrix Files clients, such as the website, Outlook plug-in, or the sync clients: Configure Citrix Gateway to support the use of Endpoint Management as a SAML identity provider as follows.

- Disable home page redirection.
- Create a Citrix Files session policy and profile.
- Configure policies on the Citrix Gateway virtual server.

**Disable home page redirection**

Disable the default behavior for requests that come through the /cginfra path. That action enables users to see the original requested internal URL instead of the configured home page.

1. Edit the settings for the Citrix Gateway virtual server that is used for Endpoint Management logons. In Citrix Gateway, go to **Other Settings** and then clear the check box labeled **Redirect to Home Page**.

![Other Settings](image)
2. Under **ShareFile**, type your Endpoint Management internal server name and port number.

3. Under **AppController**, type your Endpoint Management URL.
   
   This configuration authorizes requests to the URL you entered through the /cginfra path.

### Create a Citrix Files session policy and request profile

Configure these settings to create a Citrix Files session policy and request profile:

1. In the Citrix Gateway configuration utility, in the left-hand navigation pane, click **NetScaler Gateway > Policies > Session**.

2. Create a session policy. On the **Policies** tab, click **Add**.

3. In the **Name** field, type **ShareFile_Policy**.

4. Create an action by clicking the + button. The **Create NetScaler Gateway Session Profile** page appears.
Configure these settings:

- **Name**: Type **ShareFile_Profile**.
- Click the **Client Experience** tab and then configure these settings:
  - **Home Page**: Type **none**.
  - **Session Time-out (mins)**: Type **1**.
  - **Single Sign-on to Web Applications**: Select this setting.
  - **Credential Index**: Click **PRIMARY**.
- Click the **Published Applications** tab.

Configure these settings:

- **ICA Proxy**: Click **ON**.
- **Web Interface Address**: Type your Endpoint Management server URL.
- **Single Sign-on Domain**: Type your Active Directory domain name.

When configuring the Citrix Gateway Session Profile, the domain suffix for **Single Sign-on Domain** must match the Endpoint Management domain alias defined in LDAP.

5. Click **Create** to define the session profile.

6. Click **Expression Editor**.
Configure these settings:

- **Value**: Type NSC_FSRD.
- **Header Name**: Type COOKIE.

7. Click **Create** and then click **Close**.

Configure policies on the Citrix Gateway virtual server

Configure these settings on the Citrix Gateway virtual server.

1. In the Citrix Gateway configuration utility, in the left navigation pane, click **NetScaler Gateway > Virtual Servers**.
2. In the **Details** pane, click your Citrix Gateway virtual server.
3. Click **Edit**.
4. Click **Configured policies > Session policies** and then click **Add binding**.
5. Select **ShareFile_Policy**.

6. Edit the auto-generated **Priority** number for the selected policy so that it has the highest priority (the smallest number) in relation to any other policies listed. For example:

![VPN Virtual Server Session Policy Binding](image)

7. Click **Done** and then save the running Citrix Gateway configuration.

### Modify the Citrix Files.com SSO settings

Make the following changes for both MDX and non-MDX Citrix Files apps.

**Important:**

Each time you edit or recreate the Citrix Files app or change the Citrix Files settings in Endpoint Management, a new number is appended the internal application name. As a result, you must also update the Login URL in the Citrix Files website to reflect the updated app name.

1. Log on to your Citrix Files account ([https://<subdomain>.sharefile.com](https://<subdomain>.sharefile.com)) as a Citrix Files administrator.

2. In the Citrix Files web interface, click **Admin** and then select **Configure Single Sign-on**.

3. Edit the **Login URL** as follows:

   Here’s a sample **Login URL** before the edits: [https://xms.citrix.lab/samlsp/websso.do?action=authenticateUser&app=ShareFile_SAML_SP&reqtype=1](https://xms.citrix.lab/samlsp/websso.do?action=authenticateUser&app=ShareFile_SAML_SP&reqtype=1).
• Insert the Citrix Gateway virtual server external FQDN plus /cginfra/https/ in front of the Endpoint Management server FQDN and then add 8443 after the Endpoint Management FQDN.

Here's a sample of an edited URL: https://nsgateway.acme.com/cginfra/https/xms.citrix.lab:8443/samlsp/websso.do?action=authenticateUser&app=ShareFile_SAML_SP&reqtype=1

• Change the parameter &app=ShareFile_SAML_SP to the internal Citrix Files application name. The internal name is ShareFile_SAML by default. However, every time you change your configuration, a number is appended to the internal name (ShareFile_SAML_2, ShareFile_SAML_3, and so on).


• Add &nssso=true to the end of the URL.


4. Under **Optional Settings**, select the **Enable Web Authentication** check box.
Validate the configuration

Do the following to validate the configuration.

1. Point your browser to https://<subdomain>sharefile.com/saml/login.
   You are redirected to the Citrix Gateway logon form. If you are not redirected, verify the preceding configuration settings.

2. Enter the username and password for the Citrix Gateway and Endpoint Management environment you configured.
   Your Citrix Files folders at <subdomain>.sharefile.com appear. If you do not see your Citrix Files folders, ensure that you entered the proper logon credentials.

Single sign in with Azure Active Directory

October 25, 2018

Endpoint Management supports single sign-in with Azure Active Directory credentials for the following scenarios:

- User enrollment through Citrix Secure Hub (Android or iOS)
- For the RBAC User role, authentication to the Endpoint Management Self Help Portal
- Administrator authentication to the Endpoint Management console
- For Endpoint Management, administrator authentication to the Public API for REST Services by using a token retrieved through the Citrix Cloud API.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- For more information, see section 3.3.2, Login (Cloud Credentials), in the Public API for REST Services PDF.

Endpoint Management uses the Citrix Cloud service, Citrix Identity Platform, to federate with Azure Active Directory. Citrix Identity Platform is an identity provider (IDP) service.

To set up this service, you configure Citrix Cloud to use Azure Active Directory as your Identity Provider. Then, configure Citrix Identity Platform as the IDP type for Endpoint Management. Users can then log on to Secure Hub with their Azure Active Directory credentials. Secure Hub uses client certificate authentication for MAM devices.

Citrix recommends that you use Citrix Identity Platform instead of a direct connection to Azure Active Directory.

**Prerequisites for single sign in with Azure Active Directory**

- Citrix Gateway, configured for certificate-based authentication
- Secure Hub 10.7.20 (minimum version)
- Azure Active Directory user credentials

**Configure Citrix Cloud to use Azure Active Directory as your Identity Provider**

To configure Azure Active Directory in Citrix Cloud:

1. Go to https://citrix.cloud.com and sign in to your Citrix Cloud account.

2. From the Citrix Cloud menu, go to the **Identity and Access Management** page and connect to Azure Active Directory.

3. Type your administrator sign-in URL and then click **Connect**.
4. After you sign in, your Azure Active Directory account connects to Citrix Cloud. The Identity and Access Management > Authentication page shows which accounts to use to sign in to your Citrix Cloud and Azure AD accounts.

Configure Citrix Identity Platform as the IDP type for Endpoint Management

After you configure Azure Active Directory in Citrix Cloud, configure Endpoint Management as follows.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, go to Settings > Identity Provider (IDP) and then click Add.

2. In the Identity Provider (IDP) page, configure the following:
• **IDP Name**: Type a unique name to identify the IDP connection that you are creating.
• **IDP Type**: Choose Citrix Identity Platform.
• **Auth Domain**: Choose the Citrix Cloud domain. If you aren’t sure which one to choose, your domain appears on the Citrix Cloud Identity and Access Management > Authentication page.

3. Click **Next**. In the **IDP Claims Usage** page, configure the following:

   - **User Identifier type**: This field is set to `userPrincipalName`.
   - **User Identifier string**: This field is automatically filled.

4. Click **Next**, review the **Summary** page, and then click **Save**.

Secure Hub users, Endpoint Management console, and Self Help Portal users can now sign in with their Azure Active Directory credentials.

**Endpoint Management administrator and user authentication flow**

The sign-in screen for the Endpoint Management console and the Endpoint Management Self Help Portal includes the link **Sign in with my company credentials**.
Click that link to enter your Azure Active Directory credentials. After successfully authenticating you, Endpoint Management doesn’t require you to sign in for future access.

If you sign in to the Endpoint Management console or self-help portal from domain-joined devices and click the **Sign in with my company credentials** link: Endpoint Management provides a single sign-on experience. No authentication prompt appears.

**Secure Hub authentication flow**

With Endpoint Management configured to use Citrix Identity Platform as its IDP, the Secure Hub authentication flow is as follows for a device enrolled through Secure Hub:

1. A user starts Secure Hub.
2. Secure Hub passes the authentication request to Citrix Identity Platform, which passes the request to Azure Active Directory.
3. The user types their user name and password.
4. Azure Active Directory validates the user and sends a code to Citrix Identity Platform.
5. Citrix Identity Platform sends the code to Secure Hub, which sends the code to the Endpoint Management server.
6. Endpoint Management obtains an ID token by using the code and secret, and then validates the user information that’s in the ID token. Endpoint Management returns a session ID.
Users of domain-joined devices can use their Azure Active Directory credentials for a single sign-on experience. For Endpoint Management local accounts, single sign-on isn’t available.

Derived credentials for iOS

November 30, 2018

Derived credentials provide strong authentication for mobile devices. The credentials, derived from a smart card, reside in a mobile device instead of the card. The smart card is a Personal Identity Verification (PIV) card.

The derived credentials are an enrollment certificate that contains the user identifier, such as UPN. Endpoint Management stores the credentials obtained from the credential provider in a secure vault on the device.

Endpoint Management can use derived credentials for iOS device enrollment and authentication. If configured for derived credentials, Endpoint Management doesn’t support enrollment invitations or other enrollment modes for iOS devices. Citrix recommends that you don’t enroll Android devices on servers set up for derived credentials.

Requirements

- One of the following derived credential solutions:
  - Intercede 3.14 or later. For information on the Intercede requirements, see https://www.intercede.com/solutions-derived-credentials.
    Citrix has validated that Endpoint Management supports the Intercede derived credential solution. The app name in the Apple App Store is MyID for Citrix.
    Users must install MyID for Citrix on their devices before enrolling in Endpoint Management.
  - Other derived credential solutions
    While it’s likely that most other credential solutions are compatible with Endpoint Management, test the integration before deploying it to production.
  - If the user email domain differs from the LDAP domain, include the email domain in the Domain alias setting in Settings > LDAP. For example, if the domain for email addresses is myID.com and the LDAP domain name is sample.com, set Domain alias to sample.com, myID.com.
    Endpoint Management doesn’t support the use of derived credentials with shared devices.
- User identity certificates:
Citrix Endpoint Management

- The user name in the Subject alternative name field must be formatted as the otherName, rfc822Name, or dNSName field of the SubjectAltName extension. Other fields are not supported. For more information about Subject alternative name, see the RFC, https://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc5280.txt.
- User identity in the Subject field in either Email or CN isn’t supported.

- Citrix Gateway configured for certificate authentication or certificate plus security token authentication
  
  For information about PKI configuration, see PKI entities.
- MDM enrollment
- Secure Hub 10.8.15 (minimum version)
- Secure Mail 10.8.20 (minimum version)
  
  - Use the same developer certificate to sign all apps in the Apple App Store.

Architecture

For enrollment, the Endpoint Management server connects to the components described in the preceding Requirements section, as shown in the following diagram.

- During device enrollment, Secure Hub obtains certificates from the derived credentials app.
- The derived credentials app communicates with the credential management server during enrollment.
You can use the same or different server for the credential management server and a third-party PKI provider.

Endpoint Management server connects to your third-party PKI server to obtain certificates.

After enrollment, the components connect as shown in the following diagram.

The following sections describe how to configure Endpoint Management with a derived credentials provider, enable derived credentials for enrollment, and manage devices that use derived credentials.

Enable derived credentials

By default, the Endpoint Management console doesn’t include the Settings > Derived Credentials page. To enable the interface for derived credentials: Go to Settings > Server Properties, add the server property derived.credentials.enable, and set the property to true.
Configure derived credentials

These instructions assume that you have a working configuration for the derived credentials provider that you plan to integrate with Endpoint Management. You can then configure Endpoint Management to communicate with that server. You also choose a derived credentials CA certificate already added to Endpoint Management or import the certificate.

You can activate Online Certificate Status Protocol (OCSP) support for that CA certificate. For more information about OCSP, see “Discretionary CAs” in PKI entities.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, go to Settings > Derived Credentials for iOS.

2. Under Provider:
   - **Choose derived credentials provider.** Citrix validated that Endpoint Management supports Intercede. If you choose Other for the provider, test the integration before putting your server into production.
   - **App URL (iOS):** If you choose Intercede as the provider, Endpoint Management fills in the App URL. If you choose Other as the provider, obtain the App URL from your derived credentials provider.
     
     If a device can’t contact your provider, verify the App URL with the provider. You might need to change it.
   - **Optional parameters:** Some derived credential providers might require that you provide
parameters for the connection. For example, a vendor might require that you specify the URLs of a back-end server. Click **Add** to provide parameters.

3. Specify a certificate for derived credentials: If the certificate is already uploaded to Endpoint Management, choose that certificate from **Issuer CA**. Otherwise, click **Import** to add a certificate. The **Import Certificate** dialog box appears.

4. In the **Import Certificate** dialog box, click **Browse** to navigate to the certificate. Then click **Browse** to navigate to the private key file.

5. If you choose **Intercede** as the provider, Endpoint Management fills in the **User Identifier field** and the **User Identifier type**. For Intercede, the **User Identifier field** is **Subject alternative name**, and the **User Identifier type** is **userPrincipalName**. Contact other derived credential providers for their information and configure the settings.

6. You can optionally use an OCSP responder for certificate revocation checking. By default, OSP checking is off. To activate OCSP support for the CA certificate:
   - Set **OCSP check** to **ON**.
Choose an option for **Use custom OCSP URL**. By default, Endpoint Management extracts the OCSP URL from the certificate (the **Use certificate definition for revocation** option). To specify a responder URL, click **Use custom** and then type the URL.

- **Responder CA**: From **Responder CA**, choose a certificate. Or, click **Import** and then use the **Import Certificate** dialog box to locate the certificate.

7. Click **Save**. The **Derived Credentials** dialog box appears.

- To enable the derived credentials configuration, click **Save**. To use derived credentials, you must also configure enrollment settings.
- To enable the derived credentials configuration and then go immediately to **Settings > Enrollment**, click **Save and Go to Enrollment**.

8. To enable derived credentials for enrollment: On the **Settings > Enrollment** page, under **Advanced Enrollment**, select **Derived Credentials (iOS only)** and then click **Enable**.
9. A confirmation dialog box appears. To enable derived credentials, select the check box, and click **Enable**.
To edit options for derived credentials enrollment, go to **Settings > Enrollment**, select **Derived Credentials (iOS only)** and then click **Edit**.

After you enable derived credentials: In the **Devices Enrollment** report, the column **Enrollment mode** shows **derived_credentials**.

For enrollment steps when using derived credentials, see Enroll iOS devices that use derived credentials.

**Configure Endpoint Management for Secure Mail**

In order for Secure Mail to work properly with derived credentials, add the LDAP Attributes client property.

Follow the steps to add a client property in the article **Client properties**. Use the following information:

- **Key**: SEND_LDAP_ATTRIBUTES
- **Value**: userPrincipalName=${ user.userprincipalname }, sAMAccountName=${ user.samaccountname }, displayName=${ user.displayName }, mail=${ user.mail }

![Edit Client Property](image)

**Enroll iOS devices that use derived credentials**

Enrollment requires that users insert their smart card to a reader attached to their desktop.

1. The user installs Secure Hub and the app from your derived credential provider.

   The identity provider app for Intercede is MyID for Citrix. The logo for that app follows.

![MyID Logo](image)
2. The user starts Secure Hub. When prompted, the user types the Endpoint Management server fully qualified domain name and then clicks **Next**. Enrollment in Secure Hub starts. If the Endpoint Management server supports derived credentials, Secure Hub prompts the user to create a Citrix PIN.
Enroll Your iPhone

Enrolling secures your iPhone and your work apps. Do you want to enroll your device?

Yes, Enroll

No
3. The user follows the instructions to activate their smart credential. A splash screen appears, followed by a prompt to scan a QR code.
4. The user inserts their card into the smart card reader that’s attached to their desktop. The desktop app then displays a QR code and prompts the user to scan the code using their mobile device.
5. The user enters their Secure Hub PIN when prompted.
6. After authenticating the PIN, Secure Hub downloads the certificates. The user then follows the prompts to complete enrollment.

To view device information in the Endpoint Management console:

- Go to Manage > Devices and then select a device to display a command box. Click Show more.
- Go to Analyze > Dashboard.

## User accounts, roles, and enrollment

December 12, 2018

You perform user configuration tasks in the Endpoint Management console on the Manage tab and the Settings page. Unless otherwise indicated, the steps for the following tasks are provided in this
article.

- **Enrollment mode and invitations**
  - From **Settings > Enrollment**, configure up to seven enrollment modes and send enrollment invitations. Each enrollment mode has its own level of security and number of steps users must take to enroll their devices.
  - **Set up Endpoint Management AutoDiscovery Service**

- **Roles for user accounts and groups**
  - From **Settings > Role-Based Access Control**, assign predefined roles, or sets of permissions, to users and groups. These permissions control the level of access users have to system functions. For more information, see **Configure roles with RBAC**.
  - From **Settings > Notification Templates**, to create or update the notification templates to use in automated actions, enrollment, and standard notification messages sent to users. You configure the notification templates to send messages over three different channels: Secure Hub, SMTP, or SMS. For more information, see: **Creating and updating Notification Templates**.

- **User accounts and groups:**
  - From **Manage > Users**, you can add user accounts manually or use a .csv provisioning file to import the accounts and to manage local groups. However, most Endpoint Management deployments connect to LDAP for user and group information. You might prefer to create user accounts locally in use cases such as the following:
    * In environments, such as retail, where devices are shared rather than dedicated to individual users.
    * If you use an unsupported directory, such as Novell eDirectory.
  - From **Settings > Workflows**, use workflows to manage the creation and removal of user accounts.

### Configure enrollment modes

You configure device enrollment modes to allow users to enroll their devices in Endpoint Management. Endpoint Management offers seven modes, each with its own level of security and steps users must take to enroll their devices.

You can make some modes available on the Self Help Portal. Users can log on to the portal and generate enrollment links that allow them to enroll their devices or choose to send themselves an enrollment invitation. You configure enrollment modes in the Endpoint Management console from the **Settings > Enrollment** page.

You send enrollment invitations from the **Manage > Enrollment Invitations** page. For information, see **Enrollment invitations**.
Note:
If you plan to use custom notification templates, you must set up the templates before you configure enrollment modes. For more information about notification templates, see Creating or Updating Notification Templates.

1. On the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The Settings page appears.

2. Click Enrollment. The Enrollment page appears, containing a table of all available enrollment modes. By default, all enrollment modes are enabled.

3. Select any enrollment mode in the list to edit it. Then, set the mode as the default, disable the mode, or allow users access through the Self Help Portal.

When you select the check box next to an enrollment mode, the options menu appears above the enrollment mode list. When you click anywhere else in the list, the options menu appears on the right side of the listing.

Choose from these enrollment modes:

- User name + Password
- High Security
- Invitation URL
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Invitation URL + PIN
- Invitation URL + Password
- Two Factor
- User name + PIN

You can use enrollment invitations to restrict enrollment to users with an invitation only.

You can use one-time PIN (sometimes referred to as OTP) enrollment invitations as a two-factor solution. One-time PIN enrollment invitations control the number of devices a user can enroll.

For environments with the highest security requirements, you can tie enrollment invitations to a device by SN/UDID/EMEI. A two-factor option is also available to require Active Directory password and One-time PIN.

To edit an enrollment mode

1. In the Enrollment list, select an enrollment mode and then click Edit. The Edit Enrollment Mode page appears. Depending on the mode you select, you might see different options.

2. Change the following information as appropriate:
   - **Expire after**: Type an expiration deadline after which users cannot enroll their devices. This value appears in the user and group enrollment invitation configuration pages.
Type 0 to prevent the invitation from expiring.

- **Days**: In the list, click **Days** or **Hours** to correspond to the expiration deadline you entered in **Expire after**.

- **Maximum attempts**: Type the number of attempts to enroll that a user can make before being locked out of the enrollment process. This value appears in the user and group enrollment invitation configuration pages.

  Type 0 to allow unlimited attempts.

- **PIN length**: Type a numeral to set the length of the generated PIN.

- **Numeric**: In the list, click **Numeric** or **Alphanumeric** for the PIN type.

- **Notification templates**:
  - **Template for enrollment URL**: In the list, click a template to use for the enrollment URL. For example, the Enrollment invitation template sends users an email or SMS. The method depends on how you configured the template that lets them enroll their devices in Endpoint Management. For more information on notification templates, see Create or update notification templates.
  - **Template for enrollment PIN**: In the list, click a template to use for the enrollment PIN.
  - **Template for enrollment confirmation**: In the list, click a template to use to inform a user that they enrolled successfully.

3. Click **Save**.

**To set an enrollment mode as default**

When you set an enrollment mode as the default, the mode is used for all device enrollment requests unless you select a different enrollment mode. If no enrollment mode is set as the default, you must create a request for enrollment for each device enrollment.

**Note:**

The only enrollment modes that you can use as a default are **Only Username + Password**, **Two Factor**, or **Username + PIN**.

1. Select the default enrollment mode, either **Username + Password**, **Two Factor**, or **Username + PIN**.

   To use a mode as the default, first enable it.

2. Click **Default**. The selected mode is now the default. If any other enrollment mode was set as the default, the mode is no longer the default.
To disable an enrollment mode

Disabling an enrollment mode makes it unavailable for use, both for group enrollment invitations and on the Self Help Portal. You might change how you allow users to enroll their devices by disabling one enrollment mode and enabling another.

1. Select an enrollment mode.
   
   You cannot disable the default enrollment mode. If you want to disable the default enrollment mode, you must first remove its default status.

2. Click Disable. The enrollment mode is no longer enabled.

To enable an enrollment mode on the Self Help Portal

Enabling an enrollment mode on the Self Help Portal lets users enroll their devices in Endpoint Management individually.

Note:

- The enrollment mode must be enabled and bound to notification templates to be made available on the Self Help Portal.
- You can only enable one enrollment mode on the Self Help Portal at a time.

1. Select an enrollment mode.

2. Click Self Help Portal. The enrollment mode you selected is now available to users on the Self Help Portal. Any mode already enabled on the Self Help Portal is no longer available to users.

Add, edit, or delete local user accounts

You can add local user accounts to Endpoint Management manually or you can use a provisioning file to import the accounts. For the steps to import user accounts from a provisioning file, see Import user accounts. All Citrix Cloud administrators are created as Endpoint Management administrators unless those administrators were created with custom access that doesn’t include Endpoint Management. For information on adding Citrix Cloud administrators, see Add administrators.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click Manage > Users. The Users page appears.
2. Click **Show filter** to filter the list.

**To add a local user account**

1. On the **Users** page, click **Add Local User**. The **Add Local User** page appears.

2. Configure these settings:
   - **User name**: Type the name, a required field. You can include the following in names: spaces, uppercase letters, and lowercase letters.
   - **Password**: Type an optional user password.
- **Role:** In the list, click the user role. For more information about roles, see Configure roles with RBAC. Possible options are:
  - ADMIN
  - DEVICE_PROVISIONING
  - SUPPORT
  - USER
- **Membership:** In the list, click the group or groups to which to add the user.
- **User Properties:** Add optional user properties. For each user property you want to add, click *Add* and do the following:
  - **User Properties:** In the list, click a property and then type the user property attribute in the field next to the property.
  - Click **Done** to save the user property or click **Cancel**.

To delete an existing user property, hover over the line containing the property and then click the X on the right side. The property is deleted immediately.

To edit an existing user property, click the property and make changes. Click **Done** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

3. Click **Save**.

**To edit a local user account**

1. On the **Users** page, in the list of users, click to select a user and then click **Edit**. The **Edit Local User** page appears.
2. Change the following information as appropriate:

   - **User name:** You cannot change the user name.
   - **Password:** Change or add a user password.
   - **Role:** In the list, click the user role.
   - **Membership:** In the list, click the group or groups to which to add or edit the user account. To remove the user account from a group, clear the check box next to the group name.
   - **User properties:** Do one of the following:
     - For each user property you want to change, click the property and make changes. Click **Done** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.
     - For each user property you want to add, click **Add** and do the following:
       * **User Properties:** In the list, click a property and then type the user property attribute in the field next to the property.
       * Click **Done** to save the user property or click **Cancel**.
     - For each existing user property you want to delete, hover over the line containing the property and then click the **X** on the right side. The property is deleted immediately.

3. Click **Save** to save your changes or click **Cancel** to leave the user unchanged.
To delete a local user account

1. On the Users page, in the list of user accounts, click to select a user account.
   You can select more than one user account to delete by selecting the check box next to each user account.
2. Click Delete. A confirmation dialog box appears.
3. Click Delete to delete the user account or click Cancel.

To delete Active Directory users

To delete one or more Active Directory users at a time, select the users and click Delete.

If a user that you delete has enrolled devices and you want to re-enroll those devices, delete the devices before re-enrolling them. To delete a device, go to Manage > Devices, select the device, and then click Delete.

Import user accounts

You can import local user accounts and properties from a .csv file called a provisioning file, which you can create manually. For more information about formatting provisioning files, see Provisioning file formats.

Note:

- For local users, use the domain name along with the username in the import file. For example, specify username@domain. If the local user that you create or import is for a managed domain in Endpoint Management, the user cannot enroll by using the corresponding LDAP credentials.
- If importing user accounts to the Endpoint Management internal user directory, disable the default domain to speed up the import process. Keep in mind that disabling the domain affects enrollments. Reenable the default domain after the import of internal users is complete.
- Local users can be in User Principal Name (UPN) format. However, Citrix recommends that you do not use the managed domain. For example, if example.com is managed, do not create a local user with this UPN format: user@example.com.

After you prepare a provisioning file, follow these steps to import the file to Endpoint Management.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click Manage > Users. The Users page appears.
2. Click Import Local Users. The Import Provisioning File dialog box appears.
3. Select either User or Property for the format of the provisioning file you are importing.

4. Select the provisioning file to use by clicking Browse and then navigating to the file location.

5. Click Import.

**Provisioning file formats**

A provisioning file that you create manually and use to import user accounts and properties to Endpoint Management must be in one of the following formats:

- **User provisioning file fields**: user;password;role;group1;group2
- **User attribute provisioning file fields**: user;propertyName1;propertyValue1;propertyName2;propertyValue2

**Note:**

- Separate the fields within the provisioning file with a semi-colon (;). If part of a field contains a semi-colon, escape it with a backslash character (\). For example, type the property `propertyV\;test\;1\;2` as `propertyV\;test\;1\;2` in the provisioning file.
- Valid values for Role are the predefined roles USER, ADMIN, SUPPORT, and DEVICE_PROVISIONING, plus any other roles that you defined.
- Use the period character (.) as a separator to create group hierarchy. Don’t use a period in group names.
- Use lowercase for property attributes in attribute provisioning files. The database is case sensitive.
Example of user provisioning content

The entry `user01;pwd\;o1;USER;myGroup.users01;myGroup.users02;myGroup.users.users01` means:

- **User**: `user01`
- **Password**: `pwd;01`
- **Role**: `USER`
- **Groups**:
  - `myGroup.users01`
  - `myGroup.users02`
  - `myGroup.users.users.users01`

As another example, `AUser0;1.password;USER;ActiveDirectory.test.net` means:

- **User**: `AUser0`
- **Password**: `1.password`
- **Role**: `USER`
- **Group**: `ActiveDirectory.test.net`

Example of user attribute provisioning content

The entry `user01;propertyN;propertyV\;test\;1\;2;prop 2;prop2 value` means:

- **User**: `user01`
- **Property 1**
  - **name**: `propertyN`
  - **value**: `propertyV;test;1;2`
- **Property 2**:
  - **name**: `prop 2`
  - **value**: `prop2 value`

Add or remove groups

You manage groups in the Manage Groups dialog box in the Endpoint Management console on these pages: **Users, Add Local User, or Edit Local User**. There is no group edit command.

If you remove a group, keep in mind that removing the group has no effect on user accounts. Removing a group simply removes the user association with that group. Users also lose access to apps or profiles provided by the Delivery Groups that are associated with that group; any other group associations, however, remain intact. If users are not associated with any other local groups, they are associated at the top level.
To add a local group

1. Do one of the following:
   - On the Users page, click Manage Local Groups.
   - On either the Add Local User page or the Edit Local User page, click Manage Groups.

The Manage Group dialog box appears.
2. Below the group list, type a new group name and then click the plus sign (+). The user group is added to the list.

3. Click Close.

**To remove a group**

Removing a group has no effect on user accounts. Removing a group simply removes the user association with that group. Users also lose access to apps or profiles provided by the Delivery Groups that are associated with that group. However, any other group associations remain intact. If users are not associated with any other local groups, they are associated at the top level.

1. Do one of the following:
2. On the Manage Groups dialog box, click the group you want to delete.

3. Click the trash can icon to the right of the group name. A confirmation dialog box appears.

4. Click Delete to confirm the operation and remove the group.

   Important:
   You cannot undo this operation.

5. On the Manage Groups dialog box, click Close.
Create and manage workflows

You can use workflows to manage the creation and removal of user accounts. Before you can use a workflow, identify individuals in your organization who have the authority to approve user account requests. Then, you can use the workflow template to create and approve user account requests.

When you set up Endpoint Management for the first time, you configure workflow email settings, which must be set before you can use workflows. You can change workflow email settings at any time. These settings include the email server, port, email address, and whether the request to create the user account requires approval.

You can configure workflows in two places in Endpoint Management:

- In the Settings > Workflows page in the Endpoint Management console. On the Workflows page, you can configure multiple workflows for use with app configurations. When you configure workflows on the Workflows page, you can select the workflow when you configure the app.
- When you configure an application connector in the app, you provide a workflow name and then configure the individuals who can approve the user account request. See Add apps.

You can assign up to three levels for manager approval of user accounts. If you need other persons to approve the user account, you can search for and select them by using their name or email address. When Endpoint Management finds the person, you then add them to the workflow. All individuals in the workflow receive emails to approve or deny the new user account.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The Settings page appears.
2. Click Workflows. The Workflows page appears.
3. Click Add. The Add Workflow page appears.
4. Configure these settings:

- **Name**: Type a unique name for the workflow.
- **Description**: Optionally, type a description for the workflow.
- **Email Approval Templates**: In the list, select the email approval template to be assigned. You create email templates in the Notification Templates section under Settings in the Endpoint Management console. When you click the eye icon to the right of this field, you see a preview of the template you are configuring.
- **Levels of manager approval**: In the list, select the number of levels of manager approval required for this workflow. The default is 1 level. Possible options are:
  - Not Needed
  - 1 level
  - 2 levels
  - 3 levels
- **Select Active Directory domain**: In the list, select the appropriate Active Directory do-
main to be used for the workflow.

- **Find additional required approvers**: Type a name in the search field and then click **Search**. Names originate in Active Directory.

- When the name appears in the field, select the check box next to the name. The name and email address appear in the **Selected additional required approvers** list.
  - To remove a name from the list, do one of the following:
    * Click **Search** to see a list of everyone in the selected domain.
    * Type a full or partial name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the search results.
    * Persons in the **Selected additional required approvers** list have check marks next to their name in the search results list. Scroll through the list and clear the check box next to each name that you want to remove.

5. Click **Save**. The created workflow appears on the **Workflows** page.

After you create the workflow, you can view the workflow details, view the apps associated with the workflow, or delete the workflow. You cannot edit a workflow after you create the workflow. If you need a workflow with different approval levels or approvers, create another workflow.

**To view details and delete a workflow**

1. On the **Workflows** page, in the list of existing workflows, select a specific workflow. To do that, click the row in the table or select the check box next to the workflow.

2. To delete a workflow, click **Delete**. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** again.

  **Important:**

  You cannot undo this operation.

**Notifications**

August 21, 2018

You can use notifications in Endpoint Management for the following purposes:

- To communicate with select groups of users for a number of system-related functions. You can also target these notifications for certain users. For example, all users with iOS devices, users whose devices are out of compliance, users with employee-owned devices, and so on.
- To enroll users and their devices.
- To automatically notify users (using automated actions) when certain conditions are met. For example:
– When a user device is about to be blocked from the corporate domain because of a compliance issue.
– When a device has been jailbroken or rooted.

For details about automated actions, see Automated Actions.

To send notifications with Endpoint Management, you must configure a gateway and a notification server. You can set up a notification server in Endpoint Management to configure Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) and Short Message Service (SMS) gateway servers to send email and text (SMS) notifications to users. You can use notifications to send messages over two different channels: SMTP or SMS.

• SMTP is a connection-oriented, text-based protocol in which a mail sender communicates with a mail receiver by issuing command strings and supplying necessary data, typically over a Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) connection. SMTP sessions consist of commands originated by an SMTP client (the person sending the message) and corresponding responses from the SMTP server.
• SMS is a text messaging service component of phone, Web, or mobile communication systems. SMS uses standardized communications protocols to enable fixed line or mobile phone devices to exchange short text messages.

You can also set up a Carrier SMS Gateway in Endpoint Management to configure notifications that are sent through a SMS gateway of a carrier. Carriers use SMS gateways to send or receive SMS transmissions to or from a telecommunications network. These text-based messages use standardized communications protocols to allow fixed line or mobile phone devices to exchange short text messages.

Prerequisites

• Before configuring the SMS gateway, consult your system administrator to determine the server information. It’s important to know whether the SMS server is hosted on an internal corporate server, or whether the server is part of a hosted email service. In that case, you need information from the website of the service provider.
• Configure the SMTP notifications server to send messages to users. If the server is hosted on an internal server, contact your system administrator for configuration information. If the server is a hosted email service, locate the appropriate configuration information on the website of the service provider.
• Make sure that only one SMTP server and only one SMS server is active at a time.
• Open port 25 from Endpoint Management located in your network DMZ to point back to the SMTP server on your internal network. That enables Endpoint Management to send notifications successfully.
Configure an SMTP server and SMS gateway

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.

2. Under **Notifications**, click **Notification Server**. The **Notification Server** page appears.

3. Click **Add**. A menu appears with options to configure an SMTP server or an SMS gateway.

   ![Notification Server Menu]

   - To add an SMTP server, click **SMTP Server** and then see Add an SMTP server for the steps to configure this setting.
   - To an SMS gateway, click **SMS Gateway** and then see Add an SMS gateway for the steps to configure this setting.
Add an SMTP server

You need to configure the SMTP notifications server to send messages to users. If the SMTP server is hosted on an internal server, you get the server information from your IT department. If the server is a hosted email service, you can find information from the service provider’s website. Only one SMTP server is activated at one time.

1. Configure these settings:

   - **Name**: Type the name associated with this SMTP server account.
   - **Description**: Optionally, enter a description of the server.
   - **SMTP Server**: Type the host name for the server. The host name may be a fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or an IP address.
   - **Secure channel protocol**: In the list, click **SSL**, **TLS**, or **None** for the secure channel protocol used by the server (if the server is configured to use secure authentication). The default
is None.

- **SMTP server port**: Type the port used by the SMTP server. By default, the port is set to 25; if SMTP connections use the SSL secure channel protocol, the port is set to 465.
- **Authentication**: Select **ON** or **OFF**. The default is **OFF**.
- If you enable **Authentication**, configure these settings:
  - **User name**: Type the user name for authentication
  - **Password**: Type the authentication user’s password.
- **Microsoft Secure Password Authentication (SPA)**: If the SMTP server is using the SPA, click **ON**. The default is **OFF**.
- **From Name**: Type the name displayed in the **From** box when a client receives a notification email from this server. For example, Corporate IT.
- **From email**: Type the email address used if an email recipient replies to the notification sent by the SMTP server.

2. Click **Test Configuration** to send a test email notification.

3. Expand **Advanced Settings** and then configure these settings:
   - **Number of SMTP retries**: Type the number of times to retry a failed message sent from the SMTP server. The default is 5.
   - **SMTP Timeout**: Type the duration to wait (in seconds) when sending an SMTP request. Increase this value if message sending is continuously failing because of timeouts. Use caution when decreasing this value; it could increase the number of timed out and undelivered messages. The default is 30 seconds.
   - **Maximum number of SMTP recipients**: Type the maximum number of recipients per email message sent by the SMTP server. The default is 100.

4. Click **Add**.
Add an SMS gateway

1. Configure the following settings:

   - **Name**: Type a name for the SMS Gateway configuration. This field is required.
   - **Description**: Optionally, type a description of the configuration.
   - **Key**: Type the numerical identifier provided by the system administrator when activating the account. This field is required.
   - **Secret**: Type a secret provided by the system administrator that is used to access your account in the event that a password is lost or stolen. This field is required.
   - **Virtual Phone Number**: This field is used when sending to North American phone num-

Note:
Endpoint Management only supports Nexmo SMS messaging. If you do not already have an account to use Nexmo messaging, visit their [website](https://nexmo.com) to create one.
numbers (with the +1 prefix). You must type a Nexmo virtual phone number and you must only use digits in this field. You can purchase virtual phone numbers on the Nexmo website.

- **HTTPS**: Select whether to use HTTPS to transmit SMS requests to Nexmo. The default is **OFF**.

  **Important:**

  Leave HTTPS set to **ON** unless you have guidance from Citrix Support to turn it to **OFF**.

  - **Country Code**: In the list, click the default SMS country code prefix for recipients in your organization. This field always starts with a + symbol. The default is **Afghanistan +93**.

2. Click **Test Configuration** to send a test message using the current configuration. Connection errors, such as authentication or virtual phone number errors, are detected and appear immediately. Messages are received in the same time frame as messages sent between mobile phones.

3. Click **Add**.

### Add a carrier SMS gateway

You can set up a Carrier SMS Gateway in Endpoint Management to configure notifications that are sent through a carrier’s SMS gateway. Carriers use Short Message Service (SMS) gateways to send or receive SMS transmissions to or from a telecommunications network. These text-based messages use standardized communications protocols to allow fixed line or mobile phone devices to exchange short text messages.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.

2. Under **Notifications**, click **Carrier SMS Gateway**. The **Carrier SMS Gateway** page opens.
3. Do one of the following:

- Click **Detect** to automatically discover a gateway. A dialog box appears indicating that there are no new carriers detected or listing the new carriers detected among enrolled devices.
- Click **Add**. The **Add a Carrier SMS Gateway** dialog box appears.
Endpoint Management only supports Nexmo SMS messaging. If you do not already have an account to use Nexmo messaging, visit their website to create one.

4. Configure these settings:

   • **Carrier**: Type the name of the carrier.
   • **Gateway SMTP domain**: Type the domain associated with the SMTP gateway.
   • **Country code**: In the list, click the country code for the carrier.
   • **Email sending prefix**: Optionally, specify an email sending prefix.

5. Click **Add** to add the new carrier or click **Cancel** to not add the new carrier.
Create and update notification templates

You can create or update notification templates in Endpoint Management to be used in automated actions, enrollment, and standard notification messages sent to users. You configure the notification templates to send messages over three different channels: Secure Hub, SMTP, or SMS.

Endpoint Management includes many predefined notification templates that reflect the distinct types of events that Endpoint Management automatically responds to for every device in the system.

Note:

If you plan to use SMTP or SMS channels to send notifications to users, you must set up the channels before you can activate them. Endpoint Management prompts you to set up the channels when you add notification templates if they are not already set up.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The Settings page appears.

2. Click Notification Templates. The Notification Templates page appears.

![Notification Templates](image.png)
Add a notification template

1. Click Add. If no SMS gateway or SMTP server has been set up, a message appears regarding the use of SMS and SMTP notifications. You can choose to set up the SMTP server or SMS gateway now or set them up later.

If you choose to set up SMS or SMTP server settings now, you are redirected to the Notification Server page on the Settings page. After setting up the channels you want to use, you can return to the Notification Template page to continue adding or modifying notification templates.

**Important:**
If you choose to set up SMS or SMTP server settings later, you will not be able to activate those channels when you add or edit a notification template, which means those channels will not be available for sending user notifications.

2. Configure these settings:

   - **Name:** Type a descriptive name for the template.
   - **Description:** Type a description for the template.
   - **Type:** In the list, click the notification type. Only supported channels for the selected type appear. Only one APNS Cert Expiration template is allowed, which is a predefined template. This means you cannot add a new template of this type.

**Note:**
For some template types, the phrase Manual sending supported appears below the type. This means that the template is available in the Notifications list on the Dashboard and on the Devices page to let you manually send the notification to users. Manual sending is not available in any template that uses the following macros in the Subject or Message field on any channel:

   - ${outofcompliance.reason(whitelist_blacklist_apps_name)}
   - ${outofcompliance.reason(smg_block)}

3. Under Channels, configure the information for each channel to be used with this notification. You can choose any or all channels. The channels you choose depends on how you want to send notifications:

   - If you choose Secure Hub, only iOS and Android devices receive the notifications, which appear in the device's notification tray.
   - If you choose SMTP, most users should receive the message because they will have enrolled with their email addresses.
   - If you choose SMS, only users using devices with a SIM card receive the notification.

**Secure Hub:**
• **Activate:** Click to enable the notification channel.

• **Message:** Type the message to be sent to the user. This field is required if you are using Secure Hub. For information about using macros in a message, see [Macros](#).

• **Sound File:** In the list, click the notification sound the user hears when the notification is received.

**SMTP:**

• **Activate:** Click to enable the notification channel.

  You can activate the SMTP notification only after you set up the SMTP server.

• **Sender:** Type an optional sender for the notification, which can be a name, an email address, or both.

• **Recipient:** This field contains a pre-built macro for all but Ad-Hoc notifications to ensure that notifications are sent to the correct SMTP recipient address. Citrix recommends that you do not modify macros in templates. You can also add recipients (for example, the corporate administrator), in addition to the user by adding their addresses separated by a semi-colon (:). To send Ad Hoc notifications, you can enter specific recipients on this page, or you can select devices from the **Manage > Devices** page and send notifications from there. For details, see [Devices](#).

• **Subject:** Type a descriptive subject for the notification. This field is required.

• **Message:** Type the message to be sent to the user. For information about using macros in a message, see [Macros](#).

**SMS:**

• **Activate:** Click to enable the notification channel.

  You can activate the SMTP notification only after you set up the SMTP server.

• **Recipient:** This field contains a pre-built macro for all but Ad-Hoc notifications to ensure that notifications are sent to the correct SMS recipient address. Citrix recommends that you do not modify macros in templates. To send Ad Hoc notifications, you can enter specific recipients, or you can select devices from the **Manage > Devices** page.

• **Message:** Type the message to be sent to the user. This field is required. For information about using macros in a message, see [Macros](#).

4. Click **Add**. When all channels are correctly configured, they appear in this order on the **Notification Templates** page: SMTP, SMS, and Secure Hub. Any channels not correctly configured appear after the correctly configured channels.
Edit a notification template

1. Select a notification template. The edit page specific to that template appears where you can make changes to all but the Type field, as well as activate or deactivate channels.

2. Click Save.

Delete a notification template

You can delete only notification templates that you have added. You cannot delete predefined notification templates.

1. Select an existing notification template.

2. Click Delete. A confirmation dialog box appears.

3. Click Delete to delete the notification template or click Cancel to cancel deleting the notification template.

Configure roles with RBAC

January 17, 2019

Each predefined role-based access control (RBAC) role has certain associated access and feature permissions. This article describes what each of those permissions does. For a full list of default permissions for each built-in role, download Role-Based Access Control Defaults.

When you apply permissions, you are defining the user groups the RBAC role has the permission to manage. The default administrator cannot change the applied permission settings. By default, the applied permissions apply to all user groups.

When you make an assignment, you are assigning the RBAC role to a group, so that the group of users owns the RBAC administrator rights.

Admin Role

Users with the predefined Admin role have access or do not have access to the following features in Endpoint Management. By default, Authorized access (except Self-Help Portal), Console features, and Apply permissions are enabled.

Authorized access for administrators
## Admin console access
Administrators have access to all features on the Endpoint Management console.

## Self-Help Portal access
By default, administrators do not have Self-Help Portal access.

## Shared devices enroller
By default, administrators do not have Shared devices enroller access. This feature is intended for users who require permission to enroll shared devices.

## Remote Support access
Administrators have access to the Remote Support feature.

## Public API access
Administrators have access to the public API to perform actions programmatically that are available on the Endpoint Management console. The actions include administering certificates, apps, devices, delivery groups, and local users.

## COSU devices enroller
By default, administrators do not have access to enroll COSU devices to your Endpoint Management deployment. This feature is intended for users who require permission to enroll COSU devices.

## Console features for administrators
Administrators have unrestricted access to the Endpoint Management console.

### Dashboard
The Dashboard is the first page that administrators see after logging on to the Endpoint Management console. The Dashboard shows basic information about notifications and devices.

### Reporting
The Analyze > Reporting page provides pre-defined reports that let you analyze your app and device deployments.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Devices</th>
<th>The Manage &gt; Devices page is where you manage user devices. You can add individual devices on the page or import a device provisioning file to add multiple devices at one time.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Local Users and Groups</td>
<td>The Manage &gt; Users page is where you can add, edit, or delete local users and local user groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enrollment</td>
<td>The Manage &gt; Enrollment Invitations page is where you manage how users are invited to enroll their devices in Endpoint Management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policies</td>
<td>The Configure &gt; Device Policies page is where you manage device polices, such as VPN and WiFi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App</td>
<td>The Configure &gt; Apps page is where you manage the various apps that users can install on their devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Media</td>
<td>The Configure &gt; Media page is where you manage the various media that users can install on their devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smart action</td>
<td>The Configure &gt; Actions page is where you manage responses to trigger events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delivery Group</td>
<td>The Configure &gt; Delivery Groups page is where you manage delivery groups and the resources associated with them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enrollment Profile</td>
<td>The Configure &gt; Enrollment Profiles page is where you configure enrollment profiles (modes) to allow users to enroll their devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexa for Business</td>
<td>The Settings page is where you manage your Alexa for Business profiles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Settings</td>
<td>The Settings page is where you manage system settings, such as client and server properties, certificates, and credential providers.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Support

The **Troubleshooting and Support** page is where you perform troubleshooting activities such as running diagnostics and generating logs.

---

**Device restrictions for administrators**

Administrators access device features throughout the console by setting device restrictions, setting up and sending notifications to devices, administering apps on the devices, and so on.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Full Wipe device</td>
<td>Erase all data and apps from a device, including memory cards if the device has one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear Restriction</td>
<td>Remove one or more device restrictions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective Wipe device</td>
<td>Erase all corporate data and apps from a device, leaving personal data and apps in place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View locations</td>
<td>See the location of and set geographic restrictions on a device. Includes: Locate device, Track device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lock device</td>
<td>Remotely lock a device so that users cannot use the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unlock device</td>
<td>Remotely unlock a device so that users can use the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lock container</td>
<td>Remotely lock the corporate container on a device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unlock container</td>
<td>Remotely unlock the corporate container on a device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset container password</td>
<td>Reset the corporate container password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable ASM DEP/Bypass activation lock</td>
<td>Store a bypass code on a supervised iOS device when Activation Lock is enabled. To erase the device, use this code to clear the Activation Lock automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get Resident Users</td>
<td>List the users that have active accounts on the current device. This action forces a sync between the device and the Endpoint Management console.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logout Resident User</td>
<td>Force a log out of the current user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Resident User</td>
<td>Delete the current session for a specific user. The user can sign in again.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rings the device</td>
<td>Remotely ring a Windows device at full volume for 5 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reboot the device</td>
<td>Restart Windows devices from the Endpoint Management console.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deploy to device</td>
<td>Send apps, notifications, restrictions, and other resources to a device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit device</td>
<td>Change settings on the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification to device</td>
<td>Send a notification to a device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add/Delete device</td>
<td>Add or remove devices from Endpoint Management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devices import</td>
<td>Import a group of devices from a file into Endpoint Management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export device table</td>
<td>Collect device information from the Device page and export it to a .csv file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revoke device</td>
<td>Prohibit a device from connecting to Endpoint Management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App lock</td>
<td>Deny access to all apps on a device. On Android, this restriction prevents users from signing in to Endpoint Management. On iOS, users can sign in, but they can’t access apps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App wipe</td>
<td>On Android, this restriction deletes the user’s Endpoint Management account. On iOS, this restriction deletes the encryption key required for users to access Endpoint Management features.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View software inventory</td>
<td>See what software is installed on a device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request AirPlay mirroring</td>
<td>Request to start AirPlay streaming.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Stop AirPlay mirroring  Stop AirPlay streaming.

Enable lost mode  On the Manage > Devices page, you can put a supervised device in lost mode to block a supervised device on the lock screen. You can then locate the device when the device is lost or stolen.

Disable lost mode  On the Manage > Devices page, you can disable lost mode for a device that is set to lost mode.

OS Update device  You can deploy an OS Update device policy to devices.

Shut down device  Shut down iOS devices from the Endpoint Management console.

Restart device  Restart iOS devices from the Endpoint Management console.

Renew Device Enrollment Certificate  Renew a device CA certificate.

Local Users and Groups
Administrators manage local users and local user groups on the Manage > Users page in Endpoint Management.

Add/Delete Local Users
Edit Local Users
Import Local Users
Export Local Users
Local User Groups

Enrollment
Administrators can add and delete enrollment invitations, send notifications to users, and export the enrollment table to a .csv file.
Citrix Endpoint Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Add/Delete enrollment</th>
<th>Add or remove an enrollment invitation to a user or a group of users.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Notify user</td>
<td>Send and enrollment invitation to a user or group of users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export enrollment invitation table</td>
<td>Collect enrollment information from the Enrollment page and export it to a .csv file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Policies**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Add/Delete policy</th>
<th>Add or remove a device or app policy.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edit policy</td>
<td>Change a device or app policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upload Policy</td>
<td>Upload a device or app policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clone Policy</td>
<td>Copy a device or app policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disable Policy</td>
<td>Disable an existing app policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export Policy</td>
<td>Collect device policy information from the Device Policies page and export it to a .csv file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign Policy</td>
<td>Assign a device policy to one or more delivery groups.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**App**

Administrators manage apps on the **Configure > Apps** page in Endpoint Management.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Add/Delete app store or enterprise app</th>
<th>Add or remove a public app store app or an app not wrapped with MDX.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edit app store or enterprise app</td>
<td>Edit a public app store app or an app not wrapped with MDX.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add/Delete MDX, Web, and SaaS app</td>
<td>Add or remove apps. A Web app is an app from your internal network. A SaaS apps is an app from a public network (SaaS).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Edit MDX, Web, and SaaS app</strong></td>
<td>Edit apps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Add/Delete category</strong></td>
<td>Add or delete a category in which apps can appear in the app store.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assign public/enterprise app to delivery group</strong></td>
<td>Assign a public app store app or an app not wrapped with MDX to a delivery group for deployment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assign MDX/WebLink/SaaS app to delivery group</strong></td>
<td>Assign apps to a delivery group for deployment to user devices. A WebLink app is an app that does not require single sign-on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Export app table</strong></td>
<td>Collect app information from the App page and export it to a .csv file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Media**

Manage media obtained from a public app store or through a VPP license.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Add/Delete app store or enterprise books</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assign public/enterprise books to delivery group</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Edit app store or enterprise books</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Smart action**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Add/delete smart action</strong></th>
<th>Add or remove an action that is defined by a trigger (event, device or user property, or installed app name) and associated response.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Edit smart action</strong></td>
<td>Change an action that is defined by a trigger (event, device or user property, or installed app name) and associated response.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assign smart action to delivery group</strong></td>
<td>Assign an action to a delivery group for deployment to user devices.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
### Export smart action
Collect action information from the Actions page and export it to a .csv file.

### Delivery group
Administrators manage delivery groups from the **Configure > Delivery Groups** page.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add/delete delivery group</td>
<td>Create or remove a delivery group, which adds specified users and optional policies, apps, and actions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit delivery group</td>
<td>Change an existing delivery group, which modifies users and optional policies, apps, and actions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deploy delivery group</td>
<td>Make delivery group available for use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export delivery group</td>
<td>Collect delivery group information from the Delivery group page and export it to a .csv file.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Enrollment profile
Manage enrollment profiles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add/delete enrollment profile</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edit enrollment profile</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assign enrollment profile to delivery group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Alexa for Business
Manage Alexa for Business profiles.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Add/delete/edit Rooms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Add/delete/edit Room profiles
Add/delete/edit Skill groups

**Settings for administrators**

Administrators configure various settings on the **Settings** pages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RBAC</th>
<th>RBAC Assignment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LDAP</td>
<td>Administrator one or more LDAP-compliant directories, such as Active Directory, to import groups, user accounts, and related properties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enrollment</td>
<td>Enable enrollment modes for users and the Self-Help Portal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Release Management</td>
<td>View the current installed release. Includes: Release Management Update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificates</td>
<td>Edit APNS certificate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification Templates</td>
<td>Create notification templates to use in automated actions, enrollment, and standard notification message delivery to users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Workflows</td>
<td>Manage the creation, approval, and removal of user accounts for use with app configurations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credential Providers</td>
<td>Add one or more credential providers authorized to issue device certificates. The credential providers control the certificate format and the conditions for renewing or revoking the certificate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PKI Entities</td>
<td>Manage public key infrastructure entities (generic, Microsoft Certificate Services, or discretionary CA).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test PKI Connection</td>
<td>Use the Test Connection button on the <strong>Settings &gt; PKI Entities</strong> page to ensure that the server is accessible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client Properties</td>
<td>Manage various properties on user devices, such as passcode type, strength, and expiration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client Support</td>
<td>Set the ways in which users can contact your support services (email, phone, or support ticket email).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client Branding</td>
<td>Create a custom store name and default store views for the app store. Add a custom logo that appears in the app store or Secure Hub.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrier SMS Gateway</td>
<td>Set up carrier SMS gateways to configure notifications that Endpoint Management sends through carrier SMS gateways.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notification Server</td>
<td>Set up an SMTP gateway server to send email to users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActiveSync Gateway</td>
<td>Manage user access to users and devices through rules and properties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Google Chrome</td>
<td>Configure Endpoint Management to communicate with your G Suite account.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)</td>
<td>Add an Apple DEP account to Endpoint Management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apple Configurator Device Enrollment</td>
<td>Configure Apple Configurator settings in Endpoint Management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iOS/VPP Settings</td>
<td>Add Apple Volume Purchase Program accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile Service Provider</td>
<td>Use the Mobile Service Provider interface to query BlackBerry and other Exchange ActiveSync devices and to issue operations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NetScaler Gateway</td>
<td>Configure NetScaler Gateway (now renamed Citrix Gateway) settings in Endpoint Management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Access Control</td>
<td>Set the conditions that determine a device is non-compliant and therefore denied access to the network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samsung KNOX</td>
<td>Enable or disable Endpoint Management to query Samsung KNOX attestation server REST APIs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Server Properties</td>
<td>Add or modify server properties. Requires restarting Endpoint Management on all nodes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XenApp and XenDesktop</td>
<td>Allow users to add Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops (formerly, XenApp and XenDesktop) through Citrix workspace.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrix Files</td>
<td>When using Endpoint Management with Citrix Files Enterprise: Configure settings to connect to the Citrix Files account and administrator service account to manage user accounts. Requires existing Citrix Files domain and administrator credentials. When using Endpoint Management with StorageZone Connectors: Configure Endpoint Management to point to network shares and SharePoint locations defined in StorageZones Connectors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Android Enterprise</td>
<td>Configure Android Enterprise server settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identity Provider (IdP)</td>
<td>Configure an identity provider.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Derived Credentials</td>
<td>Configure derived credentials for iOS device enrollment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft Store for Business</td>
<td>Configure Microsoft Store for Business settings in Endpoint Management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Bulk Enrollment</td>
<td>Configure Windows bulk enrollment settings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Support**

Administrators can perform various support tasks.
### NetScaler Gateway Connectivity Checks
Perform various connectivity checks for NetScaler Gateway by IP address. Requires a user name and password.

### Endpoint Management Connectivity Checks
Perform connectivity checks for selected Endpoint Management features, such as database, DNS, and Google Plan.

### Citrix Product Documentation
Access the public Citrix Endpoint Management documentation site.

### Citrix Knowledge Center
Access the Citrix Support site to search for knowledge base articles.

### Logs
View and download log files.

### Macros
Populate user or device property data within the text field of a profile, policy, notification, or enrollment template. Configure a single policy, deploy the policy to a large user base, and have user-specific values appear for each targeted user.

### PKI Configuration
Import and export PKI configuration information.

### APNS Signing Utility
Submit a request for Apple Push Network signing (APNs) certificates, or upload Secure Mail APNs certificate for iOS.

### Citrix Insight Services
Upload logs to Citrix Insight Services (CIS) for assistance with various issues.

### Device Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync Status
Query Endpoint Management for the status of a device as sent to the connector for Exchange ActiveSync based on the device ActiveSync ID.

### Restrict Group Access
Admin users can apply permissions to all user groups.
Citrix Endpoint Management

Device Provisioning Role

Important:
The Device Provisioning Role applies only to Windows CE devices.

Users with the predefined Device Provisioning role have limited access to console features. By default, their permission is set to all user groups and they cannot change this setting.

Console features for device provisioning

Device provisioning users have the following restricted access to the Endpoint Management console. By default, each of the following features is enabled.

Device restrictions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Access and Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Edit device</td>
<td>Change settings on the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Add/Delete device</td>
<td>Add or remove devices from Endpoint Management.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Settings for device provisioning

Device provisioning users can access the Settings page, but do not have the rights to configure the features.

User Role

Users with the User role have the following limited access to Endpoint Management.

Authorized access for users

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Access</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Self-Help Portal</td>
<td>Provide users access only to the Self-Help Portal in Endpoint Management.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Console features for users**

Users have the following restricted access to the Endpoint Management console.

**Device restricted access for users**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Full Wipe device</td>
<td>Erase all data and apps from a device, including memory cards if the device has one.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective Wipe device</td>
<td>Erase all corporate data and apps from a device, leaving personal data and apps in place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View locations</td>
<td>See the location of and set geographic restrictions on a device. Included: Locate device, See the location of a device, Track device, Track device location over time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lock device</td>
<td>Remotely lock a device so that it cannot be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unlock device</td>
<td>Remotely unlock a device so that it can be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lock container</td>
<td>Remotely lock the corporate container on a device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unlock container</td>
<td>Remotely unlock the corporate container on a device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset container password</td>
<td>Reset the corporate container password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable ASM DEP/Bypass activation lock</td>
<td>Store a bypass code on a supervised iOS device when Activation Lock is enabled. To erase the device, use this code to clear the Activation Lock automatically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get Resident Users</td>
<td>List the users that have active accounts on the current device. This action forces a sync between the device and the Endpoint Management console.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logout Resident User</td>
<td>Force a log out of the current user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delete Resident User</td>
<td>Delete the current session for a specific user. The user can sign in again.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Rings the device
Remotely ring a Windows device at full volume for 5 minutes.

### Reboot the device
Restart a Windows device.

### App lock
Deny access to all apps on a device. On Android, users can’t sign in to Endpoint Management. On iOS, users can sign in, but they can’t access apps.

### App wipe
On Android, this restriction deletes the user’s Endpoint Management account. On iOS, this restriction deletes the encryption key required for users to access Endpoint Management features.

### View software inventory
See what software is installed on a device.

### Enrollment restrictions for users

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Add/Delete enrollment</th>
<th>Add or remove an enrollment invitation to a user or a group of users.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Notify user</td>
<td>Send and enrollment invitation to a user or group of users.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Restrict Group Access for all roles

For all four default roles, this permission is set by default and can be applied to all user groups. You cannot edit the role.

### To use the RBAC feature

The Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) feature in Endpoint Management lets you assign predefined roles, or sets of permissions, to users and groups. These permissions control the level of access users have to system functions.
Endpoint Management implements four default user roles to logically separate access to system functions:

- **Administrator**: Grants full system access.
- **Device Provisioning**: Grants access to basic device administration for Windows CE devices.
- **User**: Used by users who can enroll devices and access the Self Help Portal.

You can also use the default roles as templates that you customize to create user roles. You can assign to those user roles permissions to access additional system functions.

You can assign roles to local users (at the user level) or to Active Directory groups (all users in that group have the same permissions). If a user belongs to several Active Directory groups, all the permissions merge together to define the permissions for that user. For example, if ADGroupA users can locate manager devices, and ADGroupB users can wipe employee devices: A user who belongs to both groups can locate and wipe devices of managers and employees.

**Note:**

Local users may have only one role assigned to them.

You can use the RBAC feature in Endpoint Management to do the following:

- Create a role.
- Add groups to a role.
- Associate local users to roles.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.

2. Click **Role-Based Access Control**. The **Role-Based Access Control** page appears, which displays the four default user roles, plus any roles you have previously added.

If you click the plus sign (+) next to a role, the role expands to show all the permissions for that role.

3. Click **Add** to add a user role. Click the pen icon to the right of an existing role to edit the role. Or, Click the trash can icon to the right of a role that you defined to delete the role. You cannot delete the default user roles.
• When you click Add or the pen icon, the Add Role or the Edit Role page appears.
• When you click the trash can icon, a confirmation dialog appears. Click Delete to remove the selected role.

4. Enter the following information to create a user role or to edit a user role:

   • RBAC name: Enter a descriptive name for the new user role. You cannot change the name of an existing role.
   • RBAC template: Optionally, click a template as the starting point for the new role. When editing an existing role, you cannot select a template.

RBAC templates are the default user roles. They define the access to system functions that users associated with that role have. After you select an RBAC template, you can see all of the permissions associated with that role in the Authorized Access and Console Features fields. Using a template is optional; you can directly select the options you want to assign to a role in the Authorized Access and Console Features fields.

5. Click Apply to the right of the RBAC template field to populate the Authorized access and Console features check boxes. Endpoint Management fills those fields with the pre-defined access and feature permissions for the selected template.

6. Select and clear the check boxes in Authorized access and Console features to customize the role.

   If you click the triangle next to a Console feature, permissions specific to that feature appear that you can select and clear. Clicking the top-level check box prohibits access to that console part. Select individual options below the top level to enable those options.
7. **Apply permissions**: Select one or more user groups to limit which groups the administrator can manage. If you click **To specific user groups**, a list of groups appears from which you can select one or more groups.

For example, if an RBAC administrator has permissions to the ActiveDirectory and MSP user groups:

- The administrator can access information only for users who are in the ActiveDirectory group, the MSP group, or both of those groups.

- The administrator can’t view any other local or AD users. The administrator can view users who are members of child groups of either of those groups.

- The administrator can send invitations to:
  - the permission groups and their child groups
  - the users who are members of permission groups and their child groups

8. Click **Next**. The **Assignment** page appears.

9. Enter the following information to assign the role to user groups.

   - **Select domain**: In the list, click a domain.
• **Include user groups:** Click **Search** to see a list of all available groups. Or, type a full or partial group name to limit the list to only groups with that name.

• In the list that appears, select the user groups to which you want to assign the role. When you select a user group, the group appears in the **Selected user groups** list.

![Screenshot of Citrix Endpoint Management interface with selected user groups](image)

**Note:**
To remove a user group from the **Selected user groups** list, click the X next to the user group name.

10. Click **Save**.

**Device management**

January 11, 2019

Citrix Endpoint Management can manage, secure, and inventory a broad range of device types within a single management console.

• Use a common set of device policies to manage supported devices. For a quick look at the device policies available by platform:

  1. Go to the Endpoint Management console and navigate to **Configure > Device Policies**.

  2. Click **Add** and then select the platforms you want to view.

  For more information, see [Filter the list of added device policies](#).

• Protect business information with strict security for identity, corporate-owned and BYO devices, apps, data, and network. Specify the user identities to use to authenticate to devices. Configure how to keep enterprise and personal data separate on devices.
• Deliver any app to end users, regardless of device or operating system. Protect your information at the app level and ensure enterprise-grade mobile application management.

• Use provisioning and configuration controls to set up devices. Those controls include device enrollment, policy application, and access privileges.

• Use security and compliance controls to create a customized security baseline with actionable triggers. For example, lock, wipe, or notify a device in violation of defined compliance standards.

• Use OS update controls to prevent or enforce operating system updates. This feature is critical for data loss prevention against targeted operating system vulnerabilities.

To access articles about each supported platform, expand the “Device management” section in the contents list. Those articles provide details specific to each device platform. The rest of this article describes how to perform general device management tasks.

**Device management workflows**

The workflow diagrams in this section provide a suggested sequence for performing device management tasks.

1. **Recommended prerequisites for adding devices and apps**: Performing the following setup in advance lets you configure devices and apps without interruption.

   ![Workflow Diagram]

   Recommended before adding devices and apps

   - Add users & groups
   - Add delivery groups
   - Assign roles to users & groups (optional)
   - Prepare notification templates
   - Add workflows for app approvals (optional)

   See:

   - Configure users and groups
   - Deploy resources

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Configure roles with RBAC
Create and update notification templates
Create and manage workflows

2. **Add devices:**

![Add devices](image)

- Upload provisioning file
- Configure device policies
- Deploy policies to delivery groups
- Configure client settings (optional)
- Create automated actions (optional)

See:
- Prepare to enroll devices and deliver resources
- Device policies
- To deploy to delivery groups
- Automated actions

3. **Prepare enrollment invitations:** Perform these tasks if you plan to use enrollment invitations.

![Prepare enrollment invitations](image)

See:
- Configure enrollment modes
Send a notification to devices

4. **Add apps:**

See:

MDX Service

Add apps

Create app categories

Create and manage workflows

To deploy to delivery groups

5. **Perform ongoing device and app management:** In addition to using the Endpoint Management dashboard, we encourage you to review the *What’s new* content for each release. What’s new provides information about any needed actions, such as configuring new device policies.
Enrollment invitations

To manage user devices remotely and securely, you enroll user devices in Endpoint Management. The Endpoint Management client software is installed on the user device and the user identity is authenticated. Then, Endpoint Management and the user profile are installed. For enrollment details for supported device platforms, see the device articles under this section.

In the Endpoint Management console, you can send an enrollment invitation to users with iOS, macOS, and Android devices. You can also send an installation link to users with iOS or Android devices.

Enrollment invitations are sent as follows:

- If the enrollment invitation is for one local or Active Directory user: The user receives the invitation from SMS at the phone number and carrier name you specify.

- If the enrollment invitation is for a group: The users receive invitations from SMS. If Active Directory users have an email address and mobile phone number in Active Directory, they receive
Citrix Endpoint Management

the invitation. Local users receive the invitation at the email and phone number specified in user properties.

After users enroll, their devices appear as managed on Manage > Devices. The status of the invitation URL is shown as Redeemed.

Prerequisites

- LDAP configured
- If using local groups and local users:
  - One or more local groups.
  - Local users assigned to local groups.
  - Delivery groups are associated with local groups.
- If using Active Directory:
  - Delivery groups are associated with Active Directory groups.

Create an enrollment invitation

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click Manage > Enrollment Invitations. The Enrollment Invitations page appears.

2. Click Add. A menu of enrollment options appears.
To send an enrollment invitation to a user or group, click **Add Invitation**.

To send an enrollment installation link to a list of recipients over SMTP or SMS, click **Send Installation Link**.

Sending enrollment invitations and installation links are described after these steps.

3. Click **Add Invitation**. The **Enrollment Invitation** screen appears.

4. Configure these settings:
   - **Recipient**: Choose **Group** or **User**.
   - **Select a platform**: If **Recipient** is **Group**, all platforms are selected. You can change the platform selection. If **Recipient** is **User**, no platforms are selected. Select a platform.
   - **Device ownership**: Select **Corporate** or **Employee**.

   Settings for users or groups appear, as described in the following sections.
To send an enrollment invitation to a user

1. Configure these **User** settings:

   - **User name**: Type a user name. The user must exist in the Endpoint Management server as a local user or as a user in Active Directory. If the user is local, set the email property of the user so you can send that user notifications. If the user is in Active Directory, ensure that LDAP is configured.

   - **Device info**: This setting doesn’t appear if you select multiple platforms or if you select only macOS. Choose **Serial number**, **UDID**, or **IMEI**. After you choose an option, a field appears where you can type the corresponding value for the device.

   - **Phone number**: This setting doesn’t appear if you select multiple platforms or if you select only macOS. Optionally, type the phone number of the user.

   - **Carrier**: This setting doesn’t appear if you select multiple platforms or if you select only macOS. Choose a carrier to associate to the phone number of the user.

   - **Enrollment mode**: Choose how you want users to enroll. The default is **User name + Password**. Some of the following options aren’t available for all platforms:
     - User name + Password
     - High Security
     - Invitation URL
     - Invitation URL + PIN
     - Invitation URL + Password
     - Two Factor
     - User name + PIN
Only the enrollment modes that are valid for each of the selected platforms appear. A PIN for enrollment is also called a one-time PIN. Such PINs are valid only when the user enrolls.

Note:
When you select any enrollment mode that includes a PIN, the Template for enrollment PIN field appears. Click Enrollment PIN.

- **Template for agent download**: Choose the download link template named Download link. That template is for all supported platforms.
- **Template for enrollment URL**: Choose Enrollment Invitation.
- **Template for enrollment confirmation**: Choose Enrollment Confirmation.
- **Expiration**: This field is set when you configure the Enrollment Mode and indicates when the enrollment expires. For more information about configuring enrollment modes, see Configure enrollment modes.
- **Maximum Attempts**: This field is set when you configure the Enrollment Mode and indicates the maximum number of times the enrollment process occurs.
- **Send invitation**: Select ON to send the invitation immediately. Select OFF to add the invitation to the table on the Enrollment Invitations page, but not send it.

1. Click **Save and Send** if you enabled Send invitation. Otherwise, click **Save**. The invitation appears in the table on the Enrollment Invitations page.

To send an enrollment invitation to a group

The following figure shows the settings for configuring an enrollment invitation to a group.
1. Configure these settings:

- **Domain:** Choose the domain of the group to receive the invitation.
- **Group:** Choose the group to receive the invitation.
- **Enrollment mode:** Choose how you want users in the group to enroll. The default is **User name + Password**. Some of the following options aren't available for all platforms:
  - User name + Password
  - High Security
  - Invitation URL
  - Invitation URL + PIN
  - Invitation URL + Password
  - Two Factor
  - User name + PIN

Only the enrollment modes that are valid for each of the selected platforms appear.

**Note:**

When you select any enrollment mode that includes a PIN, the Template for enrollment PIN field appears. Click **Enrollment PIN**.

- **Template for agent download:** Choose the download link template named **Download link**. That template is for all supported platforms.
- **Template for enrollment URL:** Choose **Enrollment Invitation**.
- **Template for enrollment confirmation:** Choose **Enrollment Confirmation**.
**Citrix Endpoint Management**

- **Expire after**: This field is set when you configure the Enrollment Mode and indicates when the enrollment expires. For more information about configuring enrollment modes, see [Configure enrollment modes](#).

- **Maximum Attempts**: This field is set when you configure the Enrollment Mode and indicates the maximum number of times the enrollment process occurs.

- **Send invitation**: Select **ON** to send the invitation immediately. Select **OFF** to add the invitation to the table on the **Enrollment Invitations** page, but not send it.

2. Click **Save and Send** if you enabled **Send invitation**. Otherwise, click **Save**. The invitation appears in the table on the **Enrollment Invitation** page.

To send an installation link

Before you can send an enrollment installation link, you must configure channels (SMTP or SMS) on the notification server from the **Settings** page. For details, see [Notifications](#)
1. Configure these settings and then click **Save**.

- **Recipient**: For each recipient that you want to add, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **Email**: Type the email address of the recipient. This field is required.
  - **Phone number**: Type the phone number of the recipient. This field is required.

**Note:**

To delete a recipient, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the trash icon on the right side. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** to delete the listing or click **Cancel** to keep the listing.

To edit a recipient, hover over the line containing the listing and then click the pen icon on the right side. Update the listing and then click **Save** to save the changed listing or **Cancel** to leave the listing unchanged.

- **Channels**: Select a channel to use for sending the enrollment installation link. You can send notifications over **SMTP** or **SMS**. These channels cannot be activated until you configure the server settings on the **Settings** page in **Notification Server**. For details, see **Notifications**.

- **SMTP**: Configure these optional settings. If you do not type anything in these fields, the default values specified in the notification template configured for the platform you selected are used:
  - **Sender**: Type an optional sender.
  - **Subject**: Type an optional subject for the message. For example, “Enroll your device.”
- **Message**: Type an optional message to be sent to the recipient. For example, “Enroll your device to gain access to organizational apps and email.”

- **SMS**: Configure this setting. If you do not type anything in this field, the default value specified in the notification template configured for the platform you selected is used:

  - **Message**: Type a message to be sent to the recipients. This field is required for SMS-based notification.

    In North America, SMS messages that exceed 160 characters are delivered in multiple messages.

2. Click **Send**.

**Note:**

If your environment uses sAMAccountName: After users receive the invitation and click the link, they must edit the user name to complete the authentication. The user name appears in the form of `sAMAccountName@domainname.com`. Users must remove the `@domainname.com` portion.

**Device enrollment limit**

Endpoint Management includes a default enrollment profile that allows users to enroll an unlimited number of devices. The default profile is named Global. Create enrollment profiles only if you want to limit the number of devices that users can enroll. You associate enrollment profiles with delivery groups.

The device enrollment limit applies to the ENT, MDM, and MAM server modes. This feature is available for iOS and Android devices only.

When your Endpoint Management deployment includes COSU devices, a single Endpoint Management administrator or small group of administrators enroll many COSU devices. To ensure that these administrators can enroll all the devices required, create an enrollment profile for them with unlimited devices allowed per user. For details, see [Add a COSU enrollment profile](#) in the Android Enterprise article.

1. Go to **Configure > Enrollment Profiles**. The default Global profile appears.
2. To add an enrollment profile, click **Add**. In the **Enrollment Info** page, type a name for the enrollment profile and then select the number of devices that members with this profile can enroll.

3. Click **Next**. The **Delivery Group Assignment** screen appears.

4. Select the delivery groups for this enrollment profile and then click **Save**. The **Delivery Groups** page appears.
To change the enrollment profiles associated with a delivery group, go to **Configure > Delivery Groups** and then click **Enrollment Profiles**.

**User experience with a device enrollment limit**

When you set the device enrollment limit and users try to enroll a new device, they follow these steps:

1. Sign on to Secure Hub.
2. Enter a server address to enroll.
3. Enter the credentials.
4. If the device limit is reached, an error message informs the user that they have exceeded the device registration limit.
You have exceeded the number of devices that your organization allows you to enroll. Please delete your account in any other device in order to continue.

OK

The Secure Hub enrollment screen appears again.

**Security actions**

You perform device and app security actions from the **Manage > Devices** page. Device actions include revoke, lock, unlock, and wipe. App security actions include app lock and app wipe.

- **Activation Lock Bypass**: Removes the Activation Lock from supervised iOS devices before device activation. This command doesn’t require the personal Apple ID or password for a user.

- **App lock**: Denies access to all apps on a device. On Android, after an app lock, users can’t sign in to Endpoint Management. On iOS, users can sign in, but they can’t access apps.

- **App wipe**: On Android, an app wipe deletes the user account from Endpoint Management. On iOS, deletes a user account in Secure Hub.

- **ASM DEP Activation Lock**: Creates an Activation Lock bypass code for iOS devices enrolled in Apple School Manager DEP.

- **Certificate renewal**: For supported iOS, macOS, and Android devices, the Certificate Renewal security action initiates certificate renewal. The next time that devices connect back to Endpoint Management, the Endpoint Management server issues new device certificates based on the new CA.

- **Clear restrictions**: On supervised iOS devices, this command allows Endpoint Management to clear the restrictions password and restrictions settings configured by the user.

- **Enable/disable Lost Mode**: Puts a supervised iOS device in Lost Mode and sends the device a message, phone number, and footnote to display. The second time that you send this command takes the device out of Lost Mode.

- **Full wipe**: Immediately erases all data and apps from a device, including from any memory cards.
  - For Android devices, this request can also include the option to wipe memory cards.
- For iOS, macOS, and tvOS devices, the wipe occurs immediately, even if the device is locked.

For iOS 11 devices (minimum version): When you confirm the full wipe, you can choose to preserve the cellular data plan on the device.

For iOS 11.3 devices (minimum version): When you confirm the full wipe, you can prevent iOS devices from performing proximity setup. When setting up a new iOS device, users can normally use an already configured iOS device to set up their own. You can disallow proximity setup on devices that are Endpoint Management managed and have been wiped.

- For Windows Phone devices, a full wipe removes all Endpoint Management information and all user data. The user data removed includes personal content such as apps, emails, contacts, and media.

- If the device user turns off the device before the memory card content is deleted, the user might still have access to device data.

- You can cancel the wipe request until the request is sent to the device.

- **Locate**: Locates a device and reports the device location, including a map, on the Manage > Devices page, under Device details > General.

- **Lock**: Remotely locks a device, which is useful when you lose a device and don’t know if the device is stolen. Endpoint Management then generates a PIN code and sets it in the device. To access the device, the user types the PIN code. Use Cancel Lock to remove the lock from the Endpoint Management console.

- **Lock and Reset Password**: Remotely locks a device and resets the password.

- **Notify (Ring)**: Plays a sound on Android devices.

- **Reboot**: Restarts Windows 10 devices. For Windows Tablet and PCs, the message “System will reboot soon” appears and then the reboot occurs in five minutes. For Windows Phone, the reboot occurs after a few minutes, with no warning message to users.

- **Request/Stop AirPlay Mirroring**: Starts and stops AirPlay mirroring on supervised iOS devices.

- **Restart/ Shut Down**: Immediately restarts or shuts down supervised devices. tvOS supports Restart but not Shut Down.

- **Revoke**: Prohibits a device from connecting to Endpoint Management.

- **Revoke/Authorize (iOS, macOS, tvOS)**: Performs the same actions as a Selective Wipe. After revocation, you can reauthorize the device to reenroll it.

- **Ring**: If the device is in Lost Mode, Ring plays a sound on a supervised iOS device. The sound plays until you removed the device from Lost Mode or the user disables the sound.
• **Selective wipe**: Erases all corporate data and apps from a device, leaving personal data and apps in place. After a selective wipe, a user can reenroll the device.

  - Selectively wiping an Android device does not disconnect the device from Device Manager and the corporate network. To prevent the device from accessing Device Manager, you must also revoke the device certificates.
  - If the Samsung KNOX API is enabled, selectively wiping the device also removes the Samsung KNOX container.
  - For iOS and macOS devices, this command removes any profile installed through MDM.
  - A selective wipe on a Windows device also removes the contents of the profile folder for any currently signed on user. A selective wipe doesn’t remove any web clips that you deliver to users through a configuration. To remove web clips, users manually unenroll their devices. You can’t reenroll a selectively wiped device.
  - Selectively wiping a Windows Phone device removes the enterprise token that allows Endpoint Management to install apps on the device. The wipe also removes all Endpoint Management certificates and configurations deployed to the device. You can’t reenroll a selectively wiped Windows Phone device.
  - Selectively wiping an Android device also revokes the device. You can reenroll the device only after reauthorizing it or deleting it from the console.

• **Unlock**: Clears the passcode sent to the device when it was locked. This command doesn’t unlock the device.

In **Manage > Devices**, the **Device details** page also lists device Security properties. Those properties include Strong ID, Lock Device, Activation Lock Bypass, and other information for the platform type. The **Full Wipe of Device** field includes the user PIN code. The user must enter that code after the device is wiped. If the user forgets the code, you can look it up here.

You can automate some actions. For more information, see Automated actions.

### Remove a device from the Endpoint Management console

**Important:**

When you remove a device from the Endpoint Management console, managed apps and data remain on the device. To remove managed apps and data from the device, see “Delete a device” later in this article.

To remove a device from the Endpoint Management console, go to **Manage > Devices**, select a managed device, and then click **Delete**.
Selectively wipe a device

1. Go to Manage > Devices, select a managed device, and then click Secure.
2. In Security Actions, click Selective wipe.
3. For Android devices only, disconnect the device from the corporate network: After the device is wiped, in Security Actions, click Revoke.
   To withdraw a selective wipe request before the wipe occurs, in Security Actions, click Cancel selective wipe.

Delete a device

This procedure removes managed apps and data from the device and deletes the device from the Devices list in the Endpoint Management console.

1. Go to Manage > Devices, select a managed device, and then click Secure.
2. Click Selective Wipe. When prompted, click Perform Selective Wipe.
3. To verify that the wipe command succeeded, refresh Manage > Devices. In the Mode column, the amber color for MDM and MAM indicates that the wipe command succeeded.
4. On Manage > Devices, select the device, and then click Delete. When prompted, click Delete again.

Lock, unlock, wipe, or unwipe apps

1. Go to Manage > Devices, select a managed device, and then click Secure.
2. In **Security Actions**, click the app action.

   You can also use the **Security Actions** box to check the device status for a user whose account is disabled or deleted from Active Directory. The presence of the App Unlock or App Unwipe actions indicate apps that are locked or wiped.

**Get information about devices**

The Endpoint Management database stores a list of mobile devices. A unique serial number or International Mobile Station Equipment Identity (IMEI)/Mobile Equipment Identifier (MEID) uniquely defines each mobile device. To populate the Endpoint Management console with your devices, you can add the devices manually or you can import a list of devices from a file. For more information about device provisioning file formats, see Device provisioning file formats later in this article.

The **Manage > Devices** page in the Endpoint Management console lists each device and the following information:

- **Status**: Icons indicate whether the device is jailbroken, is managed, whether ActiveSync Gateway is available, and the deployment state.
- **Mode**: Indicates the device mode, such as MDM or MAM+MDM.
- **Other information about the device**, such as **User name**, **Device platform**, **Last access**, and **Inactivity days**. Those headings are the defaults shown.

To customize the **Devices** table, click the down arrow on the last heading. Then, select the additional headings you want to see in the table or clear any headings to remove them.
You can add devices manually, import devices from a device provisioning file, edit device details, perform security actions, and send notifications to devices. You can also export all device table data to a .csv file to create a custom report. The server exports all device attributes. If you apply filters, Endpoint Management uses the filters when creating the .csv file.

**Import devices from a provisioning file**

You can import a file supplied by mobile operators or device manufacturers, or you can create your own device provisioning file. For details, see Device provisioning file formats later in this article.

1. Go to Manage > Devices and then click Import. The Import Provisioning File dialog box appears.
2. Click **Choose File** and then navigate to the file you want to import.

3. Click **Import**. The **Devices** table lists the imported file.

4. To edit the device information, select it and then click **Edit**. For information about the **Device details** pages, see Get information about devices.

**Send a notification to devices**

You can send notifications to devices from the Devices page. For more information about notifications, see **Notifications**.

1. On the **Manage > Devices** page, select the device or devices to which you want to send a notification.

2. Click **Notify**. The **Notification** dialog box appears. The **Recipients** field lists all devices to receive the notification.
3. Configure these settings:

- **Templates:** In the list, click the type of notification you want to send. For each template except for **Ad Hoc**, the **Subject** and **Message** fields show the text configured for the template that you choose.
- **Channels:** Select how to send the message. The default is **SMTP** and **SMS**. Click the tabs to see the message format for each channel.
- **Sender:** Enter an optional sender.
- **Subject:** Enter a subject for an **Ad Hoc** message.
- **Message:** Enter the message for an **Ad Hoc** message.

4. Click **Notify**.
Citrix Endpoint Management

Export the Devices table

1. Filter the Devices table according to what you want to appear in the export file.
2. Click the Export button above the Devices table. Endpoint Management extracts the information in the filtered Devices table and converts it to a .csv file.
3. When prompted, open or save the .csv file.

Tag user devices manually

You can manually tag a device in Endpoint Management in the following ways:

- During the invitation-based enrollment process.
- During the Self Help Portal enrollment process.
- By adding device ownership as a device property

You have the option of tagging the device as either corporate- or employee-owned. When using the Self Help Portal to self-enroll a device, you can tag the device as corporate- or employee-owned. You can also tag a device manually, as follows.

1. Add a property to the device from the Devices tab in the Endpoint Management console.
2. Add the property named Owned by and choose either Corporate or BYOD (employee-owned).

Search for devices

For fast searching, the default search scope includes the following device properties:
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Serial Number
- IMEI
- Wifi MAC address
- Bluetooth MAC address
- Active Sync ID
- User Name

You can configure the search scope through a server property, `include.device.properties.during.search`, which defaults to `false`. To include all device properties in a device search, go to Settings > Server Properties and change the setting to `true`.

**Device provisioning file formats**

Many mobile operators or device manufacturers provide lists of authorized mobile devices. You can use these lists to avoid having to enter a long list of mobile devices manually. Endpoint Management supports an import file format that is common to these supported device types: Android, iOS, and Windows.

A provisioning file that you create manually and use to import devices to Endpoint Management must be in the following format:

```
SerialNumber;IMEI;OperatingSystemFamily;propertyName1;propertyValue1;propertyName2;propertyValue2;…propertyNameN;propertyValueN
```

Keep in mind the following:

- For valid values for each property, see the PDF *Device property names and values*.
- Use the UTF-8 character set.
- Use a semi-colon (;) to separate the fields within the provisioning file. If part of a field contains a semi-colon, escape it with a backslash character (\).

For example, for this property:

```
propertyV;test;1;2
```

Escape it as follows:

```
propertyV\;test\;1\;2
```

- The serial number is required for iOS devices because the serial number is the iOS device identifier.
- For other device platforms, you must include either the serial number or the IMEI.
- Valid values for *OperatingSystemFamily* are WINDOWS, ANDROID, or iOS.

Example of a device provisioning file:
Each line in the file describes a device. The first entry in that sample means the following:

- **SerialNumber:** 1050BF3F517301081610065510590391
- **IMEI:** 15244201625379901
- **OperatingSystemFamily:** WINDOWS
- **PropertyName:** propertyN
- **PropertyValue:** propertyV; test; 1; 2; prop 2

### Shared devices

Endpoint Management lets you configure devices that multiple users can share. The shared devices feature lets, for example, clinicians in hospitals use any nearby device to access apps and data rather than having to carry around a specific device. You might also want shift workers in fields like law enforcement, retail, and manufacturing to share devices to reduce equipment costs.

### Key points about shared devices

You can use any of the supported iOS and Android devices as shared devices. For a list of supported devices, see [Supported device operating systems](#).

#### MDM mode

- Available on both iOS and Android tablets and phones. Basic device enrollment program (DEP) enrollment is not supported for an Endpoint Management Enterprise shared device. Use an authorized DEP to enroll a shared device in this mode.
- Authentication types not supported: Client certificate authentication, Citrix PIN, Touch ID, User Entropy, and two-factor authentication.

#### MDM+MAM mode

- Available only on iOS and Android tablets.
- Only Active Directory user name and password authentication is supported.
• Client certificate authentication, passcode for Secure Hub, Touch ID, User Entropy, and two-factor authentication are not supported.
• MAM-only mode is not supported. The devices must enroll in MDM.
• Only Secure Mail, Secure Web, and the Citrix Files mobile app are supported. HDX apps are not supported.
• Active Directory users are the only supported users. Local users and groups are not supported.
• Re-enrollment is required for existing MDM-only shared devices to update to MDM+MAM mode.
• Users can share Citrix mobile productivity apps and MDX-wrapped apps only; they cannot share native apps on the devices.
• Once downloaded during first-time enrollment, Citrix mobile productivity apps are not downloaded again each time a new user signs on to the device. The new user can pick up the device, sign on, and get going.
• On Android, to isolate each user’s data for security purposes, enable the Disallow rooted devices policy in the Endpoint Management console.

Prerequisites for enrolling shared devices

Before you can enroll shared devices, you must do the following:

• Create a shared device enrollment user role. See Configure roles with RBAC.
• Create a shared device user. See Add, edit, or delete local user accounts.
• Create a delivery group that contains the base policies, apps, and actions that you want to be applied to the shared device enrollment user. See Deploy resources.

Prerequisites for MDM+MAM mode

1. Create an Active Directory group named something like Shared Device Enrollers.
2. Add to this group the Active Directory users who you want to enroll shared devices. If you want a new account for this purpose, create a new Active Directory user (for example, sdenroll) and add that user to the Active Directory group.

Configuring a shared device

Follow these steps to configure a shared device.

1. From the Endpoint Management console, click the gear in the upper-right corner. The Settings page appears.
2. Click Role-Based Access Control, then click Add. The Add Role screen appears.
3. Create a shared-device enrollment user role named Shared Device Enrollment User with Shared devices enroller permissions under Authorized Access. Be sure to expand Devices in
**Console features** and then select **Selective Wipe device**. This setting ensures that the apps and policies provisioned through the shared devices enroller account are deleted through Secure Hub, when the device is unenrolled.

For **Apply Permissions**, keep the default setting, **To all user groups**, or assign permissions to specific Active Directory user groups with the **To specific user groups**.

Click **Next** to move to the **Assignment** screen. Assign the shared-device enrollment role you created to the Active Directory group you created for shared device enrollment users. In the following image, **citrix.lab** is the Active Directory domain and **Shared Device Enrollers** is the Active Directory group.

4. Create a delivery group that contains the base policies, apps, and actions that you want to apply to the device when a user is not signed on. Then, associate that delivery group with the shared device enrollment user Active Directory group.
5. Install Secure Hub on the shared device and enroll it in Endpoint Management using the shared device enrollment user account. You can now view and manage the device through the Endpoint Management console.

6. To apply different policies or to provide more apps for authenticated users, you must create a delivery group associated with those users and deployed to shared devices only. When creating the groups, configure deployment rules to ensure that the packages are deployed to shared devices. For more information, see Deploy Resources.

7. To stop sharing the device, perform a selective wipe to remove the shared device enrollment user account from the device. The selective wipe also removes any apps and policies deployed to the device.

Shared device user experience

**MDM mode**

Users see only the resources available to them, and they have the same experience on every shared device. The shared device enrollment policies and apps always remain on the device. When a user who isn’t enrolled in shared devices signs on to Secure Hub, that person’s policies and apps are deployed to the device. When that user signs off, the policies and apps that differ from those of the shared device enrollment are removed. The shared-device enrollment resources remain intact.

**MDM+MAM mode**

Secure Mail and Secure Web are deployed to the device when enrolled by the shared device enrollment user. User data is maintained securely on the device. The data is not exposed to other users when they sign on to Secure Mail or Secure Web.
Citrix Endpoint Management

Only one user at a time can sign on to Secure Hub. The previous user must sign off before the next user can sign on. For security reasons, Secure Hub does not store user credentials on shared devices, so users must enter their credentials each time they sign on. To ensure that a new user cannot access resources intended for the previous user: Secure Hub does not allow new users to sign on while the policies, apps, and data associated with the previous user are being removed.

Shared device enrollment doesn’t change the process for upgrading apps. You can push upgrades to shared-device users as always, and shared-device users can upgrade apps right on their devices.

**Recommended Secure Mail policies**

- For the best Secure Mail performance, set **Max sync period** based on the number of users to share the device. Allowing unlimited sync is not recommended.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of users sharing device</th>
<th>Recommended max sync period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21–25</td>
<td>1 week or less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6–20</td>
<td>2 weeks or less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 or fewer</td>
<td>1 month or less</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Block **Enable contact export** to avoid exposing a user’s contacts to other users who share the device.

- On iOS, only the following settings can be set per user. All other settings are common across users who share the device:
  - Notifications
  - Signature
  - Out of Office
  - Sync Mail Period
  - S/MIME
  - Check Spelling

**Alexa for Business**

December 12, 2018

The Alexa for Business service of Amazon Web Services (AWS) lets you manage large numbers of Alexa-enabled devices for business uses, such as conference room assistance. Endpoint Management lets you configure and manage these devices in the Endpoint Management console.
Citrix Endpoint Management

ment doesn’t deploy policies directly to Alexa devices. Instead, Endpoint Management updates AWS services and AWS delivers the configurations to Alexa devices.

For information about using Alexa for Business, see the Alexa for Business Administration Guide.

Authenticate your AWS account to Endpoint Management

1. To get your AWS account credentials, log in to the AWS console and select My Security Credentials from the user menu.

2. Select Users in the left panel.
3. Search for your user name and then select it.

4. In the Security Credentials tab, click Create access key to generate your access key ID and secret access key.
5. Download the access key ID and secret access key. Save or make a note of them.

6. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon to go to **Settings**.

7. Under **Platforms**, select **Alexa for Business**.
8. Enter your access key ID and secret access key. Click Save.

Configure policies for Alexa for Business

Endpoint Management lets you configure:

- Room profiles of settings that you apply to rooms containing Alexa devices
- Rooms that represent the physical rooms that contain the devices
- Skill groups that you assign to rooms or devices

**Note:** In this release of Endpoint Management, some Alexa for Business configuration and management functionality is not available through the Endpoint Management console. In some cases, actions that appear to be available in the Endpoint Management console have no effect. You can’t set the default room profile, edit the skills in a skill group, or edit the skill groups assigned to rooms. Also, conferencing and calendar are not supported in this Endpoint Management release.
Configure room profiles

A room profile is a set of common configurations that can be applied to a collection of rooms that contain Alexa devices. You configure a room profile from the Endpoint Management console.

**Note:** In this release, you can add and delete room profiles. You can’t set the default room profile or edit room profiles after they have been added.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, select **Configure > Alexa for Business > Room Profiles**. The list of available room profiles appears.

2. To add a room profile, click **Add**.

3. Enter the room profile settings:

   - **Profile Name:** Type the name of the profile.
   - **Address:** Type the physical (street) address of the building where the rooms containing Alexa devices are.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- **Time zone:** Choose the time zone of the place.
- **Wake Word:** Choose the wake word that Alexa devices respond to.
- **Temperature units:** Select the units in which Alexa devices report the temperature.
- **Distance Units:** Select the units in which Alexa devices report the distance.
- **Maximum Volume:** Choose the maximum volume setting for Alexa.
- **Device setup mode:** Select whether the Alexa devices can be reconfigured by forcing them to the device setup mode.
- **Outbound Calling:** Enable or disable the outbound calling capability of Alexa devices.
- **Address book:** Set up the address book configuration for Alexa devices.

4. Click **Save**.

**Configure rooms**

The rooms you configure in the Endpoint Management console represent the physical conference rooms, meeting rooms, and other rooms in the building. While configuring a room, you associate an Alexa device for the room and add a skill groups to the device.

**Note** In this release, you can add and delete rooms. You can’t edit the room settings after rooms have been added.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, select **Configure > Alexa for Business > Rooms**. The list of available rooms appears.

2. To add a room, click **Add**.

3. Enter these room settings:
• **Room Name**: Type the name of the conference room, meeting room, or other room.
• **Room calendar email**: Type the calendar email address of the room.
• **Room Profile**: Choose the name of the room profile configuration for the room.

4. Click **Next**.

5. To associate an Alexa device with the room, click **Add**.

6. Select a device and click **Add**. The selected device appears in the **Add Echo devices** screen.

7. Click **Next**. The **Add skill groups** screen appears.
8. Select the skill groups you want to add to the devices.

9. Click **Add**.

10. Click **Save**.

**Configure skill groups**

Skill groups are collections of skills that can be applied to a room. You can create a skill group and then assign it to a room. Skills let you use an Alexa device to do things like start and end an online meeting or review a list of agenda items. You add them to your Alexa for Business configuration from the AWS console.

**Note** In this release, you can add skill groups, delete skill groups, add skills to a saved skill group, and assign skill groups to rooms. You can’t add skills to your list of available skills or delete skills from a
In the Endpoint Management console, select **Configure > Alexa for Business > Skill Group**. The list of available skill groups appears.

2. To add a skill group, click **Add**.

3. Enter these skill group settings:

   - **Name**: Type the name of the skill group.
   - **Description**: Type a brief description of the skill group.

4. Click **Next**. The **Add skills** screen appears.
5. Select the skills you want to include in the skill group.

6. Click **Next**.

7. Select the room you want to assign the skill group to.

8. Click **Save**.

### Android Enterprise

January 22, 2019

Android Enterprise (Android enterprise) is a secure workspace available on Android devices. The workspace isolates business accounts, apps, and data from personal accounts, apps, and data.
In Endpoint Management, you manage your bring your own device (BYOD) and company-owned Android devices by having users create a separate work profile on their devices. By combining hardware encryption and the policies that you deploy, you securely separate the corporate and personal areas on a device. You can remotely manage or wipe all corporate policies, apps, and data without affecting the personal area of the user. For more information about supported Android devices, see the Google Android Enterprise website.

You use Google Play to add, buy, and approve apps for deployment to the Android Enterprise workspace on a device. You can use Google Play to deploy your private Android apps, in addition to public and third-party apps. When you add a paid public app store app to Endpoint Management for Android Enterprise, you can review the Bulk Purchase licensing status. That status is the total number of licenses available, the number now in use, and the email address of each user consuming the licenses. For details about adding an app to Endpoint Management, see Add a public app store app.

Note:
Android Enterprise was previously called Android for Work. Some portions of our product still refer to Android for Work.

To control how and when Android devices connect to the Endpoint Management service, use Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM). For information, see Firebase Cloud Messaging.

Endpoint Management enrolls Android devices into MDM+MAM or MDM mode, with the option for users to register in MAM-only mode. Endpoint Management supports the following authentication types for Android devices in MDM+MAM mode. For information, see the articles under Certificates and authentication.

- Domain
- Domain plus security token
- Client certificate
- Client certificate plus domain
- Identity providers:
  - Azure Active Directory
  - Citrix Identity provider

Another rarely used authentication method is client certificate plus security token. For information, see https://support.citrix.com/article/CTX215200.

A general workflow for starting Android Enterprise device management is as follows:

1. Complete the onboarding process. See Onboarding and resource setup and Prepare to enroll devices and deliver resources.
2. Set up Android Enterprise.
3. Configure Android Enterprise device policies.
4. Choose the user name type for enrollment.

5. Choose a provisioning method:
   - Provision work-managed device mode in Android Enterprise.
   - Provision work profile mode in Android Enterprise.
   - Provision COSU Android Enterprise devices.


For supported operating systems, see Supported device operating systems.

**Set up Android Enterprise**

Endpoint Management provides a simple way to set up Android Enterprise for your organization. You register Citrix as your enterprise mobility management (EMM) provider through Google Play. This creates an enterprise for Android Enterprise in Endpoint Management.

**Note:**
G Suite customers, see Legacy Android Enterprise for G Suite customers, which includes a table of related policy information.

You’ll need your corporate Google ID credentials to sign in to Google Play.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.

2. On the **Settings** page, click **Android Enterprise**.

3. On the **Android Enterprise** page in Endpoint Management Settings, click **Connect**. This takes you to Google Play.
4. Sign in to Google Play with your corporate Google ID. Enter your organization name and confirm Citrix is your EMM provider.

5. An enterprise ID is added for Android Enterprise. To enable Android Enterprise, slide **Enable Android Enterprise** to **Yes**.

### Publish Citrix mobile productivity apps for Android Enterprise

To publish Citrix mobile productivity apps for Android Enterprise, follow these steps.

1. In your managed Google Play Store account, publish the apps you want your users to have. You can manage your Google Play account at https://play.google.com/work.
2. In your Endpoint Management console, publish the same apps as the following:
   a) Select public store apps and choose Android Enterprise. For more information on publishing public store apps, see Add a public app store app.
b) Publish the apps as MDX apps, so that they receive MDX policies. For more information on publishing MDX apps, see Add an MDX app.

**Unenroll an Android Enterprise enterprise**

You can unenroll an Android Enterprise enterprise using the Endpoint Management server console and Endpoint Management Tools.

When you perform this task, the Endpoint Management server opens a popup window for Endpoint Management Tools. Before you begin, ensure that the Endpoint Management server has permission to open popup windows in the browser you are using. Some browsers, such as Google Chrome, require you to disable popup blocking and add the address of the Endpoint Management site to the popup block whitelist.

**Warning:**

After an enterprise is unenrolled, Android Enterprise apps on devices already enrolled through it are reset to their default states. Google no longer manages the devices. Re-enrolling them in an Android Enterprise enterprise may not restore previous functionality unless you perform further configuration.

After the Android Enterprise enterprise is unenrolled:

- Devices and users enrolled through the enterprise have the Android Enterprise apps reset to their default state. Android Enterprise App Permissions and Android Enterprise Managed Configurations policies previously applied no longer affect operations.
- Endpoint Management manages devices enrolled through the enterprise. From the perspective of Google, those devices are unmanaged. You can’t add new Android Enterprise apps. You can’t apply Android Enterprise App Permissions or Android Enterprise Managed Configurations policies. You can apply other policies, such as Scheduling, Password, and Restrictions, to these devices.
- If you attempt to enroll devices in Android Enterprise, they are enrolled as Android devices, not Android Enterprise devices.

To unenroll an Android Enterprise enterprise:

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The Settings page appears.
2. On the Settings page, click **Android Enterprise**.
3. Click **Unenroll**.
Configure Android Enterprise device policies

Use these policies to configure how Endpoint Management interacts with devices running Android Enterprise. This table lists all device policies available for Android Enterprise devices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Android Enterprise</th>
<th>Android Enterprise</th>
<th>App Uninstall</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>App Permissions</td>
<td>Managed Configurations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection Scheduling</td>
<td>Control OS Update</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom XML</td>
<td>Exchange</td>
<td>Kiosk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passcode</td>
<td>Restrictions</td>
<td>WiFi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also, Android Enterprise supported device policies and MDX policies.

Choose the user name type for enrollment

If your device enrollment process requires users to enter a username or user ID: The format accepted depends on whether Endpoint Management is configured to search for users by User Principal Name (UPN) or SAM account name.

If the Endpoint Management is configured to search for users by UPN, users must enter a UPN in the format:
Citrix Endpoint Management

- `username@domain`

If the Endpoint Management is configured to search for users by SAM, users must enter a SAM in one of these formats:

- `username@domain`
- `domain\username`

To determine which type of user name that Endpoint Management uses:

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The Settings page appears.
2. Click LDAP to view the configuration of the LDAP connection.
3. Near the bottom of the page, view the User search by field:
   - If it is set to `userPrincipalName`, Endpoint Management is set for UPN.
   - If it is set to `sAMAccountName`, Endpoint Management is set for SAM.

** Provision work-managed device mode in Android Enterprise **

Work-managed device mode for Android Enterprise is available for corporate-owned devices only. Endpoint Management supports these methods of enrollment in work-managed device mode:

- **afw#xenmobile**: With this enrollment method, the user enters the characters “afw#xenmobile” when setting up the device. This token identifies the device as managed by Endpoint Management and downloads Secure Hub.

- **QR code**: QR code provisioning is an easy way to provision a distributed fleet of devices that do not support NFC, such as tablets. The QR code enrollment method can be used on fleet devices that have been reset to their factory settings. The QR code enrollment method sets up and configures work-managed device mode by scanning a QR code from the setup wizard.

- **Near field communication (NFC) bump**: The NFC bump enrollment method can be used on fleet devices that have been reset to their factory settings. An NFC bump transfers data through between two devices using near-field communication. Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and other communication modes are disabled on a factory-reset device. NFC is the only communication protocol that the device can use in this state.

**afw#xenmobile**

The enrollment method is used after powering on a new or factory reset devices for initial setup. Users enter “afw#xenmobile” when prompted to enter a Google account. This action downloads and installs Secure Hub. Users then follow the Secure Hub set-up prompts to complete the enrollment.
In this enrollment method is recommended for most customers because the latest version of Secure Hub is downloaded from the Google Play store. Unlike with other enrollment methods, you do not provide Secure Hub for download from the Endpoint Management server.

Prerequisites:

- Supported on all Android devices running the Android OS.

**QR code**

To enroll a device in device mode using a QR code, you generate a QR code by creating a JSON and converting the JSON to a QR code. Device cameras scan the QR code to enroll the device.

Prerequisites:

- Supported on all Android devices running Android 7.0 and above.

**Create a QR code from a JSON**

Create a JSON with the following fields.

These fields are required:

- **Key**: android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_COMPONENT_NAME
  - **Value**: com.zenprise/com.zenprise.configuration/AdminFunction

- **Key**: android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_SIGNATURE_CHECKSUM
  - **Value**: qn7oZUtheu3JBAinzZRrrjCQv6LOO6LlOjcxT3-yKM

- **Key**: android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_DOWNLOAD_LOCATION
  - **Value**: https://path/to/securehub.apk

**Note:**

If Secure Hub is uploaded onto Citrix Endpoint Management server as an enterprise app, it can be downloaded from https://<fqdn>:4443/*instanceName*/worxhome.apk. The path to the Secure Hub APK must be accessible over the Wi-Fi connection that the device connects to during provisioning.

These fields are optional:

- **android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_LOCALE**: Enter language and country codes.
  
The language codes are two-letter lowercase ISO language codes (such as en) as defined by ISO 639-1. The country codes are two-letter uppercase ISO country codes (such as US) as defined by ISO 3166-1. For example, enter en_US for English as spoken in the United States.
• android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_TIME_ZONE: The time zone in which the device is running. Enter an Olson name of the form area/location. For example, America/Los_Angeles for Pacific time. If you don’t enter one, the time zone is automatically populated.

• android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_LOCAL_TIME: Time in milliseconds since the Epoch. The Unix epoch (or Unix time, POSIX time, or Unix timestamp) is the number of seconds that have elapsed since January 1, 1970 (midnight UTC/GMT). The time doesn’t include leap seconds (in ISO 8601: 1970-01-01T00:00:00Z).

• android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_SKIP_ENCRYPTION: Set to true to skip encryption during profile creation. Set to false to force encryption during profile creation.

A typical JSON looks like the following:

```json
{
  "android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_COMPONENT_NAME": "com.xenprise/com.xenprise.configuration.AdminFunction",
  "android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_SIGNATURE_CHECKSUM": "qno70xuhuw3jinx3rjrjCqv4llo6110ljoxt3-yMK",
  "android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_DOWNLOAD_LOCATION": "https://www.example.com/securehub.png",
  "android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_LOCAL_TIME": "us-",
  "android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_TIME_ZONE": "America/Los_Angeles",
  "android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_LOCAL_TIME": "1907852841578",
  "android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_SKIP_ENCRYPTION": false
}
```

Validate the JSON that is created using any JSON validation tool, such as https://jsonlint.com. Convert that JSON string to a QR code using any online QR code generator, such as https://goqr.me.

This QR code gets scanned by a factory-reset device to enroll the device in work-managed device mode.

To enroll the device

To enroll a device in work-managed device mode, the device must be in factory reset state.

1. Tap the screen six times on the welcome screen to launch the QR code enrollment flow.

2. When prompted, connect to Wi-Fi. The download location for Secure Hub in the QR code (encoded in the JSON) is accessible over this Wi-Fi network.

   Once the device successfully connects to Wi-Fi, it downloads a QR code reader from Google and launches the camera.

3. Point the camera to the QR code to scan the code.

   Android downloads Secure Hub from the download location in the QR code, validate the signing certificate signature, install Secure Hub and sets it as device owner.

For more information, see this Google guide for Android EMM developers: https://developers.google.com/android/work/prov-devices#qr_code_method.
NFC bump

To enroll a device in device mode using NFC bumps requires two devices: One that is reset to its factory settings and one running the Endpoint Management Provisioning Tool.

Prerequisites:

- Supported Android devices
- Endpoint Management enabled for Android Enterprise
- A factory-reset device, provisioned for Android Enterprise in work-managed device mode. You can find steps to complete this prerequisite later in this article.
- Another device with NFC capability, running the configured Provisioning Tool. The Provisioning Tool is available in Secure Hub or on the Citrix downloads page.

Each device can have only one Android Enterprise profile, managed by an enterprise mobility management (EMM) app. In Endpoint Management, Secure Hub is the EMM app. Only one profile is allowed on each device. Attempting to add a second EMM app removes the first EMM app.

You can start work-managed device mode on new devices or on devices restored to factory settings. You manage the entire device by using Endpoint Management.

Data transferred through the NFC bump

Provisioning a factory-reset device requires you to send the following data through an NFC bump to initialize Android Enterprise:

- Package name of the EMM provider app that acts as device owner (in this case, Secure Hub).
- Intranet/Internet location from which the device can download the EMM provider app.
- SHA1 hash of EMM provider app to verify if the download is successful.
- Wi-Fi connection details so that a factory-reset device can connect and download the EMM provider app. Note: Android now does not support 802.1x Wi-Fi for this step.
- Time zone for the device (optional).
- Geographic location for the device (optional).

When the two devices are bumped, the data from the Provisioning Tool is sent to the factory-reset device. That data is then used to download Secure Hub with administrator settings. If you don’t enter time zone and location values, Android automatically configures the values on the new device.

Configuring the Endpoint Management Provisioning Tool

Before doing an NFC bump, you must configure the Provisioning Tool. This configuration is then transferred to the factory-reset device during the NFC bump.
You can type data into the required fields or populate them via text file. The steps in the next procedure describe how to configure the text file and contain descriptions for each field. The app doesn’t save information after you type it, so you might want to create a text file to keep the information for future
To configure the Provisioning Tool by using a text file

Name the file nfcprovisioning.txt and place the file in the /sdcard/ folder on the SD card of the device. The app can then read the text file and populate the values.

The text file must contain the following data:

```plaintext
android.app.extra.PROVISIONINGDEVICEADMINPACKAGEDOWNLOADLOCATION=<download_location>
```

This line is the intranet/internet location of the EMM provider app. After the factory-reset device connects to Wi-Fi following the NFC bump, the device must have access to this location for downloading. The URL is a regular URL, with no special formatting required.

```plaintext
android.app.extra.PROVISIONINGDEVICEADMINPACKAGECHECKSUM=<SHA1 hash>
```

This line is the checksum of the EMM provider app. This checksum is used to verify that the download is successful. Steps to obtain the checksum are discussed later in this article.

```plaintext
android.app.extra.PROVISIONINGWIFISSID=<wifi ssid>
```

This line is the connected Wi-Fi SSID of the device on which the Provisioning Tool is running.

```plaintext
android.app.extra.PROVISIONINGWIFISECURITYTYPE=<wifi security type>
```

Supported values are WEP and WPA2. If the Wi-Fi is unprotected, this field must be empty.

```plaintext
android.app.extra.PROVISIONINGWIFIPASSWORD=<wifi password>
```

If the Wi-Fi is unprotected, this field must be empty.

```plaintext
android.app.extra.PROVISIONINGLOCALE=<locale>
```

Enter language and country codes. The language codes are two-letter lowercase ISO language codes (such as en) as defined by ISO 639-1. The country codes are two-letter uppercase ISO country codes (such as US) as defined by ISO 3166-1. For example, type en_US for English as spoken in the United States. If you don’t type any codes, the country and language are automatically populated.

```plaintext
android.app.extra.PROVISIONINGTIMEZONE=<timezone>
```

The time zone in which the device is running. Type an Olson name of the form area/location. For example, America/Los_Angeles for Pacific time. If you don’t enter a name, the time zone is automatically populated.

```plaintext
android.app.extra.PROVISIONINGDEVICEADMINPACKAGENAME=<package name>
```

This data isn’t required, because the value is hardcoded into the app as Secure Hub. It’s mentioned here only for the sake of completion.
If there is a Wi-Fi protected by using WPA2, a completed `nfcprovisioning.txt` file might look like the following:

```plaintext
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_DOWNLOAD_LOCATION=https://www.somepublicurlhere.com/path/to/securehub.apk
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_CHECKSUM=ga50TwdCmfdJ72LRFkke4Crb\u003d
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_WIFI_SSID=Protected_WiFi_Name
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_WIFI_SECURITY_TYPE=WPA2
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_WIFI_PASSWORD=wifiPasswordHere
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_LOCALE=en_US
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_TIME_ZONE=America/Los_Angeles
```

If there is an unprotected Wi-Fi, a completed `nfcprovisioning.txt` file might look like the following:

```plaintext
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_DOWNLOAD_LOCATION=https://www.somepublicurlhere.com/path/to/securehub.apk
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_CHECKSUM=ga50TwdCmfdJ72LRFkke4Crb\u003d
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_WIFI_SSID=Unprotected_WiFi_Name
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_LOCALE=en_US
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_TIME_ZONE=America/Los_Angeles
```

**To get the Secure Hub checksum**

To get the checksum of any app, add the app as an enterprise app.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, go to **Configure > Apps** and then click **Add**.

   The **Add Apps** window appears.

2. Click **Enterprise**.

   The **App information** page displays.
3. Select the following configuration and then click **Next**.

The **Android Enterprise Enterprise App** page appears.

4. Provide the path to the .apk and then click **Next** to upload the file.

Once the upload is complete, the details of the uploaded package appear.
5. Click **Next**. Click **Download JSON** to download the JSON file which you then use to upload to Google Play. For Secure Hub, uploading to Google Play is not required, but you need the JSON file to read the SHA1 value from it.

6. Copy the **file_sha1_base64 value** and use it in the **Hash** field in the Provisioning Tool.
**Note:** The hash must be URL safe.

- Convert any + symbols to -
- Convert any / symbols to _
- Replace the trailing \u003d with =

If you store the hash in the nfcprovisioning.txt file on the SD card of the device, the app does the safety conversion. However, if you opt to type the hash manually, it's your responsibility to ensure its URL safety.

**Libraries used**

The Provisioning Tool uses the following libraries in its source code:

- v7 appcompat library, Design support library, and v7 Palette library by Google under Apache license 2.0
  
  For information, see [Support Library Features Guide](#).

- **ButterKnife** by Jake Wharton under Apache license 2.0

**Provision work profile mode in Android Enterprise**

Work profile mode for Android Enterprise is available for devices on which you securely separate the corporate and personal areas on a device. For example, work profile mode is available for BYOD devices. The enrollment experience for work profile mode is similar to Android enrollment in Endpoint Management. Users download Secure Hub from Google Play and enroll their devices.

By default, the USB Debugging and Unknown Sources settings are disabled on a device when it is enrolled in Android Enterprise in work profile mode.

**Tip:**

When enrolling devices in Android Enterprise in work profile mode, always go to Google Play. From there, enable Secure Hub to appear in the user’s personal profile.

**Provision COSU Android Enterprise devices**

Endpoint Management supports the management of corporate owned single use (COSU) Android Enterprise devices. COSU devices fulfill a single use case, such as digital signage, ticket printing, or inventory management. Administrators restrict these devices to one app or small set of apps. Administrators also prevent users from enabling other apps or performing other actions on the device.

To provision COSU devices:
• Add a role-based access control (RBAC) role that allows Endpoint Management administrators to enroll COSU devices to your Endpoint Management deployment. Assign this role to users whom you want to enroll COSU devices.

• Add an enrollment profile for Endpoint Management administrators that you allow to enroll COSU devices to your Endpoint Management deployment.

• Whitelist the app or apps you want the COSU device to access.

• Optionally, set the whitelisted app to allow lock task mode. When an app is in lock task mode, the app is pinned to the device screen when the user opens it. No Home button appears and the Back button is disabled. The user exits the app using an action programmed into the app, such as signing out.

• Provision each device using xfw#mobile, NFC bump, or QR code method, when the device is first powered on after factory reset. See xfw#xenmobile, NFC bump, or QR code.

**System requirements**

• Support for enrolling Android COSU devices begins with Android 6.0.

• Device must be new or factory reset.

**Add the COSU role**

The RBAC role for enrolling COSU devices enables Endpoint Management to silently provision and activate a managed Google Play account on the device. Unlike managed Google Play user accounts, these device accounts identify a device that is not tied to a user.

You assign this RBAC role to Endpoint Management administrators to enable them to enroll COSU devices.

To add the RBAC role for enrolling COSU devices:

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.

2. Click **Role-Based Access Control**. The Role-Based Access Control page appears, which displays the four default user roles, plus any roles you have previously added.

3. Click **Add**. The **Add Role** page appears.

4. Enter the following information.

   • **RBAC name**: Enter COSU or other descriptive name for the role. You cannot change the name of a role.

   • **RBAC template**: Choose the ADMIN template.

   • **Authorized access**: Select **Admin console access** and **COSU devices enroler**.

   • **Console features**: Select **Devices**.
• **Apply permissions**: Select the groups to which you want to apply the COSU role. If you click **To specific user groups**, a list of groups appears from which you can select one or more groups.

5. Click **Next**. The Assignment page appears.

6. Enter the following information to assign the role to user groups.

   • **Select domain**: In the list, click a domain.
   
   • **Include user groups**: Click **Search** to see a list of all available groups. Or, type a full or partial group name to limit the list to only groups with that name.
   
   • In the list that appears, select the user groups to which you want to assign the role. When you select a user group, the group appears in the **Selected user groups** list.

   **Note:**
   
   You can assign a role to user groups only for Active Directory users, not local users created in Endpoint Management.

7. Click **Save**.

---

**Add a COSU enrollment profile**

When your Endpoint Management deployment includes COSU devices, a single Endpoint Management administrator or small group of administrators enroll many COSU devices. To ensure that these administrators can enroll all the devices required, create an enrollment profile for them with unlimited devices allowed per user. Assign this profile to a delivery group containing the administrators who enroll COSU devices. That way, even if the default Global profile has a limited number of devices allowed per user, administrators can enroll an unlimited number of devices. Those administrators must be in the COSU enrollment profile.

1. Go to **Configure > Enrollment Profiles**. The default Global profile appears.

2. To add an enrollment profile, click **Add**. In the Enrollment Info page, type a name for the enrollment profile. Ensure that number of devices that members with this profile can enroll is set to unlimited.
3. Click **Next**. The Delivery Group Assignment screen appears.

4. Choose the delivery group or delivery groups containing the administrators who enroll COSU devices. Then click **Save**.

The Enrollment Profile page appears with the profile you added.

---

**Whitelist apps and set lock task mode**

The Kiosk device policy let you whitelist apps and set lock task mode. By default, Secure Hub and Google Play services are whitelisted.

To add the Kiosk policy:

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click **Configure > Device Policies**. The **Device Policies** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** dialog box appears.
3. Expand **More** and then, under Security, click **Kiosk**. The **Kiosk Policy** page appears.
4. Under Platforms, select **Android Enterprise**.
5. In the Policy Information pane, type the **Policy Name** and an optional **Description**.
6. Click **Next** and then click **Add**.

7. To whitelist an app and allow or deny lock task mode for that app:

   Select the app you want to whitelist from the list.

   Choose **Allow** to set the app to be pinned to the device screen when the user starts the app. Choose **Deny** to set the app not to be pinned. Default is **Allow**.

8. Click **Save**.

9. To whitelist another app and allow or deny lock task mode for that app, click **Add**.

10. Configure deployment rules and choose delivery groups. For more information, see **Device policies**.

### Security actions

Android Enterprise supports the following security actions. For a description of each security action, see **Security actions**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Security action</th>
<th>Android Enterprise (BYOD)</th>
<th>Android Enterprise (corporate-owned)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Certificate Renewal</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Wipe</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locate</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lock</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Security action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Security action</th>
<th>Android Enterprise (BYOD)</th>
<th>Android Enterprise (corporate-owned)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lock and Reset Password</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notify (Ring)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revoke</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective Wipe</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

For devices running Android 6.0 and greater, the Locate security action requires the user to grant Location permission during enrollment. The user can opt not to grant Location permission. If the user doesn’t grant the permission during enrollment, Endpoint Management again requests location permission when sending the Locate command.

### Legacy Android Enterprise for G Suite Customers

January 3, 2019

G Suite customers must use the legacy Android Enterprise settings to configure legacy Android Enterprise.

**Requirements for legacy Android Enterprise:**

- A publicly accessible domain
- A Google administrator account
- Android devices that have managed profile support
- A Google account that has Google Play installed
- A Work profile set up on the device

To start configuring legacy Android Enterprise, click **legacy Android Enterprise** in the **Android Enterprise** page in Endpoint Management Settings.
Create an Android Enterprise Account

Before you can set up an Android Enterprise account, you must verify your domain name with Google. If you have already verified your domain name with Google, you can skip to this step: Set up an Android Enterprise service account and download an Android Enterprise certificate.

1. Navigate to https://www.google.com/a/signup/?enterprise_product=ANDROID_WORK.

The following page displays where you type your administrator and company information.
2. Type your administrator user information.

3. Type your company information, in addition to your administrator account information.
The first step in the process is complete and you see the following page.
Verify domain ownership

Allow Google to verify your domain in one of the following ways:

- Add a TXT or CNAME record to the website of your domain host.
- Upload an HTML file to the web server of your domain.
- Add a `<meta>` tag to your home page. Google recommends the first method. This article does not cover the steps to verify your domain ownership, but you can find the information you need here: https://support.google.com/a/answer/6248925.

1. Click **Start** to begin the verification of your domain.

   The **Verify domain ownership** page appears. Follow the instructions on the page to verify your domain.

2. Click **Verify**.
3. Google verifies your domain ownership.
4. After successful verification, the following page appears. Click **Continue**.

5. Google creates an EMM binding token that you provide to Citrix and use when you configure Android Enterprise settings. Copy and save the token; you need it later in the setup procedure.

6. Click **Finish** to complete setting up Android Enterprise. A page appears, indicating that you’ve successfully verified your domain.
After you create an Android Enterprise service account, you can sign in to the Google Admin console to manage your mobility management settings.

Set up an Android Enterprise service account and download an Android Enterprise certificate

To allow Endpoint Management to contact Google Play and Directory services, you must create a service account using the Google Project portal for developers. This service account is used for server-to-server communication between Endpoint Management and Google services for Android. For more information about the authentication protocol being used, go to https://developers.google.com/identity/protocols/OAuth2ServiceAccount.

1. In a web browser, go to https://console.cloud.google.com/project and sign in with your Google administrator credentials.

2. In the Projects list, click Create Project.

3. In Project name, type a name for the project.

4. On the Dashboard, click Use Google APIs.
5. Click **Library**, in **Search**, type **EMM** and then click the search result.

6. On the **Overview** page, click **Enable**.
7. Next to Google Play EMM API, click Go to Credentials.

8. In the Add credentials to our project list, in step 1, click service account.
9. On the **Service Accounts** page, click **Create Service Account**.

10. In **Create service account**, name the account, and select the **Furnish a new private key** check box. Click **P12**, select the **Enable Google Apps Domain-wide Delegation** check box and then click **Create**.
Create service account

Service account name

testemmsvcaacct

Service account ID

testemmsvcaacct @emm-test-project.iam.gserviceaccount.com

Furnish a new private key
Downloads a file that contains the private key. Store the file securely because this key can't be recovered if lost.

Key type

- JSON
  Recommended
- P12
  For backward compatibility with code using the P12 format

Enable Google Apps Domain-wide Delegation
Grants a client access to all users' data on a Google Apps domain without manual authorization on their part. Learn more

To change settings for Google Apps domain, product name for the OAuth consent screen must be configured. Assign the product name below or configure the OAuth consent screen.

Product name for the consent screen

anynamewilldo

Create  Configure consent screen  Cancel

The certificate (P12 file) is downloaded to your computer. Be sure to save the certificate in a secure location.

11. On the **Service account created** confirmation page, click **Close**.
12. In **Permissions**, click **Service accounts** and then under **Options** for your service account, click **View Client ID**.

13. The details required for account authorization on the Google admin console display. Copy the **Client ID** and **Service account ID** to a location where you can retrieve the information later. You need this information, along with the domain name to send to Citrix support for whitelisting.
14. On the Library page, search for Admin SDK and then click the search result.

15. On the Overview page, click Enable.
16. Open the Google admin console for your domain and then click **Security**.

17. On the **Settings** page, click **Show more** and then click **Advanced settings**.
18. Click **Manage API client access**.
19. In **Client Name**, type the client ID that you saved earlier, in **One or More API Scopes**, type `https://www.googleapis.com/auth/admin.directory.user` and then click **Authorize**.

![Manage API client access](image)

**Binding to EMM**

Before you can use Endpoint Management to manage your Android devices, you must contact Citrix Technical Support and provide your domain name, service account, and binding token. Citrix binds the token to Endpoint Management as your enterprise mobility management (EMM) provider. For contact information for Citrix Technical Support, see [Citrix Technical Support](#).

1. To confirm the binding, sign in to the Google Admin portal and then click **Security**.

2. Click **Manage EMM provider for Android**.

You see that your Google Android Enterprise account is bound to Citrix as your EMM provider. After you confirm the token binding, you can start using the Endpoint Management console to manage your Android devices. Import the P12 certificate you generated in step 14. Set up Android Enterprise server settings, enable SAML-based single-sign-on (SSO), and define at least one Android Enterprise device policy.
**Import the P12 certificate**

Follow these steps to import your Android Enterprise P12 certificate:

1. Sign in to the Endpoint Management console.
2. Click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console to open the **Settings** page and then click **Certificates**. The **Certificates** page appears.

3. Click **Import**. The **Import** dialog box appears.

Configure the following settings:

- **Import**: In the list, click **Keystore**.
- **Keystore type**: In the list, click **PKCS#12**.
- **Use as**: In the list, click **Server**.
• **Keystore file**: Click **Browse** and navigate to the P12 certificate.
• **Password**: Type the keystore password.
• **Description**: Optionally, type a description of the certificate.

4. Click **Import**.

**Set up Android Enterprise server settings**

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.

2. Under **Platforms**, click **Android Enterprise**. The **Android Enterprise** page appears.

![Android Enterprise page](image)

Configure the following settings and then click **Save**.

• **Domain name**: Type your Android Enterprise domain name; for example, domain.com.
• **Domain Admin Account**: Type your domain administrator user name; for example, the email account used for Google Developer Portal.
• **Service Account ID**: Type your service account ID; for example, the email associated in the Google Service Account (serviceaccountemail@xxxxxxxxx.iam.gserviceaccount.com).
• **Client ID**: Type the numerical client ID of your Google service account.
• **Enable Android Enterprise**: Select to enable or disable Android Enterprise.

**Enable SAML-based single-sign-on**

1. Sign in to the Endpoint Management console.

2. Click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.

3. Click **Certificates**. The **Certificates** page appears.
4. In the list of certificates, click the SAML certificate.

5. Click **Export** and save the certificate to your computer.

6. Sign in to the Google Admin portal by using your Android Enterprise administrator credentials. For access to the portal, see [Google Admin portal](#).

7. Click **Security**.

8. Under **Security**, click **Set up single sign-on (SSO)** and then configure the following settings.
### Set up single sign-on (SSO)

SAML-based Single Sign-On allows you to authenticate accounts for web-based applications (like Gmail or Calendar). With SSO, users sign in for one web application, and are automatically signed in for all other Google web apps. For desktop applications (or POP access to Gmail), users must sign in directly with the username and password set up via the Admin console.

#### Setup SSO with third party identity provider

To setup third party as your identity provider, please provide the information below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sign-in page URL</td>
<td>https://&lt;Xenmobile-FQDN&gt;/aw/saml/signin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sign-out page URL</td>
<td>https://&lt;Xenmobile-FQDN&gt;/aw/saml/signout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change password URL</td>
<td>https://&lt;Xenmobile-FQDN&gt;/aw/saml/changepassword</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verification certificate</td>
<td>[CHOOSE FILE]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The certificate file must contain the public key for Google to verify sign-in requests.

- **Sign-in page URL**: Type the URL for users signing in to your system and Google Apps. For example: https://<Xenmobile-FQDN>/aw/saml/signin.
- **Sign out page URL**: Type the URL to which users are redirected when they sign out. For example: https://<Xenmobile-FQDN>/aw/saml/signout.
- **Change password URL**: Type the URL to let users change their password in your system. For example: https://<Xenmobile-FQDN>/aw/saml/changepassword. If this field is defined, users see this prompt even when SSO is not available.
- **Verification certificate**: Click [CHOOSE FILE] and then navigate to the SAML certificate exported from Endpoint Management.

9. Click **SAVE CHANGES**.

### Set up an Android Enterprise device policy

Set up a Passcode policy so that users must establish a passcode on their devices when they first enroll.
The basic steps to setting up any device policy are as follows.

1. Sign on to the Endpoint Management console.
2. Click Configure, and then click Device Policies.
3. Click Add and then on the Add a New Policy dialog box, select the policy you want to add. In this example, you click Passcode.
4. Complete the Policy Information page.
5. Click Android Enterprise and then configure the settings for the policy.
6. Assign the policy to a Delivery Group.

**Configure Android Enterprise account settings**

Before you can start managing Android apps and policies on devices, you must set up an Android Enterprise domain and account information in Endpoint Management. First, complete Android Enterprise setup tasks on Google to set up a domain administrator and to obtain a service account ID and a binding token.

1. In the Endpoint Management web console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The Settings page displays.
2. Under **Platforms**, click **Android Enterprise**. The **Android Enterprise** configuration page appears.

![Android Enterprise Configuration Page](image)

1. On the **Android Enterprise** page, configure the following settings:
   - **Domain Name**: Type your domain name.
   - **Domain Admin Account**: Type your domain administrator user name.
   - **Service Account ID**: Type your Google Service Account ID.
   - **Client ID**: Type the client ID of your Google service account.
   - **Enable Android Enterprise**: Select whether to enable Android Enterprise or not.

2. Click **Save**.

**Set up G Suite partner access for Endpoint Management**

Some end-point management features for Chrome use Google partner APIs to communicate between Endpoint Management and your G Suite domain. For example, Endpoint Management requires the APIs for device policies that manage Chrome features such as Incognito mode and Guest mode.

To enable the partner APIs, you set up your G Suite domain in the Endpoint Management console and then configure your G Suite account.

**Set up your G Suite domain in Endpoint Management**

To enable Endpoint Management to communicate with the APIs in your G Suite domain, go to **Settings > Google Chrome Configuration** and configure the settings.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- **G Suite domain**: The G Suite domain that hosts the APIs needed by Endpoint Management.
- **G Suite admin account**: The administrator account for your G Suite domain.
- **G Suite client ID**: The client ID for Citrix. Use this value to configure partner access for your G Suite domain.
- **G Suite enterprise ID**: The enterprise ID for your account, filled in from your Google enterprise account.

Enable partner access for devices and users in your G Suite domain

1. Log in into the Google admin console: [https://admin.google.com](https://admin.google.com)
2. Click **Device Management**.
3. Click **Chrome management**.
4. Click **User settings**.

5. Search for **Chrome Management - Partner Access**.

6. Select the **Enable Chrome Management - Partner Access** check box.

7. Agree that you understand and want to enable partner access. Click **Save**.
8. In the Chrome management page, click **Device Settings**.

9. Search for **Chrome Management - Partner Access**.

10. Select the **Enable Chrome Management - Partner Access** check box.

11. Agree that you understand and want to enable partner access. Click **Save**.

12. Go to the **Security** page and then click **Advanced Settings**.
13. Click Manage API client Access.

14. In the Endpoint Management console, go to Settings > Google Chrome Configuration and copy the value of G Suite Client ID. Then, return to the Manage API client Access page and paste the copied value to the Client Name field.

15. In One or More API Scopes, add the URL: https://www.googleapis.com/auth/chromedevicemanagementapi

16. Click Authorize.

The message “Your settings have been saved” appears.
Enrolling Android Enterprise devices

If your device enrollment process requires users to enter a username or user ID, the format accepted depends on how the Endpoint Management server is configured to search for users by User Principal Name (UPN) or SAM account name.

If the Endpoint Management server is configured to search for users by UPN, users must enter a UPN in the format:

• username@domain

If the Endpoint Management server is configured to search for users by SAM users must enter a SAM in one of these formats:

• username@domain
• domain\username

To determine which type of user name your Endpoint Management server is configured for:

1. In the Endpoint Management server console click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.

2. Click **LDAP** to view the configuration of the LDAP connection.

3. Near the bottom of the page, view the **User search by** field:

   • If it is set to **userPrincipalName**, Endpoint Management server is set for UPN.
   • If it is set to **sAMAccountName**, Endpoint Management server is set for SAM.
Unenrolling an Android Enterprise enterprise

You can unenroll an Android Enterprise enterprise using the Endpoint Management server console and Endpoint Management Tools.

When you perform this task, the Endpoint Management server opens a popup window for Endpoint Management Tools. Before you begin, ensure that the Endpoint Management server has permission to open popup windows in the browser you are using. Some browsers, such as Google Chrome, require you to disable popup blocking and add the address of the Endpoint Management site to the popup block whitelist.

**Warning:**

After an enterprise is unenrolled, Android Enterprise apps on devices already enrolled through it are reset to their default states. The devices will no longer be managed by Google. Re-enrolling them in an Android Enterprise enterprise may not restore previous functionality without further configuration.

After the Android Enterprise enterprise is unenrolled:

- Devices and users enrolled through the enterprise have the Android Enterprise apps reset to their default state. Android Enterprise App Permissions and Android Enterprise Managed Configurations policies previously applied no longer have an effect.
- Devices enrolled through the enterprise are managed by Endpoint Management, but are unmanaged from Google perspective. No new Android Enterprise apps can be added. No Android Enterprise App Permissions or Android Enterprise Managed Configurations policies can be applied. Other policies, such as Scheduling, Password, and Restrictions can still be applied to these devices.
- If you attempt to enroll devices in Android Enterprise, they are enrolled as Android devices, not Android Enterprise devices.

To unenroll an Android Enterprise enterprise:

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The Settings page appears.
2. On the Settings page, click **Android Enterprise**.
3. Click **Remove Enterprise**.
4. Specify a password. You’ll need this for the next step to complete the unenrollment. Then click **Unenroll**.

5. When the Endpoint Management Tools page opens, enter the password you created in the previous step.
6. Click **Unenroll**.

**Provisioning work-managed device mode in Android Enterprise**

Work-managed device mode for Android Enterprise is available for corporate-owned devices only. Endpoint Management supports these methods of enrollment in work-managed device mode:

- **afw#xenmobile**: With this enrollment method, the user enters the characters “afw#xenmobile”
when setting up the device. This token identifies the device as managed by Endpoint Management and downloads Secure Hub.

- **QR code**: QR code provisioning is an easy way to provision a distributed fleet of devices that do not support NFC, such as tablets. The QR code enrollment method can be used on fleet devices that have been reset to their factory settings. The QR code enrollment method sets up and configures work-managed device mode by scanning a QR code from the setup wizard.

- **Near field communication (NFC) bump**: The NFC bump enrollment method can be used on fleet devices that have been reset to their factory settings. An NFC bump transfers data through between two devices using near-field communication. Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and other communication modes are disabled on a factory-reset device. NFC is the only communication protocol that the device can use in this state.

**afw#xenmobile**

The enrollment method is used after powering on a new or factory reset devices for initial setup. Users enter “afw#xenmobile” when prompted to enter a Google account. This action downloads and installs Secure Hub. Users then follow the Secure Hub set-up prompts to complete the enrollment.

In this enrollment method is recommended for most customers because the latest version of Secure Hub is downloaded from the Google Play store. Unlike with other enrollment methods, you do not provide Secure Hub for download from the Endpoint Management server.

**Prerequisites:**

- Supported on all Android devices running Android OS.

**QR code**

To enroll a device in device mode using a QR code, you generate a QR code by creating a JSON and converting the JSON to a QR code. Device cameras scan the QR code to enroll the device.

**Prerequisites:**

- Supported on all Android devices running Android 7.0 and above.

**Create a QR code from a JSON**

Create a JSON with the following fields.

These fields are required:

Key: android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_COMPONENT_NAME

Value: com.zenprise/com.zenprise.configuration.AdminFunction
Key: android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_SIGNATURE_CHECKSUM
Value: qn7oZUtheu3JBAinzZRrrjCQv6LOO6L1OjcxT3-yKM

Key: android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_DOWNLOAD_LOCATION
Value: https://path/to/securehub.apk

Note:
If Secure Hub is uploaded onto Citrix Endpoint Management server as an enterprise app, it can be downloaded from https://<fqdn>:4443/instanceName/worxhome.apk. The path to the Secure Hub APK must be accessible over the Wi-Fi connection that the device connects to during provisioning.

These fields are optional:

- **android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_LOCALE**: Enter language and country codes.

  The language codes are two-letter lowercase ISO language codes (such as en) as defined by ISO 639-1. The country codes are two-letter uppercase ISO country codes (such as US) as defined by ISO 3166-1. For example, enter en_US for English as spoken in the United States.

- **android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_TIME_ZONE**: The time zone in which the device is running.

  Enter an Olson name of the form area/location. For example, America/Los_Angeles for Pacific time. If you don’t enter one, the time zone is automatically populated.

- **android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_LOCAL_TIME**: Time in milliseconds since the Epoch.

  The Unix epoch (or Unix time, POSIX time, or Unix timestamp) is the number of seconds that have elapsed since January 1, 1970 (midnight UTC/GMT). The time doesn’t include leap seconds (in ISO 8601: 1970-01-01T00:00:00Z).

- **android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_SKIP_ENCRYPTION**: Set to true to skip encryption during profile creation. Set to false to force encryption during profile creation.

A typical JSON looks like the following:

```json
{
"android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_COMPONENT_NAME": "com.xeppelin/com.xeppelin.configuration.AdminFunction",
"android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_SIGNATURE_CHECKSUM": "qn7oZUtheu3JBAinzZRrrjCQv6LOO6L1OjcxT3-yKM",
"android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_DOWNLOAD_LOCATION": "https://www.example.com/securehub.apk",
"android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_LOCALE": "en_US",
"android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_TIME_ZONE": "America/Los_Angeles",
"android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_LOCAL_TIME": 150785286178,
"android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_SKIP_ENCRYPTION": false
}
```

Validate the JSON that is created using any JSON validation tool, such as https://jsonlint.com. Convert that JSON string to a QR code using any online QR code generator, such as https://goqr.me.

This QR code gets scanned by a factory-reset device to enroll the device in work-managed device mode.
**To enroll the device**

To enroll a device in work-managed device mode, the device must be in factory reset state.

1. Tap the screen six times on the welcome screen to launch the QR code enrollment flow.

2. When prompted, connect to Wi-Fi. The download location for Secure Hub in the QR code (encoded in the JSON) is accessible over this Wi-Fi network.
   
   Once the device successfully connects to Wi-Fi, it downloads a QR code reader from Google and launches the camera.

3. Point the camera to the QR code to scan the code.
   
   Android downloads Secure Hub from the download location in the QR code, validates the signing certificate signature, installs Secure Hub and sets it as device owner.

For more information, see this Google guide for Android EMM developers: [https://developers.google.com/android/work/prov-devices#qr_code_method](https://developers.google.com/android/work/prov-devices#qr_code_method).

**NFC bump**

To enroll a device in device mode using NFC bumps requires two devices: One that is reset to its factory settings and one running the Endpoint Management Provisioning Tool.

Prerequisites:

- Supported Android devices
- Endpoint Management enabled for Android Enterprise
- A factory-reset device, provisioned for Android Enterprise in work-managed device mode. You can find steps to complete this prerequisite later in this article.
- Another device with NFC capability, running the configured Provisioning Tool. The Provisioning Tool is available in Secure Hub or on the [Citrix downloads page](https://www.citrix.com/products/citrix-end-point-management/downloads/).

Each device can have only one Android Enterprise profile, managed by an enterprise mobility management (EMM) app. In Endpoint Management, Secure Hub is the EMM app. Only one profile is allowed on each device. Attempting to add a second EMM app removes the first EMM app.

You can start work-managed device mode on new devices or on devices restored to factory settings. You manage the entire device by using Endpoint Management.

**Data transferred through the NFC bump**

Provisioning a factory-reset device requires you to send the following data through an NFC bump to initialize Android Enterprise:

- Package name of the EMM provider app that acts as device owner (in this case, Secure Hub).
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Intranet/Internet location from which the device can download the EMM provider app.
- SHA1 hash of EMM provider app to verify if the download is successful.
- Wi-Fi connection details so that a factory-reset device can connect and download the EMM provider app. Note: Android now does not support 802.1x Wi-Fi for this step.
- Time zone for the device (optional).
- Geographic location for the device (optional).

When the two devices are bumped, the data from the Provisioning Tool is sent to the factory-reset device. That data is then used to download Secure Hub with administrator settings. If you don’t enter time zone and location values, Android automatically configures the values on the new device.

**Configuring the Endpoint Management Provisioning Tool**

Before doing an NFC bump, you must configure the Provisioning Tool. This configuration is then transferred to the factory-reset device during the NFC bump.
You can type data into the required fields or populate them via text file. The steps in the next procedure describe how to configure the text file and contain descriptions for each field. The app doesn’t save information after you type it, so you might want to create a text file to keep the information for future
To configure the Provisioning Tool by using a text file

Name the file nfcprovisioning.txt and place the file in the /sdcard/ folder on the SD card of the device. The app can then read the text file and populate the values.

The text file must contain the following data:

```
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_DOWNLOAD_LOCATION=<download_location>
```

This line is the intranet/internet location of the EMM provider app. After the factory-reset device connects to Wi-Fi following the NFC bump, the device must have access to this location for downloading. The URL is a regular URL, with no special formatting required.

```
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_CHECKSUM=<SHA1 hash>
```

This line is the checksum of the EMM provider app. This checksum is used to verify that the download is successful. Steps to obtain the checksum are discussed later in this article.

```
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_WIFI_SSID=<wifi ssid>
```

This line is the connected Wi-Fi SSID of the device on which the Provisioning Tool is running.

```
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_WIFI_SECURITY_TYPE=<wifi security type>
```

Supported values are WEP and WPA2. If the Wi-Fi is unprotected, this field must be empty.

```
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_WIFI_PASSWORD=<wifi password>
```

If the Wi-Fi is unprotected, this field must be empty.

```
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_LOCALE=<locale>
```

Enter language and country codes. The language codes are two-letter lowercase ISO language codes (such as en) as defined by ISO 639-1. The country codes are two-letter uppercase ISO country codes (such as US) as defined by ISO 3166-1. For example, type en_US for English as spoken in the United States. If you don’t type any codes, the country and language are automatically populated.

```
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_TIME_ZONE=<timezone>
```

The time zone in which the device is running. Type an Olson name of the form area/location. For example, America/Los_Angeles for Pacific time. If you don’t enter a name, the time zone is automatically populated.

```
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_NAME=<package name>
```

This data isn’t required, because the value is hardcoded into the app as Secure Hub. It’s mentioned here only for the sake of completion.
If there is a Wi-Fi protected by using WPA2, a completed `nfcprovisioning.txt` file might look like the following:

```plaintext
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_DEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_DOWNLOAD_LOCATION=https://www.somepublicurlhere.com/path/to/securehub.apk
android.app.extra.PROVISIONINGDEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_CHECKSUM=ga50TwdCmfdJ72LGRFkke4CrbAk
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_WIFI_SSID=Protected_WiFi_Name
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_WIFI_SECURITY_TYPE=WPA2
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_WIFI_PASSWORD=wifiPasswordHere
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_LOCALE=en_US
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_TIME_ZONE=America/Los_Angeles
```

If there is an unprotected Wi-Fi, a completed `nfcprovisioning.txt` file might look like the following:

```plaintext
android.app.extra.PROVISIONINGDEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_DOWNLOAD_LOCATION=https://www.somepublicurlhere.com/path/to/securehub.apk
android.app.extra.PROVISIONINGDEVICE_ADMIN_PACKAGE_CHECKSUM=ga50TwdCmfdJ72LGRFkke4CrbAk
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_WIFI_SSID=Unprotected_WiFi_Name
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_LOCALE=en_US
android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_TIME_ZONE=America/Los_Angeles
```

To get the Secure Hub checksum

To get the checksum of any app, add the app as an enterprise app.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, go to **Configure > Apps** and then click **Add**.
   
   The **Add Apps** window appears.

2. Click **Enterprise**.
   
   The **App information** page displays.
3. Select the following configuration and then click **Next**.

The **Android Enterprise Enterprise App** page appears.

4. Provide the path to the .apk and then click **Next** to upload the file.
   
   Once the upload is complete, the details of the uploaded package appear.
5. Click **Next** to open page to download the JSON file, which you then use to upload to Google Play. For Secure Hub, uploading to Google Play is not required, but you need the JSON file to read the SHA1 value from it.

A typical JSON file looks like the following:

6. Copy the **file_sha1_base64 value** and use it in the **Hash** field in the Provisioning Tool.
Note: The hash must be URL safe.

- Convert any + symbols to -
- Convert any / symbols to _
- Replace the trailing \u003d with =

If you store the hash in the nfcprovisioning.txt file on the SD card of the device, the app does the safety conversion. However, if you opt to type the hash manually, it's your responsibility to ensure its URL safety.

Libraries used

The Provisioning Tool uses the following libraries in its source code:

- v7 appcompat library, Design support library, and v7 Palette library by Google under Apache license 2.0
  
  For information, see Support Library Features Guide.

- Butter Knife by Jake Wharton under Apache license 2.0

Provision work profile mode in Android Enterprise

Work profile mode for Android Enterprise is available for devices on which you securely separate the corporate and personal areas on a device. For example, work profile mode is available for BYOD devices. The enrollment experience for work profile mode is similar to Android enrollment in Endpoint Management. Users download Secure Hub from Google Play and enroll their devices.

By default, the USB Debugging and Unknown Sources settings are disabled on a device when it is enrolled in Android Enterprise in work profile mode.

Tip:

When enrolling devices in Android Enterprise in work profile mode, always go to Google Play. From there, enable Secure Hub to appear in the user’s personal profile.

Android Enterprise supported device policies and MDX policies

January 24, 2019

The following table displays the device policies and MDX policies supported by the Android Enterprise container. For more information on device policies and MDX policies, see Device Policies and MDX Policies at a glance, respectively.
### Authentication policies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Supported</th>
<th>Supported Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>App passcode</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>micro VPN session required</td>
<td></td>
<td>Off only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum offline period</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternate Citrix Gateway</td>
<td></td>
<td>Blank only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### App Network Access policies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Supported</th>
<th>Supported Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Network access</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certificate label</td>
<td></td>
<td>Blank only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preferred VPN mode</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permit VPN mode switching</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAC file URL or proxy server</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default log output</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default log level</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max log files</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max log file size</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Redirect app logs</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encrypt logs</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whitelist WiFi networks</td>
<td></td>
<td>Blank only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Device Security policies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Supported</th>
<th>Supported Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Block jailbroken or rooted</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Require device encryption</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Require device lock</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Network Requirements policies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Supported</th>
<th>Supported Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Require WiFi</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Miscellaneous Access policies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policies</th>
<th>Supported</th>
<th>Supported Values</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>App update grace period (hours)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Erase app data on lock</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active poll period (minutes)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Encryption policies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policies</th>
<th>Supported</th>
<th>Supported Values</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Encryption keys</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Offline access permitted</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private file encryption</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Disabled only</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private file encryption exclusions</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>NA (empty)</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access limits for public files</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>NA (empty)</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public file encryption</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Disabled only</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public file encryption exclusions</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>NA (empty)</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public file migration</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Disabled only</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## App Interaction policies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policies</th>
<th>Supported</th>
<th>Supported Values</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Security Group</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Citrix Endpoint Management

### App Interaction policies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy</th>
<th>Supported</th>
<th>Supported Values</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cut and copy</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Unrestricted only</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paste</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Unrestricted only</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Document exchange (Open In)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Unrestricted only</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inbound document exchange (Open In)</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inbound document exchange whitelist</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restricted Open In exception list</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### App Restrictions policies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy</th>
<th>Supported</th>
<th>Supported Values</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Block camera</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>On only</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block Gallery</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>On only</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block localhost connection</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block mic record</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Off only</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App Restrictions policies</td>
<td>Supported</td>
<td>Supported Values</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block location services</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Off only</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block SMS compose</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Off only</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block screen capture</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Off only</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block device sensor</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block NFC</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Off only</td>
<td>Supported through Android Enterprise container</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block printing</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block app logs</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App Geofence policies</th>
<th>Supported</th>
<th>Supported Values</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Center point longitude</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center point latitude</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radius</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>All</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Android OS**

**December 14, 2018**

**Note:**

This article doesn’t apply to devices that are managed with Android Enterprise, Samsung KNOX, Samsung SAFE, or Samsung SEAMS. For information about those devices, see other articles in this section.

Endpoint Management also supports Android OS devices that aren’t managed through an Android or Samsung enterprise program. To control how and when Android devices connect to the Endpoint
Citrix Endpoint Management

Management service, use Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM). For information, see Firebase Cloud Messaging.

Endpoint Management enrolls Android devices into MDM+MAM or MDM mode, with the option for users to register in MAM-only mode. Endpoint Management supports the following authentication types for Android devices in MDM+MAM mode. For information, see the articles under Certificates and authentication.

- Domain
- Domain plus security token
- Client certificate
- Client certificate plus domain
- Identity providers:
  - Azure Active Directory
  - Citrix Identity provider

Another rarely used authentication method is client certificate plus security token. For information, see https://support.citrix.com/article/CTX215200.

A general workflow for starting Android device management is as follows:

1. Complete the onboarding process. See Onboarding and resource setup and Prepare to enroll devices and deliver resources.
2. Choose and configure an enrollment method. See Supported enrollment methods.
3. Configure Android device policies.
5. Set up device and app security actions. See Security actions.

For supported operating systems, see Supported device operating systems.

**Supported enrollment methods**

The following table lists the enrollment methods that Endpoint Management supports for Android devices:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bulk enrollment</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual enrollment</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enrollment invitations</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Add an Android device manually

If you want to add an Android or iOS device manually, such as for testing purposes, follow these steps.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click Manage > Devices. The Devices page appears.

2. Click Add. The Add Device page appears.

3. Configure these settings:
   - **Select platform**: Click Android.
   - **Serial Number**: Type the device serial number.
   - **IMEI/MEID**: Optionally, type the device IMEI/MEID information.

4. Click Add. The Devices table appears with the device added to the bottom of the list. To view and confirm the device details: Choose the device you added and then, in the menu that appears, click Edit.

   Note:
   When you select the check box next to a device, the options menu appears above the device list. When you click anywhere else in the list, the options menu appears on the right side of the listing.

   - LDAP configured
   - If using local groups and local users:
     - One or more local groups.
     - Local users assigned to local groups.
     - Delivery groups are associated with local groups.
• If using Active Directory:
  – Delivery groups are associated with Active Directory groups.

5. The **General** page lists device **Identifiers**, such as the serial number and other information for the platform type. For **Device Ownership**, select **Corporate** or **BYOD**.

The **General** page also lists device **Security** properties, such as Strong ID, Lock Device, Activation Lock Bypass, and other information for the platform type. The **Full Wipe of Device** field includes the user PIN code. The user must enter that code after the device is wiped. If the user forgets the code, you can look it up here.

6. The **Properties** page lists the device properties that Endpoint Management is to provision. This list shows any device properties included in the provisioning file used to add the device. To add a property, click **Add** and then select a property from the list. For valid values for each property, see the PDF **Device property names and values**.

When you add a property, it initially appears under the category where you added it. After you click **Next** and then return to the **Properties** page, the property appears in the appropriate list. To delete a property, hover over the listing and then click the **X** on the right side. Endpoint Management deletes the item immediately.

7. The remaining **Device Details** sections contain summary information for the device.

  • **User Properties**: Displays RBAC roles, group memberships, VPP accounts, and properties for the user. You can retire a VPP account from this page.

  • **Assigned Policies**: Displays the number of assigned policies including the number of deployed, pending, and failed policies. Provides the policy name, type and last deployed
Citrix Endpoint Management

information for each policy.

- **Apps**: Displays, for the last inventory, the number of installed, pending, and failed app deployments. Provides the app name, identifier, type, and other information. For a description of iOS and macOS inventory keys, such as `HasUpdateAvailable`, see Mobile Device Management (MDM) Protocol.

- **Media**: Displays, for the last inventory, the number of deployed, pending, and failed media deployments.

- **Actions**: Displays the number of deployed, pending, and failed actions. Provides the action name and time of the last deployment.

- **Delivery Groups**: Displays the number of successful, pending, and failed delivery groups. For each deployment, provides the delivery group name and deployment time. Select a delivery group to view more detailed information, including status, action, and channel or user.

- **iOS Profiles**: Displays the last iOS profile inventory, including name, type, organization, and description.

- **iOS Provisioning Profiles**: Displays enterprise distribution provisioning profile information, such as the UUID, expiration date, and managed status.

- **Certificates**: Displays, for valid, expired, or revoked certificates, information such as the type, provider, issuer, serial number, and the number of remaining days before expiration.

- **Connections**: Displays the first connection status and the last connection status. Provides for each connection, the user name, penultimate (next to last) authentication time, and last authentication time.

- **MDM Status**: Displays information such as the MDM status, last push time, and last device reply time.

- **TouchDown**: Displays information about the last device authentication and the last user authenticated. Provides each applicable policy name and policy value.

### Configure Android device policies

Use these policies to configure how Endpoint Management interacts with devices running Android. This table lists all device policies available for Android devices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>APN</th>
<th>App Access</th>
<th>App Inventory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AppLock</td>
<td>App Uninstall</td>
<td>Credentials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Management</td>
<td>Endpoint Management</td>
<td>Exchange for Android HTC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Options</td>
<td>Uninstall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enroll Android devices

1. Go to the Google Play store on your Android device, download the Citrix Secure Hub app, and then tap the app.

2. When prompted to install the app, click **Next** and then click **Install**.

3. After Secure Hub installs, tap **Open**.

4. For devices running Android 6.0 and greater, accept the required permissions:
   - Allow Secure Hub to make and manage phone calls? (required)
   - Allow Secure Hub to access photos, media, and files on your device? (required)
   - Allow Secure Hub to access this device's location? (optional)

5. Enter your corporate credentials, such as your Endpoint Management server name, User Principal Name (UPN), or email address. Then, click **Next**.

6. For devices in MDM+MAM mode, choose how to enroll your device:
   - To enroll in MDM+MAM mode, tap **Yes, enroll**.
   - To enroll in MAM-only mode, tap **No**.

7. In the **Activate device administrator** screen, tap **Activate**.

8. Enter your corporate password and then tap **Sign On**.

9. Depending on the way Endpoint Management is configured, you might be asked to create a Citrix PIN. You can use the PIN to sign on to Secure Hub and other Endpoint Management-enabled apps, such as Secure Mail and Citrix Files. You enter your Citrix PIN twice. On the **Create Citrix PIN** screen, enter a PIN.

10. Reenter the PIN. Secure Hub opens. You can then access the app store to view the apps you can install on your Android device.
11. If you configured Endpoint Management to push apps to devices automatically after enrollment, users are prompted to install the apps. In addition, policies that you configure in Endpoint Management are deployed to the device. Tap **Install** to install the apps.

**To unenroll and reenroll an Android device**

Users can unenroll from within Secure Hub. When users unenroll by using the following procedure, the device still appears in the device inventory in the Endpoint Management console. You cannot perform actions on the device, however. For example, you cannot track the device or monitor device compliance.

1. Tap to open the Secure Hub app.

2. Depending on whether you have a phone or a tablet, do the following:

   On a phone:
   
   • Swipe from the left of the screen to open a settings pane.
   
   • Tap **Preferences**, tap **Accounts**, and then tap **Delete Account**.

   On a tablet:
   
   • Tap the arrow next to your email address on the upper-right corner.
   
   • Tap **Preferences**, tap **Accounts**, and then tap **Delete Account**.

3. In the **Delete Account?** window, tap **Yes, delete**.

   Secure Hub unenrolls your device. Follow the on-screen instructions to re-enroll your device.

**Security actions**

Android supports the following security actions. For a description of each security action, see **Security actions**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App Lock</th>
<th>App Wipe</th>
<th>Certificate Renewal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Full Wipe</td>
<td>Locate</td>
<td>Lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lock and Reset Password</td>
<td>Notify</td>
<td>Revoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective Wipe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note:
For devices running Android 6.0 and greater, the Locate security action requires the user to grant Location permission during enrollment. The user can opt not to grant Location permission. If the user doesn’t grant the permission during enrollment, Endpoint Management again requests location permission when sending the Locate command.

Firebase Cloud Messaging

November 20, 2018

Note:
Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM) was previously known as Google Cloud Messaging (GCM). Some Endpoint Management console labels and messages use the GCM terminology.

Citrix recommends that you use Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM) to control how and when Android devices connect to Endpoint Management. Endpoint Management, when configured for FCM, sends connection notifications to Android devices that are enabled for FCM. Any security action or deploy command triggers a push notification to prompt the user to reconnect to the Endpoint Management server.

After you complete the configuration steps in this article and a device checks in, the device registers with the FCM service in Citrix Endpoint Management. That connection enables near real-time communication from your Endpoint Management service to your device by using FCM. FCM registration works for new device enrollments and previously enrolled devices.

When Endpoint Management needs to initiate a connection to the device, it connects to the FCM service. Then, the FCM service notifies the device to connect. This type of connection is similar to what Apple uses for its Push Notification Service.

Prerequisites

- Latest Secure Hub client
- Google developer account credentials
- Google Play services installed on FCM-enabled Android devices

Firewall ports

- Open port 443 on Endpoint Management to android.apis.google.com and Google.com.
- Open ports 5228, 5229, and 5230 for incoming messages.
To allow outgoing connections, FCM recommends whitelisting ports 5228 through 5230 with no IP restrictions. However, if you require IP restrictions, FCM recommends whitelisting all the IP addresses in the IPv4 and IPv6 blocks. Those blocks are listed in the Google ASN of 15169. Update that list monthly.

Architecture

This diagram shows the communication flow for FCM in the external and internal network.

To configure your Google account for FCM

1. Sign in to the following URL using your Google developer account credentials:
   [https://console.firebase.google.com/](https://console.firebase.google.com/)
2. Click Add project.
3. After you create the project, click **Project settings**.

4. Click the **Cloud Messaging** tab. Copy the **Server key** and **Sender ID** values. In the next procedure, you paste those values in the Endpoint Management console. As of October 2016, you must create Server Keys in the Firebase console.
To configure Endpoint Management for FCM

In the Endpoint Management console, go to **Settings > Google Cloud Messaging**.

- **Edit GCM API key**, and type the Firebase Cloud Messaging **Server key** that you copied in the last step of Firebase Cloud Messaging configuration.

- **Edit GCM Sender ID**, and type the **Sender ID** value you copied in the previous procedure.

After you complete the setup, you can remove your Scheduling device policy or change that policy to connect less often.
To test your configuration

1. Enroll an Android device.
2. Leave the device idle for some time, so that it disconnects from Endpoint Management.
3. Sign in to the Endpoint Management console, click **Manage**, select the Android device, and then click **Secure**.

4. Under **Device Actions**, click **Selective Wipe**.

   Security Actions

   ![Device Actions](image)

   In a successful configuration, selective wipe occurs on the device.

**Android SafetyNet**

October 25, 2018

You can use the Android SafetyNet feature to assess the compatibility and security of Android devices that have Secure Hub installed. Android SafetyNet isn’t available for MAM deployments.

When this feature is enabled, the SafetyNet Attestation API examines software and hardware information on a device to create a profile of that device. The API then looks for the same profile within a list of device models that have passed Android compatibility testing. The API also uses this information to determine whether Secure Hub has been modified by an unknown source.
When the Android SafetyNet feature is enabled, Secure Hub sends the SafetyNet Attestation API request to Google Play services and the result is reported back to Endpoint Management. Endpoint Management then updates device information with the attestation results. You can set automated actions that use the attestation results to trigger actions on the device.

For more information about how the SafetyNet Attestation API works, see SafetyNet Attestation API in the Google Android developers guide.

**Estimate how many SafetyNet Attestation API requests you need**

SafetyNet Attestation API requests are sent:

- When a device is enrolled in Endpoint Management.
- When a Secure Hub online authentication occurs. Online authentication occurs when a server session expires or when a user signs off the server and then signs back on. Secure Hub prompts the user to provide credential to authenticate with the server.
- When a device is rebooted.
- At a recurring time interval you configure, between 24 and 1,000 hours.

If your Endpoint Management deployment will make more than 10,000 requests per day, fill out this quota request form.

**Get the SafetyNet API key**

To enable Android SafetyNet in Endpoint Management, you need the SafetyNet API key.

1. Log in to the Google API console with your Google administrator account credentials.
2. Go to the Library page.
3. Search for “Android Device Verification API”.
4. Click Android Device Verification API.
5. If the API isn’t already enabled, click Enable.
6. Click Manage.
7. Click Create Credentials to generate an API key.
8. Select **Android Device Verification** to click **What credentials to I need**. Then click **Done**.

9. In the **Credentials** page, click the copy icon next to the key to copy the key.

10. Save the key so you can paste it into the Endpoint Management console when you enable the Android SafetyNet.

### Enable Android SafetyNet

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. On the **Settings** page, click **Android SafetyNet**.

3. Configure these settings:
   - **API Key**: Paste in the SafetyNet API key that you got from the Google API console.
   - **Attestation schedule in hours**: Type interval at which the SafetyNet Attestation API assesses your Android devices, in hours. The minimum value is 24 hours. The maximum value is 1000 hours. The default value is 24 hours.

4. Click **Save**.

### View Android SafetyNet results

To view the results of the SafetyNet Attestation API assessment for a device:

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click **Manage > Devices**.
2. Select Android devices to see the SafetyNet Attestation API results. Then click **Show more**.
3. In the **Device details** page, select **Properties**.
4. The results appear in the **Security** section.

The SafetyNet Attestation API returns these statuses for each device:

- **SafetyNet CTS profile match**: If this value is **True**, the device has a profile that matches one that has passed Android Compatibility Test Suite (CTS). If this value is **False**, the device does not have a profile that matches one that has passed Android CTS.
• **SafetyNet basic integrity**: If this value is **True**, the SafetyNet Attestation API found no evidence that Secure Hub on the device has been modified by an unknown source. If this value is **False**, Secure Hub on the device has been modified by an unknown source.

• **SafetyNet last known status**: This value shows the last known SafetyNet status of the device:

  – **Success**: The SafetyNet Attestation API found no evidence that Secure Hub on the device has been modified by an unknown source.

  – **LOCK_BOOTLOADER**: The user should lock the bootloader of the device. Secure Hub on the device has been modified by an unknown source.

  – **RESTORE_TO_FACTORY_ROM**: The user should restore the device to a clean factory ROM. Secure Hub on the device has been modified by an unknown source.

---

## Samsung KNOX, SEAMS, and SAFE

January 3, 2019

Endpoint Management supports and extends both Samsung for Enterprise (SAFE) and Samsung KNOX policies on compatible Samsung devices. Samsung KNOX includes the SE for Android Management Service (SEAMS). SEAMS provides API-level control of the Samsung security policy engine.

To control how and when Android devices connect to the Endpoint Management service, use Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM). For information, see [Firebase Cloud Messaging](#).

Endpoint Management enrolls Android devices into MDM+MAM or MDM mode, with the option for users to register in MAM-only mode. Endpoint Management supports the following authentication types for Android devices in MDM+MAM mode. For information, see the articles under Certificates and authentication.

- Domain
- Domain plus security token
- Client certificate
- Client certificate plus domain
- Identity providers:
  - Azure Active Directory
  - Citrix Identity provider

Another rarely used authentication method is client certificate plus security token. For information, see [https://support.citrix.com/article/CTX215200](https://support.citrix.com/article/CTX215200).

A general workflow for starting Android device management is as follows:

1. Complete the onboarding process. See Onboarding and resource setup and Prepare to enroll devices and deliver resources.
2. Choose and configure an enrollment method. See Supported enrollment methods.

3. Deploy Samsung license keys.

4. Enable Samsung KNOX attestation.

5. Configure Samsung device policies.


For supported operating systems, see Supported device operating systems.

**Supported enrollment methods**

The following table lists the enrollment methods that Endpoint Management supports for Android devices:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bulk enrollment</td>
<td>Yes (KNOX)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual enrollment</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enrollment invitations</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can use Samsung KNOX Mobile Enrollment to enroll multiple Samsung KNOX devices into Endpoint Management (or any mobile device manager) without manually configuring each device. For information, see Samsung KNOX Bulk Enrollment.

For information about enrolling devices, see Enroll Android devices.

**Deploy Samsung license keys**

Samsung has Enterprise License Management (ELM) keys and KNOX License Management (KLM) keys. You purchase Samsung licenses from Samsung.

- KNOX: The KNOX platform requires that you purchase a Samsung KNOX Workspace license. To enable the KNOX APIs and deploy KNOX policies and restrictions to devices, first configure the Endpoint Management device policy, Samsung MDM license key. To activate KNOX, you must push at least one Restriction device policy specifically for KNOX along with the ELM and KLMS key.

  For HTC-specific policies, Endpoint Management supports HTC API version 0.5.0. For Sony-specific policies, Endpoint Management supports Sony Enterprise SDK 2.0.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- SAFE: Deploy the built-in Samsung ELM key to a device before deploying SAFE policies and restrictions. To deploy that key, configure the Endpoint Management device policy, Samsung MDM license key.

**Samsung Enterprise Firmware-Over-The-Air (E-FOTA) service**

Endpoint Management also supports the Samsung Enterprise Firmware-Over-The-Air (E-FOTA) service. Samsung E-FOTA lets you determine when devices get updated, determine the firmware version to use, and test updates before deploying them. For information, see [Configure Samsung E-FOTA settings](#).

**Enable Samsung KNOX attestation**

You can configure Endpoint Management to query the Samsung KNOX attestation server REST APIs. Samsung KNOX applies hardware security capabilities that provide multiple levels of protection for the operating system and applications. One level of this security resides at the platform through attestation. An attestation server provides verification of the mobile device core system software (for example, the boot loaders and kernel). The verification occurs at runtime based on data collected during trusted boot.

1. In the Endpoint Management web console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Click **Samsung KNOX**.
3. Set **Enable Samsung KNOX attestation** to **Yes** to enable Samsung KNOX attestation. The default is **No**.
4. In the Web service URL list, do one of the following:
   - Click the appropriate attestation server.
   - Click Add new and then enter the Web service URL.

5. Click Test Connection to verify the connection. A success or failure message appears.

6. Click Save.

**Configure Samsung device policies**

Device policies for Samsung KNOX:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App restrictions</th>
<th>App uninstall</th>
<th>Browser</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Copy Apps to Samsung Container</td>
<td>Exchange</td>
<td>Passcode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restrictions</td>
<td>Samsung MDM license key</td>
<td>VPN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Device policies for Samsung SAFE:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App restrictions</th>
<th>App uninstall restrictions</th>
<th>Browser</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exchange</td>
<td>Firewall</td>
<td>Kiosk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knox Platform for Enterprise</td>
<td>OS update</td>
<td>Restrictions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samsung MDM license key</td>
<td>Storage encryption</td>
<td>VPN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Device policies for Samsung SEAMS:

| Copy Apps to Samsung Container | |
|--------------------------------| |
**Security actions**

Android supports the following security actions. For a description of each security action, see Security actions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>App Lock</td>
<td>App Wipe</td>
<td>Certificate Renewal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Wipe</td>
<td>Locate</td>
<td>Lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lock and Reset Password</td>
<td>Notify</td>
<td>Revoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective Wipe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

For devices running Android 6.0 and greater, the Locate security action requires the user to grant Location permission during enrollment. The user can opt not to grant Location permission. If the user doesn’t grant the permission during enrollment, Endpoint Management again requests location permission when sending the Locate command.

**Samsung KNOX bulk enrollment**

January 7, 2019

To enroll multiple Samsung KNOX devices into Endpoint Management (or any mobile device manager) without manually configuring each device, use KNOX Mobile Enrollment. The enrollment occurs upon first-time use or after a factory reset. Admins can also pass user names and passwords directly to the device, so users don’t need to enter any information upon enrollment.

**Note:**

The setup for KNOX Mobile Enrollment is not related to the Endpoint Management KNOX container. For more information on Knox Mobile Enrollment, see KME Requirements.

**Prerequisites for KNOX Mobile Enrollment**

- Samsung devices running KNOX 2.4 or later

**Note:**
Only TIMA-enabled Samsung 2.4 devices are supported out of the box by the Samsung KNOX Mobile Enrollment tool.

- Some devices lacking a device root key (DRK) support Mobile Enrollment with the KNOX 2.4.1 binary. For a list of supported devices, see KNOX Mobile Enrollment. Samsung must whitelist the devices to be enrolled.

- When you add devices to the KNOX portal, you enter device IMEIs or serial numbers. The only way to bulk enroll is to:
  - Purchase devices from a list of approved Samsung resellers, or;
  - Purchase devices from resellers willing to share the IMEIs directly with Samsung. A list of resellers for your country can be obtained from KNOX customer support.

For details on device verification requirements, contact KNOX Support.

- KNOX partner account
  - You must have permission to access the KNOX Mobile Enrollment features.
- Endpoint Management must be configured (including licenses and certificates) and running.
- Secure Hub APK file. You upload the file when setting up KNOX Mobile Enrollment.

To download the Secure Hub APK file

1. Log in to the Citrix download site and go to the Citrix Endpoint Management downloads.
2. Go to Mobile productivity apps and MDX Toolkit and choose your edition.

Configure firewall exceptions

To access Knox Mobile Enrollment, configure the following firewall exceptions. Some of these firewall exceptions are required for all devices and some are specific the device’s geographical region.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device Region</th>
<th>URL</th>
<th>Port</th>
<th>Destination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td><a href="https://gslb.secb2b.com">https://gslb.secb2b.com</a></td>
<td>443</td>
<td>Global load balancer for Knox Mobile Enrollment initiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td><a href="https://gslb.secb2b.com">https://gslb.secb2b.com</a></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>Global load balancer for Knox Mobile Enrollment initiation on some limited legacy devices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Region</td>
<td>URL</td>
<td>Port</td>
<td>Destination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>umc-cdn.secb2b.com</td>
<td>443</td>
<td>Samsung agent update servers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>bulkenrollment.s3.amazonaws.com</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>Knox Mobile Enrollment customer EULAs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>eula.secb2b.com</td>
<td>443</td>
<td>Knox Mobile Enrollment customer EULAs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>us-be-api-mssl.samsungknox.com</td>
<td>443</td>
<td>Samsung servers for IMEI verification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td><a href="https://us-segd-api.secb2b.com">https://us-segd-api.secb2b.com</a></td>
<td>443</td>
<td>Samsung Enterprise Gateway for US region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Europe</td>
<td><a href="https://eu-segd-api.secb2b.com">https://eu-segd-api.secb2b.com</a></td>
<td>443</td>
<td>Samsung Enterprise Gateway for European region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>China</td>
<td><a href="https://china-segd-api.secb2b.com">https://china-segd-api.secb2b.com</a></td>
<td>443</td>
<td>Samsung Enterprise Gateway for China region</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Getting access to KNOX Mobile Enrollment**

Follow these procedures to get access to KNOX Mobile Enrollment.

**If you have a KNOX web portal account**

1. Log on to the KNOX web portal and go to your Samsung KNOX Dashboard.
2. Under **KNOX Mobile Enrollment**, click **Get Started**.
3. Fill out the applicable fields and then click **Apply**.

After Samsung approves your application, you will receive a welcome email with instructions on how to start using the KNOX Mobile Enrollment tool. For a faster approval process, provide any essential information, including contact details for your reseller, Samsung sales representative, or any other information that assists in your approval.
If you don’t have a KNOX web portal account

1. On the KNOX Mobile Enrollment page, click Get Started.
2. Fill out the required fields.
3. You receive an email to confirm your registration with the KNOX portal. Click Complete Registration to continue.
4. Enter and confirm your KNOX web portal password.
5. In your Samsung KNOX Dashboard, under KNOX Bulk Enrollment Program, click Launch KNOX Mobile Enrollment.
6. For faster approval, please provide any essential information. This information includes contact details for your reseller, Samsung sales representative, or any other information that assists in your approval.

Setting up KNOX Mobile Enrollment

After you get access to KNOX Mobile Enrollment, go to the KNOX portal and then click Launch Mobile Enrollment.

If Samsung cannot authorize the account to use Bulk Enrollment, you see this screen:
The enrollment process then follows these general steps, described in detail in the following subsections.

1. Create an MDM profile with your MDM console information and settings.
   The MDM profile indicates to your devices how to connect to your MDM.

2. Add devices to your MDM profile.
   You can either upload a CSV file with device information or scan the devices with the Mobile Enrollment app from Google Play.

3. Samsung alerts you when device ownership is verified.

4. Provide users with MDM credentials. Instruct them to connect to the Internet using Wi-Fi and to accept the prompt to enroll their device.

**To create an MDM profile**

Create an MDM profile that defines the Endpoint Management server to use. Create one profile per server.

1. Log on to the KNOX Mobile Enrollment website.

2. Click the **MDM Profiles** tab, click **Add** and then click **Server URI not required for my MDM**.
Note:
Do not specify an MDM server URI. Endpoint Management does not use the Samsung MDM protocol.

3. In the **Create an MDM Profile** screen, provide the following:
   
   - A name for the profile.
   
   - For **MDM Agent APK**, the Secure Hub APK download URL. For example:
     
     ```
     https://example.com/zdm/worxhome.apk
     https://pmdm.mycorp-inc.net/zdm/worxhome.apk
     ```

     The APK file can reside on any server that the devices can access during enrollment. During the enrollment, a device downloads Secure Hub from that URL, installs Secure Hub, and then opens Secure Hub with the custom JSON data described next.

     Note:
     
     The capitalization of the .apk file name must match the URL you enter. For example, if the file name is all lowercase, it must also be all lowercase in the URL.

   - For Custom JSON Data, enter the Endpoint Management server address, user name, and password in the format:

     ```
     { "serverURL": "URL", "xm_username": "Username", "xm_password": "Password" }
     ```

     Examples:
You can also enter custom JSON for zero-touch enrollment for Android Enterprise.

```json
"android.app.extra.PROVISIONING_ADMIN_EXTRAS_BUNDLE":
{
"serverURL": "URL", "xm_username": "username", "xm_password": "password"
}
```

**Note:**

The Secure Hub APK file must be uploaded on the specified server (example: https://pmdm.mycorp-inc.net:4443) under the Apps section. This process is similar to uploading enterprise apps.
When a device starts bulk enrollment, the device uses the profile data. First, the device downloads Secure Hub from the given URL, installs Secure Hub, and opens Secure Hub with the custom JSON data as parameter. Secure Hub already has the Endpoint Management address, so Secure Hub doesn’t need to prompt for it. Enrollment occurs automatically, since the JSON file provides credentials as well.
To add devices by using a .csv file

To add devices, upload device IDs and associate them to one of the previously created MDM profiles. Upload a .csv file. The different ways of building the file are documented on the KNOX website. The simplest way is to enter one IMEI per line, as follows.

Note:
You can alternatively add devices by scanning them, as described in the next section.

1. Go to Devices > All Devices and then click Upload Devices.

2. Under CSV File Format, click Download file template.

3. Enter information in corresponding columns in the template:
   - Device info: IMEI, MEID, or serial number.
   - Other info: (optional) Any other information that you want to include about the device.

Note:
The template includes Username and Password columns. If you are using legacy Android enterprise and users’ Samsung devices are running versions earlier than KNOX 3.0, they cannot sign on with their user name and password in Secure Hub. Therefore, you can leave these columns blank.

If you are using Android Enterprise and users’ Samsung devices are running KNOX 3.0 or later, optionally you can enter a user name and password. The user name and password would have been provisioned to users for the enterprise MDM setup.
4. Highlight all the cells in the spreadsheet.

5. Right-click the highlighted cells and then select **Format cells**.

6. On the **Number** tab, under **Category**, click **Text** and then click **OK**.

7. Save the spreadsheet as a .csv file.

**To enroll devices by using a .csv file**

1. Click the **Devices** tab.

2. Click **Upload Devices**.

3. In the **Add Devices** dialog box, click **Browse**, select your .csv file and then click **Upload**.

4. Enter your purchase details. The KNOX Mobile Enrollment tool verifies your purchase details to ensure that each device is enrolled in the proper enterprise.

5. Under **Assign to Profile**, select the MDM profile that you added.

6. Click **Submit**.

   The **All Devices** list displays the enrollment status and profile of all the devices that you attempted to enroll.

   For a device to successfully enroll in the enterprise, the device must connect to Wi-Fi and users must agree to download and install Secure Hub.
To add devices by using scan

1. Download and install the KNOX Mobile Enrollment app from Google Play.
2. Enter your Samsung Portal credentials and then tap **SIGN IN**.
3. Tap **Scan Devices**.
4. Tap **Scan new devices**.
5. Align the barcode of your device with the red line to scan.
6. If the scan succeeds, the device IMEI appears. Tap **Save**.
7. Your scanned devices are shown in the scan queue. Tap **Upload**.

To enroll scanned devices

1. Log on to your KNOX Web Portal account and click **Launch Mobile Enrollment**.
2. Tap **Scanned** to view all added devices.
3. Select the devices that you want to enroll and then tap **Submit selected**. To submit all scanned devices, tap **Submit all**.
4. In the **Submit scanned devices** pop-up, enter your **Purchase details** to confirm device ownership.
5. In the **Assign MDM profile** menu, select the profile to use for device enrollment and then click **Submit**.

You receive a confirmation email when the device information is verified.

For security reasons, devices are not immediately assigned to this bulk enrollment account. Samsung first must verify that the devices belong to the entity that is setting up the bulk enrollment account. For that purpose, the next screen prompts for the identity of the reseller and for matching invoices.
For legal reasons, Samsung maintains two distinct server groups: Americas and EU. U.S. devices must register with a KNOX account for the U.S. region. EU devices, as well as devices from any other region except China, which is not supported, must register with a KNOX account for the EU region.

A device from the wrong region is accepted into the account, but bulk enrollment fails on the device with a cryptic error. To check whether the device country code or origin is a non-U.S. country, download the simple Phone Info Samsung app from Google Play.

**Enrollment experience for users**

After the preceding configuration is completed, the first time a user starts a device and connects to the Internet using Wi-Fi, the following sequence of screens appears. The enrollment process starts automatically and users need to download and install Secure Hub and then enter valid credentials on the Secure Hub screen to complete the enrollment.

**Note:**

Enrollment doesn’t use a cellular connection to avoid any network costs for the user.
Please wait while we download applications and enroll your device with your organization's IT environment.
To enroll devices running a KNOX API earlier than version 2.4

On devices that have KNOX API earlier than version 2.4, bulk enrollment does not work out of the box. Therefore, users must initiate enrollment by going to a Samsung site to download the new Mobile Enrollment client and start the enrollment.

The downloaded enrollment client uses the same MDM profile and APKs configured in the KNOX Bulk enrollment portal for the KNOX 2.4/2.4.1 devices.
Users typically follow these steps:

1. Turn on the device and connect to Wi-Fi. If the Mobile Enrollment doesn’t start or Wi-Fi is not available, do the following:
   - Go to https://me.samsungknox.com.
   - Tap the Enroll button to enroll devices with mobile data.

2. When the prompt Enroll with KNOX appears, tap Continue.

3. Read the EULAs (if available). Tap Next.

4. If prompted, enter the UserID and Password provided by the IT administrator.

At this point, the user credentials are validated and their device is enrolled in your organization’s enterprise IT environment.

**Enable and disable biometric authentication for Samsung devices**

Endpoint Management allows you to enable and disable biometric authentication (fingerprint and iris scan authentication) for Samsung devices without requiring any action from users. If you disable biometric authentication in Endpoint Management, users and third-party apps cannot enable the feature.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click Configure > Device Policies. The Device Policies page appears.


3. Click Passcode. The Passcode Policy information page appears.

4. In the Policy Information pane, enter the following information:
   - Policy Name: Type a descriptive name for the policy.
   - Description: Optionally, type a description of the policy.

5. Click Next. The Platforms page appears.

6. Under Platforms, select Android or Samsung KNOX.

7. Set Configure biometric authentication to ON.

8. If you selected Android, under Samsung SAFE, select Allow fingerprint or Allow Iris or both.
iOS

January 11, 2019

To manage iOS devices in Endpoint Management, you set up an Apple Push Notification service (APNs) certificate from Apple. For information, see APNs certificates.

Endpoint Management enrolls iOS devices into MDM+MAM mode, with the option for users to register in MAM-only mode. Endpoint Management supports the following authentication types for iOS devices in MDM+MAM mode. For information, see the articles under Certificates and authentication.

- Domain
- Domain plus security token
- Client certificate
- Client certificate plus domain
- Derived credentials
- Identity providers:
  - Azure Active Directory
  - Citrix Identity provider

A general workflow for starting iOS device management is as follows:

1. Complete the onboarding process. See Onboarding and resource setup and Prepare to enroll devices and deliver resources.
2. Choose and configure an enrollment method. See Supported enrollment methods.
3. Configure iOS device policies.
4. Enroll iOS devices that use user-provided credentials.
5. Set up device and app security actions. See Security actions.
For supported operating systems, see Supported device operating systems.

**Supported enrollment methods**

The following table lists the enrollment methods that Endpoint Management supports for iOS devices:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apple School Manager DEP</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apple Configurator</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual enrollment</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enrollment invitations</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Apple has device enrollment programs for business and education accounts. For business accounts, you enroll in the Apple Deployment Program to use the Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) for device enrollment and management in Endpoint Management. That program is for iOS, macOS, and Apple TV devices. See Deploy devices through Apple DEP.

For education accounts, you create an Apple School Manager account. Apple School Manager unifies the Device Enrollment Program (DEP) and Volume Purchase Program (VPP). Apple School Manager is a type of Education DEP. See Integrate with Apple Education features.

You can use the Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) to bulk enroll iOS, macOS, and Apple TV devices. You can purchase those devices directly from Apple, a participating Apple Authorized Reseller, or a carrier. Whether you purchase iOS devices directly from Apple, you can use the Apple Configurator to enroll those devices. See Bulk enrollment of Apple devices.

**Add an iOS device manually**

If you want to add an iOS device manually, such as for testing purposes, follow these steps.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click Manage > Devices. The Devices page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add Device** page appears.

3. Configure these settings:
   - **Select platform**: Click **iOS**.
   - **Serial Number**: Type the device serial number.

4. Click **Add**. The **Devices** table appears with the device added to the bottom of the list. To view and confirm the device details: Choose the device you added and then, in the menu that appears, click **Edit**.

   **Note:**
   When you select the check box next to a device, the options menu appears above the device list. When you click anywhere else in the list, the options menu appears on the right side of the listing.

   - LDAP configured
   - If using local groups and local users:
     - One or more local groups.
     - Local users assigned to local groups.
     - Delivery groups are associated with local groups.
   - If using Active Directory:
     - Delivery groups are associated with Active Directory groups.
5. The **General** page lists device **Identifiers**, such as the serial number and other information for the platform type. For **Device Ownership**, select **Corporate** or **BYOD**.

The **General** page also lists device **Security** properties, such as Strong ID, Lock Device, Activation Lock Bypass, and other information for the platform type. The **Full Wipe of Device** field includes the user PIN code. The user must enter that code after the device is wiped. If the user forgets the code, you can look it up here.

6. The **Properties** page lists the device properties that Endpoint Management is to provision. This list shows any device properties included in the provisioning file used to add the device. To add a property, click **Add** and then select a property from the list. For valid values for each property, see the PDF **Device property names and values**.

When you add a property, it initially appears under the category where you added it. After you click **Next** and then return to the **Properties** page, the property appears in the appropriate list.

To delete a property, hover over the listing and then click the X on the right side. Endpoint Management deletes the item immediately.

7. The remaining **Device Details** sections contain summary information for the device.

   - **User Properties**: Displays RBAC roles, group memberships, VPP accounts, and properties for the user. You can retire a VPP account from this page.
   - **Assigned Policies**: Displays the number of assigned policies including the number of deployed, pending, and failed policies. Provides the policy name, type and last deployed information for each policy.
• **Apps:** Displays, for the last inventory, the number of installed, pending, and failed app deployments. Provides the app name, identifier, type, and other information. For a description of iOS and macOS inventory keys, such as `HasUpdateAvailable`, see Mobile Device Management (MDM) Protocol.

• **Media:** Displays, for the last inventory, the number of deployed, pending, and failed media deployments.

• **Actions:** Displays the number of deployed, pending, and failed actions. Provides the action name and time of the last deployment.

• **Delivery Groups:** Displays the number of successful, pending, and failed delivery groups. For each deployment, provides the delivery group name and deployment time. Select a delivery group to view more detailed information, including status, action, and channel or user.

• **iOS Profiles:** Displays the last iOS profile inventory, including name, type, organization, and description.

• **iOS Provisioning Profiles:** Displays enterprise distribution provisioning profile information, such as the UUID, expiration date, and managed status.

• **Certificates:** Displays, for valid, expired, or revoked certificates, information such as the type, provider, issuer, serial number, and the number of remaining days before expiration.

• **Connections:** Displays the first connection status and the last connection status. Provides for each connection, the user name, penultimate (next to last) authentication time, and last authentication time.

• **MDM Status:** Displays information such as the MDM status, last push time, and last device reply time.

### Configure iOS device policies

Use these policies to configure how Endpoint Management interacts with devices running iOS. This table lists all device policies available for iOS devices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AirPlay mirroring</th>
<th>AirPrint</th>
<th>APN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>App access</td>
<td>App attributes</td>
<td>App configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App inventory</td>
<td>App lock</td>
<td>App network usage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App uninstall</td>
<td>Apps notifications</td>
<td>Calendar (CalDAV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellular</td>
<td>Contacts (CardDAV)</td>
<td>Control OS update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credentials</td>
<td>Device name</td>
<td>Education configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exchange</td>
<td>Font</td>
<td>Home screen layout</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Enroll iOS devices that use user-provided credentials

Note:

For more information, see Enroll iOS devices that use derived credentials.

1. Download the Secure Hub app from the Apple iTunes App Store on the device and then install the app on the device.
2. On the iOS device Home screen, tap the Secure Hub app.
3. When the Secure Hub app opens, enter the server address that your help desk provided.

The screens presented might differ from these examples, depending on how Endpoint Management is configured.
Please enter the credentials provided by your organization.

@ mdm.[...].com

Next

123 . / .com Next
4. When prompted, enter your user name and password or PIN. Click **Next**.
Please enter the credentials provided by your organization.

Username

Pin

Back  Next
5. When prompted to enroll, click **Yes, Enroll** and then enter your credentials when prompted.
Enroll Your iPhone

Enrolling secures your iPhone and your work apps. Do you want to enroll your device?

Yes, Enroll

No
6. Tap **Install** to install the Citrix Profile Services.

7. Tap **Trust**.

8. Tap **Open** and then enter your credentials.
Open this page in “Secure Hub”?

Cancel  Open

Complete Enrollment
Secure Hub

Please enter the credentials provided by your organization.

xenmobileuser

Next
Security actions

iOS supports the following security actions. For a description of each security action, see Security actions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activation Lock Bypass</td>
<td>App Lock</td>
<td>App Wipe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASM DEP Activation Lock</td>
<td>Certificate Renewal</td>
<td>Clear Restrictions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable/Disable Lost Mode</td>
<td>Enable/Disable Tracking</td>
<td>Full Wipe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locate</td>
<td>Lock</td>
<td>Ring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Request/Stop AirPlay Mirroring</td>
<td>Restart/Shut Down</td>
<td>Revoke/Authorize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selective Wipe</td>
<td>Unlock</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Lock iOS devices

You can lock a lost iOS device with an accompanying display of a message and phone number that displays on the device lock screen.

To display a message and phone number on a locked device, set the Passcode policy to true in the Endpoint Management console. Alternatively, users can enable the passcode on the device manually.

1. Click Manage > Devices. The Devices page appears.

2. Select the iOS device you want to lock.

Select the check box next to a device to show the options menu above the device list. Click anywhere else in the list to show the options menu on the right side of the listing.
3. In the options menu, click Secure. The **Security Actions** dialog box appears.
4. Click **Lock**. The **Security Actions** confirmation dialog box displays.

![Security Actions dialog box](image)

5. Optionally, type a message and phone number that appears on the lock screen of the device.
   - iOS appends the words “Lost iPad” to what you type in the **Message** field.
   - If you leave the **Message** field empty and provide a phone number, Apple displays the message “Call owner” on the device lock screen.

6. Click **Lock Device**.

**Put iOS devices in Lost Mode**

The Endpoint Management Lost Mode device property puts an iOS device in Lost Mode. Unlike Apple Managed Lost Mode, Endpoint Management Lost Mode doesn’t require a user to perform either of the following actions to enable locating their device: Configure the **Find My iPhone/iPad** setting or enable the Location Services for Citrix Secure Hub.

In Endpoint Management Lost Mode, only Endpoint Management can unlock the device. (In contrast, if you use the Endpoint Management device lock feature, users can unlock the device directly by using a PIN code that you provide.

To enable or disable lost mode: Go to **Manage > Devices**, choose a supervised iOS device, and then click **Secure**. Then, click **Enable Lost Mode** or **Disable Lost Mode**.
If you click **Enable Lost Mode**, type information to appear on the device when it’s in lost mode.

Use any of the following methods to check Lost Mode status:

- In the **Security Actions** window, verify if the button is **Disable Lost Mode**.
- From **Manage > Devices**, on the **General** tab under **Security**, see the last Enable Lost Mode or Disable Lost Mode action.
From Manage > Devices, on the Properties tab, verify that the value of the **MDM lost mode enabled** setting is correct.
If you enable Endpoint Management Lost Mode on an iOS device, the Endpoint Management console also changes as follows:

- In **Configure > Actions**, the **Actions** list doesn’t include these automated actions: **Revokethe device**, **Selectively wipe the device**, and **Completely wipe the device**.
- In **Manage > Devices**, the **Security Actions** list no longer includes the **Revoke** and **Selective Wipe** device actions. You can still use a security action to perform a **Full Wipe** action, as needed.

iOS appends the words “Lost iPad” to what you type in the **Message** in the **Security Actions** screen.

If you leave the **Message** empty and provide a phone number, Apple shows the message “Call owner” on the device lock screen.

### Bypass an iOS activation lock

Activation Lock is a feature of Find My iPhone/iPad that prevents reactivation of a lost or stolen supervised device. Activation Lock requires the user Apple ID and password before anyone can perform these actions: Turn off Find My iPhone/iPad, erase the device, or reactivate the device. For the devices that your organization owns, bypassing an Activation Lock is necessary to, for example, reset or reallocate devices.

To enable Activation Lock, you configure and deploy the Endpoint Management MDM Options device policy. You can then manage a device from the Endpoint Management console without the Apple credentials of the user. To bypass the Apple credential requirement of an Activation Lock, issue the Activation Lock Bypass security action from the Endpoint Management console.

For example, if the user returns a lost phone or to set up the device before or after a Full Wipe: When the phone prompts for the iTunes account credential, you can bypass that step by issuing the Activation Lock Bypass security action from the Endpoint Management console.

### Device requirements for activation lock bypass

- Supervised through Apple Configurator or Apple DEP
- Configured with an iCloud account
- Find My iPhone/iPad enabled
- Enrolled in Endpoint Management
- MDM Options device policy, with activation lock enabled, is deployed to devices

To bypass an activation lock before issuing a Full Wipe of a device:

1. Go to **Manage > Devices**, select the device, click **Secure**, and then click **Activation Lock Bypass**.
2. Wipe the device. The activation lock screen doesn’t appear during device setup.

To bypass an activation lock after issuing a Full Wipe of a device:
1. Reset or wipe the device. The activation lock screen appears during device setup.
2. Go to Manage > Devices, select the device, click Secure, and then click Activation Lock Bypass.
3. Tap the Back button on the device. The home screen appears.

Keep in mind the following:

- Advise your users not to turn off Find My iPhone/iPad. Don’t perform a full wipe from the device. In either of those cases, the user is prompted to enter the iCloud account password. After account validation, the user won’t see an Activate iPhone/iPad screen after erasing all content and settings.
- For a device with a generated Activation lock bypass code and with the Activation lock enabled: If you can’t bypass the Activate iPhone/iPad page after a Full Wipe, there is no need to delete the device from Endpoint Management. Either you or the user can contact Apple support to unblock the device directly.
- During a hardware inventory, Endpoint Management queries a device for an Activation lock bypass code. If a bypass code is available, the device sends it to Endpoint Management. Then, to remove the bypass code from the device, send the Activation Lock Bypass security action from the Endpoint Management console. At that point, Endpoint Management and Apple have the bypass code required to unblock the device.
- The Activation Lock Bypass security action relies on the availability of an Apple service. If the action doesn’t work, you can unblock a device as follows. On the device, manually enter the credentials of the iCloud account. Or, leave the user name field empty and type the bypass code in the password field. To look up the bypass code, go to Manage > Devices, select the device, click Edit, and click Properties. The Activation lock bypass code is under Security information.

macOS

December 14, 2018

To manage macOS devices in Endpoint Management, you set up an Apple Push Notification service (APNs) certificate from Apple. For information, see APNs certificates.

Endpoint Management enrolls macOS devices into MDM mode.

A general workflow for starting macOS device management is as follows:

1. Complete the onboarding process. See Onboarding and resource setup and Prepare to enroll devices and deliver resources.
2. Choose and configure an enrollment method. See Supported enrollment methods.
3. Configure macOS device policies.
4. Enroll macOS devices.
5. Set up device and app security actions. See Security actions.

For supported operating systems, see Supported device operating systems.

**Supported enrollment methods**

The following table lists the enrollment methods that Endpoint Management supports for macOS devices:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apple School Manager DEP</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apple Configurator</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual enrollment</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enrollment invitations</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Apple has device enrollment programs for business and education accounts. For business accounts, you enroll in the Apple Deployment Program to use the Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) for device enrollment and management in Endpoint Management. That program is for iOS, macOS, and Apple TV devices. See Deploy devices through Apple DEP.

For education accounts, you create an Apple School Manager account. Apple School Manager unifies the Device Enrollment Program (DEP) and Volume Purchase Program (VPP). Apple School Manager is a type of Education DEP. See Integrate with Apple Education features.

You can use the Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) to bulk enroll iOS, macOS, and Apple TV devices. You can purchase those devices directly from Apple, a participating Apple Authorized Reseller, or a carrier.

**Configure macOS device policies**

Use these policies to configure how Endpoint Management interacts with devices running macOS. This table lists all device policies available for macOS devices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AirPlay mirroring</th>
<th>App inventory</th>
<th>Calendar (CalDAV)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Contacts (CardDAV)</td>
<td>Control OS update</td>
<td>Credentials</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Enroll macOS devices

Endpoint Management provides two methods to enroll devices that are running macOS. Both methods enable macOS users to enroll over the air, directly from their devices.

- **Send users an enrollment invitation**: This enrollment method enables you to set any of the following enrollment modes for macOS devices:
  - User name + password
  - User name + PIN
  - Two Factor

  When the user follows the instructions in the enrollment invitation, a sign-on screen with the user name filled in appears.

- **Send users an enrollment link**: This enrollment method for macOS devices sends users an enrollment link, which they can open in Safari or Chrome browsers. A user then enrolls by providing their user name and password.

  To prevent the use of an enrollment link for macOS devices, set the server property, Enable macOS OTAE to false. As a result, macOS users can enroll only by using an enrollment invitation.

Send macOS users an enrollment invitation

1. Add an invitation for macOS user enrollment. See Enrollment invitations.

2. After users receive the invitation and click the link, the following screen appears in the Safari browser. Endpoint Management fills in the user name. If you chose Two Factor for the enrollment mode, another field appears.
3. Users install certificates as necessary. Whether users see the prompt to install certificates depends on whether you configured the following for macOS: A publicly trusted SSL certificate and a publicly trusted digital signing certificate. For information about certificates, see Certificates and authentication.

4. Users provide the requested credentials.

The Mac device policies install. You can now start managing Macs with Endpoint Management just as you manage mobile devices.

**Send macOS users an installation link**

1. Send the enrollment link `https://serverFQDN:8443/instanceName/macos/otae`, which users can open in Safari or Chrome browsers.
   - **serverFQDN** is the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the server running Endpoint Management.
   - **Port 8443** is the default secure port. If you configured a different port, use that port instead of 8443.
   - The **instanceName**, often shown as zdm, is the name specified during server installation.

   For more information about sending installation links, see [To send an installation link](#).

2. Users install certificates as necessary. If you configured a publicly trusted SSL certificate and digital signing certificate for iOS and macOS, users see the prompt to install certificates. For information about certificates, see Certificates and authentication.
3. Users sign on to their Macs.

The Mac device policies install. You can now start managing Macs with Endpoint Management just as you manage mobile devices.

**Security actions**

macOS supports the following security actions. For a description of each security action, see Security actions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Certificate renewal</th>
<th>Full Wipe</th>
<th>Lock</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Notify</td>
<td>Revoke/Authorize</td>
<td>Selective Wipe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Deploy devices through Apple DEP**

August 21, 2018

Apple has device enrollment programs for business and education accounts. For business accounts, you enroll in the Apple Deployment Program to use the Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) for device enrollment and management in Endpoint Management. That program is for iOS, macOS, and Apple TV devices. For information about signing up for a business Apple Deployment Program account, see this PDF from Apple.

Be aware that the Apple Deployment Program is available for organizations and not individuals. You must provide a considerable amount of corporate details and information to create an Apple Deployment Program account. Thus, it could take time to request and receive approval for accounts.

For education accounts, you create an Apple School Manager account. Apple School Manager unifies the Device Enrollment Program (DEP) and Volume Purchase Program (VPP). Apple School Manager is a type of Education DEP. To create an Apple School Manager account, go to https://school.apple.com/.

**Enroll in the Apple Deployment Program**

1. Go to deploy.apple.com to apply for an Apple Deployment Program account. When applying for a DEP account, the best practice is to use an email address for the organization, such as dep@company.com.
Note:
For education accounts, go to https://school.apple.com/.

2. After you type your organization information, Apple emails you a temporary password for the new Apple ID.

3. You then sign in with your Apple ID and complete the security settings for the account.
4. Configure and enable two-step verification, which is required for use with the DEP Portal. During these steps, after you add a phone number, you receive the 4-digit PIN for the two-step verification.

5. Log in to the DEP Portal to complete the account configuration using the two-step verification that you set up.

6. Add your company details and then select from where you purchase devices. For details on purchasing options, see the next section, Order DEP-enabled devices.
7. Add the Apple Customer Number or the DEP Reseller ID. Then verify your enrollment details and wait for Apple to approve your account.
8. After you receive your logon credentials from Apple, log in to the Apple DEP Portal.

To connect your account to Endpoint Management, see “Integrate your Apple DEP account with Endpoint Management” in *Bulk enrollment of Apple devices.*
**Order DEP-enabled devices**

You can order DEP-enabled devices directly from Apple or DEP-enabled authorized resellers or carriers. To order from Apple, provide your Apple Customer ID in the Apple DEP Portal. Your Customer ID enables Apple to associate your purchased devices with your Apple DEP account.

To order from your reseller or carrier, contact your Apple reseller or carrier to check if they participate in the Apple DEP. Ask for the Apple DEP ID of the reseller when purchasing devices. Apple requires that information when you add your Apple DEP reseller to your Apple DEP account. After you add the Apple DEP ID for the reseller, you receive a DEP customer ID. Provide the DEP customer ID to the reseller, who uses the ID to submit information about your device purchases to Apple. For more information, see this [Apple website](https://www.apple.com).

**Manage DEP-enabled devices**

Follow these steps to associate devices with your Endpoint Management server by using the DEP Portal to update your Apple DEP account.

1. Log on to the Apple DEP Portal.

2. Click *Device Enrollment Program* and then click *Manage Devices*. In *Choose Devices By*, choose the option for which you want to upload and define your Apple DEP-enabled devices: *Serial Number*, *Order Number*, or *Upload CSV File*.
3. To assign your devices to a Endpoint Management server, under **Choose Action**, choose **Assign to Server**. Then, in the list, choose the name of your Endpoint Management server. Click **OK**.
Your Apple DEP devices are now associated with the selected Endpoint Management server.
Endpoint Management displays a License Expiration Warning when Apple DEP tokens are nearing expiration or have expired.

User experience when enrolling an Apple DEP-enabled device

When users enroll an Apple DEP-enabled device, their experience is as follows.
1. Users start their Apple DEP-enabled device.
2. Endpoint Management delivers the Apple DEP configuration that you configured in the Endpoint Management console to the Apple DEP-enabled device.
3. Users configure the initial settings on their device.
4. The device automatically starts the Endpoint Management device enrollment process.
5. Users continue to configure the other initial settings on their device.
6. In the home screen, users might be prompted to sign in to iTunes so that they can download Citrix Secure Hub.

Note:
This step is optional if Endpoint Management is configured to deploy the Secure Hub app using the device-based Volume Purchase Program (VPP) app assignment. In this case, you don’t need to create an iTunes account or use an existing account.
7. Users open Secure Hub and type their credentials. If required by the policy, users might be prompted to create and verify a Citrix PIN. Endpoint Management deploys any remaining required apps to the device.

**Bulk enrollment of Apple devices**

December 18, 2018

You can enroll large numbers of iOS, macOS, and Apple TV devices in Endpoint Management in two ways.

- You can use the Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) to enroll the iOS, macOS, and Apple TV devices that you buy directly from Apple, a participating Apple Authorized Reseller, or a carrier. That support includes Shared iPads. Endpoint Management supports the Device Enrollment Program for Business and Apple School Manager for Education. This article describes integrating with Business DEP accounts. For information about Apple School Manager DEP accounts, see [Integrate with Apple Education features](#).

  For DEP enrollment of macOS devices, Endpoint Management requires that the devices run macOS 10.10 or later.

- Or you can use the Apple Configurator to enroll iOS devices whether you purchased them directly from Apple or not.

**With Business DEP:**

- You do not have to touch or prepare the devices. Instead, you submit device serial numbers or purchase order numbers through DEP to configure and enroll the devices.
- After Endpoint Management enrolls the devices, you can give them to users who can start using them right out of the box. In addition, when you set up devices with DEP, you can eliminate some of the Setup Assistant steps that users would otherwise have to complete when they first start their devices.
  - For more information on setting up DEP, see the Apple [Device Enrollment Program](#) page.

**With the Apple Configurator:**

- You attach iOS devices to an Apple computer running macOS 10.7.2 or later and the Apple Configurator 2 app. You prepare the iOS devices and configure policies through Apple Configurator 2.
- After you provision the devices with the required policies, the first time the devices connect to Endpoint Management, the devices receive policies from Endpoint Management. You can then start managing the devices.
  - For more information about using Apple Configurator, see the Apple [Configurator](#) help.
Prerequisites

Open required ports for connectivity between Endpoint Management and Apple. For more information, see Port requirements.

Integrate your Business Apple DEP account with Endpoint Management

If you do not have an Apple Business DEP account, see Deploy devices through Apple DEP.

To connect your Apple Business DEP account with your Endpoint Management server deployment, you enter information in the Endpoint Management console and the Apple DEP Portal, as described in the following steps.

Step 1: Download a public key from your Endpoint Management server

1. Log on to the Endpoint Management console and go to Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP).

2. Under Download Public Key, click Download.

Step 2: Create and download a server token file from your Apple account

1. Using your corporate Apple ID, log on to the Apple Deployment Program Portal.

2. In the Apple DEP Portal, click Device Enrollment Program.
3. Click **Manage Servers** and then on the right side, click **Add MDM Server**.

4. In **Add MDM Server**, enter a name for your Endpoint Management server and then click **Next**.
5. On the Apple DEP Portal, click Choose file, choose the public key you downloaded from Endpoint Management, and click Next.

6. Click Your Server Token to generate a server token, which downloads from the browser, and then click Done.
Your Apple DEP token information appears in the Endpoint Management console after you import the token file. You upload the server token file when adding the DEP account to Endpoint Management.

**Step 3: Add a DEP account to Endpoint Management**

You can add multiple DEP accounts to Endpoint Management. This feature enables you to use different enrollment settings and setup assistant options by country, department, and so on. You then associate DEP accounts with different device policies.

For example, you might centralize all of your DEP accounts from different countries on the same Endpoint Management server, to import and supervise all DEP devices. By customizing enrollment settings and setup assistant options per department, organizational hierarchy, or other structure, you can ensure that policies provide appropriate functionality across your organization and that device users receive the appropriate setup assistance.

1. In Endpoint Management console, go to **Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)** and, under **Add DEP Account**, click **Add**.
2. In the **Account Info** page, specify these settings:

- **DEP account name**: A unique name for this DEP account. Use names that reflect how you organize DEP accounts, such as by country or organizational hierarchy.
- **Business/Education unit**: The business unit or department to which the device is assigned. This field is required.
- **Unique service ID**: An optional unique ID to help you further identify the account.
- **Support phone number**: A support phone number that users call for help during setup. This field is required.
- **Support email address**: An optional support email address available to end users.

3. In the **Server Tokens** page, specify your server token file and then click **Upload**.
Your server token information appears.

4. **In iOS Settings**, specify these settings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>macOS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HOD 9.3.x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macOS</td>
<td>Allow enrollment profile removal</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>macOS</td>
<td>Allow device pairing</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Enrollment settings:**

- **Require device enrollment**: Whether to require users to enroll their devices. The default is **Yes**.
- **Require credentials for device enrollment**: Whether to require users to enter their cre-
Citrix Endpoint Management

dentials during DEP set up. Citrix recommends that you require all users to enter their credentials during device enrollment, thus allowing only authorized users to enroll devices. The default is **Yes**.

When DEP is on for the first time setup and you don’t select this option, the DEP components, such as DEP user, Secure Hub, software inventory, and DEP deployment group, are created. If you do select this option, Endpoint Management doesn’t create the components. As a result, if you later clear this option, users who haven’t entered their credentials can’t perform the DEP enrollment because these DEP components do not exist. To add DEP components, in that case, you should disable and enable the DEP account.

**Wait for configuration to complete setup:** Whether to require users’ devices to remain in Setup Assistant mode until all MDM resources deploy to the device. This is available for devices in supervised mode. The default is **No**.

**Apple documentation states that the following commands may not work while a device is in Setup Assistant mode:**
- InviteToProgram
- InstallApplication
- ApplyRedemptionCode
- InstallMedia
- RequestMirroring
- DeviceLock

**Device settings:**

**Supervised mode:** Must be set to **Yes** if you are using the Apple Configurator to manage DEP enrolled devices or when *Wait for configuration to complete setup* is enabled. The default is **Yes**. For details on placing an iOS device in supervised mode, see *To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator*.

**Allow enrollment profile removal:** Whether to allow devices to use a profile that you can remove remotely. The default is **No**.

**Allow device pairing:** For devices enrolled through DEP, whether you can manage them through iTunes and the Apple Configurator. The default is **No**.

**Supervision Identities**

- Add a certificate to support the use of GroundControl. With this certificate, you can do the following:
  - Override pairing restrictions to avoid the “Trust this host” prompt.
  - Escalate managed device actions over USB to perform activities such as profile installation without user interaction. This allows GroundControl to enable single app mode and device lock for checkout.
  - Restore a backup to DEP devices.
For more information on GroundControl, see The GroundControl website.

5. **In macOS Settings**, specify these settings:

   **Enrollment settings:**
   - **Require device enrollment**: Whether to require users to enroll their devices. The default is Yes.
   - **Wait for configuration to complete setup**: If Yes, the macOS device doesn’t continue in the setup assistant until the MDM resource passcode gets deployed to the device. That deployment occurs before the creation of the local account. This is available for macOS 10.11 and higher devices. The default is No.

   **Device settings:**
   - **Allow enrollment profile removal**: Whether to allow devices to use a profile that you can remove remotely. The default is No.

6. **In Apple TV Settings**, specify these settings:

   - **Require device enrollment**: Prevents users from skipping enrollment.
   - **Require Credentials for device enrollment**: Challenges for credentials during enrollment. When this setting is off, Apple TV gets enrolled as the default “Device Enrollment Program user”.
   - **Wait for configuration to complete setup**: The device waits in the **Setup Assistant** screen until all resources deploy.
   - **Supervised mode**: Gives more capability to the administrator while configuring restrictions.
   - **Allow enrollment profile removal**: Allows users to remove the enrollment profiles.
   - **Allow device pairing**: Allows devices enrolled through the Device Enrollment Program to be managed through Apple tools, such as iTunes and the Apple Configurator.
7. In **iOS Setup Assistant Options**, select the iOS Setup Assistant steps that your users will skip when they start their devices the first time. The default for all items is unchecked.

- **Location services**: Set up the location service on the device.
- **Touch ID**: Set up Touch ID on iOS devices.
- **Passcode lock**: Create a passcode for the device.
• **Set up as New or Restore:** Set up the device as new or from an iCloud or iTunes backup.

• **Move from Android:** Enable transferring data from an Android device to an iOS device. This option is available only when **Set up as New or Restore** is selected (that is, the step is skipped).

• **Apple ID:** Set up an Apple ID account for the device.

• **Terms and conditions:** Require users to accept terms and conditions for use of the device.

• **Apple Pay:** Set up Apple Pay on iOS devices.

• **Siri:** Use or not use Siri on the device.

• **App analytics:** Set up whether to share crash data and usage statistics with Apple.

• **Display zoom:** Set up the display resolution (either standard or zoomed) on iOS devices.

• **True Tone:** Set up the True Tone Display on iOS devices.

• **Home Button:** Set up the Home Button screen sensitivity on iOS devices.

• **New feature highlights:** Set up the onboarding informational screens, Access the Dock from Anywhere and Switch Between Recent Apps on iOS 11.0 devices (minimum version).

• **Privacy:** Prevent users from seeing the data and privacy pane during setup of DEP devices. For iOS 11.3 and later.

• **Software Update:** Prevents the user from seeing the mandatory software update screen during setup of the DEP devices. For iOS 12.0 and later.

• **ScreenTime:** Prevents the user from seeing the Screen Time screen during setup of the DEP devices. For iOS 12.0 and later.

• **SIM Setup:** Prevents the user from seeing the Add Cellular Plan screen during setup of the DEP devices. For iOS 12.0 and later.

• **iMessage & FaceTime:** Prevents the user from seeing the iMessage and FaceTime screen during setup of the DEP devices. For iOS 12.0 and later.

The DEP account appears on **Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP).**

8. **In macOS Setup Assistant Options,** select the macOS Setup Assistant steps that your users skip when they start their devices the first time. The default for all items is unchecked.
• **Set up as New or Restore:** Set up the device as new or from an iCloud or iTunes backup.

• **Location services:** Set up the location service on the device.

• **Apple ID:** Set up an Apple ID account for the device.

• **Terms and conditions:** Require users to accept terms and conditions for use of the device.

• **Siri:** Use or not use Siri on the device.

• **FileVault:** Use FileVault to encrypt the startup disk. Endpoint Management applies the FileVault setting only if the system has a single local user account and that account is signed into iCloud.

You can use the macOS FileVault Disk Encryption feature to protect the system volume by encrypting its contents ([https://support.apple.com/en-us/HT204837](https://support.apple.com/en-us/HT204837)). If you run the Setup assistant on a late-model portable Mac that doesn't have FileVault turned on, you might be prompted to turn on this feature. The prompt appears on both new systems and systems upgraded to OS X 10.10 or 10.11, but only if the system has a single local administrator account and that account is signed into iCloud.

• **App analytics:** Set up whether to share crash data and usage statistics with Apple.

• **Registration:** Require users to register their device.

Registration information setup was available through OS X 10.9. The registration process allowed you to send system registration information to Apple. This information associated your contact information with the Mac hardware. Apple primarily used the information to facilitate AppleCare support. If you previously entered an Apple ID, Setup Assistant op-
tionally submitted the registration based on your Apple ID account. If you didn’t enter an Apple ID, you could manually enter your contact information.

Under **Local account setup options**, specify the settings to create an administrator account, which is required for macOS. Endpoint Management creates the account, using the specified information.

- **Privacy**: Prevent users from seeing the Data and privacy pane during setup of DEP devices. For macOS 10.13 and later.
- **iCloud Analytics**: Prevent users from seeing the iCloud analytics screen during setup of DEP devices. For macOS 10.13 and later.
- **iCloud Documents and Desktop**: Prevent users from seeing the iCloud documents and desktop screen during setup of DEP devices. For macOS 10.13 and later.
- **Appearance**: Prevents the user from seeing the Choose Your Look screen during setup of the DEP devices. For macOS 10.14 and later.

9. In **Apple TV Setup Assistant Options**, select the Apple TV Setup Assistant steps that your users will skip when they start their devices the first time. The default for all items is unchecked.

10. To test connectivity between Endpoint Management and Apple, select the account and click **Test Connectivity**.
A status message appears.

Configure deployment rules of device policies and apps for DEP accounts

You can associate DEP accounts with different device policies and apps by using the Deployment Rules section under Configure > Device Policies and Configure > Apps. You can specify that a policy or app either:

- Deploys only for a particular Apple DEP account.
- Deploys for all Apple DEP accounts except the one selected.

The list of DEP accounts includes only those accounts with a status of enabled or disabled. If the DEP account is disabled, the DEP device doesn’t belong to this account. Therefore, Endpoint Management
Citrix Endpoint Management

doesn’t deploy the app or policy to the device.

In the following example, a device policy deploys only for devices with the Apple DEP account name “DEP Account NR”.

Configure Apple Configurator settings

1. In the Endpoint Management console, go to Settings > Apple Configurator Device Enrollment.

2. Set Enable Apple Configurator device enrollment to Yes.

3. The Enrollment URL to enter in Apple Configurator is a read-only field. This is the URL for the Endpoint Management server that communicates with Apple. Later in these steps, you copy and paste the URL into the Apple Configurator. In Apple Configurator 2, the enrollment URL is the Endpoint Management server fully qualified domain name (FQDN), such as mdm.server.url.com, or the IP address.

4. To prevent unknown devices from enrolling, set Require device registration before enrollment to Yes. Note: If this setting is Yes, you must add the configured devices to Manage > Devices in Endpoint Management manually or through a CSV file before enrollment.

5. To require users of iOS devices to enter their credentials when enrolling, set Require credentials for device enrollment to Yes. The default is not to require credentials for enrollment.

6. Note: If the Endpoint Management server is using a trusted SSL certificate, skip this step. Click Export anchor certs and save the certchain.pem file to the macOS keychain (login or System).
7. Start the Apple Configurator and go to **Prepare > Setup > Configure Settings**.

8. In the **Device Enrollment** setting, paste the MDM server URL from step 4 into the **MDM server URL** box in the Configurator.

9. In the **Device Enrollment** setting, copy the Root Certificate Authority and SSL Servers Certificate Authority to the **Anchor** certificates, if Endpoint Management isn’t using a trusted SSL certificate.

10. Use a Dock Connector-to-USB cable to connect devices to the Mac running the Apple Configurator to configure up to 30 connected devices simultaneously. If you do not have a Dock Connector, use one or more powered USB 2.0 high-speed hubs to connect the devices.

11. Click **Prepare**. For more information on preparing devices with the Apple Configurator, see the Apple Configurator help page, **Prepare devices**.

12. In the Apple Configurator, configure the device policies you require.

13. As each device is prepared, turn it on to start the iOS Setup Assistant, which prepares the device for first-time use.

**To renew or update certificates when using the Apple DEP**

When the Endpoint Management Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) certificate is renewed, you upload a new certificate in the Endpoint Management console in **Settings > Certificates**. In the **Import** dialog box, in **Use as**, be sure to click **SSL Listener** so that the certificate is used for SSL. After you restart the server, Endpoint Management uses the new SSL certificate. For more information about certificates in Endpoint Management, see **Uploading Certificates in Endpoint Management**.

It is not necessary to reestablish the trust relationship between Apple DEP and Endpoint Management when you renew or update the SSL certificate. You can, however, reconfigure your **DEP** settings at any...
time by following the preceding steps in this article.
For more information about Apple DEP, see the Apple documentation.

To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator

Important:
Placing a device into Supervised mode installs the selected version of iOS on the device, completely wiping the device of any previously stored user data or apps.

2. Connect the iOS device to your Apple computer.
3. Start Apple Configurator. The Configurator shows that you have a device to prepare for supervision.
4. To prepare the device for supervision:
   • Set the Supervision control to On. Citrix recommends that you choose this setting if you intend to maintain control of the device by reapplying a configuration regularly.
   • Optionally, provide a name for the device.
   • In iOS, click Latest for the latest version of iOS that you want to install.
5. When you are ready to prepare the device for supervision, click Prepare.

Integrate with Apple Education features

January 22, 2019
You can use Endpoint Management as your mobile device management (MDM) solution in an environment that uses Apple Education. Endpoint Management support includes Apple School Manager and Classroom app for iPad. The Endpoint Management Education Configuration device policy configures instructor and student devices for use with Apple Education.

You provide preconfigured and supervised iPads to instructors and students. That configuration includes Apple School Manager DEP enrollment in Endpoint Management, a Managed Apple ID account configured with a new password, and required VPP apps and iBooks.

The following video provides a quick tour of the changes you make to Apple School Manager and Endpoint Management.
Here are highlights of Endpoint Management support for Apple Education features.

**Apple School Manager**

Apple School Manager is a service that lets you set up, deploy, and manage iOS devices and macOS laptops used in educational institutions. Apple School Manager includes a web-based portal that lets IT administrators:

- Assign DEP devices to different MDM servers.
- Purchase VPP licenses for apps and iBooks
- Create **Managed Apple IDs** in bulk. These customized Apple IDs provide access to Apple services such as storing documents in iCloud Drive and enrolling in iTunes courses.

Apple School Manager is a type of Education DEP. Endpoint Management supports both Business DEP and Apple School Manager enrollment.

You can add multiple Apple School Manager DEP accounts to Endpoint Management. For example, this feature enables you to use different enrollment settings and Setup Assistant options by Education unit or department. You then associate DEP accounts with different device policies.
After you add an Apple School Manager DEP account to the Endpoint Management console, Endpoint Management retrieves class and roster information. During device setup, Endpoint Management:

- Enrolls the devices.
- Installs the resources you configured for deployment, such as device policies (Education Configuration, Home screen layout, and so on). Also installs both apps and iBooks purchased through VPP.

You then provide the preconfigured devices to instructors and students. If a device is lost or stolen, you can use MDM Lost Mode feature to lock and locate devices.

### Classroom app for iPad

The Classroom app for iPad enables instructors to connect to and manage student devices. You can view device screens, open apps on iPads, share and open web links, and present a student screen on Apple TV.

Classroom is free in the App Store. You upload the app to the Endpoint Management console. You then use the Education Configuration device policy to configure the Classroom app, which you deploy to instructor devices.

For more information about Apple Education features, see the Apple Education site and the Apple Education Deployment Guide.

### Prerequisites

- Citrix Gateway
- Endpoint Management configured in MDM+MAM mode or MDM mode. If you already have a Endpoint Management configured in MDM+MAM or MDM mode, you can use it with Apple School Manager.
- Apple iPad 3rd generation (minimum version) or iPad Mini, with iOS 9.3 (minimum version)

**Note:**

Endpoint Management doesn’t validate Apple School Manager user accounts against LDAP or Active Directory. However, you can connect Endpoint Management to LDAP or Active Directory for management of users and devices not related to Apple School Manager instructors or students. For example, you can use Active Directory to provide Secure Mail and Secure Web to other Apple School Manager members, such as IT administrators and managers.

Because Apple School Manager instructors and students are local users, there is no need to deploy Citrix Secure Hub to their devices.
MAM enrollment that includes Citrix Gateway authentication doesn’t support local users (only Active Directory users). Therefore, Endpoint Management deploys only required VPP apps and iBooks to instructor and student devices.

Prerequisites for Shared iPads

- Any iPad Pro, iPad 5th generation, iPad Air 2 or later, and iPad mini 4 or later
- At least 32 GB of storage
- Supervised

Configure Apple School Manager and Endpoint Management

After you purchase iPads from Apple or from Apple Authorized Resellers or carriers: Follow the workflow in this section to set up your Apple School Manager account and devices. This workflow includes steps that you perform in the Apple School Manager portal and in the Endpoint Management console.

Follow these instructions to configure your integration for any iPads that you use in a one-to-one model (one iPad per student) or for instructor iPads (unshared). To configure Shared iPads, see Configure Shared iPads.

Step 1: Create your Apple School Manager account and complete the Setup Assistant

If you plan to upgrade from Apple Deployment Programs, see the Apple Support article, Prepare to upgrade to Apple School Manager. To create your Apple School Manager account, go to https://school.apple.com/ and follow the instructions to enroll. The first time that you log in to Apple School Manager, the Setup Assistant opens.

- For information about Apple School Manager prerequisites, the Setup Assistant, and management tasks, see the Apple School Manager help.
- When setting up an Apple School Manager, use a domain name that differs from the domain name for Active Directory. For example, prefix the domain name for Apple School Manager with something like appleid.
- When you connect Apple School Manager to your roster data, Apple School Manager creates Managed Apple IDs for instructors and students. Your roster data includes instructors, students, and classes. For information about adding roster data to Apple School Manager, see the articles under “Find staff, students and classes” in the Apple School Manager help.
- You can customize the Managed Apple ID format for your institution, as described under “Managed Apple IDs” in the Apple School Manager help.
Important:

Don’t change Managed Apple IDs after you import Apple School Manager information into Endpoint Management.

- If you purchased devices through resellers or carriers, link those devices to Apple School Manager. For information, see the articles under “Manage devices” in the Apple School Manager help.

Step 2: Configure Endpoint Management as the MDM Server for Apple School Manager and configure device assignments

The Apple School Manager portal includes an MDM Servers tab. You need the public key file from Endpoint Management to complete that setup.

1. Download the public key for your Endpoint Management to your local computer: Log on to the Endpoint Management console and go to Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP).

   - Under Download Public Key, click Download and then save the PEM file.

2. In Apple School Manager portal, click MDM Servers, and type a name for Endpoint Management. The server name that you type is for your reference and is not the server URL or name.

3. Under Upload your Public Key, click Upload File.
5. Upload the server key that you downloaded from Endpoint Management and then click Save.

6. Generate a server token: Click Get Token and then download the server token file to your computer.

7. Click Device Assignments, choose how you want to assign devices and then provide the information requested. For information, see “Manage devices” in the Apple School Manager help.

8. Under Choose Action, in the Perform Action menu, click Assign to Server. Then, in the MDM Server menu, click the server to manage the devices and then click Done.
Step 3: Add the Apple School Manager account to Endpoint Management

1. In Endpoint Management console, go to **Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)** and under **Add DEP Account**, click **Add**.

2. In the **Server Tokens** page, click **Upload** and choose the server token (.p7m) file that you downloaded from the Apple School Manager portal. The token information appears.

Notes:

- **Organization ID** is your customer ID for DEP.
- Apple School Manager accounts have an **Organization type** of **Education** and an **Organization version** of **v2**.
3. In the **Account Info** page, specify the following settings.

![Citrix Endpoint Management](image)

- **DEP account name**: A unique name for this DEP account. Use names that reflect how you organize DEP accounts, such as by country or organizational hierarchy.

- **Business/Education unit**: The Education unit or department for device assignment. This field is required.

- **Unique service ID**: An optional unique ID to help you further identify the account.

- **Support phone number**: A support phone number that users may call for help during setup. This field is required.

- **Support email address**: An optional support email address available to end users.

- **Education suffix**: Flags the classes for a given Apple School Manager DEP account. (The VPP suffix flags apps and iBooks for a given VPP account.) The recommendation is to use the same suffix for both accounts, Apple School Manager DEP and Apple School Manager VPP.

4. Click **Next**. In **iOS Settings**, specify the following settings.
• **Enrollment settings**
  
  - **Require device enrollment**: Require users to enroll their devices. Change this setting to **No**.
  
  - **Require credentials for device enrollment**: Require users to enter their credentials during DEP setup. For Apple School Manager integration with Endpoint Management, this setting is **Yes** by default and can’t be changed. Apple DEP requires credentials for device enrollment.
  
  - **Wait for configuration to complete setup**: Whether to require user devices to remain in Setup Assistant mode until all MDM resources deploy to the device. For Apple School Manager integration with Endpoint Management, this setting is **No** by default. According to Apple documentation, the following commands might not work while a device is in Setup Assistant mode:
    * InviteToProgram
    * InstallApplication
    * InstallMedia
    * ApplyRedemptionCode

• **Device settings**
  
  - **Supervised mode**: Place iOS devices in supervised mode. Don’t change the default, **Yes**. For details on placing an iOS device in supervised mode, see To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator.
  
  - **Allow enrollment profile removal**: For Apple School Manager integration, allow user to remove the enrollment profile from the device. Change this setting to **Yes**.
  
  - **Allow device pairing**: For Apple School Manager integration, allow device pairing so you can manage them through iTunes and the Apple Configurator. Change this setting
In iOS Setup Assistant Options, select the iOS Setup Assistant steps to skip when users start their devices the first time. By default, the Setup Assistant includes all steps. Consider that removing steps from the Setup Assistant simplifies the user experience.

**Important:**
Citrix strongly recommends that you include the **Apple ID** and **Terms & Conditions** steps. Those steps enable instructors and students to provide their new Managed Apple ID passwords and accept the required terms and conditions.

- **Location services:** Set up the location service on the device.
- **Touch ID:** Set up Touch ID on iOS devices.
- **Passcode lock:** Create a passcode for the device.
- **Set up as New or Restore:** Set up the device as new or from an iCloud or iTunes backup.
- **Move from Android:** Enable transferring data from an Android device to an iOS device. This option is available only when **Set up as New or Restore** is selected (that is, the step is skipped).
- **Apple ID:** Set up an Apple ID account for the device. Citrix recommends that you select the check box to include this step.
- **Terms and conditions:** Require users to accept terms and conditions for use of the device. Citrix recommends that you select the check box to include this step.
- **Apple Pay:** Set up Apple Pay on iOS devices.
- **Siri:** Use or not use Siri on the device.
- **App analytics:** Set up whether to share crash data and usage statistics with Apple.
• **Display zoom**: Set up the display resolution (either standard or zoomed) on iOS devices.

• **True Tone**: Set up the True Tone Display on iOS devices.

• **Home Button**: Set up the Home Button screen sensitivity.

6. The DEP account appears on **Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)**. To test connectivity between Endpoint Management and your Apple School Manager account, select the account and click **Test Connectivity**. A status message appears.
After a few minutes, the user accounts from Apple School Manager appear on Manage > Users page. Endpoint Management creates local user accounts based on the imported Managed Apple ID for each user. In the following example, the domain name prefix of customized Apple IDs for user accounts is appleid.

To find all users for a given Apple School Manager DEP account, type the account name in the user search filter.
Step 4: Configure an Education VPP account for Apple School Manager

In this section, you point Endpoint Management to the VPP account that you use to purchase VPP licenses for apps and iBooks.

1. To configure an Education VPP account for Apple School Manager, follow the instructions in iOS Volume Purchase Program. The Add a VPP account screen requires that you supply a Company Token. Download your token directly from your Education VPP account https://volume.itunes.apple.com/us/store and paste it into the Add a VPP account screen.

2. Wait a few minutes for the VPP licenses to import into Endpoint Management.
Step 5: Add passwords for Apple School Manager users

After you add an Apple School Manager DEP account, Endpoint Management imports classes and users from Apple School Manager. Endpoint Management treats classes as local groups and uses the term “group” in the console. If a class has a group name in Apple School Manager, Endpoint Management assigns the group name to the class. Otherwise, Endpoint Management uses the source system ID for the group name. Endpoint Management doesn’t use the course name for the class name because course names in Apple School Manager aren’t unique.

Endpoint Management uses the Managed Apple IDs to create local users with the user type ASM. The users are local because Apple School Manager creates the credentials independently of all external data sources. As a result, Endpoint Management doesn’t use a directory server to authenticate these new users.

Apple School Manager doesn’t send temporary user passwords to Endpoint Management. You can import them from a CSV file or add them manually. To import temporary user passwords:

1. Obtain the CSV file generated by Apple School Manager when creating the Managed Apple ID temporary passwords.

2. Edit the CSV file, replacing the temporary passwords with new passwords that users provide to enroll to Endpoint Management. There is no constraint on the password type for this purpose.

   The format of an entry in the CSV file is as follows: elizabethabeles@appleid.citrix.com,Elizabeth,Anne,Abeles,Citrix123!

   Where:

   User: elizabethabeles@appleid.citrix.com
   First name: Elizabeth
   Middle name: Anne
   Last name: Abeles
   Password: Citrix123!

3. In the Endpoint Management console, click Manage > Users. The Users page appears.

   The following Manage > Users screen sample shows a list of users imported from Apple School Manager. In the Users list:

   • User name shows the managed Apple ID.
   • User type is ASM, to indicate the account originated from Apple School Manager.
   • Groups show the classes.
4. Click **Import Local Users**. The **Import Provisioning File** dialog box appears.

5. For Format, choose **ASM user**, navigate to the CSV file you prepared in step 2, and then click **Import**.

6. To view the properties for a local user, select the user and then click **Edit**.
In addition to the name properties, these Apple School Manager properties appear:

- **ASM DEP account**: The name you gave the account in Endpoint Management.
- **ASM person title**: Either Instructor, Student or Other.
- **ASM person unique ID**: Unique identifier for the user.
- **ASM source system ID**: An identifier configured by your organization for the user.
- **ASM person status**: Specifies whether the Managed Apple ID is Active or Inactive. This status becomes active after the user provides their new password for the Managed Apple ID account.
- **ASM managed Apple ID**: A Managed Apple ID might include your institution name and appleid. For example, the ID might resemble johnappleseed@appleid.myschool.edu. Endpoint Management requires a Managed Apple ID for authentication.
- **ASM student grade**: Student grade information (not used by instructors).
- **ASM passcode type**: Password policy of the person: complex (a non-student password of eight or more numbers and letters), four (digits), or six (digits).
- **ASM data source**: The data source of the class, such as CSV or SFTP.
**Step 6: Optionally add photos of students**

You can add a photo of each student. If the instructors use the Apple Classroom app, the photos appear in this app.

Recommended for photos:

- Resolution: 256 x 256 pixels (512 x 512 pixels on a 2x device)
- Format: JPEG, PNG, or TIFF

To add a photo, go to Manage > Users, select a user, click **Edit**, and then click **Choose image**.

**Step 7: Plan and add resources and delivery groups to Endpoint Management**

A delivery group specifies the resources to deploy to categories of users. For example, you might create one delivery group for instructors and students. Alternatively, you might create multiple delivery groups so you can customize the apps, media, and policies sent to various instructors or students. You might create one or more delivery groups per class. You can also create one or more delivery groups for managers (other staff in your educational institution).

Resources that you deploy to user devices include device policies, VPP apps, and iBooks.

- Device policies:
If instructors use the Classroom app, the Education Configuration device policy is required. Be sure to review other device policies to determine how you want to configure and restrict instructor and student iPads.

- **VPP apps:**
  Endpoint Management requires that you deploy VPP apps as required apps for education users. Endpoint Management currently doesn’t support deploying such VPP apps as optional.

If you use the Apple Classroom app, deploy it only to instructor devices.

Deploy any other apps that you want to provide to instructors or students. This solution doesn’t use Citrix Secure Hub app, so there’s no need to deploy it to instructors or students.

- **VPP iBooks:**
  After Endpoint Management connects to your Apple School Manager VPP account, your purchased iBooks appear in the Endpoint Management console, in `Configure > Media`. The iBooks listed on that page are available to add to delivery groups. Currently, Endpoint Management supports adding iBooks as required media only.

After you plan the resources and delivery groups for instructors and students, you can create those items in the Endpoint Management console.

1. Create any device policies that you want to deploy to instructor or student devices. For information about the Education Configuration device policy, see [Education Configuration device policy](#).

For information about device policies, see [Device policies](#) and the individual policy articles.
2. Configure apps (Configure > Apps) and iBooks (Configure > Media):

- By default, Endpoint Management assigns apps and iBooks at the user level. During first-time deployment, instructors and students receive a prompt to register to VPP. After accepting the invitation, users receive their VPP apps and iBooks at the next deployment (within six hours). Citrix recommends that you force the deployment of apps and iBooks to new VPP users. To do that, select the delivery group and click Deploy.

You can choose to assign apps (but not iBooks) at the device level. To do that, change the setting Force license association to device to On. When you assign apps at the device level, users don’t receive an invitation to join the VPP program.

- To deploy an app only to instructors, select a delivery group that includes only instructors or use the following deployment rule:

```
1   Deploy this resource by ASM DEP device type
2   only
3   Instructor
```
For help with adding VPP apps, see Add a Public App Store app.

3. Optional. Create actions based on Apple School Manager user properties. For example, you might create an action to send a notification to student devices when a new app installs. Alternatively, you can create an action that a user property triggers, as shown in the following example.

To create an action, go to Configure > Actions. For information about configuring actions, see Automated actions.

4. In Configure > Delivery Groups, create delivery groups for instructors and for students. Choose the classes that were imported from Apple School Manager. Also, create a deployment rule for instructors and students.

For example, the following user assignments are for instructors. The deployment rule is:
The following user assignments are for students. The deployment rule is:

1. Limit by user property
2. ASM person title
3. is equal to
4. Student
You can also filter a delivery group by using a deployment rule based on the Apple School Manager DEP account name.

5. Assign the resources to delivery groups. The following example shows an iBook contained in a delivery group.
The following example shows the confirmation dialog that appears when you select a delivery group and click **Deploy**.

For more information, see “To edit a delivery group” and “To deploy to delivery groups” in **Deploy resources**.

**Step 8: Test instructor and student device enrollments**

You can enroll devices through either of the following methods:

- A school administrator can enroll instructor and student devices by using the user password you can set in the Endpoint Management console. As a result, you can provide users with devices that are already set up with apps and media.

- When users receive the devices, they enroll using the user password that you provide to them.
After enrollment completes, Endpoint Management sends device policies, apps, and media to the devices.

To test enrollment, use DEP devices that are linked to Apple School Manager.

1. If the devices aren’t linked to Apple School Manager, erase the device contents and settings by performing a hard reset.

2. Enroll an Apple School Manager DEP device with an instructor. Then, enroll an Apple School Manager DEP device with a student.

3. In the Manage > Devices page, check that both Apple School Manager DEP devices are enrolled in MDM only.

You can filter the Devices page by the Apple School Manager DEP device status: ASM DEP registered, Instructor, and Student.

4. To verify that MDM resources deployed correctly for each device: Select the device, click Edit, and check the various pages.
Step 9: Distribute devices

Apple recommends that you host an event so you can distribute devices to instructors and students. If you don’t distribute pre-enrolled devices, also provide the following to these users:

- Endpoint Management passwords for DEP enrollment
- Apple School Manager temporary passwords for Managed Apple IDs.

The first-time user experience is as follows.

1. The first time that a user starts their device after a hard-reset, Endpoint Management prompts them in the DEP enrollment screen to enroll their device.
2. The user provides their Managed Apple ID and Endpoint Management password used to authenticate to the Endpoint Management.
3. In the Apple ID setup step, the device prompts the user to provide their Managed Apple ID and Apple School Manager temporary password. Those items authenticate the user to Apple services.
4. The device prompts the user to create a password for their Managed Apple ID, used to protect their data in iCloud.
5. At the end of the Setup Assistant, Endpoint Management starts installing the policies, apps, and media to the device. For apps and iBooks assigned at the user level, the assistant prompts instructors and students to register to VPP. After accepting the invitation, users receive their VPP apps and iBooks at the next deployment (within six hours).
Configure Shared iPads

Multiple students in a classroom can share an iPad for different subjects taught by one or several instructors.

Either you or instructors enroll Shared iPads and then deploy device policies, apps, and media to the devices. After that, students provide their managed Apple ID credentials to sign in to a Shared iPad. If you previously deployed an Education Configuration policy to students, they no longer sign in as an “Other User” to share devices.

Endpoint Management uses two communications channels for Shared iPads: The system channel for the device owner (instructor) and the user channel for the current resident user (student). Endpoint Management uses those channels to send the appropriate MDM commands for the resources supported by Apple.

Resources that deploy over the system channel are:

• Device policies, such as Education Configuration, Lock Screen Message, Maximum Resident Users, and Passcode Lock Grace Period

• Device-based VPP apps

  Apple doesn’t support Enterprise apps or user-based VPP apps on Shared iPads. Apps installed on a Shared iPad are global to the device and not per user.

• User-based VPP iBooks

  Apple supports assignment of user-based VPP iBooks on Shared iPads.

Resources that deploy over the user channel are:

• Device policies: Apps Notifications, Home Screen Layout, and Restrictions

  Endpoint Management currently supports only those device policies over the user channel.

When configuring device policies, you specify the deployment channel in the policy setting Profile scope.

To remove device policies that you deployed over the user channel, be sure to choose a Deployment scope of User for the Profile Removal policy.
**General workflow**

Typically, you provide preconfigured and supervised Shared iPads to instructors. The instructors then distribute the devices to students. If you don’t distribute pre-enrolled Shared iPads to instructors: Be sure to provide the instructors with their Endpoint Management server passwords so they can enroll their devices.

The general workflow for configuring and enrolling Shared iPads is as follows.

1. Use the Endpoint Management server console to add ASM DEP accounts (Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)) with Shared mode enabled. For more information, see “Manage ASM DEP accounts for Shared iPads” next.
2. As described in this section, add the required device policies, apps, and media to Endpoint Management. Assign those resources to delivery groups.
3. Have the instructors perform a hard reset on the Shared iPads. The Remote Management screen for DEP enrollment appears.
4. The instructors enroll the Shared iPads.
   Endpoint Management deploys configured resources to each enrolled Shared iPad. After an automatic restart, instructors can share the devices with students. A sign in page appears on the iPad.
5. A student chooses the class and then enters their Managed Apple ID and temporary Apple School Manager (ASM) password.
   The Shared iPad authenticates to ASM and prompts the student to create an ASM password. For the next sign in to the Shared iPad, the student provides the new ASM password.
6. Another student who is sharing the iPad can then sign in by repeating the previous step.

**Manage ASM DEP accounts for Shared iPads**

If you already use Endpoint Management with Apple Education: You have an existing ASM DEP account configured in Endpoint Management for devices that aren’t shared, such as the devices used by instructors. You can use the same ASM and the same Endpoint Management server for both shared and non-shared devices.

Endpoint Management supports these deployment scenarios:

- **A group of Shared iPads per class**
  In this scenario, you assign the Shared iPads to a class of students. The iPads stay in the classroom. Instructors who teach different subjects in that class use the same set of iPads.

- **A group of Shared iPads per instructor**
  In this scenario, you assign the Shared iPads to an instructor, who uses those iPads for the various classes that they teach.
Organize Shared iPads into device groups

ASM lets you organize devices into groups by creating multiple MDM servers. When you assign the Shared iPads to an MDM server, create a device group for each group of Shared iPads, per class or per instructor:

- Group 1 of Shared iPads > Device Group 1 MDM Server
- Group 2 of Shared iPads > Device Group 2 MDM Server
- Group N of Shared iPads > Device Group N MDM Server

Add ASM DEP accounts for each device group

When you create multiple ASM DEP accounts from the Endpoint Management server console, you automatically import groups of Shared iPads (one for each class or instructor):

- Device Group 1 MDM Server > Device Group 1 DEP account
- Device Group 2 MDM Server > Device Group 2 DEP account
- Device Group N MDM Server > Device Group N DEP account

Requirements specific to Shared iPads are as follows:

- One ASM DEP account for each device group with these settings enabled:
  - Require device enrollment
  - Supervised mode
  - Shared mode
- For a given educational organization, be sure to use the same Education suffix for all ASM DEP accounts.

To add a DEP account, go to Settings > Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP).
Apps for Shared iPads

Shared iPads support assignment of device-based VPP apps. Before deploying an app on a Shared iPad, Endpoint Management sends a request to the Apple VPP server to assign VPP licenses to devices. To check the VPP assignments, go to Configure > Apps > iPad and expand Volume Purchase Program.

Media for Shared iPads

Shared iPads support assignment of user-based VPP iBooks. Before deploying iBooks on a Shared iPad, Endpoint Management sends a request to the Apple VPP server to assign VPP licenses to students. To check the VPP assignments, go to Configure > Media > iPad and expand Volume Purchase Program.
Deployment rules for Shared iPads

For Shared iPad deployment, the rules at the delivery group level don’t apply because they relate to user properties. To filter the policies, apps, and media for each group of devices: Add a deployment rule for the resources based on the DEP account name. For example:

- For the Device Group 1 DEP account, set this deployment rule:

  1. DEP account name
  2. Only
  3. Device Group 1 DEP account

- For the Device Group 2 DEP account, set this deployment rule:

  1. DEP account name
  2. Only
  3. Device Group 2 DEP account

- For the Device Group N DEP account, set this deployment rule:

  1. DEP account name
  2. Only
  3. Device Group N DEP account
To deploy the Apple Classroom app only to instructors (using unshared iPads), filter the resources by ASM DEP shared status with these deployment rules:

1. Deploy this resource regarding ASM DEP shared mode
2. only
3. unshared

Or:

1. Deploy this resource regarding ASM DEP shared mode
2. except
3. shareable
Delivery groups for Shared iPads

For the device group for each instructor:

- Configure one delivery group. For the instructor, assign all the classes that the Education Configuration policy defines.
• That delivery group must include these MDM resources:
  – Device policies:
    • Education Configuration
    • Lock Screen Message
    • Apps Notifications
    • Home Screen Layout
    • Restrictions
    • Maximum Resident Users
    • Passcode Lock Grace Period
  – Required VPP apps
  – Required VPP iBooks

Security actions for Shared iPads

In addition to existing security actions, you can use these security actions for Shared iPads:

• Get Resident Users: Lists the users that have active accounts on the current device. This action forces a sync between the device and the Endpoint Management console.
• Logout Resident User: Forces a log out of the current user.
• Delete Resident User: Deletes the current session for a specific user. The user can sign in again.
After you click **Delete Resident User**, you can specify the user name.

Results of security actions appear on the **Manage > Devices > General** and **Manage > Devices > Delivery Groups** pages.
Get information about Shared iPads

Find information specific to Shared iPads on the Manage > Devices page:

- **Look up:**
  - Whether a device is shared (**ASM DEP shared**)  
  - Who is logged in to the shared device (**ASM logged-in user**)  
  - All users assigned to the shared device (**ASM resident users**)  

- **Filter the device list by its **ASM DEP Device Status:**

- **View details about the user logged in to a Shared iPad, on the Manage > Devices > Logged-in User Properties page.**
- See the channel used to deploy resources to instructors and users in a delivery group on the Manage > Devices > Delivery Groups page. The Channel/User column shows the type (System or User) and the recipient (instructor or student).
• Get information about resident users:
  - **Has data to sync**: Whether the user has data to be synchronized to the cloud.
  - **Data quotas**: The data quota set for the user in bytes. A quota might not appear if user quotas are temporarily off or aren’t enforced for the user.
  - **Data used**: The amount of data used by the user in bytes. A value might not appear if an error occurs as the system gathers the information.
  - **Is logged in**: Whether the user is logged on to the device.
• View the push status for both channels.

Manage instructor, student, and class data

When managing instructor, student, and class data, note the following:

• Don’t change Managed Apple IDs after you import Apple School Manager information into End-
point Management. Endpoint Management also uses Apple School Manager user identifiers to identify users.

- If you add or change class data in Apple School Manager after you create one or more Education Configuration device policies: Edit the policies and then redeploy them.

- If the instructor for a class changes after you deploy the Education Configuration device policy: Review the policy to ensure it updates in the Endpoint Management console and then redeploy the policy.

- If you update user properties in the Apple School Manager portal, Endpoint Management also updates those properties in the console. However, Endpoint Management doesn’t receive the ASM person title property (Instructor, Student, or Other) in the same way it receives other properties. Thus, if you change the ASM person title in Apple School Manager, complete the following steps to reflect that change in Endpoint Management.

To manage the data:

1. In the Apple School Manager portal, update the student grade and clear the instructor grade.

2. If you changed a student account to an instructor account, remove the user from the list of students in the class. Then, add the user to the list of instructors in the same or another class.

   If you changed an instructor account to a student account, remove the user from the class. Then, add the user to the list of students in the same or another class. Your updates appear in the Endpoint Management console during the next sync (every five minutes by default) or fetch (every 24 hours by default).

3. Edit the Education Configuration device policy to apply the change and redeploy it.

   - If you delete a user from the Apple School Manager portal, Endpoint Management also deletes that user from the Endpoint Management console after a fetch.

     You can reduce the interval between two baselines by changing this server property value: `bulk.enrollment.fetchRosterInfoDelay` (default is 1440 minutes).

   - After you deploy resources: If a student joins a class, create a delivery group with just that student and deploy the resources to the student.

   - If a student or instructor loses their temporary password, have them contact the Apple School Manager administrator. The administrator can provide the temporary password or generate a new one.

Manage a lost or stolen device that’s enrolled in Apple School Manager DEP

The Apple Find My iPhone/iPad service includes an Activation Lock feature. Activation Lock prevents non-authorized users from using or reselling a lost or stolen device that’s enrolled in DEP.
Endpoint Management includes an **ASM DEP Activation Lock** security action that enables you to send a lock code to an Apple School Manager DEP-enrolled device.

When you use the **ASM DEP Activation Lock** security action, Endpoint Management can locate devices without requiring users to enable the Find My iPhone/iPad service. When an Apple School Manager device is hard-reset or fully wiped, the user provides their Managed Apple ID and password to unlock the device.

To release the lock from the console, click the security action **Activation Lock Bypass**. For information about bypassing an activation lock, see [Bypass an iOS activation lock](#). The user also can leave the login blank and type the **ASM DEP activation lock bypass code** as the password. That information is available in **Device Details**, on the **Properties** tab.

To set the activation lock, go to **Manage > Devices**, select the device, click **Security**, and then click **ASM DEP Activation Lock**.

![Security Actions](image)

The properties, **ASM DEP escrow key** and **ASM DEP activation lock bypass code**, appear in **Device details**.
The RBAC permission for an ASM DEP Activation Lock is Devices > Enable ASM DEP/Bypass activation lock.

Network Access Control

October 25, 2018
If you have a Network Access Control (NAC) appliance, such as a Cisco ISE, in your network: You can enable filters in Endpoint Management to set devices as compliant or not compliant for NAC, based on rules or properties. If a managed device in Endpoint Management does not meet the specified criteria, Endpoint Management marks the device as Not Compliant. A NAC appliance blocks non-compliant devices on your network.

For iOS devices, you can deploy the VPN policy and enable a NAC filter to block a VPN connection for devices that have non-compliant apps installed. For details, see iOS NAC configuration, in this article.

In the Endpoint Management console, you select one or more criteria in the list to set a device as not compliant.

Endpoint Management supports the following NAC compliance filters:

**Anonymous Devices:** Checks if a device is in anonymous mode. This check is available if Endpoint Management can’t reauthenticate the user when a device attempts to reconnect.

**Failed Samsung KNOX attestation:** Checks if a device failed a query of the Samsung KNOX attestation server.

**Forbidden Apps:** Checks if a device has forbidden apps, as defined in an App Access policy. For more information about the App access policy, see App access device policies.

**Inactive Devices:** Checks if a device is inactive as defined by the Device Inactivity Days Threshold setting in Server Properties. For details, see Server properties.

**Missing Required Apps:** Checks if a device is missing required apps, as defined in an App Access policy.

**Non-suggested Apps:** Checks if a device has non-suggested apps, as defined in an App Access policy.

**Noncompliant Password:** Checks if the user password is compliant. On iOS and Android devices, Endpoint Management can determine whether the password currently on the device is compliant with the passcode policy sent to the device. For instance, on iOS, the user has 60 minutes to set a password if Endpoint Management sends a passcode policy to the device. Before the user sets the password, the passcode might be non-compliant.

**Out of Compliance Devices:** Checks whether a device is out of compliance, based on the Out of Compliance device property. Automated actions or a third party using Endpoint Management APIs typically change that property.

**Revoked Status:** Checks whether the device certificate was revoked. A revoked device cannot re-enroll until it is authorized again.

**Rooted Android and Jailbroken iOS Devices:** Checks whether an Android or iOS device is jailbroken.

**Unmanaged Devices:** Check whether a device is still in a managed state, under Endpoint Management control. For example, a device running in MAM mode or an unenrolled device is not managed.
Note:
The Implicit Compliant/Not Compliant filter sets the default value only on devices that Endpoint Management manages. For example, the NAC appliance marks as Not-Compliant any devices that have a blacklisted app installed or are not enrolled. Your network blocks those devices.

iOS NAC configuration

Through policy settings in Citrix Gateway, Endpoint Management supports Network Access Control (NAC) as an endpoint security feature for iOS devices. You can enable a NAC filter to block a VPN connection for devices that have non-compliant apps installed. When the VPN connection is blocked, the user cannot access any apps or websites through VPN.

For example, in the App Access Policy, you identify a particular app as Forbidden, or blacklisted. A user installs that app. When the user opens Citrix SSO and tries to connect to the VPN, the connection is blocked. The following error appears: Error while processing request. Contact your administrator.

The configuration requires that you update Citrix Gateway policies to support NAC. In the Endpoint Management console, you enable NAC filters and deploy the VPN device policy. For this feature to work on devices, users install the Citrix SSO VPN client from the Apple store.

The NAC filters supported are:

- Anonymous Devices
- Forbidden Apps
- Inactive Devices
- Missing Required Apps
- Non-Suggested Apps
- Noncompliant Password
- Out of Compliance Devices
- Revoked Status
- Rooted Android and Jailbroken iOS Devices
- Unmanaged Devices

Prerequisites

- Citrix Gateway
- Citrix SSO 1.0.1 installed on devices
To update the Citrix Gateway policies to support NAC

The authentication and VPN sessions policies you configure must be advanced. On your virtual VPN server from a console window, do the following. The IP addresses in the commands and examples are fictitious.

These steps update a Citrix Gateway that’s integrated with a Endpoint Management environment. If you have a Citrix Gateway that’s setup for VPN and not part of the Endpoint Management environment, but can reach Endpoint Management: You can also use these steps.

1. Remove and unbind all classic policies if you are using classic policies on your VPN virtual server.
   To check, type:
   
   ```
   show vpn vserver <VPN_VServer>
   ```
   
   Remove any result that contains the word Classic. For example: VPN Session Policy Name: PL_OS_10.10.1.1 Type: Classic Priority: 0
   
   To remove the policy, type:
   
   ```
   unbind vpn vserver <VPN_VServer> -policy <policy_name>
   ```
   
2. Create the corresponding advanced session policy by typing the following.
   
   ```
   add vpn sessionPolicy <policy_name> <rule> <session action>
   ```
   
   For example:
   
   ```
   add vpn sessionPolicy vpn_nac true AC_OS_10.10.1.1_A_
   ```
   
3. Bind the policy to your VPN virtual server by typing the following.
   
   ```
   bind vpn vserver _XM_Endpoint ManagementGateway -policy vpn_nac -priority 100
   ```
   
4. Create an authentication virtual server by typing the following.
   
   ```
   add authentication vserver <authentication vserver name> <service type> <ip address>
   ```
   
   For example:
   
   ```
   add authentication vserver authvs SSL 0.0.0.0
   ```
   
   In the example, 0.0.0.0 means that the authentication virtual server is not public facing.
   
5. Bind an SSL certificate with the virtual server by typing the following.
   
   ```
   bind ssl vserver <authentication vserver name> -certkeyName <Webserver certificate>
   ```
   
   For example:
   
   ```
   bind ssl vserver authvs -certkeyName Star_mpgCitrix.pfx_CERT_KEY
   ```
6. Associate an authentication profile to the authentication virtual server from the VPN virtual server. First, create the authentication profile by typing the following.

```bash
add authentication authnProfile <profile name> -authnVsName <authentication vserver name>
```

For example:

```bash
add authentication authnProfile xm_nac_prof -authnVsName authvs
```

7. Associate the authentication profile with the VPN virtual server by typing the following.

```bash
set vpn vserver <vpn vserver name> -authnProfile <authn profile name>
```

For example:

```bash
set vpn vserver _XM_Endpoint ManagementGateway -authnProfile xm_nac_prof
```

8. Check the connection from Citrix Gateway to a device by typing the following.

```bash
curl -v -k https://<Endpoint Management server>:4443/Citrix/Device/v1/Check --header "X-Citrix-VPN-Device-ID: deviceid_<device_id>"
```

For example, this query verifies connectivity by obtaining the compliance status for the first device (deviceid_1) enrolled in the environment:

```bash
curl -v -k https://10.10.1.1:4443/Citrix/Device/v1/Check --header "X-Citrix-VPN-Device-ID: deviceid_1"
```

You should see a similar command as the following example.

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
< Server: Apache-Coyote/1.1
< X-Citrix-Device-State: Non Compliant
< Set-Cookie: ACNODEID=181311111; Path=/; HttpOnly; Secure
```

9. When the preceding step is successful, create the web authentication action to Endpoint Management. First, create a policy expression to extract the device ID from the iOS VPN plug-in. Type the following.

```bash
add policy expression xm_deviceid_expression "HTTP.REQ.BODY(10000).TYPECAST_NVLIST_T(\"\"\",\"\"\")\".VALUE("deviceidvalue")"
```

10. Send the request to Endpoint Management by typing the following. In this example, the Endpoint Management IP is 10.207.87.82.

```bash
add authentication webAuthAction xm_nac -serverIP 10.207.87.82 -serverPort 4443 -fullReqExpr q{ "GET /Citrix/Device/v1/Check HTTP/1.1\n\n"Host: 10.207.87.82:4443\n\n"X-Citrix-VPN-Device-ID: "+ xm_deviceid_expression}
```
+ "\r\n\r\n}\) -scheme https -successRule "HTTP.RES.STATUS.EQ("200")
&&HTTP.RES.HEADER("X-Citrix-Device-State").EQ("Compliant")"

The successful output for the Endpoint Management NAC is HTTP status 200 OK. The ‘X-Citrix-
Device-State’ header must have the value of Compliant.

11. Create an authentication policy with which to associate the action by typing the following.
add authentication Policy <policy name> -rule <rule> -action <web auth action>
For example:
add authentication Policy xm_nac_webauth_pol -rule "HTTP.RES.HEADER("User-Agent")") .CONTAINS("NAC")") -action xm_nac

12. Convert the existing LDAP policy to an advanced policy by typing the following.
add authentication Policy <policy_name> -rule <rule> -action <LDAP action name>
For example:
add authentication Policy ldap_xm_test_pol -rule true -action 10.10.1.1 _LDAP

13. Add a policy label with which to associate the LDAP policy by typing the following.
add authentication policylabel <policy_label_name>
For example:
add authentication policylabel ldap_pol_label

14. Associate the LDAP policy to the policy label by typing the following.
bind authentication policylabel ldap_pol_label -policyName ldap_xm_test_pol
-priority 100 -gotoPriorityExpression NEXT

15. Connect a compliant device to do a NAC test to confirm successful LDAP authentication. Type the following.
bind authentication vserver <authentication vserver> -policy <webauth policy> -priority 100 -nextFactor <ldap policy label> -gotoPriorityExpression END

16. Add the UI to associate with the authentication virtual server. Type the following command to retrieve the device ID.
add authentication loginSchemaPolicy <schema policy>-rule <rule> -action lschema_single_factor_deviceid

17. Bind the authentication virtual server by typing the following.
bind authentication vserver authvs -policy lschema_xm_nac_pol -priority 100 -gotoPriorityExpression END
18. Create an LDAP advanced authentication policy to enable the Secure Hub connection. Type the following.

```
add authentication Policy ldap_xm_test_pol -rule "HTTP.REQ.HEADER("User-Agent") CONTAINS("NAC") NOT" -action 10.200.80.60_LDAP
bind authentication vserver authvs -policy ldap_xm_test_pol -priority 110 -gotoPriorityExpression NEXT
```

19. Configure the VPN device policy. For more information on configuring the VPN device policy, see [VPN Device Policy](#).

## Configure Network Access Control

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The Settings page appears.


![Network Access Control](image-url)
3. Select the check boxes for the **Set as not compliant** filters you want to enable.

4. Click **Save**.

---

**Chrome OS**

December 14, 2018

To manage Chrome OS devices, Endpoint Management uses a Secure Hub extension installed in the Chrome device browser. Before enrolling Chrome OS devices in Endpoint Management, you configure G Suite to install the Secure Hub extension on the device. Then, you connect G Suite to Endpoint Management.

Endpoint Management enrolls Chrome OS devices into MDM. Endpoint Management doesn’t support MAM-only registration for Chrome OS devices. Endpoint Management supports user name and password authentication on Chrome OS devices.

A general workflow for starting Chrome OS device management is as follows:

1. Complete the onboarding process. See [Onboarding and resource setup](#) and [Prepare to enroll devices and deliver resources](#).

2. Choose and configure an enrollment method. See [Supported enrollment methods](#).

3. Configure G Suite to install Secure Hub on the Chrome OS device.


5. Configure Chrome OS device policies.

6. Enroll Chrome OS devices in G Suite and then Enroll Chrome devices in Endpoint Management.

For supported operating systems, see [Supported device operating systems](#).

**Supported enrollment methods**

The following table indicates the enrollment methods that Endpoint Management supports for Chrome OS devices:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bulk enrollment</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual enrollment</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enrollment invitations</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For more information, see the G Suite configuration sections in this article.

**Configure G Suite to install Secure Hub on the Chrome OS device**

You configure forced installation of the Secure Hub extension on the Chrome OS device and prevent the extension from being disabled or deleted.

1. Go to [https://admin.google.com](https://admin.google.com) and log in to your G Suite account.

2. Verify that you have completed the configuration that's described in Enable partner access for devices and users in your G Suite domain.

3. In the Google administrator console, click **Device Management**.

4. Click **Chrome management**.

5. In the Chrome device management page, click **User Settings**.
6. In the User settings page, search for **Client certificates**. Add this pattern:

```json
{
  "pattern": "https://[*.]xm.cloud.com",
  "filter": {}
}
```

Adding this pattern to Client certificates ensures device certificates pushed from Endpoint Management to the device are auto-selected without prompting for the user to select.

7. Click **Save**.

8. Search for **Force-installed Apps and Extensions** and then click **Manage force-installed apps**.
9. Click **Specify a Custom App**.

10. Click the **ID** field, type `cnkimbkgdakemjciplhmpolehfcjban`.

11. Click the **URL** field, type `https://chrome.google.com/webstore/detail/cnkimbkgdakemjcipljhmoplehfcjban`.
12. Click Add.

13. Click Save in the Force-installed Apps and Extensions dialog window.

14. Click Save in the User Settings page.

**Connect Endpoint Management to G Suite**

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner and then click **Settings > Google Chrome**.

2. Click **Connect**. A Google account sign-in window appears.
3. Sign in with your Google account credentials and click Next.

4. Endpoint Management fills in your G Suite domain and G Suite account administrator name. The Connect button has change to Disconnect. Endpoint Management is connected to G Suite.
Configure Chrome OS device policies

Use these policies to configure how Endpoint Management interacts with devices running Chrome OS. This table lists all device policies available for Chrome OS devices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App restrictions</th>
<th>Connection scheduling</th>
<th>Content</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Control OS update</td>
<td>Managed bookmarks</td>
<td>Power management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restrictions</td>
<td>VPN</td>
<td>WiFi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enroll Chrome OS devices in G Suite

Device enrollment in the G Suite domain of your enterprise is a pre-requisite for enrolling a Chrome OS device in Endpoint Management. For information on G Suite domain enrollment, see the Google article Enroll Chrome devices.

Enroll Chrome devices in Endpoint Management

A Citrix PIN must be created when a Chrome OS device is enrolled in Endpoint Management. The Citrix PIN is separate from the Endpoint Management passcode. The Citrix PIN secures a certificate from the Endpoint Management server. This PIN cannot be reset. If a user forgets this PIN, the Chrome OS device must be unenrolled and re-enrolled.

1. Sign in to your Chrome OS device by using your G Suite credentials.
2. Click the Secure Hub extension in Chrome. The Secure Hub extension appears next to your browser address bar, is grayed out, and looks like the following image:

![Secure Hub extension](image)

3. The Secure Hub enrollment window appears. Click **Enroll**.

![Secure Hub enrollment window](image)

4. Type your corporate credentials, such as your Endpoint Management server name, User Principal Name (UPN), or email address. Then, click **Next**.
5. If prompted, type your corporate user name. Type your corporate password. Then, click **Sign In**.
6. Create a Citrix PIN. This PIN must be 6 characters long. It can contain only letters and numbers. Type your Citrix PIN twice and then click Finish.
When the enrollment is complete, the Secure Hub extension icon is active.

**Sign in to an enrolled Chrome OS device**

To sign in to a Chrome OS device that is enrolled in Endpoint Management:


2. When prompted, enter your Citrix PIN. This PIN was created when the device was enrolled in Endpoint Management.

   If you do not type your Citrix PIN:
   
   - You are prompted to type your Citrix PIN every minute until you type the PIN.
   - After five minutes, access is blocked to all websites except google.com, citrix.com, gotomeeting.com, cloud.com.
   - If you try to access any other website, an error message appears and you are prompted to sign in using your Citrix PIN.
Unenroll and reenroll a Chrome OS device

To unenroll a Chrome OS device from Endpoint Management, users delete their account.

1. In the Chrome browser, click the Secure Hub extension icon.
2. In the Secure Hub enrollment window, click Delete.
3. Click Yes, Delete to confirm the deletion.

The Secure Hub enrollment window closes and the Secure Hub extension is grayed out.

To re-enroll:

1. Log out of your Chrome OS device and log back in using your G Suite credentials.
2. Click Enroll and follow the prompts to re-enroll.

Security actions

Chrome OS doesn’t support security actions.

Windows Desktop and Tablet

December 14, 2018

Note:

If you use Microsoft Intune/EMS, this article doesn’t apply to your setup. See Citrix Endpoint Management integration with Microsoft Intune/EMS.

To manage Windows 10 Desktop and Tablet devices in Endpoint Management, you must configure the Citrix AutoDiscovery Service. See Prepare to enroll devices and deliver resources.

Endpoint Management enrolls Windows 10 Desktop and Tablet devices into MDM mode. Endpoint Management supports the following authentication types for Windows Desktop and Tablet devices in MDM+MAM mode. For information, see the articles in the section Certificates and authentication.

- Domain
- Domain plus security token
- Client certificate
- Client certificate plus domain
- Identity providers:
  - Azure Active Directory
  - Citrix Identity provider

A general workflow for starting Windows 10 Desktop and Tablet device management is as follows:
1. Complete the onboarding process. See Onboarding and resource setup and Prepare to enroll devices and deliver resources.

2. Choose and configure an enrollment method. See Supported enrollment methods.

3. Configure Windows Desktop and Tablet device policies.


5. Set up device and app security actions. See Security actions.

For supported operating systems, see Supported device operating systems.

**Supported enrollment methods**

The following table lists the enrollment methods that Endpoint Management supports for Windows Desktop and Tablet devices:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Azure Active Directory enrollment</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows bulk enrollment</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual enrollment</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enrollment invitations</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Azure enrollment**

Devices running Windows 10 Enterprise can enroll with Azure as a federated means of Active Directory authentication. This setup requires an Azure Active Directory Premium subscription.

You can join Windows 10 devices to Microsoft Azure AD in any of the following ways:

- Enroll in MDM as part of Azure AD Join setup the first time the device is powered on.
- Enroll in MDM as part of Azure AD Join from the Windows Settings page after configuring the device.
- Enroll in MDM as part of Azure AD Join when you add a work account on a personal device.

Before Windows device users can enroll by using Azure, you must configure the Microsoft Azure server settings in Endpoint Management. For details, see Single sign in with Azure Active Directory.

For Windows devices that you enroll with Azure, you can use Windows AutoPilot to set up and pre-configure the devices. See Use Windows AutoPilot to set up and configure devices.
**Windows bulk enrollment**

With Windows bulk enrollment, you can set up many devices for an MDM server to manage without the need to reimaged devices. You use a provisioning package for bulk enrollment for Windows 10 Desktop and Laptop devices. For information, see Bulk enrollment of Windows devices.

**Configure Windows Desktop and Tablet device policies**

Use these policies to configure how Endpoint Management interacts with desktop and tablet devices running Windows 10. This table lists all device policies available for Windows Desktop and Tablet devices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App Configuration</th>
<th>App Inventory</th>
<th>App Lock</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>App Uninstall</td>
<td>Application Guard</td>
<td>BitLocker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control OS Update</td>
<td>Credentials</td>
<td>Custom XML</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defender</td>
<td>Device Guard</td>
<td>Device Health Attestation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exchange</td>
<td>Firewall</td>
<td>Kiosk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office</td>
<td>Passcode</td>
<td>Restrictions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Store</td>
<td>Terms and Conditions</td>
<td>VPN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Webclip</td>
<td>WiFi</td>
<td>Windows Hello for Business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Enroll Windows Desktop and Tablet devices by using Azure Active Directory**

1. Sign on to a Windows Enterprise edition computer. Open Settings > Accounts > Access work or school and then click Connect.
2. From Set up a work or school account, under Alternative actions, click Join this device to Azure Active Directory.
3. Provide your Azure Active Directory credentials and then click Sign in.
4. Accept the Terms and Conditions set by your organization.
5. Click Join to proceed with the enrollment process.
6. Click Done to complete the enrollment process.
Enroll Windows devices by using the AutoDiscovery Service

Note:
For Windows devices to enroll, the SSL listener certificate must be a public certificate. Enrollment fails for self-signed SSL certificates.

1. On the device, check for and install all available Windows Updates.
2. In the charms menu, tap **Settings** and then tap **Accounts > Access work or school > Connect to work or school**.
3. Enter your corporate email address and then tap **Continue**.

   To enroll as a local user, enter a nonexistent email address with the correct domain name (for example, foo@mydomain.com). Using a nonexistent email address lets you bypass a known Microsoft limitation where the built-in Device Management on Windows performs enrollment. In the **Connecting to a service** dialog box, enter the user name and password associated with the local user. The device automatically discovers an Endpoint Management server and starts the enrollment process.
4. Enter your password. Use the password associated with an account that is part of a user group in Endpoint Management.
5. In the **Terms of use** dialog box, indicate that you agree to have your device managed and then tap **Accept**.

To enroll Windows devices without self-discovery (for test environments only)

A best practice for production deployments is to enroll Windows devices by using the AutoDiscovery Service. Citrix recommends enrolling Windows devices without self-discovery only in test environments and proof of concept deployments. Enrollment without the AutoDiscovery Service results in a call to port 80 when connecting.

1. On the device, check for and install all available Windows Updates.
2. In the charms menu, tap **Settings** and then tap **Accounts > Access work or school > Connect to work or school**.
3. Enter your corporate email address.
4. In the **Enter server address** field, type the address: `https://serverfqdn:8443/serverInstance/wpe`.

   If a port other than 8443 is used for unauthenticated SSL connections, use that port number in place of 8443 in this address.
5. Type your password.
6. In the **Terms of use** dialog box, indicate that you agree to have your device managed and then tap **Accept**.

**Security actions**

Windows 10 Desktops and Tablets support the following security actions. For a description of each security action, see **Security actions**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Locate</th>
<th>Lock</th>
<th>Reboot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Revoke</td>
<td></td>
<td>Selective Wipe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Windows Phone**

December 14, 2018

Note:

If you use Microsoft Intune/EMS, this article doesn’t apply to your setup. See [Citrix Endpoint Management integration with Microsoft Intune/EMS](#).

Microsoft moved Windows Phone 8.1 devices to End of Support on July 11, 2017. Endpoint Management supports Windows Phone 8.1 devices for MDM enrollment only.

To manage Windows 10 Phone devices in Endpoint Management, you can configure the Citrix AutoDiscovery Service. See [Prepare to enroll devices and deliver resources](#).

Endpoint Management enrolls Windows 10 Phone devices into MDM mode. Endpoint Management supports the following authentication types for Windows Phone devices in MDM+MAM mode. For information, see the articles in the section **Certificates and authentication**.

- Domain
- Domain plus security token
- Client certificate
- Client certificate plus domain
- Identity providers:
  - Azure Active Directory
  - Citrix Identity provider

A general workflow for starting Windows 10 Phone device management is as follows:
1. Complete the onboarding process. See Onboarding and resource setup and Prepare to enroll devices and deliver resources.

2. Choose and configure an enrollment method. See Supported enrollment methods.

3. Configure Windows Phone device policies.

4. Enroll Windows Phone devices.

5. Set up device and app security actions. See Security actions.

For supported operating systems, see Supported device operating systems.

**Supported enrollment methods**

The following table lists the enrollment methods that Endpoint Management supports for Windows Phone devices:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Azure Active Directory enrollment</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows bulk enrollment</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manual enrollment</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enrollment invitations</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Azure enrollment**

Devices running Windows 10 Enterprise can enroll with Azure as a federated means of Active Directory authentication. This setup requires an Azure Active Directory Premium subscription.

You can join Windows 10 devices to Microsoft Azure AD in any of the following ways:

- Enroll in MDM as part of Azure AD Join setup the first time the device is powered on.
- Enroll in MDM as part of Azure AD Join from the Windows Settings page after configuring the device.
- Enroll in MDM as part of Azure AD Join when you add a work account on a personal device.

Before Windows device users can enroll by using Azure, you must configure the Microsoft Azure server settings in Endpoint Management. For details, see Single sign in with Azure Active Directory.
Configure Windows Phone device policies

Use these policies to configure how Endpoint Management interacts with phone devices running Windows 10. This table lists all device policies available for Windows 10 Phone devices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App Configuration</th>
<th>App Inventory</th>
<th>App Uninstall</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BitLocker</td>
<td>Credentials</td>
<td>Custom XML</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Health Attestation</td>
<td>Enterprise Hub</td>
<td>Exchange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maps</td>
<td>Passcode</td>
<td>Restrictions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Encryption</td>
<td>Terms and Conditions</td>
<td>VPN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WiFi</td>
<td>Windows Hello for Business</td>
<td>Windows Information Protection</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Enroll Windows Phone devices by using Azure Active Directory

1. Sign on to a Windows Enterprise edition computer. Open Settings > Accounts > Access work or school and then click Connect.
2. From Set up a work or school account, under Alternative actions, click Join this device to Azure Active Directory.
3. Provide your Azure Active Directory credentials and then click Sign in.
4. Accept the Terms and Conditions set by your organization.
5. Click Join to proceed with the enrollment process.
6. Click Done to complete the enrollment process.

Enroll Windows Phone devices

To enroll Windows Phone devices in Endpoint Management, users need their Active Directory or internal network email address, and password. If AutoDiscovery is not set up, users also need the server web address for the Endpoint Management server. Then, they follow this procedure on their devices to enroll.

Note:
If you plan to deploy apps through the Windows Phone company store: Before your users enroll, configure an Enterprise Hub device policy. In that policy, you upload a signing certificate from
Symantec and a signed Citrix Company Hub app.

1. On the main screen of the Windows phone, tap the Settings icon.

2. Depending on your version, either tap Accounts > Access work or school > Connect to work or school or tap Accounts > Work access > Enroll in to device management.

3. On the next screen, enter an email address and password and then tap sign in.

   If AutoDiscovery is configured for your domain, the information requested in the next several steps is automatically populated. Proceed to the last step in this procedure.

   If AutoDiscovery is not configured for your domain, continue with the next step. To enroll as a local user, enter a non-existent email address with the correct domain name (for example, foo@mydomain.com). Using a non-existent address permits you to bypass a known Microsoft limitation. In the Connecting to a service screen, enter the user name and password associated with the local user.

4. On the next screen, type the web address of the Endpoint Management server, such as: https://<xenmobile_server_fqdn>://<instance_name>/wpe. For example, https://mycompany.mdm.com:8443/zdm/wpe.

   Note:
   The port number must be the same port that you used for an iOS enrollment.

5. If authentication is validated through a user name and domain, type the user name and domain and then tap sign in.

6. If a message indicates a problem with the certificate, the error is the result of using a self-signed certificate. If the server is trusted, tap continue. Otherwise, tap Cancel.

7. To force a connection to the server, tap the refresh icon. If the device does not manually connect to the server, Endpoint Management attempts to reconnect.

   Endpoint Management connects to the device every three minutes for five successive times, then every two hours afterward. You can alter this connection rate in the Windows WNS Heartbeat Interval located in Server properties.

   Once enrollment is complete, Secure Hub enrolls in the background. No indicator appears when the installation is complete. Tap Secure Hub from the All Apps screen.

Security actions

Windows 10 Phone devices support the following security actions. For a description of each security action, see Security actions.
Bulk enrollment of Windows devices

October 18, 2018

Endpoint Management supports bulk enrollment of Windows 10 devices. With bulk enrollment, you can set up many devices for an MDM server to manage without the need to reimage devices. You can use the provisioning package for bulk enrollment for Windows 10 desktop devices. Follow steps in this article to set up and perform bulk enrollment.

Before running bulk enrollment, ensure that all devices are assigned to the correct end-user. Perform this assignment by registering the devices per user or by performing a bulk import of devices.

Note:
For information on configuring the tool, building a provisioning package, and installing a provisioning package, see https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/client-management/mdm/bulk-enrollment-using-windows-provisioning-tool. For information on including Endpoint Management bulk enrollment configuration settings, see the section Create and apply a provisioning package for on-premises authentication in that document.

Assign devices

1. In the Endpoint Management console, navigate to Manage > Device Whitelist.
2. To add each device manually, click Add.

3. Type the following information:

   - **Device platform**: Select Windows.
   - **Device ID Type**: Select an ID to use to identify the device. Endpoint Management supports **Hardware ID** and **Device Name** for Windows devices.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- **Device ID**: Type the identification selected previously for the device.
- **Associated User**: Displays the associated user for this device.
- **Select domain**: Select the domain from which you want to search for an associated user.
- **Search for user** Type a full or partial user name in this field and click **Search** to find a user to associate with this device.

4. Click **Save**.

**Add devices in bulk**

1. In the Endpoint Management console, navigate to **Manage > Device Whitelist**.

2. Click **Import**.

   ![Import Whitelist Devices](image)
3. Click **Download** to download a template for the device whitelist. Fill out that template using the previous descriptions, and then upload the file using **Choose File** and **Import**.

**Bulk enroll devices**

1. In the Endpoint Management console, navigate to **Settings > Windows Bulk Enrollment**.
2. In the **UPN** box, type a valid user name to deploy all devices.

3. Click **Save**.
4. To bulk provision devices, download the Windows Configuration Designer from the Microsoft Store. The Windows Configuration Designer creates provisioning packages used to image devices. As part of these packages, you can include Endpoint Management bulk enrollment configuration settings so that devices automatically enroll into Endpoint Management.

**Workspace hub device management**

January 10, 2019

Citrix Ready workspace hub devices let users move virtual app and desktop sessions from a mobile device running Citrix Workspace app to a Citrix Ready workspace hub. The Citrix Ready workspace hub is a Raspberry Pi device that has a keyboard, mouse, monitor, and any other accessory attached to it. You can manage Citrix Ready workspace hub devices from your Endpoint Management console.
more information about Citrix Ready workspace hub, see Citrix Ready workspace hub and this Citrix blog post.

By using Endpoint Management to manage Citrix Ready workspace hub, you can keep your devices updated with the latest features and security patches. You can also perform security actions, such as full wipes or restarts. For more details about the unified endpoint management (UEM) and data protection benefits of Endpoint Management, see this use case on the Citrix website.

A general workflow for Workspace hub device management is as follows:

1. Complete the onboarding process. See Onboarding and resource setup and Prepare to enroll devices and deliver resources.

2. Add Citrix Ready workspace hubs to the Device Whitelist table in the Endpoint Management Console, using either of the following methods:
   - To add Citrix Ready workspace hubs to Endpoint Management manually
   - To import or export Citrix Ready workspace hub devices in bulk

3. Configure a Citrix Ready workspace hub.

4. Deploy custom configurations to Citrix workspace hub devices.

5. Deploy the Citrix Workspace configuration to Citrix Ready workspace hub devices.

6. Configure Workspace hub device policies.

7. Deploy and update apps for Citrix workspace hub.


For supported operating systems, see Supported device operating systems.

To add Citrix Ready workspace hubs to Endpoint Management manually

To enroll a Citrix Ready workspace hub in Endpoint Management, you can manually add the device to the Device Whitelist table in the Endpoint Management console.

A workspace hub device must enroll from the same region where Citrix Endpoint Management is located. For example, if your home region is European Union, the device must enroll while in that region. After a workspace hub device enrolls from your home region and the device roams to a different geographical region, workspace hub works as usual.

If a workspace hub device has to enroll when outside of the home region, the Service URL will contain an incorrect home region. You can change the Service URL in the Stratodesk configuration to point to the correct home region, as follows.

1. On the Stratodesk system: Go to Services > NoTouch Center > Central Management URL.
2. Change the Management URL to include the URL for your home region.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Asia Pacific South (Asia, Australia/Pacific, Middle East): manageiot-apse.xm.cloud.com
- European Union: manageiot-eu.xm.cloud.com
- United States (Africa, Antarctica, Caribbean, Central America, North America, South America): manageiot-us.xm.cloud.com

3. Save the configuration.

4. Go to Information > NoTouch Center and then click Announce.

For example, if your home region is in the U.S. and the Workspace hub device has to enroll while in the U.K.: Change the Service URL in Stratodesk from https://manageiot-eu.xm.cloud.com:443/easyadmin/servlet/XmlRPC to https://manageiot-us.xm.cloud.com:443/easyadmin/servlet/XmlRPC.

**Prerequisite**

The configuration steps in this section include specifying a domain for Citrix Ready workspace hub users. Workspace hub uses email-based management server lookup. The lookup requires that you create a DNS SRV record named _tcmgr._tcp.mycompany.com, where mycompany.com is your domain name.

For more information, see the NComputing documentation article, E-mail based management server lookup.

**To add a device to the Device Whitelist table**

1. In the Endpoint Management console, navigate to Manage > Devices.
2. Click **Device Whitelist** at the top.

3. Click **Add**. On the page that opens, type the following information.

   - **Device platform**: Select **Workspace Hub**.
   - **Device ID Type**: Select the method to identify devices. Citrix Ready workspace hub only
supports **MAC address**. For the device registration process, the eth0 MAC address is used, regardless of which connection type you choose.

- **Device ID**: Type the appropriate identifier you selected previously.
- **Associated User**: User to associate with the Citrix Ready workspace hub. The user associated with the device can be a pseudo user, such as a service account. The selected user is used for enrollment, policy pushing, and applying security actions. A single user can associate with multiple devices. This user can be a Local user or LDAP user already configured in your Endpoint Management console. If you want to associate the Citrix Ready workspace hub with a local user, choose **Local** from **Select domain**. Enter the user name in **Search for user** and select the user. If you want to associate the Citrix Ready workspace hub with an LDAP user, choose the appropriate domain from **Select domain**. Search for a user in **Search for user** and select the user.
- **Select domain**: Select the domain to use when searching for users.
- **Search for user**: Type the user name you want to associate with this device and click **Search**. Select the user from the result box. The user appears in the **Associated User** box.

4. Click **Save**. The device is added to the table.

**To import or export Citrix Ready workspace hub devices in bulk**

To enroll a Citrix Ready workspace hub in Endpoint Management, you can import or export the devices in bulk to the Device Whitelist table.
1. In the Endpoint Management console, navigate to Manage > Devices. Click Device Whitelist and then click Import.

2. Click Download to download a .csv template for importing devices. The columns in the file are the same as the fields in the previous workflow.

3. Fill out the form and save it. When finished, click Choose File and select the template.

4. Click Import. All Citrix Ready workspace hubs in the template file are added to the table.

5. To export the list of Citrix Ready workspace hubs for editing, click Export.

**Configure a Citrix Ready workspace hub**

After configuring Endpoint Management to enroll your Citrix Ready workspace hub devices, configure the Citrix Ready workspace hub device itself. For more information on configuring the device, see the Stratodesk Knowledge Base.

For first-time device use, configure Central Management during the first time wizard. Enter https://manageiot.xm.cloud.com:443/easyadmin/servlet/XmlRPC as the Management URL and then click Finish. The device performs an Announce and enrolls in Endpoint Management.
Step 1 - Location and keyboard

Welcome!
Please complete the steps of this wizard to set up your device.

- Skip wizard
- Central management

- Time zone: America/Los Angeles
- Country: United States
- System locale: English (US)
- Keyboard layout: US English

Next
If the device was configured, or if you don’t want to use the wizard, navigate to Services > No Touch Center. Configure the Management URL as you did previously and Save. Do a manual Announce by navigating to Information on the left pane and clicking Announce.
Deploy custom configurations to Citrix workspace hub devices

You can deploy custom configurations to Citrix workspace hub devices. After manually configuring your first Citrix workspace hub device, you then download the configuration from the device and deploy the configuration to all other devices.

Requirements:

- Workspace Hub device running Stratodesk NoTouch OS v2.40.3512 (minimum version)

To set up and deploy custom configurations:

1. Configure your Citrix Workspace Hub device and download the configuration file.
   a) Log in to the Workspace Hub console from a remote machine.
   b) Set up network shares, printer configuration, and any other settings you want shared across devices on your Citrix workspace hub device.
   c) In the left pane of your workspace hub console, click Download config.
   d) The .config file downloads to the remote machine where you're logged in.

2. Host the configuration file on a file sharing web server. Ensure that the file share isn’t protected with any authentication.

3. On your Endpoint Management console, navigate to Configure > Device Policies and select Import Device Configuration.
4. Type a **Policy Name** and, optionally, a **Description**. Click **Next**.

5. Paste the URL for the configuration file and click **Next**.

6. Configure your deployment rules. For information on configuring those rules, see **Device policies**. Click **Save**.

7. Within a few minutes after the policy pushes to devices, enrolled devices show the configured settings. Those settings include network shares, desktop wallpapers, and connections.

   If the device doesn't reflect the configuration, check the configuration URL in your Citrix workspace hub device console. Navigate to **Services > NoTouch Center**. Then confirm that the **Configuration archive URL** is the URL where you hosted the configuration file.

---

**To manage Citrix Ready workspace hub devices**

1. To view and manage Citrix Ready workspace hubs in Endpoint Management after enrollment, navigate to **Manage > Devices**. The **Devices** table appears. Select **Workspace Hub** on the left to see the newly enrolled device. Choose the Citrix Ready workspace hub you want to manage, and then click **Edit** to view and confirm the device details.

   When you select the check box next to a device, the options menu appears above the device list. If you click anywhere else in the list, the options menu appears on the right side of the listing.
2. The **General** page lists device **Identifiers** for the platform type, such as the serial number, ActiveSync ID, and other information. For **Device Ownership**, select **Corporate** or **BYOD**.

The **General** page also lists device **Security** properties, such as Strong ID, Lock Device, Activation Lock Bypass, and other information for the platform type.

3. The remaining **Device Details** sections contain summary information for the device.

   - **Assigned Policies**: Displays the number of assigned policies including the number of deployed, pending, and failed policies. Provides the policy name, type and last deployed information for each policy.
   - **Apps**: Displays the apps that are installed, pending, or failed.
   - **Delivery Groups**: Displays the number of successful, pending, and failed delivery groups.
     For each deployment, provides the delivery group name and deployment time.

You can also perform security actions, such as full wipe or restart. For more information on security actions, see **Security actions**.

**Deploy the Citrix Workspace configuration to Citrix Ready workspace hub devices**

Use the App Configuration device policy to deploy the Citrix Workspace configuration to Citrix Ready workspace hub devices. Go to **Configure > Device Policies**, add the **App Configuration** policy, and, under **Platforms**, select **Workspace Hub**. Configure the following Workspace Hub settings:

   - **Connection Mode**: Select **Citrix Receiver**.
   - **Connection Name**: Type a descriptive name for your connection.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- **Connection Target:** Type a URL to load upon connection.

Some apps might require extra parameters to function. For each configuration parameter you want to add, click **Add** and then do the following:

- **Parameter name:** Type the key name of an application setting for the Citrix Ready workspace hub device.
- **Value:** Type the value for the specified parameter.

After you complete the configuration, choose delivery groups. For more information, see Device policies.

**Configure Workspace hub device policies**

Use these policies to configure how Endpoint Management interacts with Workspace hub devices. This table lists all device policies available for Workspace hub devices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App Configuration</th>
<th>Credentials</th>
<th>Import Device Configuration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OS Update</td>
<td>WiFi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Citrix Endpoint Management

Deploy and update apps for Citrix workspace hub

1. Because Citrix workspace hub devices only allow for deploying and updating a single file, first package all of your apps into a Squash FS file.

   For more information on creating a Squash FS file, see the Squash FS documentation.

   Note:
   When creating the file, ensure that you output an .img file.

2. In the Endpoint Management console, navigate to Configure > Apps and click Add. Click Enterprise.

3. Type a name and description for your app, and then deselect all platforms except Workspace Hub. Click Next.

4. On the Workspace Hub Enterprise App page, click Upload. Navigate to the .img file you created previously and click Open.

5. Click Next. The Approvals page does not function for Citrix workspace hub.

6. Click Next. The Delivery Group Assignment page appears.

7. Next to Choose delivery groups, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list. The groups you select appear in the Delivery groups to receive app assignment list.

   Note:
   Apps are always delivered to the device assigned to the delivery group. It doesn’t matter whether the app is optional or required because there is no store for Citrix workspace hub.
8. Click **Save**.

After the apps upload to Endpoint Management, Citrix workspace hub devices receive the update when restarted.

**Security actions**

Workspace hub supports the following security actions. For a description of each security action, see **Security actions**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Full Wipe</th>
<th>Restart</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Device policies**

January 23, 2019

You can configure how Endpoint Management interacts with your devices by creating policies. Although many policies are common to all devices, each device has a set of policies specific to its operating system. As a result, you might find differences between platforms, and even between different manufacturers of Android devices.

To view the policies that are available per platform:

1. In the Endpoint Management console, go to **Configure > Device Policies**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Each device platform appears in a list in the **Policy Platform** pane. If that pane isn’t open, click **Show filter**.
4. To see a list of all policies available for a platform, select that platform. To see a list of the policies that are available for multiple platforms, select each of those platforms. A policy appears in the list only if it applies to each platform selected.
For a summary description of each device policy, see Device policy summaries in this article.

**Note:**

If your environment is configured with Group Policy Objects (GPOs):

When you configure Endpoint Management device policies for Windows 10, keep the following rule in mind. If a policy on one or more enrolled Windows 10 devices conflicts, the policy aligned with the GPO takes precedence.

To see which policies the Android Enterprise container supports, see Android Enterprise.

**Prerequisites**

- Create any delivery groups you plan to use.
- Install any necessary CA certificates.

**Add a device policy**

The basic steps to create a device policy are as follows:

1. Name and describe the policy.
2. Configure the policy for one or more platforms.
3. Create deployment rules (optional).
4. Assign the policy to delivery groups.
5. Configure the deployment schedule (optional).

To create and manage device policies, go to **Configure > Device Policies**.
To add a policy:

1. On the **Device Policies** page, click **Add**. The **Add a New Policy** page appears.

2. Click one or more platforms to view a list of the device policies for the selected platforms. Click a policy name to continue with adding the policy.
You can also type the name of the policy in the search box. As you type, potential matches appear. If your policy is in the list, click it. Only your selected policy remains in the results. Click it to open the **Policy Information** page for that policy.

3. Select the platforms you want to include in the policy. Configuration pages for the selected platforms appear in Step 5.

4. Complete the **Policy Information** page and then click **Next**. The **Policy Information** page collects information, such as the policy name, to help you identify and track your policies. This page is similar for all policies.

5. Complete the platform pages. Platform pages appear for each platform you selected in Step 3. These pages are different for each policy. A policy might differ among platforms. Not all policies apply to all platforms.

   Some pages include tables of items. To delete an existing item, hover over the line containing the listing and click the trash can icon on the right side. In the confirmation dialog, click **Delete**.

   To edit an existing item, hover over the line containing the listing and click the pen icon on the right side.
To configure deployment rules, assignments, and schedule

For more information about configuring deployment rules, see Deploy resources.

1. On a platform page, expand Deployment Rules and then configure the following settings. The Base tab appears by default.
   - In the lists, click options to determine when the policy should be deployed. You can choose to deploy the policy when all conditions are met or when any conditions are met. The default option is All.
   - Click New Rule to define the conditions.
   - In the lists, click the conditions, such as Device ownership and BYOD.
   - Click New Rule again if you want to add more conditions. You can add as many conditions as you would like.

2. Click the Advanced tab to combine the rules with Boolean options. The conditions you chose on the Base tab appear.

3. You can use more advanced Boolean logic to combine, edit, or add rules.
   - Click AND, OR, or NOT.
   - In the lists, choose the conditions that you want to add to the rule. Then, click the Plus sign (+) on the right side to add the condition to the rule.
     At any time, you can click to select a condition and then click Edit to change the condition or Delete to remove the condition.
   - Click New Rule to add another condition.

4. Click Next to move to the next platform page or, when all the platform pages are complete, to the Assignments page.

5. On the Assignments page, select the delivery groups to which you want to apply the policy. If you click a delivery group, the group appears in the Delivery groups to receive app assignment box.
   Delivery groups to receive app assignment doesn’t appear until you select a delivery group.
6. On the Assignments page, expand Deployment Schedule and then configure the following settings:

- **Next to Deploy**, click On to schedule deployment or click Off to prevent deployment. The default option is **On**.

- **Next to Deployment schedule**, click Now or Later. The default option is **Now**.

- If you click Later, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.

- **Next to Deployment condition**, click On every connection or click Only when previous deployment has failed. The default option is **On every connection**.

- **Next to Deploy for always-on connection**, click On or Off. The default option is **Off**.

**Note:**

This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in Settings > Server Properties.

The always-on option:

- Is not available for iOS devices
- Is not available for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS to customers who began using Endpoint Management with version 10.18.19 or later
- Is not recommended for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS to customers who began using Endpoint Management with before version 10.18.19

The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for Deploy for always-on connection.
7. Click **Save**.

The policy appears in the Device Policies table.

**Edit or delete a device policy**

To edit or delete a policy, select the check box next to a policy to show the options menu above the policy list. Or, click a policy in the list to show the options menu to the right of the listing.

To view policy details, click **Show more**.

To edit all settings for a device policy, click **Edit**.

If you click **Delete**, a confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** again.
Remove a device policy from a device

The steps to remove a device policy from a device depends on the platform.

- **Android**
  
  To remove a device policy from an Android device, use the Endpoint Management Uninstall device policy. For information, see [Endpoint Management uninstall device policy](#).

- **iOS and macOS**
  
  To remove a device policy from an iOS or macOS device, use the Profile Removal device policy. On iOS and macOS devices, all policies are part of the MDM profile. Thus, you can create a Profile Removal device policy for just the policy that you want to remove. The rest of the policies and the profile remain on the device. For information, see [Profile Removal device policy](#).

- **Windows 10**
  
  You can’t directly remove a device policy from a Windows 10 Desktop or Tablet device. However, you can use either of the following methods:
  
  - Unenroll the device and then push a new set of policies to the device. Users then re-enroll to continue.
  
  - Push a security action to selectively wipe the specific device. That action removes all corporate apps and data from the device. You then remove the device policy from a delivery group that contains just that device and push the delivery group to the device. Users then re-enroll to continue.

- **Chrome OS**
  
  To remove a device policy from a Chrome OS device, you can remove the device policy from a delivery group that contains just that device. You then push the delivery group to the device.

Filter the list of added device policies

You can filter the list of added policies by policy types, platforms, and associated delivery groups. On the Configure > Device Policies page, click Show filter. In the list, select the check boxes for the items you want to see.
Click **SAVE THIS VIEW** to save a filter. The name of the filter then appears in a button below the **SAVE THIS VIEW** button.

### Device policy summaries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Device Policy Name</strong></th>
<th><strong>Device Policy Description</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AirPlay Mirroring</td>
<td>Adds specific AirPlay devices (such as Apple TV or another Mac computer) to iOS devices. You also have the option of adding devices to a whitelist for supervised devices. That option limits users to only the AirPlay devices on the whitelist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AirPrint</td>
<td>Adds AirPrint printers to the AirPrint printer list on iOS devices. This policy makes it easier to support environments where the printers and the devices are on different subnets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Android Enterprise App Permissions</td>
<td>Configures how requests to Android Enterprise apps within work profiles handle what Google calls “dangerous” permissions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Device Policy Name | Device Policy Description
--- | ---
Android Enterprise Managed Configurations | Controls a variety of app configuration options and app restrictions for Android Enterprise devices.  
APN | Determines the settings used to connect your devices to the General Packet Radio Service (GPRS) of a specific phone carrier. This setting is already defined in most new phones. Use this policy if your organization doesn’t use a consumer APN to connect to the internet from a mobile device.  
App Access | Defines a list of the apps that are required, optional, or prevented on the device. You can then create an automated action to react to the device compliance with that list of apps.  
App Attributes | Specifies attributes, such as a managed app bundle ID or per-app VPN identifier, for iOS devices.  
App Configuration | Remotely configures various settings and behaviors of apps that support managed configuration. To do that, you deploy an XML configuration file (called a property list, or plist) to iOS devices. Or, you deploy key/value pairs to Windows 10 phone, desktop, or tablet devices.  
App Inventory | Collects an inventory of the apps on managed devices. Endpoint Management then compares the inventory to any app access policies deployed to those devices. In this way, you can detect apps that are on an app access blacklist or whitelist and then act accordingly.  
App Lock | Defines a list of apps that users either can or can’t run on iOS or certain Android devices.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device Policy Name</th>
<th>Device Policy Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>App Network Usage</td>
<td>Sets network usage rules to specify how managed apps use networks, such as cellular data networks, on iOS devices. The rules only apply to managed apps. Managed apps are apps that you deploy to user devices through Endpoint Management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App Restrictions</td>
<td>Creates blacklists for apps you want to prevent users from installing on Samsung KNOX devices. You can also create whitelists for apps you want to allow users to install.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App Uninstall</td>
<td>Remove apps from user devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App Uninstall Restrictions</td>
<td>Specifies the apps that users can or can’t uninstall.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application Guard</td>
<td>For the Microsoft Edge browser only, this policy specifies Windows Defender Application Guard settings. The settings include whether to enable Application Guard, which directions content can be copied and pasted, and whether to block external content on enterprise sites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apps Notifications</td>
<td>Controls how iOS users receive notifications from specified apps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BitLocker</td>
<td>Configures the settings available in the BitLocker interface on Windows 10 devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Browser</td>
<td>Defines whether user devices can use the browser or which browser functions the devices can use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendar (CalDav)</td>
<td>Adds a calendar (CalDAV) account to iOS or macOS devices. The CalDAV account enables users to synchronize scheduling data with any server that supports CalDAV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellular</td>
<td>Configures cellular network settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configure Windows Agent</td>
<td>Allows you to configure, schedule, and run various powershell scripts on MDM-managed devices.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Device Policy Name | Device Policy Description
--- | ---
Connection Manager | Specifies the connection settings for apps that connect automatically to the internet and to private networks. This policy is only available on Windows Pocket PCs.
Contacts (CardDAV) | Adds an iOS contact (CardDAV) account to iOS or macOS devices. The CardDAV account enables users to synchronize contact data with any server that supports CardDAV.
Content | Controls various web content options for Chrome OS, including what homepage to show and how popups are handled.
Copy apps to Samsung Container | Copies the apps already installed on a device to a SEAMS or KNOX container on supported Samsung devices. Apps copied to the SEAMS container are available on the device home screen. Apps copied to the KNOX container are available only when users sign in to the KNOX container.
Control OS Update | Deploys the latest OS updates to supported, supervised devices.
Credentials | Enables integrated authentication with your PKI configuration in Endpoint Management. For example, with a PKI entity, a keystore, a credential provider, or a server certificate.
Custom XML | Customizes features such as device provisioning, device feature enablement, device configuration, and fault management.
Defender | Configures Windows Defender settings for Windows 10 for desktop and tablet.
Device Guard | Enable security features such as secure boot, UEFI lock, and virtualization.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device Policy Name</th>
<th>Device Policy Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device Health Attestation</td>
<td>Requires that Windows 10 devices report the state of their health. To do that they send specific data and runtime information to the Health Attestation Service (HAS) for analysis. The HAS creates and returns a Health Attestation Certificate that the device then sends to Endpoint Management. When Endpoint Management receives the Health Attestation Certificate, based on the contents of that certificate, it can deploy automatic actions that you configured.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Name</td>
<td>Sets the names on iOS and macOS devices so that you can identify the devices. You can use macros, text, or a combination of both to define a device name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education Configuration</td>
<td>Configures instructor and student devices for use with Apple Education. If instructors use the Classroom app, the Education Configuration device policy is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Management Options</td>
<td>Configures the Secure Hub behavior when connecting to Endpoint Management from Android devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Management Uninstall</td>
<td>Uninstalls Endpoint Management from Android devices. When deployed, this policy removes Endpoint Management from all devices in the deployment group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise Hub</td>
<td>Distributes apps to Windows Phones through the Enterprise Hub Company store. Endpoint Management supports only one Enterprise Hub policy for one mode of Windows Phone Secure Hub. For example, don’t create multiple Enterprise Hub policies with different versions of Secure Home for Endpoint Management. You can deploy the initial Enterprise Hub policy only during device enrollment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Policy Name</td>
<td>Device Policy Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exchange</td>
<td>Enables ActiveSync email for the native email client on the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Files</td>
<td>Adds script files to Endpoint Management that perform certain functions for users. Or, you can add document files that you want Android device users to be able to access on their devices. When you add the file, you can also specify the directory in which you want the file to be stored on the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileVault</td>
<td>This policy lets you enable FileVault device encryption on enrolled macOS devices. You can also control how many times a user can skip FileVault setup during login. Available for macOS 10.7 or later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firewall</td>
<td>Configures the firewall settings. You provide the IP addresses, ports, and host names that you want to allow or block on devices. You can also configure the proxy and proxy reroute settings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Font</td>
<td>Adds fonts to iOS and macOS devices. Fonts must be TrueType (.TTF) or OpenType (.OFT) fonts. Endpoint Management doesn’t support font collections (.TTC or .OTC).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home screen layout</td>
<td>Specifies the layout of apps and folders for the iOS Home screen on supervised iOS devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import Device Configuration</td>
<td>Imports a template configuration file from Workspace Hub devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Import iOS &amp; macOS Profile</td>
<td>Imports device configuration XML files for iOS and macOS devices into Endpoint Management. The file contains device security policies and restrictions that you prepare by using the Apple Configurator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Policy Name</td>
<td>Device Policy Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kiosk</td>
<td>Restricts app usage on Samsung SAFE devices. You can limit available apps to a specific app or apps. This policy is useful for corporate devices that are intended to run only a specific type or class of apps. This policy also lets you choose custom images for the device home screen and lock screen wallpapers for kiosk mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knox Platform for Enterprise</td>
<td>Specifies the Knox Platform for Enterprise (KPE) Premium license key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Launcher Configuration</td>
<td>Specifies settings for Citrix Launcher on Android devices, such as the apps allowed and a custom logo image for the Launcher icon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDAP</td>
<td>Provides information about an LDAP server to use for iOS devices, including any necessary account information such as the LDAP server host name. The policy also provides a set of LDAP search policies to use when querying the LDAP server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location</td>
<td>Lets you geo-locate devices on a map, assuming that the device has GPS enabled for Secure Hub. After deploying this policy to the device, you can send a locate command from Endpoint Management. The device then responds with its location coordinates. Endpoint Management also supports geofencing and tracking policies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lock screen message</td>
<td>Sets messages to appear on the following devices when they are lost: The login window of shared iPads and the lock screen of supervised iOS devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mail</td>
<td>Configures an email account on iOS or macOS devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Device Policy Name</strong></td>
<td><strong>Device Policy Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managed Domains</td>
<td>Defines managed domains that apply to email and the Safari browser. Managed domains help you protect corporate data by controlling which apps can open documents downloaded from domains using Safari. For iOS supervised devices, you can specify URLs or subdomains to control how users can open documents, attachments, and downloads from the browser.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managed Bookmarks</td>
<td>Deploys a folder of bookmarks to Chrome OS devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maps</td>
<td>Specifies which maps to download to supervised Windows 10 phone devices. The Microsoft Maps configuration service provider (CSP) currently supports maps of Germany, the United Kingdom, and the United States.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum resident users</td>
<td>Specifies the maximum number of users for a Shared iPad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDM Options</td>
<td>Manages Find My Phone and iPad Activation Lock on supervised iOS devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization Info</td>
<td>Specifies organization information for alert messages that Endpoint Management deploys to iOS devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passcode</td>
<td>Enforces a PIN code or password on a managed device. You can set the complexity and timeouts for the passcode on the device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passcode lock grace period</td>
<td>Specifies the number of minutes that a Shared iPad screen stays locked before the user must enter a passcode to unlock the screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal Hotspot</td>
<td>Allows users to connect to the internet when they are not in range of a WiFi network. Users connect through the cellular data connection on their iOS device, using personal hotspot functionality.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Device Policy Name</strong></td>
<td><strong>Device Policy Description</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Profile Removal</td>
<td>Removes the app profile from iOS or macOS devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provisioning Profile</td>
<td>Specifies an enterprise distribution provisioning profile to send to devices. When you develop and code sign an iOS enterprise app, you usually include a provisioning profile. Apple requires the profile for the app to run on an iOS device. If a provisioning profile is missing or has expired, the app crashes when a user taps to open it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provisioning Profile Removal</td>
<td>Removes iOS provisioning profiles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power management</td>
<td>Controls how Chrome OS devices respond to idle periods when using AC or battery power.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proxy</td>
<td>Specifies global HTTP proxy settings for devices running iOS. You can deploy only one global HTTP proxy policy per device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restrictions</td>
<td>Provides hundreds of options to lock down and control features and functionality on managed devices. Examples of restriction options: Disable the camera or microphone, enforce roaming rules, and enforce access to third-party services, such as app stores.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roaming</td>
<td>Configures whether to allow voice and data roaming on iOS devices. If voice roaming is disabled, data roaming is automatically disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samsung MDM License Key</td>
<td>Specifies the built-in Samsung Enterprise License Management (ELM) key that you must deploy to a device before you can deploy SAFE policies and restrictions. Endpoint Management also supports the Samsung Enterprise Firmware-Over-The-Air (E-FOTA) service. Endpoint Management supports and extends both Samsung for Enterprise (SAFE) and Samsung KNOX policies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Policy Name</td>
<td>Device Policy Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scheduling</td>
<td>Required for Android devices to connect back in to Endpoint Management for MDM management, app push, and policy deployment. If you don’t send this policy to devices and don’t enable Google FCM, a device can’t connect back to the server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCEP</td>
<td>Configures iOS and macOS devices to retrieve a certificate from an external SCEP server. You can also deliver a certificate to the device using SCEP from a PKI that is connected to Endpoint Management. To do that, create a PKI entity and a PKI provider in distributed mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSO Account</td>
<td>Creates single sign-on (SSO) accounts so users sign on one-time only to access Endpoint Management and your internal company resources. Users do not need to store any credentials on the device. Endpoint Management uses the enterprise user credentials for an SSO account across apps, including apps from the App Store. This policy is compatible with Kerberos authentication. Available for iOS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Encryption</td>
<td>Encrypts internal and external storage. For some devices, this policy prevents users from using a storage card on their devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Store</td>
<td>Specifies whether an app store webclip appears on the home screen of user devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscribed Calendars</td>
<td>Adds a subscribed calendar to the calendars list on iOS devices. Ensure that you subscribe to a calendar before you add it to the subscribed calendars list on user devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Policy Name</td>
<td>Device Policy Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terms and Conditions</td>
<td>Requires that users accept the specific policies of your company that govern connections to the corporate network. When users enroll their devices with Endpoint Management, they must accept the terms and conditions to enroll their devices. Declining the terms and conditions cancels the enrollment process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verified Access</td>
<td>With verified access enabled, devices cannot access the network unless they are unmodified and are policy-compliant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPN</td>
<td>Provides access to back end systems that use legacy VPN gateway technology. This policy provides VPN gateway connection details that you can deploy to devices. Endpoint Management supports several VPN providers, including Cisco AnyConnect, Juniper, and Citrix VPN. If your VPN gateway supports this option, you can link this policy to a CA and enable VPN on-demand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wallpaper</td>
<td>Adds a .png or .jpg file to set wallpaper on an iOS device lock screen, home screen, or both. To use different wallpaper on iPads and iPhones, create different wallpaper policies and deploy them to the appropriate users.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web Content Filter</td>
<td>Filters web content on iOS devices. Endpoint Management uses the Apple auto-filter function and the sites that you add to whitelists and blacklists. Available only for iOS supervised devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Webclip</td>
<td>Places shortcuts, or webclips, to websites so that they appear alongside apps on user devices. You can specify your own icons to represent the webclips for iOS, macOS, and Android devices. Windows tablet only requires a label and a URL.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Device Policy Name

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device Policy Name</th>
<th>Device Policy Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WiFi</td>
<td>Allows administrators to deploy WiFi router details to managed devices. The router details include SSID, authentication data, and configuration data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Hello for Business</td>
<td>Enable the Windows feature so users can provision Windows Hello for Business on their device. The policy also lets you configure passcode limitations and other security features.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Information Protection</td>
<td>Specifies the apps that require Windows Information Protection at the enforcement level you set for the policy. The policy is for Windows 10 version 1607 and later supervised devices.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### AirPlay mirroring device policy

August 21, 2018

The Apple AirPlay feature allows users to wirelessly stream content from an iOS device to a TV screen through Apple TV, or to mirror exactly what’s on a device display to a TV screen or another Mac computer.

You can add a device policy in Endpoint Management to add specific AirPlay devices (such as Apple TV or another Mac computer) to iOS devices. You also have the option of adding devices to a whitelist for supervised devices, which limits users to only the AirPlay devices on the whitelist. For information about placing a device into Supervised mode, see **To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator**.

**Note:**

Before proceeding, be sure to have the device IDs and any passwords for all the devices you want to add.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.
iOS settings

AirPlay Mirroring Policy

This policy lets you specify specific AirPlay devices to add to user's iOS and macOS devices. For supervised devices, you have the option of specifying a list of whitelisted AirPlay devices.

AirPlay Password:

- **Device ID:** Enter the hardware address (Mac address) in xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx format. This field is not case-sensitive.
- **Password:** Enter an optional password for the device.
- Click **Add** to add the device or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the device.

Whitelist ID:

This list is ignored for unsupervised devices. The device IDs in this list are the only AirPlay devices available to users’ devices. For each AirPlay device you want to add to the list, click **Add** and then do the following:

- **Device ID:** Type the device ID in xx:xxxx:xxxx:xxxx:xx:xx format. This field is not case-sensitive.
- Click **Add** to add the device or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the device.
macOS settings

**AirPlay Password**: For each device you want to add, click **Add** and then do the following:

- **Device ID**: Enter the hardware address (Mac address) in xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx format. This field is not case-sensitive.
- **Password**: Enter an optional password for the device.
- Click **Add** to add the device or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the device.

**Whitelist ID**: This list is ignored for unsupervised devices. The device IDs in this list are the only AirPlay devices available to users’ devices. For each AirPlay device you want to add to the list, click **Add** and then do the following:

- **Device ID**: Type the device ID in xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx format. This field is not case-sensitive.
- Click **Add** to add the device or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the device.

### AirPrint device policy

December 17, 2018

The AirPrint device policy adds AirPrint printers to the AirPrint printer list on iOS devices. This policy makes it easier to support environments where the printers and the devices are on different subnets.

**Note:**

To configure the AirPrint device policy, you need the IP address and resource path for each printer.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.
iOS settings

- **AirPrint Destination**: For each AirPrint destination you want to add, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **IP Address**: Enter the AirPrint printer IP address.
  - **Resource Path**: Enter the Resource Path associated with the printer. This value corresponds to the parameter of the `_ipps.tcp` Bonjour record. For example, `printers/Canon_MG5300_series` or `printers/Xerox_Phaser_7600`.

Android Enterprise app permissions

August 21, 2018

For Android Enterprise (Android enterprise) apps that are within work profiles: You can configure how requests to those apps handle what Google calls “dangerous” permissions. You control whether the user is prompted to grant or deny the permission request from the app. This feature applies to devices running Android 7.0 and later.

Google defines dangerous permissions as permissions that:

- Give the app access to data or resources that involve the user’s private information.
- Or, can potentially affect the user’s stored data or the operation of other apps. For example, the ability to read user contacts is a dangerous permission.

You can configure a global status to control the behavior of all dangerous permission requests. The scope of this configuration is Android Enterprise apps that are within work profiles. You can also control the behavior of dangerous permission request for individual permission groups, as defined by Google, for each app. These individual settings override the global status.

For information on how Google defines permission groups, see the Android developers guide.

By default, users are prompted to grant or deny dangerous permission requests.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.
Android Enterprise settings

• **Global Status:** Controls the behavior of all dangerous permission requests. In the list, click **Prompt, Grant, or Deny.**
  - **Prompt:** Users are prompted to grant or deny dangerous permission requests.
  - **Grant:** All dangerous permission requests are granted. The user is not prompted.
  - **Deny:** All dangerous permission requests are denied. The user is not prompted.

  Default is **Prompt.**

• Set an individual behavior for each permission group, for each app. To configure the behavior for a permission group: Click **Add** and then under **App**, choose an app from the list. Under **Grant Status**, choose **Prompt, Grant, or Deny.** This grant status overrides the global status.
  - **Prompt:** Users are prompted to grant or deny dangerous permission requests from this permission group for this app.
  - **Grant:** Dangerous permission requests from this permission group for this app are granted. The user is not prompted.
  - **Deny:** Dangerous permission requests from this permission group for this app are denied. The user is not prompted.

  Default is **Prompt.**

• Click **Save** next to the app and grant status.

• To add more apps for the permission group, click **Add** again and repeat these steps.
• When you have finished setting the **Grant Status** for permission groups, click **Next**.

### Android Enterprise Managed Configurations policy

December 19, 2018

The Android Enterprise Managed Configurations device policy controls a variety of app configuration options and app restrictions. The options available for an app and the tooltips are defined by the app developer. If a tooltip mentions using a “templated value”, use the corresponding Endpoint Management macro instead. For more information, see [Remote configuration overview](https://developers.google.com/android-enterprise) (on the Android developer site) and [Macros](https://developers.google.com/android-enterprise).

The app configuration settings can include items such as:

- App email settings
- Whitelist or blacklist URLs for a web browser
- Option to control app content sync through a cellular connection or only by a WiFi connection

For information about the settings that appear for your apps, contact the app developer.

### Prerequisites

- Complete Android Enterprise setup tasks on Google. For more information, see [Managing Devices with Android Enterprise](https://developers.google.com/android-enterprise).
- Set up Android Enterprise. For more information, see [Set up Android Enterprise](https://developers.google.com/android-enterprise).
- Add Android Enterprise apps to Endpoint Management. For more information, see [Adding Apps to Endpoint Management](https://developers.google.com/android-enterprise).

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see [Device policies](https://developers.google.com/android-enterprise).

### Android Enterprise settings

After you choose to add an Android Enterprise Managed Configurations device policy, a prompt to select an app appears. If there are no Android Enterprise apps added to Endpoint Management, you cannot proceed.

After you select an app, then configure the policy settings. The settings are specific to each app.
You can configure how requests to Android Enterprise (Android enterprise) apps, that are within work profiles, handle what Google calls “dangerous” permissions. You control whether the user is prompted to grant or deny the permission request from the app. This feature applies to devices running Android 7.0 and later.

Google defines dangerous permissions as permissions that give the app access to data or resources that involve the user’s private information or could potentially affect the user’s stored data or the operation of other apps. For example, the ability to read the user’s contacts is a dangerous permission.

You can configure a global state that controls the behavior of all dangerous permission requests to Android Enterprise apps within work profiles. You can also control the behavior of dangerous permission request for individual permission groups, as defined by Google, for each app. These individual settings override the global state.

For information on how Google defines permission groups, see the Android developers guide.

By default, users are prompted to grant or deny dangerous permission requests.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.
Android Enterprise settings

- **Global State**: Controls the behavior of all dangerous permission requests. In the list, click Prompt, Grant, or Deny.
  - **Prompt**: Users are prompted to grant or deny dangerous permission requests.
  - **Grant**: All dangerous permission requests are granted. The user is not prompted.
  - **Deny**: All dangerous permission requests are denied. The user is not prompted.

Default is **Prompt**.

- Set an individual behavior for each permission group, for each app. To configure the behavior for a permission group: Click Add and then under App, choose an app from the list. Under Grant State, choose Prompt, Grant, or Deny. This grant state overrides the global state.
  - **Prompt**: Users are prompted to grant or deny dangerous permission requests from this permission group for this app.
  - **Grant**: Dangerous permission requests from this permission group for this app are granted. The user is not prompted.
  - **Deny**: Dangerous permission requests from this permission group for this app are denied. The user is not prompted.

Default is **Prompt**.

- Click **Save** next to the app and grant state.

- To add more apps for the permission group, click **Add** again and repeat these steps.
• When you have finished setting grant states for all permission groups you want to, click **Next**.

**APN device policy**

August 21, 2018

You can add a custom Access Point Name (APN) device policy for iOS and Android devices. You use this policy if your organization does not use a consumer APN to connect to the Internet from a mobile device. An APN policy determines the settings used to connect your devices to a specific phone carrier’s General Packet Radio Service (GPRS). This setting is already defined in most newer phones.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see [Device policies](#).

**iOS settings**

- **APN**: Type the name of the access point. This must match an accepted iOS APN or the policy will fail.
- **User name**: This string specifies the user name for this APN. If the user name is missing, the device prompts for the string during profile installation.
- **Password**: The password for the user for this APN. For obfuscation purposes, the password is encoded. If it is missing from the payload, the device prompts for the password during profile installation.
- **Server proxy address**: The IP address or URL of the APN proxy.
- **Server proxy port**: The port number for the APN proxy. This is required if you entered a server proxy address.
• Under **Policy Settings**, next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in hours)**.
  – If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
  – In the **Allow user to remove policy list**, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
  – If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

**Android settings**

- **APN**: Type the name of the access point. This must match an accepted Android APN or the policy will fail.
- **User name**: This string specifies the user name for this APN. If the user name is missing, the device prompts for the string during profile installation.
- **Password**: The password for the user for this APN. For obfuscation purposes, the password is encoded. If it is missing from the payload, the device prompts for the password during profile installation.
- **Server**: This setting, which predates smart phones, is usually empty. It references a Wireless Application Protocol (WAP) gateway server for phones that could not access or render standard-web sites.
- **APN type**: This setting must match the carrier’s intended use for the access point. It is a comma separated string of APN service specifiers and must match the wireless carrier’s published definitions. Examples include:
  - *: All traffic goes through this access point.
  - mms. Multimedia traffic goes through this access point.
  - default. All traffic, including multimedia, goes through this access point.
  - supl. Secure User Plane Location is associated with assisted GPS.
  - dun. Dial Up Networking is outdated and should rarely be used.
- hipri. High priority networking.
- fota. Firmware over the air is used for receiving firmware updates.

- **Authentication type:** In the list, click the type of authentication to be used. Defaults to None.
- **Server proxy address:** The IP address or URL of the carrier’s APN HTTP proxy.
- **Server proxy port:** The port number for the APN proxy. This is required if you entered a server proxy address.
- **MMSC:** The MMS Gateway Server address provided by the carrier.
- **Multimedia Messaging Server (MMS) proxy address:** This is the multimedia messaging service server for MMS traffic. MMS succeeded SMS for sending larger messages with multimedia content, such as pictures or videos. These servers require specific protocols (such as MM1, ... MM11).
- **MMS port:** The port used for the MMS proxy.

### App access device policy

**August 21, 2018**

The app access device policy in Endpoint Management allows you to define a list of apps that are either required to be installed on the device, can be installed on the device, or must not be installed on the device. You can then create an automated action to react to the device compliance with that list of apps.

You can only configure one type of access policy at a time. You can add a policy for either a list of required apps, suggested apps, or forbidden apps, but not a mix within the same app access policy. If you create a policy for each type of list, we recommend that you name each policy carefully, so you know which policy in Endpoint Management applies to which list of apps.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.

### iOS and Android settings

- **Access policy:** Click **Required**, **Suggested**, or **Forbidden**. The default is **Required**.
- To add one or more apps to the list, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **App name:** Enter an app name.
  - **App Identifier:** Enter an optional app identifier.
  - Click **Save** or **Cancel**.
  - Repeat these steps for each app you want to add.
App attributes device policy

August 21, 2018

The App attributes device policy lets you specify attributes, such as a managed app bundle ID or per-app VPN identifier, for iOS devices.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

iOS settings

- Managed app bundle ID: In the list, click an app bundle ID or click Add new.
  - If you click Add new, type the app bundle ID in the field that appears.
- Per-app VPN identifier: In the list, click per-app VPN identifier.

App configuration device policy

November 20, 2018

You can remotely configure apps that support managed configuration by deploying:

- An XML configuration file (called a property list, or plist) to iOS devices
- Key/value pairs for Windows 10 Phone, Desktop, or Tablet devices
- Citrix Workspace connection information to Workspace hub devices
Citrix Endpoint Management

The configuration specifies various settings and behaviors in the app. Endpoint Management pushes the configuration to devices when the user installs the app. The actual settings and behaviors that you can configure depend on the app and are beyond the scope of this article.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

iOS settings

- **Identifier**: In the list, click the app you want to configure or click Add new to add a new app to the list.
  - If you click Add new, type the app identifier in the field that appears.
- **Dictionary content**: Type, or copy and paste, the XML property list (plist) configuration information.
- Click Check Dictionary. Endpoint Management verifies the XML. If there are no errors, you see Valid XML below the content box. If any syntax errors appear below the content box, you must correct them before you can continue.
Windows Phone settings

- In the Make a selection list, click the app you want to configure or click Add new to add a new app to the list.
  - If you click Add new, type the package family name in the field that appears.
- For each configuration parameter you want to add, click Add and then do the following:
  - Parameter name: Enter the key name of an application setting for the Windows device. For information about Windows app settings, refer to the Microsoft documentation.
  - Value: Enter the value for the specified parameter.
  - Click Add to add the parameter or click Cancel to cancel adding the parameter.

Windows Desktop/Tablet settings

You can configure either Universal Windows Platform (UWP) apps or Win32 apps. To import Microsoft Administrative Template (ADMX) policy settings, configure Win32 apps.

Note: The App Configuration device policy supports third-party ADMX files for third-party applications such as Office. Not supported are Microsoft ADMX templates for Windows that are provided as operating system Group Policies available under %SystemRoot%\PolicyDefinitions.

- If you choose UWP App: In the Make a selection list, click the app you want to configure or click Add new to add a new app to the list.
– If you click **Add new**, type the package family name in the field that appears.
– For each configuration parameter you want to add, click **Add** and then do the following:
  * **Parameter name:** Enter the key name of an application setting for the Windows device. For information about Windows app settings, refer to the Microsoft documentation.
  * **Value:** Enter the value for the specified parameter.
  * Click **Add** to add the parameter or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the parameter.

• If you choose **Win32 App:** Click **Browse** and navigate to the ADMX file you want to use to configure the policy.

– Click **Add**. Configuration options from the ADMX file appear on the right side of the page.
Choose a policy path. If you choose the same path more than once, the configuration associated with the most recently version is enforced.

- Set Enable to On.

- Input any required list element values as key-value pairs. Use the text string \&#x000 to separate each key-value pair and the value and key within the pair.

- Element values that include a decimal might require values within a specific range.

**Workspace Hub settings**

Use the App Configuration device policy to deploy the Citrix Workspace configuration to Citrix Ready workspace hub devices. Configure the following settings:
• **Connection Mode**: Select Citrix Receiver.

• **Connection Name**: Type a descriptive name for your connection.

• **Connection Target**: Type a URL to load upon connection.

Some apps might require extra parameters to function. For each configuration parameter you want to add, click **Add** and then configure the following:

• **Parameter name**: Type the key name of an application setting for the Citrix Ready workspace hub device.

• **Value**: Type the value for the specified parameter.

For more information about configuring Citrix Ready workspace hub devices, see **Workspace hub device management**.

### App inventory device policy

**August 21, 2018**

The App inventory policy lets you collect an inventory of the apps on managed devices. Endpoint Management can then compare the inventory to any app access policies deployed to those devices. In this way, you can detect apps that appear on an app blacklist (forbidden in an app access policy) or whitelist (required in an app access policy) and take action accordingly.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.
iOS, macOS, Android, Windows Desktop/Tablet, and Windows Phone

- For each platform you select, leave the default setting or change the setting to **Off**. The default is **On**.

  Support for Android includes devices enabled for Android Enterprise.

**Inventory and delete Win32 apps**

You can determine whether the Win32 apps on user devices comply with your App access device policy. To view an inventory of Win32 apps on managed Windows 10 Desktop and Tablet devices:

1. Go to **Configure > Device Policies** and add an App Inventory policy for the **Windows Desktop/Tablet** platform. Deploy the policy.

2. Go to **Manage > Devices**, select the Windows 10 device that you want to view, click **Edit**, and then click the **Apps** tab.

   The results of the inventory appear.
3. Compare the app inventory to your App access device policy. If the device has blacklisted apps installed, you can delete them from devices as follows.

**App install and uninstall issues caused by an incorrect Product Code**

If a Win32 app is configured with the incorrect Product Code, the app initially installs, however Microsoft doesn’t return the app status to Endpoint Management. As a result:

- The App Uninstall device policy doesn’t uninstall the app.
- Endpoint Management continues to deploy the app because it doesn’t have confirmation that the app installed. With each deployment, the device generates an error code because the app is already installed. The error shown in **Manage > Device > Delivery Group Details** is: “Msi Application received: Reporting:AppPush id:7z1701-x64.msi: Command execution failed -2147023293”

To correct the Product Code:

1. Manually remove the app from the device.
2. In the Endpoint Management console, go to **Configure > Apps** and correct the Product Code for the Win32 app.
3. Deploy the Win32 app.

**Application Guard device policy**

August 21, 2018

The Application Guard policy specifies Windows Defender Application Guard settings. The settings include whether to enable Application Guard and controls for clipboard behavior.
Citrix Endpoint Management

Windows Defender Application Guard protects your environment from sites that haven’t been defined as trusted by your organization. When users visit sites that aren’t listed in your isolated network boundary: The sites open in a virtual browsing session in Hyper-V. Enterprise cloud resources define trusted sites.

Requirements

- Windows 10 (64-bit) enterprise devices running OS version 1709. A device restart is required to install the Windows Defender Application Guard.
- Microsoft Edge browser

Windows Desktop and Tablet settings

- **Application Guard**: Enables Application Guard. Default is **Off**.
  - **Enterprise Cloud Resources**: A comma-separated list of enterprise cloud domains.
- **Clipboard Behavior**: Controls which directions content can be copied and pasted. The options are as follows:
  - **Not configured**
- **Allow copy and paste from browser to PC only**: Allows users to copy and paste content only from their browser to their PC.
- **Allow copy and paste from PC to browser only**: Allows users to copy and paste content only from their PC to their browser.
- **Allow copy and paste between PC and browser**: Allows users to copy and paste content freely between their PC and browser.
- **Block copy and paste between PC and browser**: Does not allow users to copy and paste content between their PC and browser.

- **Clipboard Content**: Controls which content users can copy and paste. The options are as follows:
  - Not configured
  - Allow text copying: Allows users to copy text only.
  - Allow image copying: Allows users to copy images only.
  - Allow both text and image copying: Allows users to copy both text and images.

- **Block external content on enterprise sites**: If On, Windows Defender Application Guard prevents content from unapproved sites from loading on enterprise sites. Default is Off.

- **Retain user-generated browser data**: If On, allows saving user data created during an Application Guard virtual browsing session. This data includes things like passwords, favorites, and cookies. Default is Off.

---

**App lock device policy**

December 17, 2018

The App lock device policy defines a list of apps that are either:

- Allowed to run on a device.
- Blocked from running on a device.

The exact way the policy works differs for each supported platform. For example, you cannot block multiple apps on an iOS device.

Likewise, for iOS devices, you can select only one iOS app per policy. This means that users are only able to use their device to run a single app. They cannot do any other activities on the device except for the options you specifically allow when the app lock policy is enforced.

In addition, iOS devices must be supervised to push App Lock policies.

Although the device policy works on most Android L and M devices, app lock does not function on Android N or later devices because Google deprecated the required API.
For managed Windows Desktops and Tablets, you can create an App Lock device policy that defines the list of blacklisted and whitelisted apps. You can allow or block executables, MSI installers, store apps, DLLs, and scripts.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.

**iOS settings**

- **App bundle ID**: In the list, click the app to which this policy applies or click Add new to add a new app to the list. If you select Add new, type the app name in the field that appears.

- **Options**: For each option, the default is Off except for Disable touch screen, which defaults to On.
  - Disable touch screen
  - Disable device rotation sensing
  - Disable volume buttons
  - Disable ringer switch
    - When Disable ringer switch is On, the ringer behavior depends on what position the switch was in when it was first disabled.
  - Disable sleep/wake button
  - Disable auto lock
  - Disable VoiceOver
  - Enable zoom
  - Enable invert colors
  - Enable AssistiveTouch
  - Enable speak selection
– Enable mono audio

• **User Enabled Options:** For each option, the default is **Off**.
  – Allow VoiceOver adjustment
  – Allow zoom adjustment
  – Allow invert colors adjustment
  – Allow AssistiveTouch adjustment

**Android settings**

**Note:**

You can’t block the Android Settings app by using the App Lock device policy.

• **App Lock parameters**
  – **Lock message:** Type a message that users see when they attempt to open a locked app.
  – **Unlock password:** Type the password to unlock the app.
  – **Prevent uninstall:** Select whether users are allowed to uninstall apps. The default is **Off**.
  – **Lock screen:** Select the image that appears on the device’s lock screen by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file’s location.
  – **Enforce:** Click either **Blacklist** to create a list of apps that are not allowed to run on devices or click **Whitelist** to create a list of apps that are allowed to run on devices.

• **Apps:** Click **Add** and then do the following:
  – **App name:** In the list, click the name of the app to add to the whitelist or blacklist, or click **Add new** to add a new app to the list of available apps.
  – If you select **Add new**, type the app name in the field that appears.
  – Click **Save** or **Cancel**.
  – Repeat these steps each app you want to add to the whitelist or blacklist.
Windows Desktop and Tablet settings

Prerequisites for App lock

- In Windows, configure rules in the Local Security Policy editor on a Windows 10 Desktop running Windows 10 Enterprise or Education.
- Export the policy XML file. Citrix recommends that you create Default rules in Windows to avoid locking the default configuration or causing issues on devices.
- Then, upload the XML file to Endpoint Management by using the App Lock device policy. For more information about creating rules, see this Microsoft article: https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/security/threat-protection/applocker/applocker-overview

To configure and export the policy XML file from Windows

**Important:** When configuring the policy XML file through the Windows policy editor, use Audit Only mode.

1. On the Windows computer, start the **Local Security Policy** editor. Click **Start**, type **local security policy** and then click **Local Security Policy**.
2. In the console tree, click **Computer Configuration > Windows Settings > Security Settings** and then expand **Application Control Policies**.
3. Click **AppLocker** and then in the center pane, click **Configure rule enforcement**.
4. Select **Enforce rules**. When you enable a rule, **Enforce rules** is the default.
5. You can create **Executable Rules, Windows Installer Rules, Script Rules**, and **Packaged App Rules**. To do so, right-click the folder and then click **Create New Rule**.

To import the policy XML file into Endpoint Management

Create an App Lock policy. Across from the **App Lock policy file** setting, click **Browse** and navigate to the XML file.

To stop applying an App Lock policy

After you deploy an App Lock policy in Endpoint Management: To stop applying that App Lock policy, create an empty XML file. Then, create another App Lock policy, upload the file, and deploy the policy. Devices that have an App Lock enabled are not affected. Devices receiving the policy for the first time do not have the App Lock policy in place.
**App network usage device policy**

August 21, 2018

You can set network usage rules to specify how managed apps use networks, such as cellular data networks, on iOS devices. The rules only apply to managed apps. Managed apps are those that you deploy to users’ devices through Endpoint Management. They do not include apps that users have downloaded directly to their devices without being deployed through Endpoint Management or those already installed on the devices when the devices were enrolled in Endpoint Management.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.

**iOS settings**

- **Allow roaming cellular data**: Select whether the specified apps can use a cellular data connection while roaming. The default is Off.
- **Allow cellular data**: Select whether the specified apps can use a cellular data connection. The default is Off.
- **App Identifier Matches**: For each app you want to add to the list, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **App Identifier**: Enter an app identifier.
  - Click **Save** to save the app to the list or **Cancel** to not save the app to the list.

**Apps notifications device policy**

December 17, 2018

The Apps notifications policy lets you control how iOS users receive notifications from specified apps.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.
Citrix Endpoint Management

iOS settings

- **App Bundle identifier**: Specify the apps you want to apply this policy to.
- **Allow Notifications**: Select **On** to allow notifications.
- **Show in Notification Center**: Select **On** to show notifications in the notification center of the user devices.
- **Badge App Icon**: Select **On** to show a badge app icon with notifications.
- **Sounds**: Select **On** to include sounds with notifications.
- **Show on Lock Screen**: Select **On** to show notifications on the lock screen of the user devices.
- **Show in CarPlay**: If **On**, notifications display in Apple CarPlay. Available in iOS 12 and later. Default is **On**.
- **Enable Critical Alert**: If **On**, an app can mark a notification as a critical notification that ignores Do Not Disturb and ringer settings. Available in iOS 12 and later. Default is **Off**.
- **Unlocked Alert Style**: In the list, select **None**, **Banner**, or **Alerts** to configure the appearance of unlocked alerts.

App restrictions device policy

August 21, 2018

You use the App Restrictions device policy to specify allowed or blocked Chrome apps, Android apps running on Chrome OS, and Samsung KNOX apps. If you enable App Runtime for Chrome (ARC) in the Restrictions device policy, you configure Android app restrictions under **Android apps** in the App Restrictions device policy.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.
Citrix Endpoint Management

Samsung KNOX settings

For each app you want to add to the Allow/Deny list, click **Add** and then do the following:

- **Allow/Deny**: Select whether users are allowed to install the app.
- **New app restriction**: Type the app package ID; for example, com.kmdm.af.crackle.
- Click **Save** to save the app to the Allow/Deny list or click **Cancel** to not save the app to the Allow/Deny list.

Chrome app settings

Chrome apps are both apps and extensions.
• **App install allowed**: A global setting to allow or block the installation of all Chrome apps on Chrome OS devices. If you choose **Allowed**, you can create a list of specific blocked apps. If you choose **Not allowed**, you can create a list of specific allowed apps. To do that, click **Add** under **Chrome apps**. To use the settings specified in your Chrome account, select **Unspecified**. Default is **Allowed**.

• **Chrome apps**: To add Chrome apps that are exceptions to your selection for the **App install allowed** setting, click **Add** and then specify these settings:
  - **App name**: A name used to identify an app in the Endpoint Management console.
  - **App ID**: The unique identifier for a Chrome app. Don’t include the prefix “app:”.

To look up a Chrome app ID: Go to the Chrome store, [https://chrome.google.com/webstore](https://chrome.google.com/webstore), and search for the app. Click the app to view the URL and app ID in the address bar. The last portion of the address is the app ID. For example, if the URL is [https://chrome.google.com/webstore/detail/citrix-intranet/hjacpdaecmilhndcbllidcgaicdlpff](https://chrome.google.com/webstore/detail/citrix-intranet/hjacpdaecmilhndcbllidcgaicdlpff), the app ID is “hjacpdaecmilhndcbllidcgaicdlpff”.

You can look up Chrome apps only from Chromebook. You can look up Chrome extensions from any platform.

  - **App install allowed**: Creates an exception to the global setting above. This setting allows or blocks the specified Chrome app.
  - **Installed**: If **On**, forces the Chrome app to install for enrolled Chrome OS device users. If **Off** and an app is installed, the app is uninstalled. If **Off** and the app is no longer configured by the policy, the app remains installed. Default is **Off**.
  - **Pinned**: If **On**, pins the app to the Chromebook taskbar. Default is **Off**.
  - **URL**: Specifies the URL from which users can download an app that isn’t hosted in the Chrome Web Store.
  - **Extension policy**: Defines, in JSON format, the app-specific policy defined by this app. For information, see [Manifest for storage areas](https://developer.chrome.com/apps/multidevice-manifest).

**Android app settings**

To enable enrolled Chrome OS device users to run Android apps, configure the Restrictions device policy as noted in the next section “Enable enrolled Chrome OS device users to run Android apps.” To configure ARC app restrictions, click **Add** under Android apps and then specify these settings.
**App ID**: A unique app identifier for an Android app running on Chrome OS. For example: `com.android.camera`. Don’t include the prefix “app:”.

To look up an Android app ID: Go to the Google Play store, [https://play.google.com/store](https://play.google.com/store), and search for the app. Click the app to view the app ID in the address bar. The portion after `id=` is the app ID. For example, if the URL is `https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=com.citrix.mail`, the app ID is `id=com.citrix.mail`.

**Installed**: Specifies whether to force the Android app to install for enrolled Chrome OS device users. If **Off** and an app is installed, the app is uninstalled. If **Off** and the app is no longer configured by the policy, the app remains installed. Default is **Off**.

**Pinned**: If **On**, pins the Android app to the Chromebook task bar. Default is **Off**.

### Enable enrolled Chrome OS device users to run Android apps

To enable enrolled Chrome OS device users to run Android apps: Go to **Configure > Device Policies** and add a Restrictions device policy for Chrome OS with the setting **Enable App Runtime for Chrome (ARC)** enabled.

- **Enable App Runtime for Chrome (ARC)**: If **On**, allows enrolled Chrome OS device users to run Android apps. Specify ARC apps in the App Restrictions device policy. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. ARC isn’t available if either Ephemeral mode or multiple sign-on is enabled in the current user session. If **Off**, enterprise Chrome OS device users can’t run Android apps. The default is **On**.
App tunneling device policy

August 21, 2018

Application tunnels (app tunnels) are designed to increase service continuity and data transfer reliability for your mobile apps. App tunnels define proxy parameters between the client component of any mobile device app and the app server component. You can configure the app Tunneling policy for Android devices.

Any app traffic sent through a tunnel that you define in this policy goes through Endpoint Management before being redirected to the server running the app.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

Android settings

- **Connection initiated by**: Click Device or Server to specify the source initiating the connection.
- **Maximum connections per device**: Type a number to specify how many concurrent TCP connections the app can establish. This field applies only to device-initiated connections.
- **Define connection time out**: Select whether to set a length of time an app can be idle before the tunnel is closed.
  - **Connection time out**: If you set Define connection time out to On, type the length of time in seconds that an app can be idle before the tunnel is closed.
• **Block cellular connections passing by this tunnel**: Select whether this tunnel is blocked while roaming. WiFi and USB connections aren’t blocked.

• **Client port**: Type the client port number. In most cases, this value is the same as for the server port.

• **IP address or server name**: Type the IP address or name of the app server. This field applies only to device-initiated connections.

• **Server port**: Type the server port number.

**App uninstall device policy**

August 21, 2018

The App uninstall policy lets you remove apps from user devices for any number of reasons. It may be that you no longer want to support certain apps, your company may want to replace existing apps with similar apps from different vendors, and so on.

The apps are removed when this policy is deployed to user devices. With the exception of Samsung KNOX devices, users receive a prompt to uninstall the app. Samsung KNOX device users do not receive a prompt to uninstall the app.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.

**iOS settings**
• **Managed app bundle ID**: in the list, click an existing app or click Add new. If there are no apps configured for this platform, the list will be empty and you must add a new app.
  – When you click Add, a field appears where you can type an app name.

### Android, Samsung KNOX, Android Enterprise, Windows Phone, and Windows Desktop/Tablet settings

• **Apps to uninstall**: For each app you want to add, click Add and then do the following:
  – **App name**: In the list, click an existing app or click Add new to enter a new app name. If there are no apps configured for this platform, the list will be empty and you must add new apps.
  – Click Add to add the app or click Cancel to cancel adding the app.

### Automatically uninstall an Enterprise app after the corresponding public app store app installs

You can configure Endpoint Management to remove the Enterprise version of Citrix apps upon installation of the public app store version. This feature prevents user devices from having two identical app icons after the public app store version installs.

A deployment condition for the App Uninstall device policy triggers Endpoint Management to remove older apps from user devices upon installation of the new version. This feature is available only for managed iOS devices connected to a Endpoint Management server in enterprise mode (XME).

To configure a deployment rule with the Installed app name condition:

• Specify the **Managed app bundle ID** for the Enterprise app.

• Add a rule: Click New Rule and then, as shown in the sample, choose **Installed app name** and is equal to. Type the app bundle ID for the public app store app.

In the example, when the public app store app (com.citrix.mail.ios) installs on a device in the delivery groups specified, Endpoint Management removes the Enterprise version (com.citrix.mail).

### App uninstall restrictions device policy

August 21, 2018

You can specify the apps users can or cannot uninstall on a Samsung SAFE or Amazon device.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.
Samsung SAFE or Amazon settings

- **App Uninstall Restrictions Settings**: For each app rule you want to adds, click Add and then do the following:
  - **AppName**: In the list, click an app or Add new to add a new app.
  - **Rule**: Select whether users can uninstall the app. The default is to allow uninstallation.
  - Click **Save** or **Cancel**.

BitLocker device policy

August 21, 2018

Windows 10 includes a disk encryption feature called BitLocker, which provides extra file and system protections against unauthorized access of a lost or stolen Windows device. For more protection, you can use BitLocker with Trusted Platform Module (TPM) chips, version 1.2 or later. A TPM chip handles cryptographic operations and generates, stores, and limits the use of cryptographic keys.

Starting with Windows 10, build 1703, MDM policies can control BitLocker. You use the BitLocker device policy in Endpoint Management to configure the settings available in the BitLocker wizard on Windows 10 devices. For example, on a device with BitLocker enabled, BitLocker can prompt users for how they want to unlock their drive at startup, how to back up their recovery key, and how to unlock a fixed drive. BitLocker device policy setting also configure whether to:

- Enable BitLocker on devices without a TPM chip.
- Show recovery options in the BitLocker interface.
- Deny write access to a fixed or removable drive when BitLocker isn’t enabled.

**Note**

After BitLocker encryption starts on a device, you can’t subsequently change the BitLocker settings on the device by deploying an updated BitLocker device policy.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.

Requirements

- The BitLocker device policy requires Windows 10 Enterprise edition.

- Before deploying the BitLocker device policy, prepare your environment for BitLocker use. For detailed information from Microsoft, including BitLocker system requirements and setup, see **BitLocker** and the articles under that node.
Windows Phone settings

- **Require device to be encrypted**: Determines whether to prompt users to enable BitLocker encryption on a Windows Phone system card. If On, devices show a message after enrollment completes, indicating that the enterprise requires device encryption. If the user opts out of device encryption, the user isn’t granted write access to the system card. If Off, the user isn’t prompted and the BitLocker policy determines whether the device is encrypted. Defaults to Off.

- **Require storage card encryption**: Determines whether to prompt users to enable BitLocker encryption on a Windows Phone storage card. If On, storage card encryption is required to gain write permission on the card. Defaults to Off.
Windows Desktop and Tablet settings

- **Require device to be encrypted**: Determines whether to prompt users to enable BitLocker encryption on the Windows Desktop or Tablet. If **On**, devices show a message after enrollment completes, indicating that enterprise requires device encryption. If **Off**, the user isn’t prompted and BitLocker uses the policy settings. Defaults to **Off**.

- **Configure encryption methods**: Determines the encryption methods to use for specific drive types. If **Off**, the BitLocker wizard prompts the user for the encryption method to use for a drive type. The encryption method for all drives defaults to XTS-AES 128 bit. The encryption method for removable drives defaults to AES-CBC 128-bit. If **On**, BitLocker uses the encryption method specified in the policy. If **On**, these extra settings appear: **Operating system drive**, **Fixed drive**, and **Removable drive**. Choose the default encryption method for each drive type. Defaults to **Off**.

- **Require additional authentication at startup**: Specifies the additional authentication required during device startup. Also specifies whether to allow BitLocker on devices that don’t have a TPM chip. If **Off**, devices without TPM can’t use BitLocker encryption. For information about TPM, see the Microsoft article, [Trusted Platform Module Technology Overview](#). If **On**, the following extra settings appear. Defaults to **Off**.
- **Block BitLocker on devices without TPM chip:** On a device with no TPM chip, BitLocker requires users to create a unlock password or startup key. The startup key is stored in a USB drive, which the user must connect to the device before startup. The unlock password is a minimum of eight characters. Defaults to **Off**.

- **TPM startup:** On a device with TPM, there are four unlock modes: TPM-only, TPM + PIN, TPM + Key, and TPM + PIN + Key. TPM startup is for the TPM-only mode, in which encryption keys are store in the TPM chip. This mode doesn't require a user to provide additional unlock data. The user device automatically unlocks during restart, using the encryption key from the TPM chip. Defaults to **Allow TPM**.

- **TPM startup PIN:** This setting is the TPM + PIN unlock mode. A PIN can have up to 20 digits. Use the **Minimum PIN length** setting to specify the minimum PIN length. A user configures a PIN during BitLocker setup and provides the PIN during device startup.

- **TPM startup key:** This setting is the TPM + Key unlock mode. The startup key is stored in a USB or other removable drive, which the user must connect to the device before startup.

- **TPM startup key and PIN:** This setting is the TPM + PIN + Key unlock mode.

  If the unlock succeeds, the operating system starts loading. If the unlock fails, the device enters recovery mode.

  - **Minimum PIN length:** The minimum length of the TPM startup PIN. Defaults to 6.
  
  - **Configure OS drive recovery:** If the unlock step fails, BitLocker prompts the user for the configured recovery key. This setting configures the operating system drive recovery options available to users if they don’t have the unlock password or USB startup key. Default is **Off**.

  - **Allow certificate based data recovery agent:** Specifies whether to allow a certificate-based data recovery agent. Add a data recovery agent from Public Key Policies, which is located in the Group Policy Management Console (GPMC) or in the Local Group Policy Editor. For more information about data recovery agents, see the Microsoft article, **BitLocker Group Policy settings**. Default is **Off**.

  - **Create 48-digit recovery password for OS drive recovery:** Specifies whether to allow or require users to use a recovery password. BitLocker generates the password and stores it in a file or Microsoft Cloud account. Default is **Allow 48 bit password**.

  - **Create 256-bit recovery key:** Specifies whether to allow or require users to use a recovery key. A recovery key is a BEK file, which is stored on a USB drive. Default is **Allow 256-bit recovery key**.

  - **Hide OS drive recovery options:** Specifies whether to show or hide recovery options in the BitLocker interface. If **On**, no recovery options appear in the BitLocker interface. In that case, register the devices to Active Directory, save the recovery options to Active Directory, and set **Save recovery info to AD DS** to **On**. Default is **Off**.
- **Save recovery info to AD DS**: Specifies whether to save the recovery options to Active Directory Domain Services. Default is *Off*.

- **Configure recovery info stored in AD DS**: Specifies whether to store the BitLocker recovery password or the recovery password and the key package in Active Directory Domain Services. Storing the key package supports recovering data from a drive that is physically corrupted. Default is *Backup recovery password*.

- **Enable BitLocker after storing recovery info in AD DS**: Specifies whether to prevent users from enabling BitLocker unless the device is domain-connected and the backup of BitLocker recovery information to Active Directory succeeds. If *On*, a device must be domain-joined before starting BitLocker. Default is *Off*.

- **Customize preboot recovery message and URL**: Specifies whether BitLocker shows a customized message and URL on the recovery screen. If *On*, the following extra settings appear: Use default recovery message and URL, Use empty recovery message and URL, Use custom recovery message, and Use custom recovery URL. If *Off*, the default recovery message and URL display. Default is *Off*.

- **Configure fixed drive recovery**: Configures the recovery options to users for a BitLocker-encrypted fixed drive. BitLocker doesn’t display a message to users about fixed drive encryption. To unlock a drive during startup, a user provides a password or smart card. The startup unlock settings, which aren’t in this policy, appear in the BitLocker interface when a user enables BitLocker encryption on a fixed drive. For information about the related settings, see *Configure OS drive recovery*, earlier in this list. Default is *Off*.

- **Block write access to fixed drives not using BitLocker**: If *On*, users can write to fixed drives only when those drives are encrypted with BitLocker. Default is *Off*.

- **Block write access to removable drives not using BitLocker**: If *On*, users can write to removable drives only when those drives are encrypted with BitLocker. Configure this setting according to whether your organization allows write access on other organization removable drives. Default is *Off*.

- **Prompt for other disk encryption**: Allows you to disable the warning prompt for other disk encryption on devices. Defaults to *Off*.

**Browser device policy**

August 21, 2018

You can create browser device policies for Samsung SAFE or Samsung KNOX devices to define whether user devices can use the browser or to limit the browser functions that the devices can use.
On Samsung devices, you can completely disable the browser, or you can enable or disable pop-ups, JavaScript, cookies, autofill, and whether to force fraud warnings.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.

**Samsung SAFE and Samsung KNOX settings**

- **Disable browser**: Select whether to completely disable the Samsung browser on users’ devices. The default is **Off**, which lets users use the browser. When you disable the browser, the following options disappear.
- **Disable pop-up**: Select whether to allow pop-up messages on the browser.
- **Disable Javascript**: Select whether to allow JavaScript to run on the browser.
- **Disable cookies**: Select whether to allow cookies.
- **Disable autofill**: Select whether to allow users to turn on the browser’s autofill function.
- **Force fraud warning**: Select whether to display a warning when users visit a fraudulent or compromised website.

**Calendar (CalDAV) device policy**

August 21, 2018

You can add a device policy in Endpoint Management to add a calendar (CalDAV) account to users’ iOS or macOS devices to enable them to synchronize scheduling data with any server that supports CalDAV.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.

**iOS settings**

- **Account description**: Type an account description. This field is required.
- **Host name**: Type the address of the CalDAV server. This field is required.
- **Port**: Type the port on which to connect to the CalDAV server. This field is required. The default is **8443**.
- **Principal URL**: Type the base URL to the user’s calendar.
- **User name**: Type the user’s logon name. This field is required.
- **Password**: Type an optional user password.
- **Use SSL**: Select whether to use a Secure Socket Layer connection to the CalDAV server. The default is **On**.
macOS settings

- **Account description**: Type an account description. This field is required.
- **Host name**: Type the address of the CalDAV server. This field is required.
- **Port**: Type the port on which to connect to the CalDAV server. This field is required. The default is 8443.
- **Principal URL**: Type the base URL to the user’s calendar.
- **User name**: Type the user’s logon name. This field is required.
- **Password**: Type an optional user password.
- **Use SSL**: Select whether to use a Secure Socket Layer connection to the CalDAV server. The default is **On**.

Cellular device policy

August 21, 2018

This policy allows you to configure cellular network settings on an iOS device.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.

iOS settings

You can use macros in non-string fields, such as **Proxy server port**.

For example, you can use a macro such as `$\{device.xyz\}` or `$\{setting.xyz\}`, which expands into an integer. You can also use the macros in a device configuration XML file that you import into Endpoint Management by using the Import iOS & macOS Profile device policy.

- **Attach APN**
  - **Name**: A name for this configuration.
  - **Authentication type**: In the list, click Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) or Password Authentication Protocol (PAP). The default is **PAP**.
  - **User name** and **Password**: The user name and password to use for authentication.

- **APN**
  - **Name**: A name for the Access Point Name (APN) configuration.
  - **Authentication type**: In the list, click CHAP or PAP. The default is **PAP**.
  - **User name** and **Password**: The user name and password to use for authentication.
  - **Proxy server**: The proxy server network address.
  - **Proxy server port**: The proxy server port.
Connection scheduling device policy

January 4, 2019

**Important:**

Citrix recommends that you use Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM) to control connections from Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS devices to Endpoint Management. For information on using FCM, see Firebase Cloud Messaging.

If you choose to not use FCM, you can create connection scheduling policies to control how and when user devices connect to Endpoint Management.

You can specify that users connect their devices manually or that devices connect within a defined time frame.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.

**Android and Android Enterprise settings**

- **Require devices to connect:** Click the option you want to set for this schedule.
  - **Never:** Connect manually. Users must initiate the connection from Endpoint Management on their devices. Citrix doesn’t recommend this option for production deployments because it prevents you from deploying security policies to devices, which means users never receive any new apps or policies. The **Never** option is enabled by default.
  - **Every:** Connect at the designated interval. When this option is in effect and you send a security policy such as a lock or a wipe, Endpoint Management processes the action on the device the next time the device connects. When you select this option, the **Connect every N minutes** field appears where you must enter the number of minutes after which the device must reconnect. The default, and minimum value, is **120**.
  - **Define schedule:** Endpoint Management on the user device attempts to reconnect to the Endpoint Management server after a network connection loss. Endpoint Management and monitors the connection by transmitting control packets at regular intervals within the time frame you define. See Defining a connection time frame, next, for how to define a connection time frame.
    - **Require a connection within each of these ranges:** Users’ devices must be connected at least once in any of the defined time frames.
    - **Use local device time rather than UTC:** Synchronize the defined time frames to local device time rather than Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).
Defining a connection time frame

When you enable the following options, a timeline appears where you can define the time frames you want. You can enable either or both options to require a permanent connection during specific hours or to require a connection within certain time frames. Each square in the timeline is 1 hour. To specify a connection between 8:00 AM and 9:00 AM every weekday, you click the square on the timeline between 8 AM and 9 AM every weekday.

For example, the two timelines in the following figure require:

- A permanent connection between 8:00 AM and 10:00 AM every weekday
- A permanent connection between 1:00 AM Saturday and 2:00 AM Sunday
- At least one connection every weekday between 5:00 AM and 8:00 AM or between 10:00 AM and 12:00 AM
Chrome OS settings

- **Require devices to connect**: Specify the connection frequency in **Connect every N minutes**. Default is **120** minutes (2 hours).

Contacts (CardDAV) device policy

August 21, 2018

You can add a device policy in Endpoint Management to add an iOS contacts (CardDAV) account to users' iOS or macOS devices to enable them to synchronize contact data with any server that supports CardDAV.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.

iOS settings

- **Account description**: Type an account description. This field is required.
- **Host name**: Type the address of the CardDAV server. This field is required.
- **Port**: Type the port on which to connect to the CardDAV server. This field is required. The default is **8443**.
- **Principal URL**: Type the base URL to the user's calendar.
- **Username**: Type the user's logon name. This field is required.
- **Password**: Type an optional user password.
- **Use SSL**: Select whether to use a Secure Socket Layer connection to the CardDAV server. The default is **On**.

macOS settings

- **Account description**: Type an account description. This field is required.
- **Host name**: Type the address of the CardDAV server. This field is required.
- **Port**: Type the port on which to connect to the CardDAV server. This field is required. The default is **8443**.
- **Principal URL**: Type the base URL to the user's calendar.
- **Username**: Type the user's logon name. This field is required.
- **Password**: Type an optional user password.
- **Use SSL**: Select whether to use a Secure Socket Layer connection to the CardDAV server. The default is **On**.
Content device policy

December 5, 2018

You can control various web content options for Chrome OS, including what homepage to show and how popups are handled.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

Chrome OS Settings

- **Home Page Settings**: Select whether the home page should be a new tab or a specified URL.
- **Homepage URL**: If you selected a Homepage URL for the Homepage settings, type the URL here.
- **Pop-up default settings**: Select whether to allow or disallow popups by default. You can then disallow or allow specific URLs from opening popups.
- **Pop-ups allowed from these sites**: Specify a list of URLs allowed to open popups.
- **Popup not allowed from these sites**: Specify a list of URLs blocked from opening popups.
- **Pages to load on startup**: Specify a list of URLs to be opened on browser startup.

Copy Apps to Samsung Container device policy

August 21, 2018

For apps that are already installed on a device, you can specify to copy the apps to a SEAMS container or to a KNOX container on supported Samsung devices. For information about supported devices, see the Samsung article Samsung KNOX Supported Devices.

Apps copied to the SEAMS container are available on users’ home screens. Apps copied to the KNOX container are only available when users sign in to the KNOX container.
To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.

### Prerequisites

- Enroll the device in Endpoint Management.
- Deploy the Samsung MDM keys (ELM and KLM). For how to do this, see **Samsung MDM License Key device policy**.
- Install apps on the device.
- Initialize KNOX on the device to copy apps to the KNOX container.

### Samsung SEAMS and Samsung KNOX settings

- **New app**: For each app you want to add to the list, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - Type a package ID; for example, com.mobiwolf.lacingart for the LacingArt app.
  - Click **Save** or **Cancel**.

### Credentials device policy

August 21, 2018

You can create credentials device policies in Endpoint Management to enable integrated authentication with your PKI configuration in Endpoint Management, such as a PKI entity, a keystore, a credential provider, or a server certificate. For more information about credentials, see **Certificates and authentication**.

You can create credential policies for iOS, macOS, Android, Android Enterprise, Windows desktop/tablet, Windows Phone, and Workspace Hub devices. Each platform requires a different set of values, which are described in this article.

**Note:**

Before you can create this policy, you need the credential information you plan to use for each platform, plus any certificates and passwords.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.
Configure the following settings:

- **Credential type**: In the list, click the type of credential to use with this policy and then enter the following information for the selected credential:
  - **Certificate**
    - **Credential name**: Enter a unique name for the credential.
    - **The credential file path**: Select the credential file by clicking Browse and navigating to the file's location.
  - **Keystore**
    - **Credential name**: Enter a unique name for the credential.
    - **The credential file path**: Select the credential file by clicking Browse and navigating to the file's location.
    - **Password**: Enter the keystore password for the credential.
  - **Server certificate**
    - **Server certificate**: In the list, click the certificate to use.
  - **Credential provider**
    - **Credential provider**: In the list, click the name of the credential provider.
macOS settings

Configure the following settings:

- **Credential type**: In the list, click the type of credential to use with this policy and the, enter the following information for the selected credential:
  - **Certificate**
    - **Credential name**: Enter a unique name for the credential.
    - **The credential file path**: Select the credential file by clicking *Browse* and navigating to the file’s location.
  - **Keystore**
    - **Credential name**: Enter a unique name for the credential.
    - **The credential file path**: Select the credential file by clicking *Browse* and navigating to the file’s location.
    - **Password**: Enter the keystore password for the credential.
  - **Server certificate**
    - **Server certificate**: In the list, click the certificate to use.
  - **Credential provider**
    - **Credential provider**: In the list, click the name of the credential provider.
Android and Android Enterprise settings

Configure the following settings:

- **Credential type:** In the list, click the type of credential to use with this policy and then, enter the following information for the selected credential:
  - **Certificate**
    - **Credential name:** Type a unique name for the credential.
    - **The credential file path:** Select the credential file by clicking Browse and then navigating to the file's location.
  - **Keystore**
    - **Credential name:** Type a unique name for the credential.
    - **The credential file path:** Select the credential file by clicking Browse and then navigating to the file's location.
    - **Password:** Type the keystore password for the credential.
  - **Server certificate**
    - **Server certificate:** In the list, click the certificate to use.
  - **Credential provider**
    - **Credential provider:** In the list, click the name of the credential provider.
Windows Desktop/Tablet settings

- **Certificate Type:** In the list, click either ROOT or CLIENT.
- If you click ROOT, configure these settings:
  - **Store device:** In the list, click root, My, or CA for the location of the certificate store for the credential. My stores the certificate in users’ certificate stores.
  - **Location:** For Windows 10 tablets, System is the only location.
  - **Credential type:** For Windows 10 tablets, Certificate is the only credential type.
  - **Credential file path:** Select the certificate file by clicking Browse and navigating to the file's location.
- If you click CLIENT, configure these settings:
  - **Location:** For Windows 10 tablets, System is the only location.
  - **Credential type:** For Windows 10 tablets, Keystore is the only credential type.
  - **Credential name:** Type the name of the credential. This field is required.
  - **Credential file path:** Select the certificate file by clicking Browse and navigating to the file's location.
  - **Password:** Type the password associated with the credential. This field is required.
Windows Phone settings

- **Certificate Type**: In the list, click either **ROOT** or **CLIENT**.
  - If you click **ROOT**, configure these settings:
    - **Store device**: In the list, click **root**, **My**, or **CA** for the location of the certificate store for the credential. **My** stores the certificate in users’ certificate stores.
    - **Location**: System is the only location for Windows phones.
    - **Credential type**: Certificate is the only credential type for Windows phones.
    - **Credential file path**: Select the certificate file by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file's location.
  - If you click **CLIENT**, configure these settings:
    - **Location**: For Windows phones, **System** is the only location.
    - **Credential type**: For Windows phones, **Keystore** is the only credential type.
    - **Credential name**: Type the name of the credential. This field is required.
    - **Credential file path**: Select the certificate file by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file’s location.
    - **Password**: Type the password associated with the credential. This field is required.
Workspace Hub settings

- **The credential file path**: Browse for the CA certificate file or .zip file containing the certificates to upload. This policy supports .cer, .crt, .pem, and .der certificate files.

Custom XML device policy

November 28, 2018

You can create custom XML policies in Endpoint Management to customize the following features on supported Windows, Zebra Android, and Android Enterprise devices:

- Provisioning, which includes configuring the device, and enabling or disabling features
- Device configuration, which includes allowing users to change settings and device parameters
- Software upgrades, which include providing new software or bug fixes to be loaded onto the device, including apps and system software
- Fault management, which includes receiving error and status reports from the device

For Windows devices: You create your custom XML configuration by using the Open Mobile Alliance Device Management (OMA DM) API in Windows. Creating custom XML with the OMA DM API is beyond the scope of this topic. For more information about using the OMA DM API, see OMA Device Management on the Microsoft Developer Network site.

For Zebra Android and Android Enterprise devices: You create your custom XML configuration by using the MX Management System (MXMS). Creating custom XML with the MXMS API is beyond the scope of this article. For more information about using MXMS, see About MX on the Zebra site.
Note:
For Windows 10 RS2 Phone: After a Custom XML policy or Restrictions policy that disables Internet Explorer deploys to the phone, the browser remains enabled. To work around this issue, restart the phone. This is a third-party issue.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

Windows Phone, Windows Desktop/Tablet, Zebra Android, and Android Enterprise settings

- **XML content:** Type, or cut and paste, the custom XML code you want to add to the policy.

  After you click Next, Endpoint Management checks the XML content syntax. Any syntax errors appear below the content box. Fix any errors before you continue.

  If there are no syntax errors, the **Custom XML Policy** assignment page appears.

Use Windows AutoPilot to set up and configure devices

Windows AutoPilot is a collection of technologies used to set up and pre-configure new devices, getting them ready for productive use. You can use Windows AutoPilot to reset, repurpose, and recover devices. AutoPilot helps to remove some of the complexity of your current operating system deployment. Using AutoPilot reduces the task to a set of simple settings and operations that can get your devices ready to use quickly and efficiently.

Prerequisites:

- Devices registered to the organization in Microsoft Store for Business portal.
- Company branding configured in Azure Active Directory portal.
- Company has an Azure Active Directory Premium P1 or P2 subscription.
- Configure Citrix Identity Platform as the IDP type for Endpoint Management: In the Endpoint Management console, go to Settings > Identity Provider (IDP). For more information, see Single sign in with Azure Active Directory.
- Network connectivity to cloud services used by Windows AutoPilot.
- Devices pre-installed with Windows 10 Professional, Enterprise or Education, version 1703 or later.
- Devices have access to the internet.

For more information on configuring prerequisites, see https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/deployment/windows-10-auto-pilot.

To configure Windows Automatic Redeployment in Endpoint Management for AutoPilot devices:
1. Follow the steps to add a custom XML policy at Custom XML Device Policy. Add the following in XML Content:

```xml
<Add>
  <CmdID>_cmdid_</CmdID>
  <Item>
    <Target>
      <LocURI>./Vendor/MSFT/Policy/Config/CredentialProviders/DisableAutomaticReDeploymentCredentials</LocURI>
    </Target>
    <Meta>
      <Format xmlns="syncml:metinf">int</Format>
    </Meta>
    <Data>0</Data>
  </Item>
</Add>
```

2. On the Windows lock screen, type the keystroke **CTRL + Windows key + R**.

3. Log in with an Azure Active Directory account.

4. The device verifies that the user has rights to redeploy the device. The device then redeploy.

5. After the device updates with the AutoPilot configuration, the user can then log into the freshly configured device.

**Defender device policy**

August 21, 2018

Windows Defender is malware protection included with Windows 10. You can use the Endpoint Management device policy, Defender, to configure the Microsoft Defender policy for Windows 10 for desktop and tablet.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.
### Windows Desktop and Tablet settings

- **Allows scanning of archives:** Allows or disallows Defender to scan archived files. Defaults to **Off**.
- **Allows cloud protection:** Allows or disallows Defender to send information to Microsoft about malware activity. Defaults to **On**.
- **Allows a full scan of removable drives:** Allows or disallows Defender to scan removable drives such as USB sticks. Defaults to **On**.
- **Allows Windows Defender Real-time Monitoring functionality:** Defaults to **On**.
- **Allows scanning of network files:** Allows or disallows Defender to scan network files. Defaults to **On**.
- **Allows user access to the Windows Defender UI:** Specifies whether users can access the Windows Defender user interface. This setting takes effect the next time the user device starts. If this setting is **Off**, users don’t receive any Windows Defender notifications. Defaults to **On**.
- **Excluded extensions:** The extensions to exclude from real-time or scheduled scans. To separate extensions, use the | character. For example, “lib|obj”.
- **Excluded paths:** The paths to exclude from real-time or scheduled scans. To separate paths, use the | character. For example, “C:\Example|C:\Example1”.
- **Excluded processes:** The processes to exclude from real-time or scheduled scans. To separate processes, use the | character. For example, “C:\Example.exe|C:\Example1.exe”.
- **Submit samples consent:** Controls whether to send to Microsoft files that might require further analysis to determine if they are malicious. Options: **Always prompt, Send safe samples, Never send, Send all samples**. Defaults to **Send safe samples**.
Device Guard device policy

August 21, 2018

Device Guard is a Windows 10 security feature that enables virtualization-based security by using the Windows Hypervisor to support security services on the device. The Device Guard policy enables security features such as secure boot, UEFI lock, and virtualization.

Prerequisites

- Windows 10 Desktops and Tablets with an Enterprise or Education license on version 1709 (RS3)
- Device Guard enabled in Windows

For more information on Device Guard, see https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/access-protection/credential-guard/credential-guard-manage.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

Windows Desktop and Tablet settings

- **Enable Virtualization Based Security**: Disable or Enable virtualization based security features. Virtualization based security uses the Windows Hypervisor to support security services.
- **LSA Configuration Flags**: Allows you to configure Credential Guard. This setting lets users turn on Credential Guard with virtualization-based security to help protect credentials at next reboot. Options are Off, On with UEFI Lock, and On without UEFI Lock. Default is Off.
- **Require Platform Security Features**: Specifies the platform security level at the next reboot. Options are Off, VBS with Secure Boot, and VBS with Secure Boot and direct memory access (DMA). Default is Off.
Endpoint Management queries a device to determine if the virtualization based security settings match the settings on the server. If the security settings match, Endpoint Management doesn’t deploy this policy to the device. If the security settings don’t match, Endpoint Management deploys the policy.

**Device Health Attestation device policy**

August 21, 2018

In Endpoint Management, you can require Windows 10 devices to report the state of their health. To report their health state, devices send specific data and runtime information to the Health Attestation Service (HAS) for analysis. The HAS creates and returns a Health Attestation Certificate that the device then sends to Endpoint Management. Endpoint Management uses the contents of the Health Attestation Certificate to deploy automatic actions that you have set up.

The data verified by the HAS are:

- AIK Present
- Bit Locker Status
- Boot Debugging Enabled
- Boot Manager Rev List Version
- Code Integrity Enabled
- Code Integrity Rev List Version
- DEP Policy
- ELAM Driver Loaded
- Issued At
- Kernel Debugging Enabled
- PCR
- Reset Count
- Restart Count
- Safe Mode Enabled
- SBCP Hash
- Secure Boot Enabled
- Test Signing Enabled
- VSM Enabled
- WinPE Enabled

For more information, refer to the Microsoft [HealthAttestation CSP page](#).

You can configure DHA by using Microsoft Cloud or an on-premises Windows DHA server, as follows:

- To configure DHA by using Microsoft Cloud: Add a Device Health Attestation policy and configure it as described in this article.
To configure DHA by using an on-premises Windows DHA server: Configure a DHA server. Then, add a Device Health Attestation policy and configure it as described in this article.

To configure a DHA server, you install the DHA server role on a machine running Windows Server 2016 Technical Preview 5 or later. For instructions, see Configure an on-premises Device Heath Attestation server.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

Windows Phone and Windows Desktop/Tablet settings

If you configure DHA by using Microsoft Cloud

- **Enable Device Health Attestation**: Select whether to require Device Health Attestation. The default is Off.

If you configure DHA by using an on-premises Windows DHA server

- **Enable Device Health Attestation**: Set to On.
- **Configure On-prem Health Attestation Service**: Set to On.
- **On-prem DHA Service FQDN**: Type the fully qualified domain name of the DHA server you set up.
- **On-prem DHA API version**: Select the version of the DHA service installed on the DHA server.

Device name device policy

August 21, 2018

You can set the names on supervised iOS and macOS devices so that you can easily identify the devices. You can use macros, text, or a combination of both to define the device’s name. For example, to set the device name as the serial number of the device, you would use ${device.serialnumber}. To set the device name as a combination of the user’s name and your domain, you would use ${user.username}@example.com. For more information about macros, see Macros in Endpoint Management.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.
iOS and macOS settings

• **Device name**: Type the macro, a combination of macros, or a combination of macros and text to name each device uniquely. For example, use ${device.serialnumber} to set the device names to each device’s serial number, or use ${device.serialnumber} ${user.username} to include the user’s name in the device name.

Education Configuration device policy

August 21, 2018

The Education Configuration device policy defines:

• The Apple Classroom app settings for instructor devices.

• The certificates used to perform client authentication between instructor and student devices.

When you choose a class in this policy, the Endpoint Management console fills in the instructors and students from your Apple School Manager configuration. Create one policy if the Apple Classroom app settings in this policy are the same for all classes.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.

iOS settings

• **Classes**: To add a class, click Add.
Then, Click the **Display Name** list. A list of classes obtained from your connected Apple School Manager account appears.

When you choose a class from **Display Name**, Endpoint Management fills in the instructors and students. Continue adding classes.
• **Allow students to change screen observation permission:** If On, students enrolled in managed classes can choose whether to allow their teacher to observe their device screens. Default is Off.

**To edit class information in the policy**

You can add a description to a class (the “Display name” in the Classroom app). You can also add or remove instructors and students. Endpoint Management doesn’t save such changes to your Apple School Manager account. For more information, see “Manage instructor, student, and class data” in Integrate with Apple Education features.

Mouse over the **Add** column for the class you want to edit and then click the pencil icon.

To delete a class from the policy, mouse over the **Add** column for the class you want to delete and then click the trash icon.
Endpoint Management options device policy

August 21, 2018

You add a Endpoint Management options policy to configure Secure Hub behavior when connecting to Endpoint Management from Android devices.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

Android settings

- **Traybar notification - hide traybar icon**: Select whether the traybar icon is hidden or visible. The default is Off.
- **Connection: time-out(s)**: Type the length of time in seconds that a connection can be idle before the connection times out. The default is 20 seconds.
- **Keep-alive interval(s)**: Type the length of time in seconds to keep a connection open. The default is 120 seconds.
- **Prompt the user before allowing remote control**: Select whether to prompt the user before allowing remote support control. The default is Off.
- **Before a file transfer**: In the list, click whether to warn the user about a file transfer or whether to ask the user for permission. Available values: Do not warn the user, Warn the user, and Ask for user permission. The default is Do not warn the user.
Endpoint Management uninstall device policy

August 21, 2018

You can add a device policy in Endpoint Management to uninstall Endpoint Management from Android devices. When deployed, this policy removes Endpoint Management from all devices in the deployment group.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

Android settings

• Uninstall Endpoint Management from devices: Select whether to uninstall Endpoint Management from every device to which you deploy this policy. The default is Off.

Enterprise Hub device policy

January 23, 2019

An Enterprise Hub device policy for Windows Phone lets you distribute apps through the Enterprise Hub Company store.

Before you can create the policy, you need the following:

• An AET (.aetx) signing certificate from Symantec
• The Citrix Company Hub app signed by using the Microsoft app signing tool (XapSignTool.exe)

Note:

Endpoint Management supports only one Enterprise Hub policy for one mode of Windows Phone Secure Hub. For example, to upload Windows Phone Secure Hub for Endpoint Management, you should not create multiple Enterprise Hub policies with different versions of Secure Hub for Endpoint Management. You can only deploy the initial Enterprise Hub policy during device enrollment.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.
Windows Phone settings

- **Upload .aetx file**: Select the .aetx file by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file location.
- **Upload signed Enterprise Hub app**: Select the Enterprise Hub app by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the app location.

Exchange device policy

December 17, 2018

You can use the Exchange ActiveSync device policy to configure an email client on user devices to let them access their corporate email hosted on Exchange. You can create policies for iOS, macOS, Android HTC, Android TouchDown, Android Enterprise, Samsung SAFE, Samsung KNOX, Windows Phone, and Windows Tablet. Each platform requires a different set of values, which are described in detail in the following sections.

To create this policy, you need the host name or IP address of the Exchange Server. For information about ActiveSync settings, see the Microsoft article [ActiveSync CSP](#).

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see [Device policies](#).
iOS settings

- **Exchange ActiveSync account name**: Type the description of the email account that is displayed on user devices.
- **Exchange ActiveSync host name**: Type the address of the email server.
- **Use SSL**: Select whether to secure connections between user devices and the Exchange Server. The default is On.
- **Domain**: Enter the domain in which the Exchange Server resides. You can use the system macro $user.domainname in this field to automatically look up user domain names.
- **User**: Specify the user name for the Exchange user account. You can use the system macro $user.username in this field to automatically look up user names.
- **Email address**: Specify the full email address. You can use the system macro $user.mail in this field to automatically look up user email accounts.
- **Use OAuth**: If set to On, the connection uses OAuth for authentication. The default is Off. This option applies to iOS 12.0 and later.
- **Password**: Enter an optional password for the Exchange user account. This setting doesn’t appear when Use OAuth is On.
- **Email sync interval**: In the list, choose how often email is synced with the Exchange Server. The default is 3 days.
- **Identity credential (keystore or PKI)**: In the list, click an optional identity credential if you have configured an identity provider for Endpoint Management. This field is only required when Exchange requires a client certificate authentication. The default is None.
- **Authorize email move between accounts**: Select whether to allow users to move email out of this account into another account and to forward and reply from a different account. The default is Off.
- **Send email only from email app**: Select whether to restrict users to the iOS mail app for sending email. The default is Off.
• **Disable email recent syncing:** Select whether to prevent users from syncing recent addresses. The default is **Off**.

• **Enable S/MIME Signing:** Select whether this account supports S/MIME signing. The default is **On**. When set to **On**, the following fields appear.
  - **Signing identity credential:** Choose the signing credential to use.
  - **S/MIME Signing User Overrideable:** If set to **On**, users can turn S/MIME signing on and off in the settings of their devices. The default is **Off**. This option applies to iOS 12.0 and later.
  - **S/MIME Signing Certificate UUID User Overrideable:** If set to **On**, users can select, in the settings of their devices, the signing credential to use. The default is **Off**. This option applies to iOS 12.0 and later.

• **Enable S/MIME Encryption:** Select whether this account supports S/MIME encryption. The default is **Off**. When set to **On**, the following fields appear.
  - **Encryption identity credential:** Choose the encryption credential to use.
  - **Enable per message S/MIME switch:** When set to **On**, shows users an option to switch S/MIME encryption on or off for each message they compose. The default is **Off**.
  - **S/MIME Encrypt By Default User Overrideable:** If set to **On**, users can, in the settings of their devices, select whether S/MIME is on by default. The default is **Off**. This option applies to iOS 12.0 and later.
  - **S/MIME Encryption Certificate UUID User Overrideable:** If set to **On**, users can turn S/MIME encryption identity and encryption on and off in the settings of their devices. The default is **Off**. This option applies to iOS 12.0 and later.

**macOS settings**

![macOS settings](image)

• **Exchange ActiveSync account name:** Type the description of the email account that is displayed on user devices.
- **User**: Specify the user name for the Exchange user account. You can use the system macro $user.username in this field to automatically look up user names.
- **Email address**: Specify the full email address. You can use the system macro $user.mail in this field to automatically look up user email accounts.
- **Use OAuth**: If set to On, the connection uses OAuth for authentication. The default is Off. This option applies to macOS 10.14 and later.
- **OAuth SignIn URL**: Specifies the URL to load into a webview to authenticate using OAuth when AutoDiscovery Service is not used. This field appears when Use OAuth is set to On.
- **Password**: Enter an optional password for the Exchange user account. This setting doesn’t appear when Use OAuth is On.
- **Internal Exchange host**: If you want your internal and external Exchange host names to be different, type an optional internal Exchange host name.
- **Internal server port**: If you want your internal and external Exchange server ports to be different, type an optional internal Exchange server port number.
- **Internal server path**: If you want your internal and external Exchange server paths to be different, type an optional internal Exchange server path.
- **Use SSL for internal Exchange host**: Select whether to secure connections between user devices and the internal Exchange host. The default is On.
- **External Exchange host**: If you want your internal and external Exchange host names to be different, type an optional external Exchange host name.
- **External server port**: If you want your internal and external Exchange server ports to be different, type an optional external Exchange server port number.
- **External server path**: If you want your internal and external Exchange server paths to be different, type an optional external Exchange server path.
- **Use SSL for external Exchange host**: Select whether to secure connections between user devices and the internal Exchange host. The default is On.
- **Allow Mail Drop**: Select whether to allow users to share files wirelessly between two Macs, without having to connect to an existing network. The default is Off.
Android HTC settings

- **Configuration display name**: Type the name for this policy that appears on user devices.
- **Server address**: Type the Exchange Server host name or IP address.
- **User ID**: Specify the user name for the Exchange user account. You can use the system macro $user.username in this field to automatically look up user names.
- **Password**: Enter an optional password for the Exchange user account.
- **Domain**: Enter the domain in which the Exchange Server resides. You can use the system macro $user.domainname in this field to automatically look up user domain names.
- **Email address**: Specify the full email address. You can use the system macro $user.mail in this field to automatically look up user email accounts.
- **Use SSL**: Select whether to secure connections between user devices and the Exchange Server. The default is On.
Android TouchDown settings

- **Server name or IP address**: Type the Exchange Server host name or IP address.
- **Domain**: Type the domain in which the Exchange Server resides. You can use the system macro $user.domainname in this field to automatically look up user domain names.
- **User ID**: Specify the user name for the Exchange user account. You can use the system macro $user.username in this field to automatically look up user names.
- **Password**: Type an optional password for the Exchange user account.
- **Email address**: Specify the full email address. You can use the system macro $user.mail in this field to automatically look up user email accounts.
- **Identity credential (keystore or PKI)**: In the list, click an optional identity credential if you have configured an identity provider for Endpoint Management. This field is only required when Exchange requires a client certificate authentication. The default is **None**.
- **App Setting**: Optionally, add TouchDown app settings for this policy.
- **Policy**: Optionally, add TouchDown policies for this policy.
Android Enterprise

- **Server name or IP address**: Type the Exchange Server host name or IP address.
- **Domain**: Type the domain in which the Exchange Server resides. You can use the system macro $user.domainname in this field to automatically look up user domain names.
- **User ID**: Specify the user name for the Exchange user account. You can use the system macro $user.username in this field to automatically look up user names.
- **Password**: Type an optional password for the Exchange user account.
- **Email address**: Specify the full email address. You can use the system macro $user.mail in this field to automatically look up user email accounts.
- **Identity credential (keystore or PKI)**: In the list, click an optional identity credential if you have configured an identity provider for Endpoint Management. This field is only required when Exchange requires a client certificate authentication. The default is None.
Samsung SAFE and Samsung KNOX settings

- **Server name or IP address:** Type the Exchange Server host name or IP address.
- **Domain:** Type the domain in which the Exchange Server resides. You can use the system macro $user.domainname in this field to automatically look up user domain names.
- **User ID:** Specify the user name for the Exchange user account. You can use the system macro $user.username in this field to automatically look up user names.
- **Password:** Type an optional password for the Exchange user account.
- **Email address:** Specify the full email address. You can use the system macro $user.mail in this field to automatically look up user email accounts.
- **Identity credential (keystore or PKI):** In the list, click an optional identity credential if you have configured an identity provider for Endpoint Management. This field is only required when Exchange requires a client certificate authentication.
- **Use SSL connection:** Select whether to secure connections between user devices and the Exchange Server. The default is On.
- **Sync contacts:** Select whether to enable synchronization for user contacts between devices and the Exchange Server. The default is On.
- **Sync calendar:** Select whether to enable synchronization for user calendars between devices and the Exchange Server. The default is On.
- **Default account:** Select whether to make user Exchange accounts the default for sending email from their devices. The default is On.
Windows Phone and Windows Desktop/Tablet settings

Note:
This policy does not allow you to set the user password. Users must set that parameter from their devices after you push the policy.

- **Account name or display name**: Type the Exchange ActiveSync account name.
- **Server name or IP address**: Type the Exchange Server host name or IP address.
- **Domain**: Enter the domain in which the Exchange Server resides. You can use the system macro $user.domainname in this field to automatically look up user domain names.
- **User ID or user name**: Specify the user name for the Exchange user account. You can use the system macro $user.username in this field to automatically look up user names.
- **Email address**: Specify the full email address. You can use the system macro $user.mail in this field to automatically look up user email accounts.
- **Use SSL connection**: Select whether to secure connections between user devices and the Exchange Server. The default is **Off**.
- **Past days to sync**: In the list, click how many days into the past to sync all content on the device with the Exchange Server. The default is **All content**.
- **Frequency**: In the list, click the schedule to use when syncing data that is sent to the device from the Exchange Server. The default is **When item arrives**.
- **Logging level**: In the list, click **Disabled**, **Basic**, or **Advanced** to specify the level of detail when logging Exchange activity. The default is **Disabled**.
You can add script files to Endpoint Management that perform certain functions for users, or you can add document files that you want Android users to access on their devices. When you add the file, you can also specify the directory in which you want the file to be stored on the device. For example, if you want Android users to receive a company document or .pdf file, you can deploy the file to the device and let users know where the file is located.

You can add the following file types with this policy:

- Text-based files (.xml, .html, .py, and so on)
- Other files, such as documents, pictures, spreadsheets, or presentations

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

Android Enterprise settings

- **File to be imported:** To select the file to import, click Browse and navigate to the file location.
- **File type:** Select either File or Script. When you select Script, Execute immediately appears. Select whether to run the script as soon as the file uploads. The Execute immediately default is Off.
- **Replace macro expressions:** Select whether to replace macro token names in a script with a device or user property. For macro syntax, see Macros. The default is Off.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- **Destination folder:** In the list, select the location in which to store the uploaded file or click **Add new** to choose an unlisted file location. You can use the macros `XenMobile Folder\` or `Flash Storage\` as the start of any path identifier.
- **Destination file name:** Optional. If you must change a file name before deploying it to a device, type the file name.
- **If file exists:** In the list, select whether to copy an existing file. The default is **Copy file only if different.**

**Android settings**

- **File to be imported:** To select the file to import, click **Browse** and navigate to the file location.
- **File type:** Select either **File** or **Script**. When you select **Script**, **Execute immediately** appears. Select whether to run the script as soon as the file uploads. The **Execute immediately** default is **Off**.
- **Replace macro expressions:** Select whether to replace macro token names in a script with a device or user property. For macro syntax, see **Macros**. The default is **Off**.
- **Destination folder:** In the list, select the location in which to store the uploaded file or click **Add new** to choose an unlisted file location. You can use the macros `XenMobile Folder\` or `Flash Storage\` as the start of any path identifier.
- **Destination file name:** Optional. If you must change a file name before deploying it to a device, type the file name.
- **If file exists:** In the list, select whether to copy an existing file. The default is **Copy file only if different.**

**FileVault device policy**

August 21, 2018

The macOS FileVault Disk Encryption feature protects the system volume by encrypting its contents. With FileVault enabled on a macOS device, a user logs in with their account password each time that the device starts. If the user loses their password, a recovery key enables them to unlock the disk and reset their password.

The Endpoint Management device policy, FileVault, enables FileVault user setup screens and configures settings such as recovery keys. For more information about FileVault, see the Apple support article, [https://support.apple.com/en-us/HT204837](https://support.apple.com/en-us/HT204837).

To add the FileVault policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies.**
macOS settings

- **Prompt for FileVault setup during logout**: If ON, prompts the user to enable FileVault during the next N logouts, as specified by the option, **Maximum times to skip FileVault setup**. If OFF, the FileVault password prompt doesn't appear.

After you deploy the FileVault policy with this setting on, the following screen appears when a user signs off the device. The screen gives the user the option to enable FileVault before signing off.

If the **Maximum times to skip FileVault setup** value isn't 0: After you deploy the FileVault policy with this setting off and then the user signs on, the following screen appears.

If the **Maximum times to skip FileVault setup** value is 0 or the user has skipped setup the maximum
number of times, the following screen appears.

- **Maximum times to skip FileVault setup**: The maximum number of times that the user can skip FileVault setup. When the user reaches the maximum, the user must set up FileVault to log in. If 0, the user must enable FileVault during the first login attempt. Default is 0.

- **Recovery key type**: A user who forgets their password can type a recovery key to unlock the disk and reset their password. Recovery key options:
  - **Personal recovery key**: A personal recovery key is unique to a user. During FileVault setup, a user chooses whether to create a recovery key or to allow their iCloud account to unlock their disk. To show the recovery key to the user after FileVault setup completes, enable **Show personal recovery key**. Showing the key enables the user to record the key for future use. For information about recovery key management, see the Apple support article, [https://support.apple.com/en-us/HT204837](https://support.apple.com/en-us/HT204837).
  - **Institutional recovery key**: You can create an institutional (or master) recovery key and FileVault certificate, which you then use to unlock devices. For information, see the Apple support article, [https://support.apple.com/en-us/HT202385](https://support.apple.com/en-us/HT202385). Use Endpoint Management to deploy the FileVault certificate to devices. For information, see [Certificates and authentication](#).  
  - **Personal & institutional recovery key**: By enabling both types of recovery keys, you must unlock a user device only if the user loses their personal recovery key.

- **Show personal recovery key**: If ON, shows the personal recovery key to the user after enabling FileVault on the device. Defaults to ON.
Firewall device policy

August 21, 2018

This policy lets you configure firewall settings for Samsung, macOS, and Windows devices.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

Samsung SAFE settings

- **Allow/Deny host:** For each host to which you want to allow or deny access, click Add and configure the following:
  - **Host name/IP range:** The host name or IP address range of the site you want to affect.
  - **Port/port range:** The port or port range.
  - **Allow/deny rule filter:** Click **Whitelist** to allow access or click **Blacklist** to deny access to the site.

- **Reroute configuration:** For each proxy you want to configure, click Add and configure the following:
  - **Host name/IP range:** The host name or IP address range for the proxy reroute.
  - **Port/port range:** The port or port range for the proxy reroute.
  - **Proxy IP:** The proxy IP address for the proxy reroute.
  - **Proxy port:** The proxy port for the proxy reroute.

- **Proxy Configuration**
  - **Proxy IP:** The IP address of the proxy server.
  - **Port:** The proxy server port.

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
macOS settings

Requires macOS 10.12 and later.

- **Enable Firewall.** To enable the firewall, set this option to **ON**.
- **Block all incoming connections.** When this option is set to **ON**, it blocks all incoming connections except the connections required for basic services.
- **Enable stealth mode.** In stealth mode, the device doesn’t respond to or acknowledge attempts to access it from the network by test applications using ICMP, such as Ping. To enable stealth mode, set this option to **ON**.
- **App specific incoming connection settings.** To allow specific apps to receive connections, add the apps and set **Allowed** to **True**.

Windows Desktop and Tablet settings

Requires Windows 10 Desktop and Tablet devices running Windows 10 RS3 and later.
Enable Feature: Controls incoming and outgoing traffic on computers to which this policy is deployed. Default is On.

Public Profile: Controls Windows Firewall while computers are connected to untrusted networks at public places, such as at an airport or coffee shop. Default is On.

Private Profile: Controls Windows Firewall while computers are connected to trusted networks, such as their home network. Default is On.

Domain Profile: Controls Windows Firewall while the computers are connected to the domain networks, such as at their workplace. Default is On.

Block all incoming connections, including those in the list of allowed programs: Default is Off.

Disable notifications to user when Firewall blocks a new program: Default is Off.

Font device policy

December 17, 2018

You can add a device policy in Endpoint Management to add additional fonts to iOS and macOS devices. Fonts must be TrueType (.ttf) or OpenType (.oft) fonts. Font collections (.ttc or .otc) are not supported.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.
iOS settings

- **User-visible name:** Type the name that users see in their font lists.
- **Font file:** To select the font file to add to user devices, click **Browse** and then navigate to the file location.

macOS settings

- **User-visible name:** Type the name that users see in their font lists.
- **Font file:** To select the font file to add to user devices, click **Browse** and then navigate to the file location.

Home screen layout device policy

December 17, 2018

The Home screen layout device policy lets you specify the layout of apps and folders for the iOS Home screen of supervised iOS devices.

**Important:**

Deploying multiple Home Screen Layout polices to a device results in an iOS error on the device. This limitation applies whether you define the home screen through this Endpoint Management policy or through the Apple Configurator.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.
iOS settings

- For each of the screen areas you want to configure (such as Dock or Page 1), click **Add**.
- **Type**: Choose **Application**, **Folder**, or **Web Clip**.

- **Display Name**: The name to appear on the home screen for the app or folder.
- **Value**: For apps, the bundle identifier. For folders, a list of bundle identifiers, separated by commas. For web clips, the URL for the web clip. If more than one Web Clip value exists with the same URL, the behavior is undefined on iOS 11.3 and later devices.

Import Device Configuration device policy

August 21, 2018

The Import Device Configuration device policy lets you deploy custom configurations to Citrix workspace hub devices. The general steps are:

1. Manually configure your first Citrix workspace hub device.
2. Download the configuration file from the device.
3. Configure the Import Device Configuration policy and deploy the policy to push the configuration to all other devices.

For more information, see Workspace hub device management.

Worspace Hub settings

- **URL**: The URL for the configuration file hosted on a file sharing web server.

Import iOS & macOS Profile device policy

August 21, 2018

You can import device configuration XML files for iOS and macOS devices into Endpoint Management. The file contains device security policies and restrictions that you prepare with the Apple Configurator. The configuration XML file can contain macros. For more information, see Macros.

You can place an iOS device in Supervised mode with the Apple Configurator, as described later in this article. For more information about using the Apple Configurator to create a configuration file, see the Apple Configurator Help page.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.

iOS and macOS settings

- **iOS configuration profile** or **macOS configuration profile**: To select the configuration file to import, click **Browse** and then navigate to the file location.
Place an iOS device in Supervised mode with the Apple Configurator

To use the Apple Configurator, you need an Apple computer running macOS 10.7.2 or later.

Important:
Placing a device into Supervised mode installs the selected version of iOS on the device, completely wiping the device of any previously stored user data or apps.

1. Install the Apple Configurator from iTunes.
2. Connect the iOS device to your Apple computer.
3. Start the Apple Configurator. The Configurator shows that you have a device to prepare for supervision.
4. To prepare the device for supervision:
   a) Switch the Supervision control to On. Citrix recommends that you choose this setting if you intend to maintain control of the device on an ongoing basis by reapplying a configuration regularly.
   b) Optionally, provide a name for the device.
   c) In iOS, click Latest for the latest version of iOS you want to install.
5. When you are ready to prepare the device for supervision, click Prepare.

Kiosk device policy

January 8, 2019

The Kiosk policy lets you restrict devices to kiosk mode by limiting the apps that can run, as follows:

- For Samsung SAFE devices: You can specify that only a specific app or apps can be used. This policy is useful for corporate devices that are designed to run only a specific type or class of apps. This policy also lets you choose custom images for the device home screen and lock screen wallpapers for when the device is in Kiosk mode.
- For corporate owned single use (COSU) Android Enterprise devices: You can whitelist apps and set lock task mode. By default, Secure Hub and Google Play services are whitelisted.
- For Windows 10 Desktop and Tablet devices: You can enable or disable Kiosk mode for one or more applications.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.
**Samsung SAFE settings**

**To put a Samsung SAFE device into Kiosk mode**

1. Enable the Samsung SAFE API key on the mobile device, as described in Samsung MDM license key device policies. This step lets you enable policies on Samsung SAFE devices.

2. Enable the Connection Scheduling Policy for Android devices, as described in Connection scheduling device policies. This step enables Android devices connect back to Endpoint Management.

3. Add a Kiosk device policy, as described in the next section.

4. Assign those three device policies to the appropriate delivery groups. Consider whether you want to include other policies, such as App inventory, in those delivery groups.

To remove the devices from Kiosk mode, create a Kiosk device policy that has Kiosk mode set to Disable. Update the delivery groups to remove the Kiosk policy that enabled Kiosk mode and to add the Kiosk policy that disables Kiosk mode.

**To add a Kiosk device policy for Samsung SAFE**

All apps that you specify for Kiosk mode must already be installed on the user devices.

Some options apply only to the Samsung Mobile Device Management (MDM) API 4.0 and later.

- **Kiosk mode:** Click Enable or Disable. The default is Enable. When you click Disable, all the following options disappear.
- **Launcher package:** Citrix recommends that you leave this field blank unless you have developed an in-house launcher to enable users to open the Kiosk app or apps. If you use an in-house launcher, enter the full name of the launcher application package.
- **Emergency phone number:** Enter an optional phone number. Anyone can use this number to contact your company to find a lost device. Applies only to MDM 4.0 and later.
- **Allow navigation bar:** Select whether to let users see and use the navigation bar while in Kiosk mode. Applies only to MDM 4.0 and later. The default is On.
- **Allow multi-window mode:** Select whether to let users use multiple windows while in Kiosk mode. Applies only to MDM 4.0 and later. The default is On.
- **Allow status bar:** Select whether to let users see the status bar while in Kiosk mode. Applies only to MDM 4.0 and later. The default is On.
- **Allow system bar:** Select whether to let users see the system bar while in Kiosk mode. The default is On.
- **Allow task manager:** Select whether to let users see and use the task manager while in Kiosk mode. The default is On.
• **Change Common SAFE passcode:** This setting helps protect against inadvertent changes to the Common SAFE passcode field. When this setting is Off, you can’t change the Common SAFE passcode field. The default is Off.

• **Common SAFE passcode:** If you set a general passcode policy for all Samsung SAFE devices, enter that optional passcode in this field.

• **Wallpapers**
  - **Define a home wallpaper:** Select whether to use a custom image for the home screen while in Kiosk mode. The default is Off.
    * **Home image:** When you enable Define a home wallpaper, select the image file by clicking Browse and navigating to the file location.
  - **Define a lock wallpaper:** Select whether to use a custom image for the lock screen while in Kiosk mode. The default is Off. Applies only to MDM 4.0 and later.
    * **Lock image:** When you enable Define a lock wallpaper, select the image file by clicking Browse and navigating to the file location.

• **Apps:** For each app that you want to add to Kiosk mode, click Add and then do the following:
  - **New app to add:** Enter the full name of the app to add. For example, com.android.calendar lets users use the Android calendar app.
  - Click Save to add the app or click Cancel to cancel adding the app.

---

**Windows Desktop and Tablet settings**

**Prerequisites**

Kiosk policy for Windows Desktop and Tablet only applies to local users. Create a local user or enroll an existing user on the target device.

**Note:**

The upgrade to Citrix Endpoint Management 10.19.1 removes your previous Kiosk device policies for Windows Desktop and Tablet. Be sure to add a Kiosk policy for one or more applications.
**Settings**

- **Kiosk mode**: Enables or disables kiosk mode.
- **Application user model ID (AUMID)**: The ID of the app that you want to allow in kiosk mode.

To get a list of the AUMIDs for all Microsoft Store apps installed for the current device user: Run the following PowerShell command.

```powershell
$installedapps = Get-AppxPackage
$aumidList = @()
foreach ($app in $installedapps) {
    foreach ($id in (Get-AppxPackageManifest $app).package.applications.application.id) {
        $aumidList += $app.packagefamilyname + "!" + $id
    }
}
$aumidList
```
To run multiple apps in Kiosk mode

**Windows OS support:** Windows 10 Enterprise or Education; Windows 10 Pro or Windows 10 S, minimum version 1803. Currently the multi-app Kiosk policy doesn’t support Active Directory and Azure Active Directory enrolled users.

- **UWP and Win32 apps:** Click **Add** and select the Universal Windows Platform (UWP) apps or Windows desktop app (Win32).
- **UWP AUMID or Win32 path:** Provide the AUMID for each UWP app and the path for each Win32 app. For example,
  - **UWP AUMID:** Microsoft.WindowsCalculator_8wekyb3d8bbwe!App
  - **Win32 path:** %windir%\system32\mspaint.exe or C:\Windows\System32\mspaint.exe
- **Start layout:** Currently, only the default Start screen for apps is available.
- **Default XML:** Currently, only the default XML Script is available.
- **Select user type:** You can only add local users. CEM creates a new user for the target device or enrolls an existing user.
- **User name:** Specify the user to receive the Kiosk policy. To create a local user name on the target device, type the name. Ensure your local user name doesn’t contain the domain. You cannot create a new user by entering the existing name. This also doesn’t change the current password.
- **Password:** Type the password for the local user name.
- **Show task bar:** Enable the taskbar to provide users with an easy way to view and manage applications. The default is **Off**.
- **Click Next** and save the changes.
Citrix Endpoint Management

Android Enterprise settings

To whitelist an app, click Add. You can whitelist multiple apps. For more information, see Android Enterprise.

- **Apps to whitelist**: Enter the package name of the app you want to whitelist or select the app from the list.
  - Click Add new to enter the package name of the app approved to show in the list.
  - Select the existing app from the list. The list shows apps that are uploaded in Endpoint Management. By default, Secure Hub and Google Play services are whitelisted.

- **Lock task mode**: Choose Allow to set the app to be pinned to the device screen when the user starts the app. Choose Deny to set the app not to be pinned. Default is Allow.

When an app is in lock task mode, the app is pinned to the device screen when the user opens it. No Home button appears and the Back button is disabled. The user exits the app using an action programmed into the app, such as signing out.

Knox Platform for Enterprise device policy

November 26, 2018

Samsung upgraded the Knox License (KLM) and renamed it to the Knox Platform for Enterprise (KPE) Premium license key. You can replace existing Enterprise Licenses (ELM) and KLM keys with a new KPE Premium license key or continue to use the legacy keys in Citrix Endpoint Management.

- You purchase a Samsung KNOX Platform for Enterprise License and obtain the KPE Premium key from Samsung. For more information, see the KPE Premium key article.
- To use a KPE key, create a Knox Platform for Enterprise device policy. If you are replacing legacy keys with a KPE key, remove the old Samsung MDM license key device policy.
- For information about using existing ELM and KLM keys, see Samsung MDM license key device policy.

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved. 652
Citrix Endpoint Management

Samsung SAFE platform

- **Knox Platform for Enterprise Key**: The KPE key that you received from Samsung.
- **Backwards-Compatible Key**: If you support Samsung devices running Knox 2.7.1 or earlier, specify the backwards-compatible key that is provided with your entitlement-based Samsung KNOX License key.

After you submit the changes, Endpoint Management then validates and registers the information.

Launcher configuration device policy for Android

October 8, 2018

Citrix Launcher lets you customize the user experience for Android devices deployed by Endpoint Management. Citrix Launcher and the Launcher Configuration device policy are not compatible with Android Enterprise.

You can add a Launcher Configuration policy to control these Citrix Launcher features:

- Manage Android devices so that users can access only the apps that you specify.
- Optionally specify a custom logo image for the Citrix Launcher icon and a custom background image for Citrix Launcher.
- Specify a password that users must enter to exit the launcher.

While Citrix Launcher enables you to apply those device-level restrictions, the launcher grants users the operational flexibility they need through built-in access to device settings such as WiFi settings, Bluetooth settings, and device passcode settings. Citrix Launcher isn’t intended as an extra layer of security over what the device platform already provides.

After you deploy Citrix Launcher, Endpoint Management installs it, replacing the default Android launcher.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.
Android settings

- **Define a logo image**: Select whether to use a custom logo image for Citrix Launcher icon. The default is **Off**.
- **Logo image**: When you enable **Define a logo image**, select the image file by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file’s location. Supported file types are PNG, JPG, JPEG, and GIF.
- **Define a background image**: Select whether to use a custom image for the Citrix Launcher background. The default is **Off**.
- **Background image**: When you enable **Define a background image**, select the image file by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file’s location. Supported file types are PNG, JPG, JPEG, and GIF.
- **Allowed apps**: For each app that you want to allow in Citrix Launcher, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **New app to add**: Enter the full name of the app to add. For example, com.android.calendar for the Android calendar app.
  - Click **Save** to add the app or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the app.
- **Password**: The password a user must enter to exit Citrix Launcher.

LDAP device policy

August 21, 2018

You create an LDAP policy for iOS devices in Endpoint Management to provide information about an LDAP server to use, including any necessary account information. The policy also provides a set of LDAP search policies to use when querying the LDAP server.

You need the LDAP host name before configuring this policy.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.
iOS settings

- **Account description**: Enter an optional account description.
- **Account user name**: Enter an optional user name.
- **Account password**: Enter an optional password. Use this field only with encrypted profiles.
- **LDAP host name**: Enter the LDAP server host name. This field is required.
- **Use SSL**: Select whether to use a Secure Socket Layer connection to the LDAP server. The default is **On**.
- **Search Settings**: Add search settings to use when querying the LDAP server. You can enter as many search settings as you want, but you should add at least one search setting to make the account useful. Click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **Description**: Enter a description of the search setting. This field is required.
  - **Scope**: Choose **Base**, **One level**, or **Subtree** to define how deeply into the LDAP tree to search. The default is **Base**.
    * **Base** searches the node pointed to by Search base.
    * **One level** searches the Base node and one level below it.
    * **Subtree** searches the Base node, plus all its children, regardless of depth.
  - **Search base**: Enter the path to the node at which to start searching. For example, ou=people or o=example corp. This field is required.
  - Click **Save** to add the search setting or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the search setting.
  - Repeat these steps for each search setting that you want to add.

macOS settings

- **Account description**: Enter an optional account description.
- **Account user name**: Enter an optional user name.
- **Account password**: Enter an optional password. Use this field only with encrypted profiles.
- **LDAP host name**: Enter the LDAP server host name. This field is required.
- **Use SSL**: Select whether to use a Secure Socket Layer connection to the LDAP server. The default is **On**.
- **Search Settings**: Add search settings to use when querying the LDAP server. You can enter as many search settings as you want, but you should add at least one search setting to make the account useful. Click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **Description**: Enter a description of the search setting. This field is required.
  - **Scope**: Choose **Base**, **One level**, or **Subtree** to define how deeply into the LDAP tree to search. The default is **Base**.
    * **Base** searches the node pointed to by Search base.
    * **One level** searches the Base node and one level below it.
    * **Subtree** searches the Base node, plus all its children, regardless of depth.
– **Search base:** Enter the path to the node at which to start searching. For example, ou=people or 0=example corp. This field is required.
– Click **Save** to add the search setting or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the search setting.
– Repeat these steps for each search setting you want to add.

**Location device policy**

August 21, 2018

You create location device policies in Endpoint Management to enforce geographic boundaries. When users breach the defined boundary, also called a geofence, Endpoint Management can perform certain actions. For example, you can configure the policy to issue a warning message to users when they breach the defined perimeter. You can also configure the policy to wipe users’ corporate data when they breach a perimeter, right away or after a delay. For information about security actions, such as enabling tracking and locating a device, see **Security actions**.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.

**iOS settings**

- **Location timeout**: Type a numeral and then, in the list, click **Seconds** or **Minutes** to set how often Endpoint Management attempts to fix the device’s location. Valid values are 60-900 seconds or 1-15 minutes. The default is 1 minute.
- **Tracking duration**: Type a numeral and then, in the list, click **Hours** or **Minutes** to set how long Endpoint Management tracks the device. Valid values are 1-6 hours or 10-360 minutes. The default is 6 hours.
• **Accuracy:** Type a numeral and then, in the list, click **Meters**, **Feet**, or **Yards** to set how close to a device Endpoint Management tracks the device. Valid values are 10-5000 yards or meters, or 30-15000 feet. The default is 328 feet.

• **Report if Location Services are disabled:** Select whether the device sends a report to Endpoint Management when GPS is disabled. The default is **Off**.

• **Geofencing**

When you enable Geofencing, configure these settings:

• **Radius:** Type a numeral and then, in the list, click the units to be used to measure the radius. The default is 16,400 feet. Valid values for radius are:
  - 164-164000 feet
  - 50-50000 meters
  - 54-54680 yards
  - 1-31 miles

• **Center point latitude:** Type a latitude, such as 37.787454, to define the geofence center point's latitude.

• **Center point longitude:** Type a longitude, such as 122.402952, to define the geofence center point's longitude.

• **Warn user on perimeter breach:** Select whether to issue a warning message when users breach the defined perimeter. The default is **Off**. No connection to Endpoint Management is required to display the warning message.

• **Wipe corporate data on perimeter breach:** Select whether to wipe users’ devices when they breach the perimeter. The default is **Off**. When you enable this option, the **Delay on local wipe field** appears.
  - Type a numeral and then, in the list, click **Seconds** or **Minutes** to set the length of time to delay before wiping corporate data from users’ devices. This gives users an opportunity to return to the allowed location before Endpoint Management selectively wipes their devices. The default is 0 seconds.
Android settings

- **Poll interval:** Type a numeral and then, in the list, click **Minutes** or **Hours**, or **Days** to set how often Endpoint Management attempts to fix the device’s location. Valid values are 1-1440 minutes, 1-24 hours, or any number of days. The default is 10 minutes. Setting this value to less than 10 minutes may adversely affect the device’s battery life.

- **Report if Location Services are disabled:** Select whether the device sends a report to Endpoint Management when GPS is disabled. The default is **Off**.

- **Geofencing**

  When you enable Geofencing, configure these settings:

  - **Radius:** Type a numeral and then, in the list, click the units to be used to measure the radius. The default is 16,400 feet. Valid values for radius are:
    - 164-164000 feet
    - 1-50 kilometers
    - 50-50000 meters
    - 54-54680 yards
    - 1-31 miles
• **Center point latitude:** Type a latitude, such as 37.787454, to define the geofence center point’s latitude.

• **Center point longitude:** Type a longitude, such as 122.402952, to define the geofence center point’s longitude.

• **Warn user on perimeter breach:** Select whether to issue a warning message when users breach the defined perimeter. The default is **Off**. No connection to Endpoint Management is required to display the warning message.

• **Device connects to Endpoint Management for policy refresh:** Select one of the following options for when users breach the perimeter:
  - **Perform no action on perimeter breach:** Do nothing. This is the default.
  - **Wipe corporate data on perimeter breach:** Wipe corporate data after a specified length of time. When you enable this option, the **Delay on local wipe** field appears.
    * Type a numeral and then, in the list, click Seconds or Minutes to set the length of time to delay before wiping corporate data from users’ devices. This gives users an opportunity to return to the allowed location before Endpoint Management selectively wipes their devices. The default is 0 seconds.
  - **Delay on lock:** Lock users’ devices after a specified length of time. When you enable this option, the **Delay on lock field** appears.
    * Type a numeral and then, in the list, click Seconds or Minutes to set the length of time to delay before locking users’ devices. This gives users an opportunity to return to the allowed location before Endpoint Management locks their devices. The default is 0 seconds.

**Lock screen message device policy**

December 17, 2018

The Lock screen message policy lets you set messages to appear on the following iOS devices when they are lost:

• The login window of shared iPads
• The lock screen of supervised iOS devices

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.

**iOS settings**

• **Asset tag information for the device:** The asset tag for the device. Apple devices truncate long strings, so be sure to test a string before deploying the policy to production. String length depends on the Apple device model and Apple settings, which can change.
• **Login window and lock screen footnote:** Information to help in returning the device, such as an address or other contact information. For example, your message might be in the form “If Lost, return to”. Apple devices truncate long strings, so be sure to test a string before deploying the policy to production. String length depends on the Apple device model and Apple settings, which can change.

**Mail device policy**

December 17, 2018

You can add a mail device policy in Endpoint Management to configure an email account on iOS or macOS devices.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see [Device policies](#).

**iOS and macOS settings**

![iOS and macOS settings screenshot]

- **Account description:** Type an account description that appears in the Mail and Settings apps. This field is required.

- **Account type:** Choose either **IMAP** or **POP** to select the protocol to be used for user accounts. The default is **IMAP**. When you select **POP**, the following **Path** prefix option disappears.

- **Path prefix:** Type **INBOX** or your IMAP mail account path prefix. This field is required.

- **User display name:** Type the full user name to be used for messages and other purposes. This field is required.
- **Email address:** Type the full email address for the account. This field is required.

- **Incoming email settings**
  - **Email server host name:** Type the incoming mail server host name or IP address. This field is required.
  - **Email server port:** Type the incoming mail server port number. The default is 143. This field is required.
  - **Username:** Type the user name for the email account. This name is generally the same as the email address up to the @ character. This field is required.
  - **Authentication type:** Choose the authentication type to be used. The default is Password. When None is selected, the following Password field disappears.
  - **Password:** Type an optional password for the incoming mail server.
  - **Use SSL:** Select whether the incoming mail server uses Secure Socket Layer authentication. The default is Off.

- **Outgoing email settings**
  - **Email server host name:** Type the outgoing mail server host name or IP address. This field is required.
  - **Email server port:** Type the outgoing mail server port number. If no port, you do not enter a port number, the default port for the given protocol is used.
  - **Username:** Type the user name for the email account. This name is generally the same as the email address up to the @ character. This field is required.
  - **Authentication type:** Choose the authentication type to use. The default is Password.
  - **Password:** Type an optional password for the outgoing mail server.
  - **Outgoing password same as incoming:** Select whether the incoming and outgoing passwords are the same. The default is Off, which means the passwords are different.
  - **Use SSL:** Select whether the outgoing mail server uses Secure Socket Layer authentication. The default is Off.

- **Policy**
  These options apply only to iOS. There are no related restrictions for macOS.
  - **Authorize email move between accounts:** Select whether to allow users to move email out of this account into another account and to forward and reply from a different account. The default is Off.
  - **Sending email only from mail app:** Select whether to restrict users to the iOS mail app for sending email.
  - **Disable mail recents syncing:** Select whether to prevent users from syncing recent addresses. The default is Off.
  - **Allow Mail Drop:** Select whether to allow use of Apple Mail Drop. The default is Off.
- **Enable S/MIME Signing**: Select whether this account supports S/MIME signing. The default is **On**. When set to **On**, the following fields appear.
  - **Signing identity credential**: Choose the signing credential to use.
  - **Encryption identity credential**: Choose the encryption credential to use.
  - **Enable per message S/MIME switch**: When set to **On**, shows users an option to switch S/MIME encryption on or off for each message they compose. The default is **Off**.
  - **S/MIME Encrypt By Default User Overrideable**: If set to **On**, users can, in the settings of their devices, select whether S/MIME is on by default. The default is **Off**. This option applies to iOS 12.0 and later.
  - **S/MIME Encryption Certificate UUID User Overrideable**: If set to **On**, users can turn S/MIME encryption identity and encryption on and off in the settings of their devices. The default is **Off**. This option applies to iOS 12.0 and later.

### Managed bookmarks device policy

August 21, 2018

With the Managed bookmarks device policy, you can deploy a folder of bookmarks to Chrome OS devices.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see [Device policies](#).

### Chrome OS settings

![Managed Bookmarks screenshot](image)

- **Folder name**: The name of a bookmark folder to deploy to Chrome OS devices.
- **Name**: The name of a bookmark.
- **Bookmark**: The URL for the bookmark.
Managed domains device policy

December 17, 2018

You can define managed domains that apply to email and the Safari browser. Managed domains help you protect corporate data by controlling which apps can open documents downloaded from domains using Safari.

For iOS supervised devices, you specify:

- URLs or subdomains to control how users can open documents, attachments, and downloads from the browser.
- URLs from which users can save passwords in Safari.

For the steps on setting an iOS device to supervised mode, see To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator.

When a user sends email to a recipient whose domain is not on the managed email domains list, the message is flagged on the user’s device to warn them that they are sending a message to someone outside your corporate domain.

For items such as documents, attachments, or downloads: When a user opens an item by using Safari from a web domain that is on the managed web domains list, the appropriate corporate app opens the item. If the item is not from a web domain on the managed web domains list, the user cannot open the item with a corporate app. They must use a personal, unmanaged app.

For supervised devices, even if you do not specify Safari password autofill domains: If the device is configured as ephemeral multi-user, users can’t save passwords. However, if the device isn’t config-ured as ephemeral multi-user, users can save all passwords.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

iOS settings

To specify domains:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>example.com</td>
<td>Treat any path under example.com as managed, but not site.example.com/.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foo.example.com</td>
<td>Treat any path under foo.example.com as managed, but not example.com/ or bar.example.com/.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Format</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*.example.com</td>
<td>Treat any path under foo.example.com or bar.example.com as managed, but not example.com/.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>example.com/sub</td>
<td>Treat example.com/sub and any path under it as managed, but not example.com/.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foo.example.com/sub</td>
<td>Treat any path under foo.example.com/sub as managed, but not example.com, example.com/sub, foo.example.com/, or bar.example.com/sub.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*.example.com/sub</td>
<td>Treat any path under foo.example.com/sub or bar.example.com/sub as managed, but not example.com or foo.example.com/.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rules:

- Leading “www.” and trailing slashes in URLs are ignored when domains are compared.
- If an entry contains a port number, only addresses that specify that port number are considered managed. Otherwise, only the standard ports are considered managed (port 80 for http and port 443 for https). For example, the pattern \*.example.com:8080 matches https://site.example.com:8080/page.html, but not https://site.example.com/page.html, whereas the pattern \*.example.com matches https://site.example.com/page.html and https://site.example.com/page.html, but not https://site.example.com:8080/page.html.
- Managed Safari web domain definitions are cumulative. Patterns defined by all managed Safari web domain payloads are used to match a URL request.

Settings:

- **Managed Domains**
  - **Unmarked Email Domains:** For each email domain you want to include in the list, click **Add** and then do the following:
    * **Managed Email Domain:** Type the email domain.
    * Click **Save** to save the email domain or click **Cancel** to not save the email domain.
  - **Managed Safari Web Domains:** For each web domain you want to include in the list, click **Add** and then do the following:
    * **Managed Web Domain:** Type the web domain.
    * Click **Save** to save the web domain or click **Cancel** to not save the web domain.
  - **Safari Password AutoFill Domains:** For each autofill domain you want to include in the
list, click **Add** and then do the following:
  * **Safari Password AutoFill Domain**: Type the autofill domain.
  * Click **Save** to save the autofill domain or click **Cancel** to not save the autofill domain.

### Maps device policy

August 21, 2018

Windows 10 phone devices support offline maps. Use the Maps device policy to specify which maps to download to devices. The Microsoft Maps configuration service provider (CSP) currently supports maps of Germany, the United Kingdom, and the United States.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.

### Windows Phone settings

To add a map, click **Add** and then select the **Country** and **State**. Repeat those steps to add more maps.

### Maximum resident users device policy

December 17, 2018

The Maximum resident users device policy is for Shared iPads. For more information about Shared iPads, see **Integrate with Apple Education features**.

This policy must deploy when the iPad is in the “awaiting configuration” phase during the Setup Assistant. Apple doesn’t allow this policy to deploy after Shared iPads enroll.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.

### iOS settings

- **Maximum Resident Users**: The maximum number of users for a Shared iPad. If the number of users specified in this policy is greater than the maximum number of users supported by the device: Endpoint Management uses the device maximum instead. Default is **5** users.

  Apple recommends that you keep the Maximum resident users value as low as possible. A low value maximizes the amount of iPad storage for each user. In addition, a low value minimizes communication with iCloud and provides a faster sign in experience. For information about how
Apple handles shared storage on an iPad, see https://developer.apple.com/education/shared-ipad/.

MDM options device policy

January 22, 2019

The MDM options device policy manages Find My Phone/iPad Activation Lock on supervised iOS devices. For the steps on setting an iOS device to supervised mode, see To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator.

Activation Lock is a feature of Find My iPhone/iPad that prevents reactivation of a lost or stolen supervised device. Activation Lock requires the user Apple ID and password before anyone can turn off Find My iPhone/iPad, erase the device, or reactivate the device. For the devices that your organization owns, bypassing an Activation Lock is necessary to, for example, reset or reallocate devices.

To enable Activation Lock, you configure and deploy the Endpoint Management MDM Options device policy. You can then manage a device from the Endpoint Management console without the Apple credentials of the user. To bypass the Apple credential requirement of an Activation Lock, issue the Activation Lock Bypass security action from the Endpoint Management console.

For example, if the user returns a lost phone or to set up the device before or after a Full Wipe: When the phone prompts for the iTunes account credential, you can bypass that step by issuing the Activation Lock Bypass security action from the Endpoint Management console.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.
iOS settings

- **Enable Activation Lock**: Select whether to enable Activation Lock on the devices to which you deploy this policy. The default is **Off**.

After you enable Activation Lock by deploying the MDM options device policy: The Security action **Activation Lock Bypass** appears when you select those devices on the **Manage > Devices** page and click **Security**. An Activation Lock Bypass allows you to remove the Activation Lock from supervised devices prior to device activation without knowing the Apple ID and password of the device users. You can send an Activation Lock Bypass to a device before or after a Full Wipe. For more information, see [Bypass an iOS activation lock](#).

Office device policy

August 21, 2018

Endpoint Management lets you deploy Microsoft Office 365 products using the Office configuration service provider (CSP). By configuring the Office device policy, you can deploy Microsoft Office apps to any Windows 10 Desktop or Tablet running update 1709 or later.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see [Device policies](#).
Windows Desktop/Tablet settings

- **Product ID**: Select a product ID based on your Office 365 plan. Options are **O365ProPlusRetail**, **O365BusinessRetail**, or **O365SmallBusPremRetail**.
- **Office 365 Apps**: Select the Office 365 apps that you want deployed. All apps are selected by default.
- **Additional Office apps**: If you own licenses for **Project Online Desktop Client** or **Visio Pro for Office 365**, you can select these apps to have them installed.
- **Office Version**: Select whether to install the **32-bit** or **64-bit** version of Office.
- **Update channel**: Choose how often you want updates to occur. Options are **Monthly**, **Monthly (Targeted)**, **Semi-Annual**, or **Semi-Annual (Targeted)**.
- **Properties**:
  - **Automatically accept the app end user license agreement**: Select **On** or **Off**. Defaults to **On**.
  - **User shared computer activation**: Select whether the computer is shared or not. Options are **On** or **Off**. Defaults to **Off**.
- **Office Language**: Office automatically installs in any languages that Windows already has installed. You can select extra languages to install.

Organization information device policy

December 17, 2018
Citrix Endpoint Management

The Organization information device policy specifies your organization information for alert messages that are pushed from Endpoint Management to iOS devices.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.

**iOS settings**

- **Name**: Type the name of the organization running Endpoint Management.
- **Address**: Type the organization’s address.
- **Phone**: Type the organization's support phone number.
- **Email**: Type the support email address.
- **Magic**: Type a word or phrase that describes the services managed by the organization.

**OS Update device policy**

December 17, 2018

The OS Update device policy lets you deploy:

- The latest OS updates to supervised iOS devices.
  
  The OS Update device policy doesn’t support devices that are both supervised and DEP-enrolled.

- The latest OS and app updates to DEP-enrolled macOS devices running macOS 10.11.5 and later.

- The latest OS updates to supervised Samsung SAFE devices.
  
  For Samsung SAFE devices, Endpoint Management sends the OS Update policy to Secure Hub, which then applies the policy to the device. The **Manage > Devices** page shows when Endpoint Management sends the policy and when the device receives the policy.

- The latest OS updates to supervised Windows 10 Desktop and Tablet devices.

  You can also use the OS Update policy to manage delivery optimization settings for desktops and tablets running Windows 10 version 1607. Delivery optimization is a peer-to-peer client update service provided by Microsoft for Windows 10 updates. The goal of delivery optimization is to reduce bandwidth issues during the update process. Bandwidth reduction is achieved by sharing the downloading task among multiple devices. For more information, see the Microsoft article, **Configure Delivery Optimization for Windows 10 updates**.

- The latest OS updates to managed Android Enterprise devices (Android 7.0 and higher).

- The latest OS updates to Chrome OS devices.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- The specified OS update file to Citrix Ready workspace hub devices.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

iOS settings

The following settings are for supervised iOS devices.

- **OS update options**: Both of the options download the latest OS updates to supervised devices according to the **OS update frequency**. The device prompts users to install updates. The prompt is visible after the user unlocks the device.
- **OS update frequency**: Determines how frequently Endpoint Management checks and updates the device OS. The default is 7 days.
- **OS updates version**: Specifies the version to use to update supervised iOS devices. The default is Latest version.
  - **Latest version**: Select to update to the latest OS version.
  - **Specific version only**: Select to update to a specific OS version and then type the version number.
**macOS settings**

- **OS update options**: Both of the options download the latest macOS updates according to the **OS update frequency**. You can choose to install the updates or notify the user through the App Store that updates are available.
- **OS update frequency**: Determines how frequently Endpoint Management checks and updates the device OS. The default is 7 days.

**Get status for iOS and macOS update actions**

For iOS and macOS, Endpoint Management doesn’t deploy the OS Update policy to devices. Instead, Endpoint Management uses the policy to send these MDM commands to devices:

- Schedule OS Update Scan: Requests that the device performs a background scan for OS updates. (optional for iOS)
- Available OS Updates: Queries the device for a list of available OS updates.
- Schedule OS Update: Requests that the device performs macOS updates, app updates, or both. Thus, the device OS determines when it should download or install the OS and app updates.

The **Manage > Devices > Device details (General)** page shows the status of scheduled and available OS update scans, and scheduled macOS and app updates.
For more details about the status of update actions, go to the Manage > Devices > Device details (Delivery Groups) page.

For details such as available OS updates and the last installation attempt, go to the Manage > Devices > Device details (Properties) page.
Samsung SAFE settings

Samsung Enterprise FOTA, also referred to as E-FOTA, lets you determine when devices get updated and the firmware version to use. To use E-FOTA:

1. Create a Samsung MDM License Key device policy with the keys and license information you received from Samsung. For more information, see Samsung MDM license key device policy.

2. Create an OS Update device policy to enable Enterprise FOTA.
Citrix Endpoint Management

• Enable Enterprise FOTA: Set to On.
• Enterprise FOTA License Key: Select the Samsung MDM License Key device policy name.

Windows Desktop and Tablet settings

• Select active hours mode: Select a mode to configure the active hours for performing OS updates. You can specify a range of hours or a start and end time. After you select a mode, more settings appear: Specify max range for active hours or Active hours start and Active hours end. Not configured allows Windows to perform OS updates at any time. Defaults to Not configured.
• Auto update behavior: Configures the download, install, and restart behavior of the Windows update service on user devices. Defaults to Auto install and restart.
- **Notify user before downloading the update**: Windows notifies users when updates are available. Windows doesn’t automatically download and install updates. Users must initiate the download and install actions.

- **Auto install and notify to schedule device restart**: Windows downloads updates automatically on non-metered networks. Windows installs updates during Automatic Maintenance when the device isn’t in use and isn’t running on battery power. If Automatic Maintenance can’t install updates for two days, Windows Update installs the updates immediately. If the installation requires a restart, Windows prompts the user to schedule the restart time. The user has up to seven days to schedule the restart. After seven days, Windows forces the device to restart. Enabling the user to control the start time reduces the risk of accidental data loss caused by apps that don’t shut down properly on restart.

- **Auto install and restart**: Default setting. Windows downloads updates automatically on non-metered networks. Windows installs updates during Automatic Maintenance when the device isn’t in use and isn’t running on battery power. If Automatic Maintenance can’t install updates for two days, Windows Update installs the updates immediately. If the installation requires a restart, Windows automatically restarts the device when the device is inactive.

- **Auto install and restart at a specified time**: When you choose this option, more settings appear so you can specify the day and time. The default is 3 a.m. daily. Automatic installation happens at the specified time and device restart occurs after a 15-minute countdown. When Windows is ready to restart, a logged in user can interrupt the 15-minute countdown to delay the restart.

- **Auto install and restart without end-user control**: Windows downloads updates automatically on non-metered networks. Windows installs updates during Automatic Maintenance when the device isn’t in use and isn’t running on battery power. If Automatic Maintenance can’t install updates for two days, Windows Update installs updates immediately. If the installation requires a restart, Windows automatically restarts the device when the device is inactive. This option also sets the user control panel to read-only.

- **Turn off automatic updates**: Disables Windows automatic updates on the device.

- **Scan for app updates from Microsoft update**: Specifies whether Windows accepts updates for other Microsoft apps from the Microsoft update service. Defaults to **Not configured**.
  - **Not configured**: Use this setting if you don’t want to configure the behavior. Windows doesn’t change the related UI on user devices. Users can accept or reject updates for other Microsoft apps.
  - **Yes**: Windows allows app updates to be installed from the Windows update service. The related setting on the user device is inactive, so the user can’t modify the setting.
  - **No**: Windows doesn’t allow app updates to be installed from the Windows update service. The related setting on the user device is inactive, so the user can’t modify the setting.

- **Specify updates branch**: Specifies which Windows update service branch to use for updates.
Defaults to **Not configured**.
- **Not configured**: Use this setting if you don’t want to configure the behavior. Windows doesn’t change the related UI on user devices. Users can choose a Windows update service branch.
- **Current Branch**: Windows receives updates from Current Branch. The related setting on the user device is inactive, so the user can’t modify the setting.
- **Current Branch for Business**: Windows receives updates from Current Branch for Business. The related setting on the user device is inactive, so the user can’t modify the setting.
- **Configure number of days to defer feature updates**: If **On**, Windows defers feature updates by the specified number of days and the user can’t change the setting. If **Off**, the user can change the number of days to defer feature updates. Defaults to **Off**.
- **Configure number of days to defer quality updates**: If **On**, Windows defers quality updates by the specified number of days and the user can’t change the setting. If **Off**, the user can change the number of days to defer quality updates. Defaults to **Off**.
- **Pause quality updates**: Specifies whether to pause quality updates for 35 days. Defaults to **Not configured**.
  - **Not configured**: Use this setting if you don’t want to configure the behavior. Windows doesn’t change the related UI on user devices. Users can choose to pause quality updates for 35 days.
  - **Yes**: Windows pauses the installation of quality updates from the Windows Update Service for 35 days. The related setting on the user device is inactive, so the user can’t modify the setting.
  - **No**: Windows doesn’t pause the installation of quality updates from the Windows Update Service. The related setting on the user device is inactive, so the user can’t modify the setting.
- **Allow updates only in approval list**: Specifies whether to install only the updates that an MDM server approves. Endpoint Management currently doesn’t support configuring an approved list of updates. Defaults to **Not configured**.
  - **Not configured**: Use this setting if you don’t want to configure the behavior. Windows doesn’t change the related UI on user devices. Users can choose which updates to allow.
  - **Yes, install only approved updates**: Allows installation of approved updates only.
  - **No, install all applicable updates**: Allows installation of any applicable updates on the device.
- **Use internal update server**: Specifies whether to obtain updates from the Windows update service or an internal update server through Windows Server Update Services (WSUS). If **Off**, devices use the Windows update service. If **On**, devices connect to the specified WSUS server for updates. Defaults to **Off**.
  - **Accept updates signed by entities other than Microsoft**: Specifies whether to accept updates signed by third-party entities other than Microsoft. This feature requires that the
device trusts the third-party vendor certificate. Defaults to **Off**.

- **Allow connection to Microsoft update service**: Allows Windows update on device to connect periodically to the Microsoft update service, even if the device is configured to get updates from a WSUS server. Defaults to **On**.
- **WSUS server**: Specify the server URL for the WSUS server.
- **Alternate intranet server to host updates**: Specify an alternate intranet server URL to host updates and receive reporting information.

**Configure delivery optimization**: Whether to use delivery optimization for Windows 10 Updates. Default is **Off**.

**Cache size**: The maximum size of the delivery optimization cache. A value of **0** means an unlimited cache. Default is **10 GB**.

- **Allow VPN peer caching**: Whether to allow devices to participate in peer caching when connected to the domain network through VPN. When **On**, the device can download from or upload to other domain network devices, either on VPN or on the corporate domain network. Default is **Off**.

- **Download method**: The download method that delivery optimization can use for downloads of Windows Updates, app, and app updates. Default is **HTTP blended with peering behind the same NAT**. Options are:
  - **HTTP only, no peering**: Disables peer-to-peer caching but allows delivery optimization to download content from Windows Update servers or Windows Server Update Services (WSUS) servers.
  - **HTTP blended with peering behind the same NAT**: Enables peer sharing on the same network. The Delivery Optimization cloud service finds other clients that connect to the Internet using the same public IP as the target client. These clients then attempt to connect to other peers on the same network by using their private subnet IP.
  - **HTTP blended with peering across a private group**: Automatically selects a group based on the device Active Directory Domain Services (AD DS) site or the domain the device authenticates to. Selection based on AD DS is for Windows 10, version 1607. Selection based on domain is for Windows 10, version 1511. Peering occurs across internal subnets, between devices that belong to the same group, including devices in remote offices.
  - **HTTP blended with Internet peering**: Enable Internet peer sources for Delivery Optimization.
  - **Simple download mode with no peering**: Disable the use of Delivery Optimization cloud services. Delivery Optimization switches to this mode automatically during these conditions: When the Delivery Optimization cloud services are unavailable, unreachable, or when the content file size is less than 10 MB. In this mode, Delivery Optimization provides a reliable download experience, with no peer-to-peer caching.
  - **Do not use Delivery Optimization and use BITS instead**: Enables clients to use BranchCache. For more information, see the Microsoft article, **BranchCache**.
• **Max download bandwidth**: The maximum download bandwidth in KBs/second. Default is 0, which means dynamic bandwidth adjustment.

• **Percentage of maximum download bandwidth**: The maximum download bandwidth that delivery optimization can use across all concurrent download activities. The value is a percentage of the available download bandwidth. Default is 0, which means dynamic adjustment.

• **Max upload bandwidth**: The maximum upload bandwidth in KBs/second. Default is 0. A value of 0 means unlimited bandwidth.

• **Monthly upload data cap**: The maximum size in GBs that delivery optimization can upload to Internet peers in each calendar month. Default is 20 GB. A value of 0 means unlimited monthly uploads.

**How Endpoint Management handles approved updates to Windows Desktop and Tablet devices**

You can specify whether to install only approved updates. Endpoint Management handles the updates as follows:

• For a security update, such as for Windows Defender definitions, Endpoint Management automatically approves the update and sends an install command to the device during next sync.

• For all other update types, Endpoint Management waits for your approval before sending the install command to the device.

**Prerequisites**

• You must upload the Microsoft root certificate to the Endpoint Management server as a server certificate. To get the certificate, go to [https://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?linkid=747875&clcid=0x409](https://go.microsoft.com/fwlink/?linkid=747875&clcid=0x409).

• After you upload the certificate to Endpoint Management, restart Endpoint Management. For information about importing a server certificate, see “To import a certificate” in [Certificates and authentication](#).

**To install only approved updates**

1. Go to **Configure > Device Policies** and open the OS Update device policy.
2. Change the **Allow updates only in approval list** setting to **Yes, install only approved updates**.

**To approve an update**

1. In the OS Update device policy, scroll down to the **Pending updates** table. Endpoint Management obtains the updates listed in the table from devices.
2. Search for updates with an **Approval status** of **Pending**.
3. Click the row for the update you want to approve and then click the edit icon for that row (in the **Add** column).

4. To approve the update, click **Approved** and then click **Save**.

**Note:** Although the Pending updates table includes add and delete commands, those commands don’t result in any changes to the Endpoint Management database. Editing approval status is the only action available for pending updates.

To view the Windows update status for a device, go to **Manage > Devices > Properties**.

When an update publishes, the **Update ID** appears in the first column with a status (Success or Failure). You can create a report or an automated action for devices with failed updates. The date and time of the publication also appears.

**How updates work for first-time and subsequent deployments**

The effect of the OS Update device policy on devices differs for a first-time deployment versus a deployment after devices get updates.

- For Endpoint Management to query a device for updates, you must configure and assign to a delivery group at least one OS Update device policy.

  Endpoint Management queries a device for installable updates during a device MDM sync.

- After the first OS Update device policy deploys, the list of Windows updates is empty because no device has reported yet.
• When the devices in the assigned delivery group report updates, Endpoint Management saves those updates in its database. To approve any reported updates, edit the policy again.

Update approval applies only to the policy you are editing. Updates approved in one policy don’t show as approved in another policy. The next time that a device syncs, Endpoint Management sends a command to the device to indicate that the update is approved.

• For a second OS Update device policy, the update list contains the updates stored in the Endpoint Management database. You must approve updates for each policy.

During each device sync, Endpoint Management queries the device for the approved update state until the device reports that an update installed. For updates that require a restart after an update installs, Endpoint Management queries the state of the update until the device reports that the update installed.

• Endpoint Management doesn’t restrict the updates shown in the policy configuration page by delivery group or device. All updates reported by devices appear in the list.

**Android Enterprise settings**

- **System update policy**: Determines when system updates occur. **Automatic** installs an update when it is available. **Windowed** installs an update automatically within the daily maintenance window specified in the **Start time** and **End time**. **Postpone** allows a user to postpone an update for up to 30 days.
  - **Start time**: The start of the maintenance window, measured as the number of minutes (0 - 1440) from midnight in the device local time. Default is 0.
  - **End time**: The end of the maintenance window, measured as the number of minutes (0 - 1440) from midnight in the device local time. Default is 120.
Chrome OS settings

- **Update enabled**: Specifies whether to update Chrome OS devices automatically to a newly released version of Chrome OS. Default is **Off**.

- **Reboot after update**: Specifies whether to reboot a Chrome OS device the next time that the user signs out after a successful automatic update. Default is **Off**.

- **Target platform version prefix**: If a device is on an older version, this setting specifies the prefix of the target version to update to. For Chrome platform versions, see [https://chromereleases.googleblog.com/](https://chromereleases.googleblog.com/). If a device is already on a version with the given prefix, no update occurs. If the device is on a higher version, it remains on the higher version. Rollback isn’t supported. Default is empty.

  Use one of the following version formats:
  - "" or unset: Update to latest version available.
  - **10323.**: Update to any minor version of 10323 (for example, 10323.58.0).
  - **10323.58.**: Update to any minor version of 10323.58 (for example, 10323.58.0).
  - **10323.58.0**: Update to this specific version only.

- **Delay update period**: Specifies how long a device can wait before downloading an update. The delay is counted from the time the update first deploys to the server. The device might wait a portion of this time in terms of clock time and the remaining time based on the number of update checks. The maximum duration value is **14 days**. Default is **0**.

- **Release channel**: Specifies the Google release channel used to deliver Chrome OS updates. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration.
  - **Delegated**: Means that users can choose the release channel on their devices.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- **Stable**: The Stable channel is fully tested. By default, Chrome OS updates get distributed over the Stable channel.
- **Beta**: The Beta channel contains upcoming changes and improvements with low risks.
- **Dev**: The Dev channel contains the latest features and might be unstable.

**Workspace Hub settings**

You can use the OS Update device policy to specify an update file for Citrix Ready workspace hub devices. When a workspace hub device checks in with the Endpoint Management server, the device downloads the update file and installs it automatically.

- **URL**: The URL where you uploaded the OS update file. First, download the OS update file from the OS vendor and upload it to a share accessible by HTTP or HTTPS. Do not protect the share with any credentials. The update file for a CLASS only applies to devices of the same CLASS.

  The URL also must end with the naming used in the OS update file in the format `VERSION-CLASS KERNEL-ARCHITECTURE-BUILDNUM.lfi`.

  When Citrix Ready workspace hub device checks in with the Endpoint Management server, the device downloads the update file and installs it automatically. The installation happens whether the device has a lower or higher OS version that the one being installed.

  The policy applies only on devices of the same CLASS as the update file configured in the policy. For example, if the policy has an update file for an NComputing device (NC class), then only the NComputing devices checking in receive the update. If a ViewSonic device (VS class) checks in, Endpoint Management doesn’t apply the update.

- **OS Version**: The OS version in the format `VERSION-CLASS KERNEL ARCHITECTURE-BUILDNUM` or `VERSION CLASS KERNEL BUILDNUM`.

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Passcode device policy

January 2, 2019

You create a passcode policy in Endpoint Management based on your organization’s standards. You can require passcodes on users’ devices and can set various formatting and passcode rules. You can create policies for iOS, macOS, Android, Samsung KNOX, Android Enterprise, Windows Phone, and Windows desktop/tablet. Each platform requires a different set of values, which are described in this article.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.

iOS settings

- **Passcode required**: Select this option to require a passcode and to display the configuration options for an iOS passcode device policy. The page expands to let you configure settings for passcode requirements, passcode security, and policy settings.
- **Passcode requirements**
  - **Minimum length**: In the list, click the minimum passcode length. The default is **6**.
  - **Allow simple passcodes**: Select whether to allow simple passcodes. Simple passcodes are a repeated or sequential set of characters. The default is **On**.
  - **Required characters**: Select whether to require passcodes to have at least one letter. The default is **Off**.

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
- **Minimum number of symbols**: In the list, click the number of symbols the passcode must contain. The default is 0.

**Passcode security**
- **Device lock grace period (minutes of inactivity)**: In the list, click the length of time before users must enter a passcode to unlock a locked device. The default is None.
- **Lock device after (minutes of inactivity)**: In the list, click the length of time a device can be inactive before it is locked. The default is None.
- **Passcode expiration in days (1-730)**: Type the number of days after which the passcode expires. Valid values are 1-730. The default is 0, which means the passcode never expires.
- **Previous passwords saved (0-50)**: Type the number of used passwords to save. Users are unable to use any password found in this list. Valid values are 0-50. The default is 0, which means users can reuse passwords.
- **Maximum failed sign-on attempts**: In the list, click the number of times a user can fail to sign in successfully after which the device is fully wiped. The default is Not defined.

**Policy Settings**
- Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in hours)**.
- If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
- In the **Allow user to remove policy** list, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
- If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

### macOS settings

- **Passcode required**: Select this option to require a passcode and to display the configuration options for an iOS passcode device policy. The page expands to let you configure settings for
passcode requirements, passcode security, and policy settings.

- If you do not enable Passcode required, next to Delay after failed sign-on attempts, in minutes, type the number of minutes to delay before allowing users to reenter their passcodes.

- If you enable Passcode required, configure the following settings:
  - **Passcode requirements**
    - Minimum length: In the list, click the minimum passcode length. The default is 6.
    - Allow simple passcodes: Select whether to allow simple passcodes. Simple passcodes are a repeated or sequential set of characters. The default is On.
    - Required characters: Select whether to require passcodes to have at least one letter. The default is Off.
    - Minimum number of symbols: In the list, click the number of symbols the passcode must contain. The default is 0.
  - **Passcode security**
    - Device lock grace period (minutes of inactivity): In the list, click the length of time before users must enter a passcode to unlock a locked device. The default is None.
    - Lock device after (minutes of inactivity): In the list, click the length of time a device can be inactive before it is locked. The default is None.
    - Passcode expiration in days (1-730): Type the number of days after which the passcode expires. Valid values are 1-730. The default is 0, which means the passcode never expires.
    - Previous passwords saved (0-50): Type the number of used passwords to save. Users are unable to use any password found in this list. Valid values are 0-50. The default is 0, which means users can reuse passwords.
    - Maximum failed sign-on attempts: In the list, click the number of times a user can fail to sign in successfully after which the device is locked. The default is Not defined.
    - Delay after failed sign-on attempts, in minutes: Type the number of minutes to delay before allowing a user to reenter a passcode.
  - **Policy Settings**
    - Next to Remove policy, click either Select date or Duration until removal (in hours).
    - If you click Select date, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
    - In the Allow user to remove policy list, click Always, Password required, or Never.
    - If you click Password required, next to Removal password, type the necessary password.
    - Next to Profile scope, click either User or System. The default is User. This option is available only on macOS 10.7 and later.
Android settings

Note:
The default setting for Android is Off.

- **Passcode required**: Select this option to require a passcode and to display the configuration options for an Android passcode device policy. The page expands to let you configure settings for passcode requirements, passcode security, encryption, and Samsung SAFE.

- **Passcode requirements**
  - **Minimum length**: In the list, click the minimum passcode length. The default is 6.
  - **Biometric recognition**: Select whether to enable biometric recognition. If you enable this option, the Required characters field is hidden. The default is Off.
  - **Required characters**: In the list, click No Restriction, Both numbers and letters, Numbers only, or Letters only to configure how passcodes are composed. The default is No restriction.
  - **Advanced rules**: Select whether to apply advanced passcode rules. The default is Off.
  - When you enable Advanced rules, from each of the following lists, click the minimum number of each character type that a passcode must contain:
    - **Symbols**: The minimum number of symbols.
    - **Letters**: The minimum number of letters.
    - **Lowercase letters**: The minimum number of lowercase letters.
    - **Uppercase letters**: The minimum number of uppercase letters.
    - **Numbers or symbols**: The minimum number of numbers or symbols.
    - **Numbers**: The minimum number of numbers.
• **Passcode security**
  
  - **Lock device after (minutes of inactivity):** In the list, click the length of time a device can be inactive before it is locked. The default is **None**.
  
  - **Passcode expiration in days (1-730):** Type the number of days after which the passcode expires. Valid values are 1-730. The default is **0**, which means the passcode never expires.
  
  - **Previous passwords saved (0-50):** Type the number of used passwords to save. Users are unable to use any password found in this list. Valid values are 0-50. The default is **0**, which means users can reuse passwords.
  
  - **Maximum failed sign-on attempts:** In the list, click the number of times a user can fail to sign in successfully after which the device is wiped. The default is **Not defined**.

• **Encryption**
  
  - **Enable encryption:** Select whether to enable encryption. The option is available regardless of the **Passcode required** setting.

    To encrypt their devices, users must start with a charged battery and keep the device plugged in for the hour or more that encryption takes. If they interrupt the encryption process, they may lose some or all of the data on their devices. After a device is encrypted, the process cannot be reversed except by doing a factory reset, which erases all the data on the device.

• **Samsung SAFE**
  
  **Note:**

  As a workaround for disabling face or Iris recognition on Samsung SAFE devices: Create a Restrictions device policy for Samsung SAFE. In the Restrictions policy, turn on **Disable Applications** and add `com.samsung.android.bio.face.service` or `com.samsung.android.server.iris` to the table. Then, deploy the Restrictions policy.

  - **Use same passcode across all users:** Select whether to use the same passcode for all users. The default is **Off**. This setting applies only to Samsung SAFE devices and is available regardless of the **Passcode required** setting.

    When you enable **Use same passcode across all users**, type the passcode to be used by all users in the **Passcode** field.

    When you enable **Passcode required**, configure the following Samsung SAFE settings:

    * **Changed characters:** Type the number of characters users must change from their previous passcode. The default is **0**.

    * **Number of times a character can occur:** Type the maximum number of times a character can occur in a passcode. The default is **0**.

    * **Alphabetic sequence length:** Type the maximum length of an alphabetic sequence in a passcode. The default is **0**.
* **Numeric sequence length:** Type the maximum length of a numeric sequence in a passcode. The default is 0.

* **Allow users to make password visible:** Select whether users can make their passcodes visible. The default is On.

* **Configure biometric authentication.** Select whether to enable biometric authentication. The default is Off. If you set it to On, you can set these options:
  - **Allow fingerprint.** Select to allow users to authenticate using a fingerprint.
  - **Allow iris.** Select to allow users to authenticate using an iris.

* **Forbidden strings:** You create forbidden strings to prevent users from using insecure strings that are easy to guess like “password”, “pwd”, “welcome”, “123456”, “111111”, and so on. For each string you want to deny, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **Forbidden strings:** Type the string users may not use.
  - Click **Save** to add the string or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the string.

### Samsung KNOX settings

- **Passcode requirements**
  - **Minimum length:** In the list, click the minimum passcode length. The default is 6.
  - **Allow users to make password visible:** Select whether to let users make the password visible.
  - **Forbidden strings:** You create forbidden strings to prevent users from using insecure strings that are easy to guess like “password”, “pwd”, “welcome”, “123456”, “111111”, and so on. For each string you want to deny, click **Add** and then do the following:
    - **Forbidden strings:** Type the string users may not use.
* Click **Save** to add the string or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the string.

- **Minimum number of**
  - **Changed characters:** Type the number of characters users must change from their previous passcode. The default is 0.
  - **Symbols:** Type the minimum number of required symbols in a passcode. The default is 0.

- **Maximum number of**
  - **Number of times a character can occur:** Type the maximum number of times a character can occur in a passcode. The default is 0.
  - **Alphabetic sequence length:** Type the maximum length of an alphabetic sequence in a passcode. The default is 0.
  - **Numeric sequence length:** Type the maximum length of a numeric sequence in a passcode. The default is 0.

- **Passcode security**
  - **Lock device after (minutes of inactivity):** In the list, click the number of seconds a device can be inactive before it is locked. The default is **None**.
  - **Passcode expiration in days (1-730):** Type the number of days after which the passcode expires. Valid values are 1-730. The default is 0, which means the passcode never expires.
  - **Previous passwords saved (0-50):** Type the number of used passwords to save. Users are unable to use any password found in this list. Valid values are 0-50. The default is 0, which means users can reuse passwords.
  - **If the number of failed sign on attempts is exceeded, the device is locked:** In the list, click the number of times a user can fail to sign on successfully after which the device is locked. The default is **Not defined**.
  - **If the number of failed sign on attempts is exceeded, the device is wiped:** In the list, click the number of times a user can fail to sign on successfully, after which the KNOX container (along with the KNOX data) is wiped from the device. Users need to reinitialize the KNOX container after the wiping occurs. The default is **Not defined**.
Android Enterprise settings

- **Device Passcode Required**: Enable this setting to require a passcode and to display the configuration options for an Android Enterprise Passcode device policy. The page expands to let you configure settings for passcode requirements and passcode security. You configure a passcode requirement for the work profile only or for the device. The default is **Off**.

- **Work profile security challenge**: Enable this setting to require users to complete a security challenge for access to apps running in an Android Enterprise work profile. This option is not available for Android devices earlier than Android 7.0. The default is **OFF**.

- **Passcode requirements for work profile security challenge**:
  - **Minimum length**: In the list, click the minimum passcode length. The default is 6.
  - **Biometric recognition**: Select whether to enable biometric recognition. If you enable this option, the **Required characters** field is hidden. The default is **OFF**. This feature isn’t currently supported.
  - **Required characters**: In the list, click **No Restriction**, **Both numbers and letters**, **Numbers only**, or **Letters only** to configure how passcodes are composed. Use **No restrictions** only for devices running Android 7.0. Android 7.1 and later don’t honor the **No restrictions** setting. The default is **Both numbers and letters**.
  - **Advanced rules**: Select whether to apply advanced passcode rules. The default is **Off**.
  - When you enable **Advanced rules**, from each of the following lists, click the minimum number of each character type that a passcode must contain:
* Symbols: The minimum number of symbols.
* Letters: The minimum number of letters.
* Lowercase letters: The minimum number of lowercase letters.
* Uppercase letters: The minimum number of uppercase letters.
* Numbers or symbols: The minimum number of numbers or symbols.
* Numbers: The minimum number of numbers.

- **Passcode security for work profile security challenge**
  - Maximum failed sign-on attempts: In the list, click the number of times a user can fail to sign on successfully, after which the KNOX container (along with the KNOX data) is wiped from the device. Users need to reinitialize the KNOX container after the wiping occurs. The default is **Not defined**.
  - Lock device after (minutes of inactivity): In the list, click the number of minutes a device can be inactive before it is locked. The default is **None**
  - Passcode expiration in days (1-730): Type the number of days after which the passcode expires. Valid values are 1-730. The default is **0**, which means the passcode never expires.
  - Previous passwords saved (0-50): Type the number of used passwords to save. Users are unable to use any password found in this list. Valid values are 0-50. The default is **0**, which means users can reuse passwords.

**Windows Phone settings**

- **Passcode required**: Select this option to not require a passcode for Windows Phone devices. The default setting is **On**, which requires a passcode. The page collapses and the following options disappear when you disable this setting.
- **Allow simple passcodes**: Select whether to allow simple passcodes. Simple passcodes are a repeated or sequential set of characters. The default is OFF.

- **Passcode requirements**
  - **Minimum length**: In the list, click the minimum passcode length. The default is 6.
  - **Characters required**: In the list, click Numeric or alphanumeric, Letters only, or Numbers only to configure how passcodes are composed. The default is Letters only.
  - **Minimum number of symbols**: In the list, click the number of symbols the passcode must contain. The default is 1.

- **Passcode security**
  - **Lock device after (minutes of inactivity)**: Type the number of minutes a device can be inactive before it is locked. The default is 0.
  - **Passcode expiration in 0-730 days**: Type the number of days after which the passcode expires. Valid values are 0-730. The default is 0, which means the passcode never expires.
  - **Previous passwords saved (0-50)**: Type the number of used passwords to save. Users are unable to use any password found in this list. Valid values are 0-50. The default is 0, which means users can reuse passwords.
  - **Maximum failed sign-on attempts before wipe (0-999)**: Type the number of times a user can fail to sign on successfully after which corporate data is wiped from the device. The default is 0.

**Windows Desktop/Tablet settings**

- **Disallow convenience logon**: Select whether to allow users to access their devices with picture passwords or biometric logons. The default is Off.
• **Minimum passcode length:** In the list, click the minimum passcode length. The default is 6.
• **Maximum passcode attempts before wipe:** In the list, click the number of times a user can fail to sign in successfully after which corporate data is wiped from the device. The default is 4.
• **Passcode expiration in days (0-730):** Type the number of days after which the passcode expires. Valid values are 0-730. The default is 0, which means the passcode never expires.
• **Passcode history: (1-24):** Type the number of used passcodes to save. Users are unable to use any passcode found in this list. Valid values are 1-24. You must enter a number between 1 and 24 in this field. The default is 0.
• **Maximum inactivity before device lock in minutes (1-999):** Type the length of time in minutes that a device can be inactive before it is locked. Valid values are 1-999. You must enter a number between 1 and 999 in this field. The default is 0.

**Passcode lock grace period device policy**

December 17, 2018

The Passcode lock grace period device policy is for Shared iPads. For more information about Shared iPads, see Integrate with Apple Education features.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.

**iOS settings**

• **Passcode Lock Grace Period:** The number of minutes that a Shared iPad screen stays locked before the user must enter a passcode to unlock the screen. Changing this setting to a less restrictive value doesn't take effect until a user signs out. Default is **Immediately**.

By default, the Shared iPad locks itself automatically after two minutes of inactivity.
Personal hotspot device policy

December 17, 2018

You can allow users to connect to the Internet when they are not in range of a WiFi network by using the cellular data connection through their iOS devices’ personal hotspot functionality.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

iOS settings

- Disable personal hotspot: Select whether to disable the personal hotspot functionality on user devices. The default is Off, which switches off the personal hotspot on users devices. This policy does not disable the functionality. Users can still use the personal hotspot on their devices, but when the policy is deployed, the personal hotspot is turned off so that it doesn’t remain on by default.

Power management device policy

August 21, 2018

The Power management device policy lets you control how Chrome OS devices respond to idle periods when using AC or battery power.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.
Chrome OS settings

The following settings appear for both AC and Battery.

- **Idle delay**: The length of time without user input before taking the idle action. Specify in minutes. Default for AC is 60 minutes. Default for Battery is 10 minutes.

- **Idle warning delay**: The length of time without user input before showing a warning dialog. Specify in minutes. Default for AC is 58 minutes. Default for Battery is 8 minutes. (2 minutes before the Idle delay action starts).

- **Screen dim delay**: The length of time without user input before dimming the screen. Specify in minutes. Default for AC is 3 minutes. Default for Battery is 1 minute.

- **Screen off delay**: The length of time without user input before turning off the screen. Specify in minutes. Default for AC is 10 minutes. Default for Battery is 3 minutes.

- **Idle action**: Action to take after reaching the idle delay. Options are Suspend, Logout, Shut-down, Do Nothing. Default is Suspend.

Profile Removal device policy

August 21, 2018

You can create an app profile removal device policy in Endpoint Management. The policy, when deployed, removes the app profile from users’ iOS or macOS devices.
To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.

**iOS settings**

- **Profile ID**: In the list, click the app profile ID. This field is required.
- **Comment**: Type an optional comment.

**macOS settings**

- **Profile ID**: In the list, click the app profile ID. This field is required.
- **Deployment scope**: In the list, click either **User** or **System**. The default is **User**. This option is available only on macOS 10.7 and later.
- **Comment**: Type an optional comment.
When you develop and code sign an iOS enterprise app, you usually include an enterprise distribution provisioning profile, which Apple requires for the app to run on an iOS device. If a provisioning profile is missing or has expired, the app crashes when a user taps to open it.

The primary problem with provisioning profiles is that they expire one year after they are generated on the Apple Developer Portal and you must keep track of the expiration dates for all your provisioning profiles on all iOS devices enrolled by your users. Tracking the expiration dates not only involves keeping track of the actual expiration dates, but also which users are using which version of the app. Two solutions are to email provisioning profiles to users or to put them on a web portal for download and installation. These solutions work, but they are prone to error because they require users to react to instructions in an email or to go to the web portal and download the correct profile and then install it.

To make this process transparent to users, in Endpoint Management you can install and remove provisioning profiles with device policies. Missing or expired profiles are removed as necessary and the up-to-date profiles are installed on users’ devices, so that tapping an app simply opens it for use.

Before you can create a provisioning profile policy, you must create a provisioning profile file. For more information, see Creating Provisioning Profiles on the Apple Developer site.

iOS settings

- **iOS provisioning profile**: Select the provisioning profile file to import by clicking **Browse** and then navigating to the file location.
Provisioning profile removal device policy

August 21, 2018

You can remove iOS provisioning profiles with device policies. For more information on provisioning profiles, see Provisioning profile device policy.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

iOS settings

- **iOS provisioning profile**: In the list, click the provisioning profile you want to remove.
- **Comment**: Optionally, add a comment.

Proxy device policy

December 17, 2018

The Proxy device policy specifies global HTTP proxy settings for supported iOS devices. You can deploy only one global HTTP proxy policy per device.

**Note:**
Before deploying this policy, be sure to set all iOS devices for which you want to set a global HTTP proxy into Supervised mode. For details, see To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

iOS settings

- **Proxy configuration**: Click Manual or Automatic for how the proxy will be configured on users’ devices.
  - If you click Manual, configure these settings:
    * **Hostname or IP address for the proxy server**: Type the host name or IP address of the proxy server. This field is required.
    * **Port for the proxy server**: Type the proxy server port number. This field is required.
    * **User name**: Type an optional user name to authenticate to the proxy server.
    * **Password**: Type an optional password to authenticate to the proxy server.
  - If you click Automatic, configure these settings:
* **Proxy PAC URL:** Type URL of the PAC file that defines the proxy configuration.
* **Allow direct connection if PAC is unreachable:** Select whether to allow users to connect directly to the destination if the PAC file is unreachable. The default is **On**.

**Policy Settings**

- Next to **Remove policy**, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in hours)**.
- If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
- In the **Allow user to remove policy list**, click **Always**, **Password required**, or **Never**.
- If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

### Restrictions device policy

**January 25, 2019**

**Note:**

When an upgrade includes new Restrictions device policy settings, you must edit and save the policy. Endpoint Management doesn’t deploy the upgraded Restrictions device policy until you save it.

The Restrictions device policy allows or restricts certain features or functionality on user devices, such as the camera. You can set security restrictions and restrictions on media content. You can also set restrictions on the types of apps users can and cannot install. Most of the restriction settings default to **On**, or **allows**. The main exceptions are the iOS Security - Force feature and all Windows Tablet features, which default to **Off**, or **restricts**.

For Windows 10 RS2 Phone: After a Custom XML policy or Restrictions policy that disables Internet Explorer deploys to the phone, the browser remains enabled. To work around this issue, restart the phone. This issue is a third-party issue.

**Tip:**

Any option for which you select **On** means that the user can perform the operation or use the feature. For example:

**Camera.** If **On**, the user can use the camera on their device. If **Off**, the user cannot use the camera on their device.

**Screen shots.** If **On**, the user can take screenshots on their device. If **Off**, the user cannot take screenshots on their device.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.
iOS settings

Some of the iOS restrictions options apply only to specific versions of iOS (and, where applicable, these versions are noted on the Endpoint Management console page). Also, some options only apply if the device is placed in supervised mode. For the steps on setting an iOS device to supervised mode, see To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator.

- **Allow hardware controls**
  - **Camera**: Allow users to use the camera on their devices.
    - **FaceTime**: Allow users to use FaceTime on their devices. For supervised iOS devices.
  - **Screen shots**: Allow users to take screenshots on their devices.
    - **Allow the Classroom app to remotely observe student screens**: If this restriction is unselected, an instructor can’t use the Classroom app to remotely observe student screens. The default setting is selected, an instructor can use the Classroom app to observe student screens. The setting for Allow the Classroom app to perform AirPlay and View Screen without prompting determines whether students receive a prompt to give the instructor permission. For supervised iOS devices.
    - **Allow the Classroom app to perform AirPlay and View Screen without prompting**: If this restriction is selected, the instructor can perform AirPlay and View Screen on a student device, without prompting for permission. The default setting is unselected. For supervised iOS devices.
  - **Photo streams**: Allow users to use MyPhotoStream to share photos through iCloud to all their iOS devices.
  - **Shared photo streams**: Allow users to use iCloud Photo Sharing to share photos with
coworkers, friends, and family.

- **Voice dialing**: Enables voice dialing on user devices.
- **Siri**: Allows users to use Siri.
  - *Allow while device is locked*: Allow users to use Siri while their devices are locked.
  - *Siri profanity filter*: Enable the Siri profanity filter. The default is to restrict this feature, which means no profanity filtering is done.
    For more information about Siri and security, see [Siri and dictation policies](#).
- **Installing apps**: Allow users to install apps. For supervised iOS devices.
- **Allow global background fetch while roaming**: Allow devices to automatically sync mail accounts to iCloud while the device is roaming. When **Off**, disables global background fetch activity when an iOS phone is roaming. Defaults to **On**.

- **Allow apps**
  - **iTunes Store**: Allow users to access the iTunes Store. For supervised iOS devices.
  - **In-app purchases**: Allow users to make in-app purchases.
    - *Require iTunes password for purchases*: Require a password for in-app purchases. The default is to restrict this feature, which means no password is required for in-app purchases.
  - **Safari**: Allow users to access Safari. For supervised iOS devices.
    - *Autofill*: Allow users to set up autofill for user names and passwords on Safari.
    - *Force fraud warning*: If this setting is enabled and users visit a suspected phishing website, Safari alerts users. The default is to restrict this feature, which means no warnings are issued.
    - *Enable JavaScript*: Allow JavaScript to run on Safari.
    - *Block pop-ups*: Block pop-ups while viewing websites. The default is to restrict this feature, which means pop-ups are not blocked.
  - **Accept cookies**: Set to what extent cookies are accepted. In the list, choose an option to allow or restrict cookies. The default option is **Always**, which allows all websites to save cookies in Safari. Other options are **Current website only**, **Never**, and **From visited sites only**.

- **Network - Allow iCloud actions**
  - **iCloud documents and data**: Allow users to sync documents and data to iCloud. For supervised iOS devices.
  - **iCloud backup**: Allow users to back up their devices to iCloud.
  - **iCloud keychain**: Allow users to store passwords, WiFi network, credit card, and other information in the iCloud Keychain.
  - **Cloud photo library**: Allow users to access their iCloud photo library.

- **Security - Force**

  The default is to restrict the following features, which means no security features are enabled.
- **Encrypted backups**: Force backups to iCloud to be encrypted.
- **Limited ad tracking**: Block targeted ad tracking.
- **Passcode on first Airplay pairing**: Require that AirPlay-enabled devices are verified with a one-time onscreen code before they can use AirPlay.
- **Paired Apple Watch to use Wrist Detection**: Require a paired Apple Watch to use Wrist Detection.
- **Sharing managed documents using AirDrop**: AirDrop access is a supervised option. Setting this option to On allows supervised devices to use AirDrop to share data and media with nearby iOS devices.

**Security - Allow**

- **Accepting untrusted SSL certificates**: Allow users to accept web sites’ untrusted SSL certificates.
- **Automatic update to certificate trust settings**: Allow trusted certificates to be updated automatically.
- **Documents from managed apps in unmanaged apps**: Allow users to move data from managed (corporate) apps to unmanaged (personal) apps.
- **Documents from unmanaged apps in managed apps**: Allow users to move data from unmanaged (personal) apps to managed (corporate) apps.
- **Diagnostic submission to Apple**: Allow anonymous diagnostic data about users’ devices to be sent to Apple.
- **Touch ID to unlock device**: Allow users to use their fingerprints to unlock their devices.
- **Passbook notifications when locked**: Allow Passbook notifications to appear on the lock screen.
- **Handoff**: Allow users to transfer activities from one iOS device to another nearby iOS device.
- **iCloud sync for managed apps**: Allow users to sync managed apps to iCloud.
- **Backup for enterprise books**: Allow enterprise books to be backed up to iCloud.
- **Notes and highlights sync for enterprise books**: Allow notes and highlights users have added to enterprise books to be synced to iCloud.
- **Enterprise app trust**: Allow enterprise applications to be trusted.
- **Internet results in Spotlight**: Allow Spotlight to show search results from the Internet as well as the device.
- **Unmanaged apps read managed contacts**: Optional. Only available if Documents from managed apps in unmanaged apps is disabled. If this policy is enabled, unmanaged apps can read data from managed accounts’ contacts. Default is Off.
- **Managed apps write unmanaged contacts**: Optional. If enabled, allow managed apps to write contacts to unmanaged accounts’ contacts. If Documents from managed apps in unmanaged apps is enabled, this restriction has no effect. Default is Off.

**Supervised only settings - Allow**
These settings apply only to supervised devices. For the steps on setting an iOS device to supervised mode, see To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator.

- **Erase all content and settings:** Allow users to erase all content and settings from their devices.

- **Configuring restrictions:** Allow users to configure parental controls on their devices.

- **Podcasts:** Allow users to download and sync podcasts.

- **Installing configuration profiles:** Allow users to install a configuration profile other than that the one deployed by you.

- **Fingerprint modification:** Allow users to change or delete their Touch ID fingerprint.

- **Installing apps from device:**

- **Keyboard shortcuts:** Allow users to create custom keyboard shortcuts for words or phrases that they use often.

- **Paired Apple watch:** Allow users to pair an Apple Watch to a supervised device.

- **Passcode modification:** Allow users to change the passcode on a supervised device.

- **Device name modification:** Allow users to change the name of their device.

- **Wallpaper modification:** Allow user to change the wallpaper on their devices.

- **Automatically downloading apps** Allow apps to download.

- **AirDrop:** Allow users to share photos, videos, websites, locations, and more with nearby iOS devices.

- **iMessage:** Allow users to text over Wi-Fi with iMessage.

- **Siri user-generated content:** Allow Siri to query user-generated content from the web. Consumers, not traditional journalists; produce user-generated content. For example, content found on Twitter or Facebook is user-generated.

- **iBooks:** Allow users to use the iBooks app.

- **Removing apps:** Allow users to remove apps from their devices.

- **Game Center:** Allow users to play online games through Game Center on their devices.
  
  * **Add friends:** Allow users to send a notification to a friend to play a game.
  
  * **Multiplayer gaming:** Allow users to start multiplayer game play on their devices.

- **Modifying account settings:** Allow users to modify their device account settings.

- **Modifying app cellular data settings:** Allow users to modify how apps use cellular data.

- **Modifying Find My Friends settings:** Allow users to change their Find My Friends settings.
- **Pairing with non-Configurator hosts**: Allow admin to control to which devices a user device can pair. Disabling this setting prevents pairing except with the supervising host running the Apple Configurator. If no supervising host certificate is configured, all pairing is disabled.

- **Predictive keyboards**: Allow user devices to use the predictive keyboard for suggesting words as they type. Disable this option in situations such as administering standardized tests where you do not want users to have access to suggested words.

- **Keyboard auto-corrections**: Allow user devices to use keyboard autocorrect. Disable this option in situations such as administering standardized tests where you do not want users to have access to autocorrect.

- **Keyboard spell-check**: Allow user devices to use spell checking while typing. Disable this option in situations such as administering standardized tests where you do not want users to have access to the spell-checker.

- **Definition lookup**: Allow user devices to use definition look-up while typing. Disable this option in situations such as administering standardized tests where you do not want users to be able to look up definitions as they type.

- **Single App bundle ID**: Create a list of apps that are allowed to retain control over the device and prevent interaction with other apps or functions.
  To add an app, click **Add**, type an **App name**, and click **Save**. Repeat that process for each app you want to add.

- **News**: Allow users to use the News app.

- **Apple Music service**: Allow users to use the Apple Music service. If you don’t allow Apple Music service, the Music app runs in classic mode.

- **iTunes Radio**: Allow users to use iTunes Radio.

- **Notifications modification**: Allow users to modify notification settings.

- **Restricted App usage**: Allow users to use all apps or to use or not use apps, based on the bundle IDs you provide. Applies only to supervised devices.

**Note:**

Beginning with iOS 11, Apple introduced changes to the policies that are available to app restrictions. Apple no longer lets you remove access to the Settings app and the Phone app by restricting the appropriate iOS application bundle.

After you configure the Restrictions device policy to block some apps and then deploy the policy: If you later want to allow some or all of those apps, changing and deploying the Restrictions device policy doesn’t change the restrictions. In this case, iOS doesn’t apply
the changes to the iOS profile. To proceed, use the Profile Removal policy to remove the
iOS Profile and then deploy the updated Restrictions device policy.

If you change this setting to **Only allow some apps**: Before deploying this policy, advise
users of devices enrolled using Apple DEP to sign in to their Apple accounts from the Setup
Assistant. Otherwise, users might have to disable two-factor authentication on their de-
vices to sign in to their Apple accounts and access allowed apps.

- **Diagnostic submission modification**: Allow users to modify the diagnostic submission
  and app analytics settings in the **Settings > Diagnostics & Usage** pane.

- **Bluetooth modification**: Allow users to modify Bluetooth settings.

- **Allow dictation**: Supervised only. If this restriction is set to **Off**, dictation input is not
  allowed. The default setting is **On**.

- **Join only WiFi networks installed by a WiFi policy**: Optional. Supervised only. If this re-
  striction is set to **On**, the device can join WiFi networks only when they were set up through
  a configuration profile. The default setting is **Off**.

- **Allow the Classroom app to perform AirPlay and View Screen without prompting**: If
  this restriction is selected, the instructor can perform AirPlay and View Screen on a student
device, without prompting for permission. The default setting is unselected. For super-
vised iOS devices.

- **Allow the Classroom app to lock to an app and lock the device without prompting**: If
  this restriction is set to **On**, the Classroom app automatically locks user devices to an
  app and locks the device, without prompting the users. The default setting is **Off**. For
  supervised devices running iOS 11 (minimum version).

- **Automatically join the Classroom app classes without prompting**: If this restriction is
  set to **On**, the Classroom app automatically joins users to classes, without prompting the
  users. The default setting is **Off**. For supervised devices running iOS 11 (minimum version).

- **Allow AirPrint**: If this restriction is set to **Off**, users can’t print with AirPrint. The default
  setting is **On**. When this restriction is **On**, these extra restrictions appear. For supervised
  devices running iOS 11 (minimum version).

  - **Allow storage of AirPrint credentials in Keychain**: If this restriction is unselected, the
    AirPrint user name and password aren’t stored in the Keychain. The default setting
    is selected. For supervised devices running iOS 11 (minimum version).

  - **Allow discovery of AirPrint printers by using iBeacons**: If this restriction is unse-
    lected, iBeacon discovery of AirPrint printers is disabled. This prevents spurious Air-
    Print Bluetooth beacons from phishing for network traffic. The default setting is se-
    lected. For supervised devices running iOS 11 (minimum version).
* Allow AirPrint only to destinations with trusted certificates: If this restriction is selected, users can use AirPrint to print only to destinations with trusted certificates. The default setting is unselected. For supervised devices running iOS 11 (minimum version).

- **Adding VPN configurations**: If this restriction is set to **Off**, users can't create VPN configurations. The default setting is **On**. For supervised devices running iOS 11 (minimum version).

- **Modifying cellular plan settings**: If this restriction is set to **Off**, users can’t modify cellular plan settings. The default setting is **On**. For supervised devices running iOS 11 (minimum version).

- **Removing system apps**: If this restriction is set to **Off**, users can’t remove system apps from their device. The default setting is **On**. For supervised devices running iOS 11 (minimum version).

- **Setting up new nearby devices**: If this restriction is set to Off, users can’t set up new nearby devices. The default setting is **On**. For supervised devices running iOS 11 (minimum version).

- **Allow USB restricted mode**: If **Off**, the device can always connect to USB accessories while locked. Default is **On**. Available only for supervised iOS 11.3 and later devices.

- **Force delayed software updates**: If **On**, delays user visibility of Software Updates. With this restriction in place, the user doesn’t see a software update until the specified number of days after the software update release date. Default is **Off**. Available only for supervised iOS 11.3 and later devices.

- **Enforced software update delay (days)**: Allows you to specify a number of days to delay a software update on the device. The maximum delay is **90** days. Default is **30** days. Available only for supervised iOS 11.3 and later devices.

- **Force classroom request permission to leave classes**: If **On**, a student enrolled in an unmanaged course with Classroom must request permission from the teacher when attempting to leave the course. Default is **Off**. Available only for supervised iOS 11.3 and later devices.

- **Force automatic date and time**: Allows you to automatically set the date and time on supervised devices. If **On**, device users can’t turn off Set Automatically under **General > Date & Time**. The time zone on the device updates only when the device can determine its location. That is, when a device has a cellular connection or a WiFi connection with location services enabled. Default is **Off**. Available only for supervised iOS 12 and later devices.
- **Password AutoFill**: Optional. If disabled, users cannot use the AutoFill Passwords or Automatic Strong Passwords features. Default is **On**.

- **Password proximity requests**: Optional. If disabled, users’ devices don’t request passwords from nearby devices. Default is **On**.

- **Password Sharing**: Optional. If disabled, users can’t share their passwords using the AirDrop Passwords feature. Default is **On**.

- **Security - Show in lock screen**
  - **Control Center**: Allow access to Control Center on the lock screen. Control Center lets users easily modify Airplane Mode, WiFi, Bluetooth, Do Not Disturb Mode, and Lock Rotation settings.
  - **Notification**: Allow notifications on the lock screen.
  - **Today view**: Allow Today View, which aggregates information such as the weather and the current day’s calendar items, on the lock screen.

- **Media content - Allow**
  - **Explicit music, podcasts, and iTunes U material**: Allow explicit material on users’ devices.
  - **Explicit sexual content in iBooks**: Allow explicit material to be downloaded from iBooks.
  - **Ratings region**: Set the region from which parental control ratings are obtained. In the list, click a country to set the ratings region. The default is **United States**.
  - **Movies**: Set whether movies are allowed on users’ devices. If movies are allowed, optionally set the ratings level for movies. In the list, click an option to allow or restrict movies on the device. The default is **Allow all movies**.
  - **TV Shows**: Set whether TV shows are allowed on users’ devices. If TV shows are allowed, optionally set the ratings level for TV shows. In the list, click an option to allow or restrict TV shows on the device. The default is **Allow all TV Shows**.
  - **Apps**: Set whether apps are allowed on users’ devices. If apps are allowed, optionally set the ratings level for apps. In the list, click an option to allow or restrict apps on the device. The default is **Allow all apps**.
• **Preferences**
  
  - **Restrict items in System Preferences**: Allow or restrict user access to System Preferences. The default is **Off**, which allows users full access to System Preferences. If enabled, configure the following settings.
    - **System Preference Pane**: Select whether the settings you select are enabled or disabled. The default is to enable all settings, which are **On** by default.
      - Users & Groups
      - General
      - Accessibility
      - App Store
      - Software Update
      - Bluetooth
      - CDs & DVDs
      - Date & Time
      - Desktop & Screen Saver
      - Displays
      - Dock
      - Energy Saver
      - Extensions
      - FibreChannel
      - iCloud
      - Ink
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Internet Accounts
- Keyboard
- Language & Text
- Mission Control
- Mouse
- Network
- Notifications
- Parental Controls
- Printers & Scanners
- Profiles
- Security & Privacy
- Sharing
- Sound
- Diction & Speech
- Spotlight
- Startup Disk
- Time Machine
- Trackpad
- Xsan

- Apps
  - **Allow use of Game Center**: Allow users to play online games through Game Center. The default is **On**.
  - **Allow adding Game Center friends**: Allow users to send a notification to a friend to play a game. The default is **On**.
  - **Allow multiplayer gaming**: Allow users to initiate multiplayer game play. The default is **On**.
  - **Allow Game Center account modification**: Allow users to modify their Game Center account settings. The default is **On**.
  - **Allow App Store adoption**: Allow or restrict the App Store to adopt apps that preexist in OS X. The default is **On**.
  - **Allow Safari Autofill**: Allow Safari to automatically populate fields on websites with passwords, addresses, and other basic information that it has stored. The default is **On**.
  - **Require admin password to install or update apps**: Require an administrator password to install or update apps. The default is **Off**, which means no administrator password is required.
  - **Restrict App Store to software update only**: Restrict the App Store to updates only, which disables all tabs in the App Store except Updates. The default is **Off**, which allows full App Store access.
  - **Restrict which apps are allowed to open**: Restrict or allow apps users can use. The de-
fault is OFF, which allows all apps to be used. If enabled, configure the following settings:
* **Allowed Apps:** Click Add, enter the name and bundle ID for an app allowed to launch, and then click Save. Repeat this step for each app allowed to launch.
* **Disallowed Folders:** Click Add, type the file path to a folder to which you want to restrict user access (for example, /Applications/Utilities), and then click Save. Repeat this step for all folders you do not want users to be able to access.
* **Allowed folders:** Click Add, type the file path to a folder to which you want to grant user access, and then click Save. Repeat this step for all folders you want users to be able to access.

**• Widgets**
  – **Allow only the following Dashboard widgets to run:** Allow or restrict which Dashboard widgets, such as World Clock or Calculator, users are allowed to run. The default is Off, which allows users to run all widgets. If enabled, configure the following setting:
    * **Allowed Widgets:** Click Add, type the name and ID of a widget that is allowed to run, and then click Save. Repeat this step for each widget you want to run on the Dashboard.

**• Media**
  – **Allow AirDrop:** Allow users to share photos, videos, web sites, locations, and more with nearby iOS devices.

**• Sharing**
  – **Automatically enable new sharing services:** Select whether to automatically enable sharing services.
    – **Mail:** Select whether to allow a shared mailbox.
    – **Facebook:** Select whether to allow a shared Facebook account.
    – **Video Services - Flickr, Vimeo, Tudou, and Youku:** Select whether to allow shared video services.
    – **Add to Aperture:** Select whether to allow shared ability to add to Aperture.
    – **Sina Weibo:** Select whether to allow a shared Sina Weibo microblogging account.
    – **Twitter:** Select whether to allow a shared Twitter account.
    – **Messages:** Select whether to allow shared access to messages.
    – **Add to iPhoto:** Select whether to allow shared ability to add to iPhoto.
    – **Add to Reading List:** Select whether to allow shared ability to add to Reading List.
    – **AirDrop:** Select whether to allow a shared AirDrop account.

**• Functionality**
  – **Lock desktop picture:** Select whether users can change the desktop picture. The default is Off, which means users can change the desktop picture.
  – **Allow use of camera:** Select whether users can use the camera on their Macs. The default is Off, which means users cannot use the camera.
  – **Allow Apple Music:** Allow users to use the Apple Music service (macOS 10.12 and later). If
you don’t allow Apple Music service, the Music app runs in classic mode. Applies only to supervised devices. Defaults to On.

- **Allow Spotlight Suggestions:** Select whether users can use Spotlight Suggestions to search their Mac and to provide Spotlight Suggestions from the Internet, iTunes, and the App Store. The default is Off, which prevents users from using Spotlight Suggestions.

- **Allow Look Up:** Select whether users can look up the definitions of words with the context menu or the Spotlight search menu. The default is OFF, which prevents users from using Look Up on their Macs.

- **Allow use of iCloud password for local accounts:** Select whether users can use their Apple ID and iCloud password to sign on to their Macs. Enabling this policy means that users use only one ID and password for all login screens on their Macs. The default is On, which allows users to use their Apple ID and iCloud password to access their Macs.

- **Allow iCloud documents & data:** Select whether to allow users to access documents and data stored on iCloud on their Macs. The default is Off, which prevents users from using iCloud documents and data on their Macs.

  * **Allow iCloud Desktop and Documents:** (macOS 10.12.4 and later) The default is selected.

- **Allow iCloud Keychain Sync:** Allow iCloud Keychain sync (macOS 10.12 and later). The default is On.

- **Allow iCloud Mail:** Allow users to use iCloud Mail (macOS 10.12 and later). The default is On.

- **Allow iCloud Contacts:** Allow users to use iCloud Contacts (macOS 10.12 and later). The default is On.

- **Allow iCloud Calendars:** Allow users to use iCloud Calendars (macOS 10.12 and later). The default is On.

- **Allow iCloud Reminders:** Allow users to use iCloud Reminders (macOS 10.12 and later). The default is On.

- **Allow iCloud Bookmarks:** Allow users to sync with iCloud Bookmarks (macOS 10.12 and later). The default is On.

- **Allow iCloud Notes:** Allow users to use Cloud Notes (macOS 10.12 and later). The default is On.

- **Allow iCloud Photos:** If you change this setting to Off, any photos not fully downloaded from the iCloud Photo Library are removed from local device storage (macOS 10.12 and later). The default is On.

- **Allow Auto Unlock:** For information about this option and Apple Watch, see [https://www.imore.com/auto-unlock](https://www.imore.com/auto-unlock) (macOS 10.12 and later). The default is On.

- **Allow Touch ID To Unlock Mac:** (macOS 10.12.4 and later). The default is On.

- **Force delayed software updates:** If On, this setting delays user visibility of Software Updates. Users don’t see a software update until the specified number of days after the soft-
ware update release date. Default is Off. Available only for supervised devices running macOS 10.13.4 and later.

- **Enforced software update delay (days):** Specifies how many days to delay a software update on the device. The maximum is 90 days. Default is 30. Available only for supervised devices running macOS 10.13.4 and later.

- **Password AutoFill:** Optional. If disabled, users cannot use the AutoFill Passwords or Automatic Strong Passwords features. Default is On.

- **Password proximity requests:** Optional. If disabled, users’ devices don’t request passwords from nearby devices. Default is On.

- **Password Sharing:** Optional. If disabled, users can’t share their passwords using the AirDrop Passwords feature. Default is On.

**tvOS settings**

- **Security and Media Settings - Allow**
  - **Passcode on first AirPlay pairing:** Require that AirPlay-enabled devices are verified with a one-time onscreen code before they can use AirPlay.
  - **Explicit sexual content in iBooks:** Allow explicit material to be downloaded from iBooks.
  - **Explicit music, podcasts, and iTunes U material:** Allow explicit material on user devices.
  - **In-app purchases:** Allow users to make in-app purchases.
    - **Require iTunes password for purchases:** Require a password for in-app purchases. The default is to restrict this feature, which means no password is required for in-app purchases.

- **Supervised only settings - Allow**
  - **Device name modification:** Allow users to change the name of their device.
  - **Allow pairing with Apple TV Remote app:** Allow users to pair their device with the Apple TV Remote app.
  - **Siri profanity filter:** Enable the Siri profanity filter. The default is to restrict this feature, which means no profanity filtering is done. For more information about Siri and security, see [Siri and dictation policies](#).
  - **Enable AirPlay:** Allow users to stream content or mirror their iOS device screen on this device.
  - **Restricted App usage:** Allow users to use all apps or to use or not use apps, based on the bundle IDs you provide. Applies only to supervised devices.

After you configure the Restrictions device policy to block some apps and then deploy the policy: If you later want to allow some or all of those apps, changing and deploying the Restrictions device policy doesn’t change the restrictions. In this case, iOS doesn’t apply the changes to the iOS profile.

If you change this setting to **Only allow some apps:** Before deploying this policy, advise
users of devices enrolled using Apple DEP to sign in to their Apple accounts from the Setup Assistant. Otherwise, users might have to disable two-factor authentication on their devices to sign in to their Apple accounts and access allowed apps.

Android settings

- **Camera**: Allow users to use the camera on their devices. If Off, the camera is disabled. Defaults to On.

Android Enterprise settings

By default, the **USB Debugging and Unknown Sources** settings are disabled on a device when it is enrolled in Android Enterprise in work profile mode.

- **Debugging**: Allows debugging over USB. Default is Off.
- **File transfer**: Allows file transfers over USB. Default is Off.
- **Tethering**: Allows users to configure portable hotspots and tether data. Default is Off.
- **Allow Non-Google Play apps**: Allows the installation of apps from stores other than Google Play. Default is Off.
- **Allow copy and paste**: Allows or prevents use of the clipboard to copy and paste between apps in the Android Enterprise profile and apps in the personal area. Default is Off.
- **Enable app verification**: Enables the OS to scan apps to detect malicious behavior. Default is On.
- **Allow user control of application settings**: Allows users to uninstall apps, disable apps, clear cache and data, force stop any app, and clear defaults. Default is **Off**.
- **Allow work profile contacts in device contacts**: Shows contacts from the managed Android Enterprise profile in the parent profile, for incoming calls (Android 7.0 and later). Default is **Off**.
- **Allow screen capture**: Allows users to record or take a screen capture of the device screen. Default is **Off**.
- **Allow use of the status bar**: If set to **On**, this setting disables the status bar on managed devices and dedicated devices (also known as COSU devices). This disables notifications, quick settings, and other screen overlays that allow escape from full-screen mode. Users can go to system settings and see notifications. For Android 6.0 and later. Default is **Off**.
- **Keep the keyguard from locking the device**: If set to **On**, this setting disables the keyguard on the lock screen on managed devices and dedicated devices (also known as COSU devices). Default is **Off**.
- **Allow account management**: Allows account to me added to in work profile and managed devices. Default is **Off**.
- **Allow location services**: Allows location sharing. For managed profiles, the device owner can override this setting. Default is **Off**.
- **Allow use of camera**: Allows users to take pictures and make videos with the device camera. Default is **Off**.
- **Allow work profile app widgets on home screen**: If this setting is **On**, users can place work profile app widgets on the device home screen. Select an app whose widgets you want to allow on the home screen from the list. Click **Save**. Repeat that process to allow more app widgets. If this setting is **Off**, users cannot place work profile app widgets on the device home screen. Default is **Off**.
- **Keep the device screen on**: If this setting is set to **On**, the device screen remains on when the device is plugged in. Default is **Off**.
Some options are available only under specific Samsung Mobile Device Management APIs. Those options are marked with the relevant version information.

- **Allow hardware controls**
  - **Enable ODE Trusted Boot Verification**: Use ODE trusted boot verification to establish a chain of trust from the bootloader to the system image.
  - **Allow Development Mode**: Allow users to enable the developer settings on their devices.
  - **Allow Emergency Call Only**: Allow users to enable Emergency Call Only mode on their devices.
  - **Allow Firmware Recovery**: Allow users to recover the firmware on their devices.
  - **Allow Fast Encryption**: Allow encryption of only used memory space. This is in contrast to full disk encryption, which encrypts all data, including settings, application data, downloaded files and applications, media, and other files.
  - **Common Criteria Mode**: Place device into Common Criteria Mode. The Common Criteria configuration enforces stringent security processes.
  - **Factory Reset**: Allow users to do a factory reset on their devices.
  - **Date Time Change**: Allow users to change the date and time on their devices.
  - **DOD reboot banner**: Display a DoD approved system use notification message or banner when users’ devices are restarted.
  - **Settings changes**: Allow users to change settings on their devices.
  - **Backup**: Allow users to back up application and system data on their devices.
  - **Over The Air Upgrade**: Allow users’ devices to receive software updates wirelessly (MDM 3.0 and later).
- **Background data**: Allow apps to sync data in the background.
- **Camera**: Allow users to use the camera on their devices.
- **Clipboard**: Allow users to copy data to the clipboard on their devices.
  - **Clipboard share**: Allow users to share clipboard content between their devices and a computer (MDM 4.0 and later).
- **Home key**: Allow users to use the **Home** key on their devices.
- **Microphone**: Allow users to use the microphone on their devices.
- **Mock location**: Allow users to fake their GPS location.
- **NFC**: Allow users to use NFC (Near Field Communication) on their devices (MDM 3.0 and later).
- **Power off**: Allow users to turn off their devices (MDM 3.0 and later).
- **Screenshot**: Allow users to take screenshots on their devices.
- **SD card**: Allow users to use an SD card, if available, with their devices.
- **Voice Dialer**: Allow users to use the voice dialer on their devices (MDM 4.0 and later).
- **SBeam**: Allow users to share content with others using NFC and Wi-Fi Direct (MDM 4.0 and later).
- **SVoice**: Allow users to use the intelligent personal assistant and knowledge navigator on their devices (MDM 4.0 and later).
- **Allow multiple users**: Allow multiple users to use a device (MDM 4.0 and later). Defaults to **Off**.
- **Allow apps**
  - **Browser**: Allow users to use the web browser.
  - **Youtube**: Allow users to access YouTube.
  - **Google Play/Marketplace**: Allow users to access Google Play and the Google Apps Marketplace.
  - **Allow Non-Google Play apps**: Allow users to download apps from sites other than Google Play and the Google Apps Marketplace. If **On**, a user can use the security settings on their device to trust apps from unknown sources.
  - **Stop system app**: Allow users to disable pre-installed system apps (MDM 4.0 and later).
  - **Disable applications**: If **On**, blocks a specified list of apps from running on Samsung SAFE devices. To disable an installed app, change the setting to **On** and then click **Add** in the **Application List** table.
- **Application List**: A list of the apps you want to block. Set **Disable applications** to **On** and add the app. Type the app package name. Changing and deploying an app list overwrites the prior app list. For example: If you disable com.example1 and com.example2, and then later change the list to com.example1 and com.example3, Endpoint Management enables com.example.2.
- **Network**
  - **Incoming Mms**: Allow users to receive MMS messages.
  - **Incoming Sms**: Allow users to receive SMS messages.
- **Outgoing Mms**: Allow users to send MMS messages.
- **Outgoing Sms**: Allow users send SMS messages.
- **User Add profiles Vpn**:
  - **Bluetooth**: Allow users to use Bluetooth.
    - **Tethering**: Allow users to share a mobile data connection with another device using their Bluetooth connection.
  - **WiFi**: Allow users to connect to WiFi networks.
    - **Tethering**: Allow users to share a mobile data connection with another device using their WiFi connection.
    - **Direct**: Allow users to connect directly to another device through their WiFi connection (MDM 4.0 and later).
    - **State Change**: Allow apps to change WiFi connectivity state.
    - **User Policy Changes**: Allow users to change WiFi policies. If not selected, users can change only the WiFi user name and password. If selected, users can change all WiFi policies.
- **Tethering**: Allow users to share a mobile data connection with another device.
- **Cellular data**: Allow users to use their cellular connection for data.
- **Allow roaming**: Allow users to use cellular data while roaming. The default is OFF, which disables roaming on users’ devices.
- **Only secure connections**: Allow users to only use secure connections (MDM 4.0 and later).
- **Android beam**: Allow users to send web pages, photos, videos, or other content from their devices to another device using NFC (MDM 4.0 and later).
- **Audio record**: Allow users to record audio with their devices (MDM 4.0 and later).
- **Video record**: Allow users to record video with their devices (MDM 4.0 and later).
- **Location services**: Allow users to turn on GPS on their devices.
- **Limit by day (MB)**: Enter the number of MB of mobile data users can use each day. The default is 0, which disables this feature (MDM 4.0 and later).
- **Limit by week (MB)**: Enter the number of MB of mobile data users can use each week. The default is 0, which disables this feature (MDM 4.0 and later).
- **Limit by month (MB)**: Enter the number of MB of mobile data users can use each month. The default is 0, which disables this feature (MDM 4.0 and later).
- **Allow USB actions** Allow USB connection between users’ devices and a computer.
  - **Debugging**: Allow debugging over USB.
  - **Host storage**: Allow users’ devices to act as the USB host when a USB device connects to their devices. Users’ devices then supply power to the USB device.
  - **Mass storage**: Allow transfer of large data files between users’ devices and a computer over a USB connection.
  - **Kies media player**: Allow users to use the Samsung Kies tool to sync files between their devices and a computer.
- **Tethering**: Allow users to share a mobile data connection with another device through a USB connection.

**Samsung KNOX settings**

These options are available only under Samsung KNOX Premium (minimum version is KNOX 2.0).

- **Allow Use of Camera**: Allow users to use the camera on their devices.
- **Allow Revocation Check**: Enable checking for revoked certificates.
- **Move Apps To Container**: Allow users to move apps between the KNOX container and the personal area on their devices.
- **Enforce Multifactor Authentication**: Users must use a fingerprint and one other authentication method, such as password or PIN, to open their devices.
- **Enable TIMA Key store:** The TIMA KeyStore provides TrustZone-based secure key storage for the symmetric keys. RSA key pairs and certificates are routed to the default key store provider for storage.

- **Enforce Auth For Container:** Use separate, and different, authentication to open the KNOX container from that used to unlock the device.

- **Share List:** Allow users to share content between apps in the Share Via list.

- **Enable Audit Log:** Enable creation of event audit logs for forensic analysis of a device.

- **Use Secure Keypad:** Force users to use a secure keyboard inside the KNOX container.

- **Enable Google Apps:** Allow users to download apps from Google Mobile Services into the KNOX container.

- **Authentication Smart Card Browser:** Enable browser authentication on devices equipped with a smart card reader.

- **Enable Samsung DeX:** Enables supported KNOX-enabled devices to run in Samsung DeX mode. Requires Samsung KNOX 3.1 (minimum version). Default is **On.** For information about Samsung DeX device requirements and setting up Samsung DeX, see [How Samsung DeX works](#).

- **Allow Ethernet in DeX mode only:** Enable use of Ethernet in Samsung DeX mode. Cellular data, Wi-Fi, and tethering (Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, and USB) are restricted in DeX mode.

- **Upload DeX logo image:** Select this setting to specify a .png image to use as an icon for Samsung DeX.

- **DeX screen timeout:** Specify the amount of idle time, in seconds, after which the DeX screen turns off. To disable the timeout, type **0.** Default is **1200** seconds (20 minutes).

- **Add App shortcut in Samsung DeX:** Specify an app package name to add a shortcut for the app to DeX. To look up an app package name, go to Google Play and select the app. The URL includes the package name: [https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=<package.name>](https://play.google.com/store/apps/details?id=<package.name>).

- **Remove App shortcut in Samsung DeX:** Specify an app package name to remove a shortcut from DeX. Go to Google Play to look up app package names.

- **App packages to disable in DeX:** Specify a comma-separated list of the app packages that you want to block from Samsung DeX mode. For example: "com.android.chrome", "com.google.android.gm".
Windows Phone and Windows Desktop/Tablet settings

- **WiFi Settings**
  - **Allow WiFi**: Allow a device to connect to a WiFi network. Windows Phone only.
  - **Allow Internet sharing**: Allow a device to share its internet connection with other devices by turning it into a WiFi hotspot.
  - **Allow auto-connect to WiFi Sense hotspots**: Allow a device to connect automatically to WiFi Sense hotspots. Location services must be enabled for this option to work. For more information about WiFi Sense, see the Windows Phone WiFi Sense FAQ.
  - **Allow manual configuration**: Allow users to manually configure WiFi connections. Windows Phone only.
- **Connectivity**
  - **Allow NFC**: Allow device to communicate with an NFC (Near Field Communication) tag or another NFC-enabled transmitting device. Windows Phone only.
  - **Allow Bluetooth**: Allow device to connect through Bluetooth. Windows Phone only.
  - **Allow VPN over cellular**: Allow the device to connect over VPN to a cellular network.
  - **Allow VPN over cellular while roaming**: Allow the device to connect over VPN when the device roams over cellular networks.
  - **Allow USB connection**: Allow a desktop to access a device’s storage through a USB connection. Windows Phone only.
  - **Allow cellular data roaming**: Allow users to use cellular data while roaming.
- **Accounts**
  - **Allow Microsoft account connection**: Allow the device to use a Microsoft account for non-email related connection authentication and services.
- **Allow non-Microsoft email**: Allow user to add non-Microsoft email accounts.

**Search**: Windows Phone only.
- **Allow search to use location**: Allow searches to use the device’s location service.
- **Filter adult content**: Allow adult content. The default is Off, which means adult content is not filtered.
- **Allow Bing Vision to store images**: Allow Bing Vision to store images captured when performing Bing Vision searches.

**System**
- **Allow storage card**: Allow the device to use a storage card.
- **Telemetry**: In the list, click an option to allow or restrict the device from sending telemetry information. The default is Allowed. Other options are Not allowed and Allowed, except for secondary data request.
- **Allow location services**: Allow location services.
- **Allow preview of internal builds**: Allow users to preview Microsoft internal builds.

**Camera**: Windows Desktop/Tablet only
- **Allow use of camera**: Allow users to use their device camera.

**Bluetooth**: Windows Desktop/Tablet only
- **Allow discoverable mode**: Allow Bluetooth devices to find the local device.
- **Local device name**: A name for the local device.

**Security**: Windows Phone only
- **Allow manual root certificate installation**: Allow users to manually install a root certificate.
- **Require device encryption**: Require device encryption. After encryption is enabled on a device, it cannot be disabled. The default is Off.
- **Allow copy and paste**: Allow users to copy and paste data on their devices.
- **Allow screen capture**: Allow users to create screen captures on their devices.
- **Allow voice recording**: Allow users to use voice recording on their devices.
- **Allow Save As of Office files**: Allow users to save Office files with Save As.
- **Allow action center notifications**: Allow Action Center notifications on the device lock screen.
- **Allow Cortana**: Allow users access to Cortana, the intelligent personal assistant and knowledge navigator.
- **Allow sync of device settings**: Allow users to sync settings between Windows Phone 8.1 devices when roaming.

**Experience**: Windows Desktop/Tablet only
- **Allow Cortana**: Allow users access to Cortana, the intelligent personal assistant and knowledge navigator.
- **Allow device discovery**: Allow network discovery of the device.
- **Allow manual MDM unenrollment**: Allow users to manually unenroll their device from
Endpoint Management MDM.

- **Allow sync of device settings**: Allow users to sync settings between Windows 10 devices when roaming.

**Above Lock**: Windows Desktop/Tablet only

- **Allow toasts**: Allow toast notifications on the lock screen. Windows Desktop/Tablet only

**Apps**

- **Allow store access**: Allow users to access the Microsoft Store. Windows Phone only.
- **Allow developer unlock**: Allow users to register their devices with Microsoft and develop or install apps that are not in the Windows Phone app store. Windows Phone only.
- **Allow web browser access**: Allow Internet Explorer on the device. Windows Phone only.
- **Allow appstore auto update**: Allow apps from the app store to automatically update. Windows Desktop/Tablet only.

**Privacy**: Windows Desktop/Tablet only

- **Allow input personalization**: Allows the input personalization service to run, to improve predictive inputs such as pen and touch keyboard, based on what a user types.

**Settings**: Windows Desktop/Tablet only.

- **Allow auto play**: Allows users to change Auto Play settings.
- **Allow data sense**: Allows users to change Data Sense settings.
- **Allow date time**: Allows users to change date and time settings.
- **Allow language**: Allows users to change language settings.
- **Allow power sleep**: Allows users to change power and sleep settings.
- **Allow region**: Allows users to change region settings.
- **Allow sign-in options**: Allows users to change sign-in settings.
- **Allow workplace**: Allows users to change workplace settings.
- **Allow your account**: Allows users to change account settings.
Amazon settings

- **Allow hardware controls**
  - **Factory reset**: Allow users to do a factory reset on their devices
  - **Profiles**: Allow users to change the hardware profile on their devices.

- **Allow apps**
  - **Non-Amazon Appstore apps**: Allow users to install non-Amazon Appstore apps on their devices.
  - **Social networks**: Allow users to access social networks from their devices.

- **Network**
  - **Bluetooth**: Allow users to use Bluetooth.
  - **WiFi switch**: Allow apps to change WiFi connectivity state.
  - **WiFi settings**: Allow users to change WiFi settings.
  - **Cellular data**: Allow users to use their cellular connection for data.
  - **Roaming data**: Allow users to use cellular data while roaming.
  - **Location services**: Allow users to use GPS.

- **USB actions**
  - **Debugging**: Allow users’ devices to connect through USB to a computer for debugging.
Chrome OS settings

User policy

- **Disable form autofill**: Select whether to allow the autofill function of the Chrome browser. If this policy is set to **On**, autofill function is not allowed. Default is **On**.

- **Disable password saving**: Select whether to allow the save password function in the Chrome browser. If this policy is set to **On**, the save password function not allowed. Default is **On**.

- **Disable page translation**: Select whether to allow translation of webpages that are in other languages in the Chrome browser. If this policy is set to **On**, translation of webpages is not allowed. Default is **On**.

- **Block images**: Select whether to allow display of images in webpages in the Chrome browser. If this policy is set to **On**, images in webpages in the Chrome browser are not displayed. Default is **Off**.

- **Disable Incognito mode**: If **On**, Chrome OS device users can’t open an Incognito window in
Chrome. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is On.

- **Disable saving browsing history:** If On, users can’t save browsing history, override this setting, or sync tabs from Chrome OS devices. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is Off.

- **Disable deleting browsing and download history:** If On, users can’t delete browsing or download history from Chrome OS devices. However, even if you prevent users from deleting history from Chrome, users might be able to edit or delete the history database files directly. The browser itself can expire or archive any or all history items at any time. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is Off.

- **Disable printing:** If On, users can’t print from Google Chrome. Printing is disabled in locations such as the wrench menu, extensions, and Javascript apps. Printing is possible from plugins that bypass Google Chrome to print, such as Flash apps with a Print command in their context menu. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is Off.

- **Disable proceeding from the safe browsing warning page:** If Off, users can continue from the warning page to visit the potentially malicious site from Chrome OS devices. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is On.

- **Safe browsing mode:** If Off, Google Safe Browsing mode is never active. Users can’t change or override the “Protect you and your device from dangerous sites” setting in Chrome. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is On.

- **Enable bookmarks bar:** If On, Chrome displays the bookmarks bar. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is On.

- **Disable bookmarks bar edit:** If On, users can’t add, update, or delete bookmarks. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is On.

- **Disable task manager end process:** If On, disables the End Process button in Task Manager. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is On.

- **Show home button:** If On, Chrome displays the browser home button. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is On.

- **External storage accessibility:** Controls how users access external storage devices through the file browser. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Options:
  - **Disabled:** No access to external storage.
  - **Read only:** Users can have read access external storage only.
  - **Write only:** Users can have write access external storage only.

  Default is Disabled.

- **Websites:** Select whether to control access to websites in the Chrome browser using a whitelist or blacklist. If you choose Whitelist, you specify a list of allowed URLs. If you choose Blacklist, you specify a list of URLs that are exceptions to blacklisted URL specified in Chrome policies in
the Google admin console. The most specific filter determines if a URL is blocked or allowed. The whitelist takes precedence over the blacklist. Default is **Blacklist**. After you make a selection, click **Add** to add a list of websites.

### Device policy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Restrictions Policy</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Whitelist websites</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Device Policy

- **Disable Guest user mode**: If **On**, guest users can’t sign on to Chrome OS devices. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. The default is **Off**.
- **Single sign-on IDP redirection**: If **On**, enables SAML-based single sign-on. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. The default is **On**.
- **Enable device state reporting**: If **On**, a device reports its current device state, including firmware, Chrome and platform version, and boot mode. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is **On**.
- **Enable recent users reporting**: If **On**, the device reports a list of users that recently logged on to the device. Users aren’t reported if the device is configured to erase all local user data. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is **On**.
- **Single sign-on cookie behavior**: If **On**, transfers cookies set by a SAML IDP to user profiles each time a user signs on with SAML credentials. If **Off**, cookies transfer during the first sign-on only. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. The default is **On**.
- **Enable App Runtime for Chrome (ARC)**: If **On**, allows enrolled Chrome OS device users to run Android apps. Specify ARC apps in the App Restrictions device policy. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. ARC isn’t available if either Ephemeral mode or multiple sign-on is enabled in the current user session. If **Off**, enterprise Chrome OS device users can’t run Android apps. The default is **On**.
• **Forced re-enrollment:** If set to On, forces devices to re-enroll into their previous G Suite domain after a device wipe. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is On.

• **Sign-in autocomplete domain name:** If set to a domain name, such as students.school.edu, Chrome shows the domain name as an autocomplete option when users sign in. If left blank, Chrome doesn't show an autocomplete option for the domain name. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration.

• **Device time zone settings:**
  - **System time zone:** Selects the time zone for the Chrome device.
  - **Time zone detection:** Specifies settings used to detect the time zone. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration.
    * **Users decide:** Allows users to configure the policy through standard Date and Time settings on the Chrome OS device.
    * **Disabled:** Denies access to the time zone information.
    * **IP only:** Sets the time zone based on the device IP address.
    * **WiFi access points:** Sets the time zone based on the user’s WiFi connection.
    * **User location info:** Sets the time zone by detecting the user’s present location.

• **Users allowed to sign on:** Limits the users who can sign on to Chrome OS devices, based on an email suffix, such as *@example.com.*

---

**Roaming device policy**

December 17, 2018

You can add a device policy in Endpoint Management to configure whether to allow voice and data roaming on supported iOS devices. When voice roaming is disabled, data roaming is automatically disabled.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.

**iOS settings**

• **Disable voice roaming:** Select whether to disable voice roaming. When this option is enabled, data roaming is automatically disabled. The default is **Off**, which allows voice roaming.

• **Disable data roaming:** Select whether to disable data roaming. This option is available only when voice roaming is enabled. The default is **Off**, which allows data roaming.
Samsung MDM license key device policy

November 26, 2018

Use the Samsung MDM license key device policy if you have legacy Enterprise Licenses (ELM) and Knox Licenses (KLM). If you have a Knox Platform for Enterprise (KPE) premium license key, use the Knox Platform for Enterprise device policy instead.

For the SAFE platform, use the macro to generate the ELM key. Deploy the Samsung Enterprise License Management (ELM) key to a device before you can deploy SAFE policies and restrictions. Endpoint Management also supports the Samsung Enterprise Firmware-Over-The-Air (E-FOTA) service. Endpoint Management supports and extends both Samsung for Enterprise (SAFE) and Samsung KNOX policies.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

Samsung SAFE settings

- **ELM License key**: Endpoint Management pre-fills this field with the macro that generates the ELM license key. If the field is blank, type this macro: `@{elm.license.key}`

Configure Samsung E-FOTA settings

Samsung Enterprise FOTA (E-FOTA) lets you determine when devices get updated and the firmware version to use. E-FOTA enables you to test updates before deploying them, to ensure that the updates are compatible with your apps. You can force devices to update with the latest firmware version available, without requiring user interaction.

Samsung supports E-FOTA for Samsung KNOX 2.7.1 devices (minimum version) that are running authorized firmware.
To configure an E-FOTA policy:

1. Create a Samsung MDM License Key device policy with the keys and license information you received from Samsung. Endpoint Management then validates and registers the information.

   Type the **ELM License key**: Endpoint Management pre-fills this field with the macro that generates the ELM license key. If the field is blank, type this macro: \${elm.license.key}

   Type the following information provided by Samsung when you purchased an E-FOTA package:

   - **Enterprise FOTA Customer ID**
   - **Enterprise FOTA license**
   - **Client ID**
   - **Client Secret**

2. Create a Control OS Update device policy.

   - **Enable Enterprise FOTA**: Set to On.
   - **Enterprise FOTA License Key**: Select the Samsung MDM License Key policy name that you created in Step 1.

3. Deploy the Control OS Update policy to Secure Hub.

**Samsung KNOX settings**
• **KNOX License key**: Type the KNOX license key that you obtained from Samsung.

**SCEP device policy**

September 25, 2018

This policy allows you to configure iOS and macOS devices to retrieve a certificate using Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP) from an external SCEP server. If you want to deliver a certificate to the device using SCEP from a PKI that is connected to Endpoint Management, you should create a PKI entity and a PKI provider in distributed mode. For details, see [PKI Entities](#).

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see [Device policies](#).

**iOS settings**

![iOS settings interface](image)

- **URL base**: Type the address of the SCEP server to define where SCEP requests are sent, over HTTP or HTTPS. The private key isn't sent with the Certificate Signing Request (CSR), so it may be safe to send the request unencrypted. If, however, the one-time password is allowed to be reused, you should use HTTPS to protect the password. This step is required.
- **Instance name**: Type any string that the SCEP server recognizes. For example, it could be a domain name like example.org. If a CA has multiple CA certificates, you can use this field to distinguish the required domain. This step is required.
• **Subject X.500 name (RFC 2253):** Type the representation of a X.500 name represented as an array of Object Identifier (OID) and value. For example, /C=US/O=Apple Inc./CN=foo/1.2.5.3=bar, which would translate to: [[[“C”, “US” ]], [[“O”, “Apple Inc.” ]], …, [[“1.2.5.3”, “bar” ]]]. You can represent OIDs as dotted numbers with shortcuts for country (C), locality (L), state (ST), organization (O), organizational unit (OU), and common name (CN).

• **Subject alternative names type:** In the list, click an alternative name type. The SCEP policy can specify an optional alternative name type that provides values required by the CA for issuing a certificate. You can specify None, RFC 822 name, DNS name, or URI.

• **Maximum retries:** Type the number of times a device should retry when the SCEP server sends a PENDING response. The default is 3.

• **Retry delay:** Type the number of seconds to wait between subsequent retries. The first retry is attempted without delay. The default is 10.

• **Challenge password:** Enter a pre-shared secret.

• **Key size (bits):** In the list, click the key size in bits, either 1024 or 2048. The default is 1024.

• **Use as digital signature:** Specify whether you want the certificate to be used as a digital signature. If someone is using the certificate to verify a digital signature, such as verifying whether a certificate was issued by a CA, the SCEP server would verify that the certificate can be used in this manner prior to using the public key to decrypt the hash.

• **Use for key encipherment:** Specify whether you want the certificate to be used for key encipherment. If a server is using the public key in a certificate provided by a client to verify that a piece of data was encrypted using the private key, the server would first check to see whether the certificate can be used for key encipherment. If not, the operation fails.

• **SHA1/MD5 fingerprint (hexadecimal string):** If your CA uses HTTP, use this field to provide the fingerprint of the CA certificate, which the device uses to confirm authenticity of the CA response during enrollment. You can enter a SHA1 or MD5 fingerprint, or you can select a certificate to import its signature.
**macOS settings**

- **URL base**: Type the address of the SCEP server to define where SCEP requests are sent, over HTTP or HTTPS. The private key isn’t sent with the Certificate Signing Request (CSR), so it may be safe to send the request unencrypted. If, however, the one-time password is allowed to be reused, you should use HTTPS to protect the password. This step is required.

- **Instance name**: Type any string that the SCEP server recognizes. For example, it could be a domain name like example.org. If a CA has multiple CA certificates, you can use this field to distinguish the required domain. This step is required.

- **Subject X.500 name (RFC 2253)**: Type the representation of a X.500 name represented as an array of Object Identifier (OID) and value. For example, /C=US/O=Apple Inc./CN=foo/1.2.5.3=bar, which would translate to: `[["C","US"], [["O","Apple Inc."], ..., [["1.2.5.3","bar"]]]`. You can represent OIDs as dotted numbers with shortcuts for country (C), locality (L), state (ST), organization (O), organizational unit (OU), and common name (CN).

- **Subject alternative names type**: In the list, click an alternative name type. The SCEP policy can specify an optional alternative name type that provides values required by the CA for issuing a certificate. You can specify None, RFC 822 name, DNS name, or URI.

- **Maximum retries**: Type the number of times a device should retry when the SCEP server sends a PENDING response. The default is 3.

- **Retry delay**: Type the number of seconds to wait between subsequent retries. The first retry is attempted without delay. The default is 10.

- **Challenge password**: Type a pre-shared secret.

- **Key size (bits)**: In the list, click the key size in bits, either 1024 or 2048. The default is 1024.
• **Use as digital signature:** Specify whether you want the certificate to be used as a digital signature. If someone is using the certificate to verify a digital signature, such as verifying whether a certificate was issued by a CA, the SCEP server would verify that the certificate can be used in this manner prior to using the public key to decrypt the hash.

• **Use for key encipherment:** Specify whether you want the certificate to be used for key encipherment. If a server is using the public key in a certificate provided by a client to verify that a piece of data was encrypted using the private key, the server would first check to see whether the certificate can be used for key encipherment. If not, the operation fails.

• **SHA1/MD5 fingerprint (hexadecimal string):** If your CA uses HTTP, use this field to provide the fingerprint of the CA certificate, which the device uses to confirm authenticity of the CA response during enrollment. You can enter a SHA1 or MD5 fingerprint, or you can select a certificate to import its signature.

### Siri and dictation policies

August 21, 2018

When users ask Siri something or dictate text on managed iOS devices, Apple collects the voice data for purposes of improving Siri. The voice data passes through Apple’s cloud-based services, and therefore exists outside the secure Endpoint Management container. The text that results from dictation, however, remains within the container.

Endpoint Management allows you to block Siri and dictation services, as your security needs require.

In MAM deployments, the **Block dictation** policy for each app is **On** by default, which disables the device’s microphone. Set it to **Off** if you want to allow dictation. You can find the policy in the Endpoint Management console at **Configure > Apps**. Select the app, click **Edit**, then click **iOS**.
In MDM deployments, you can also disable Siri with the Siri policy at **Configure > Device Policies**. The use of Siri is allowed by default.
A few points to keep in mind when deciding whether to allow Siri and dictation:

- According to information that Apple has made public, Apple keeps Siri and dictation voice clip data for up to two years. The data is assigned a random number to represent the user, and voice files are associated with this random number. For more information, see this Wired article, Apple reveals how long Siri keeps your data.

- You can review the Apple privacy policy by going to Settings > General > Keyboards on any iOS device and tapping the link under Enable Dictation.

SSO account device policy

December 17, 2018

The SSO account device policy device policy lets ou create single sign-on (SSO) accounts in Endpoint Management. Those accounts let users sign on one-time only to access Endpoint Management and your internal company resources from various apps. Users do not need to store any credentials on the device. The SSO account enterprise user credentials are used across apps, including apps from the App Store. This policy is designed to work with a Kerberos authentication backend.
To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.

### iOS settings

- **Account name**: Enter the Kerberos SSO account name that appears on users’ devices. This field is required.
- **Kerberos principal name**: Enter the Kerberos principal name. This field is required.
- **Identity credential (Keystore or PKI credential)**: In the list, click an optional identity credential that can be used to renew the Kerberos credential without user interaction.
- **Kerberos realm**: Enter the Kerberos realm for this policy. This is typically your domain name in all capital letters (for example, EXAMPLE.COM). This field is required.
- **Permitted URLs**: For each URL for which you want to require SSO, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **Permitted URL**: Enter a URL that you want to require SSO when a user visits the URL from the iOS device.
    For example, when a user tries to browse to a site and the web site initiates a Kerberos challenge: If that site is not in the URL list, the iOS device does not attempt SSO by providing the Kerberos token that Kerberos might have cached on the device from a previous Kerberos logon. The match has to be exact on the host part of the URL. For example, `https://shopping.apple.com` is valid, but `https://*.apple.com` is not.
    Also, if Kerberos is not activated based on host matching, the URL still falls back to a standard HTTP call. This could mean almost anything including a standard password challenge or an HTTP error if the URL is only configured for SSO using Kerberos.
  - **Click Add** to add the URL or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the URL.
- **App Identifiers**: For each app that is allowed to use this login, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **App Identifier**: Enter an app identifier for an app that is allowed to use this login. If you do not add any app identifiers, this login matches all app identifiers.

### Storage encryption device policy

**August 21, 2018**

You create storage encryption device policies in Endpoint Management to encrypt internal and external storage, and, depending on the device, to prevent users from using a storage card on their devices.

You can create policies for Samsung SAFE, Windows Phone, and Android Sony devices. Each platform requires a different set of values, which are described in detail in this article.
To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies.** For more information, see **Device policies.**

**Prerequisites**

For Samsung SAFE devices, make sure the following requirements are met before you configure this policy:

- Set the Screen Lock option on user devices.
- Plug in users devices and charge them to at least 80%.
- Make sure that the devices require a password containing both numbers and letters or symbols.

**Samsung SAFE settings**

- **Encrypt internal storage:** Select whether to encrypt internal storage on users’ devices. Internal storage includes device memory and internal storage. The default is **On**.
- **Encrypt external storage:** Select whether to encrypt external storage on users’ devices. The default is **On**.

**Windows Phone settings**

- **Require device encryption:** Select whether to encrypt users’ devices. The default is **Off**.
- **Disable storage card:** Select whether to prevent users from using a storage card on their devices. The default is **Off**.

**Android Sony settings**

- **Encrypt external storage:** Select whether to encrypt external storage on users’ devices. The device must require a password containing both numbers and letters or symbols. The default is **On**.

**Store device policy**

August 21, 2018

You can create a policy in Endpoint Management to specify whether devices display an app store webclip on the home screen.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies.** For more information, see **Device policies.**
**iOS, Android, and Windows Desktop/Tablet settings**

For each platform that you configure, select whether an app store webclip appears on user devices. The default is On.

**Subscribed calendars device policy**

August 21, 2018

You can add a device policy in Endpoint Management to add a subscribed calendar to the calendars list on iOS devices. The list of public calendars to which you can subscribe is available at www.apple.com/downloads/macosx/calendars.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see Device policies.

**Prerequisite**

You must have subscribed to a calendar before you can add it to the subscribed calendars list on user devices.

**iOS settings**

- **Description**: Enter a description of the calendar. This field is required.
- **URL**: Enter the calendar URL. You can enter a `webcal://` URL or an `https://` link to an iCalendar file (.ics). This field is required.
- **Username**: Enter the user’s logon name. This field is required.
- **Password**: Enter an optional user password.
- **Use SSL**: Select whether to use a Secure Socket Layer connection to the calendar. The default is Off.

**Terms and conditions device policy**

August 21, 2018

You create terms and conditions device policies in Endpoint Management when you want users to accept your company’s specific policies governing connections to the corporate network. When users enroll their devices with Endpoint Management, they are presented with the terms and conditions and
must accept them to enroll their devices. Declining the terms and conditions cancels the enrollment process.

You can create different policies for terms and conditions in different languages if your company has international users and you want them to accept terms and conditions in their native languages. You must provide a file for each platform and language combination you plan to deploy. For Android and iOS devices, you must supply PDF files. For Windows devices, you must supply text (.txt) files and accompanying image files.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see [Device policies](#).

### iOS and Android settings

- **File to be imported**: Select the terms and conditions file to import by clicking **Browse** and then navigating to the file’s location.
- **Default Terms & Conditions**: Select whether this file is the default document for users who are members of multiple groups with different terms and conditions. The default is **Off**.

### Windows Phone and Windows Tablet settings

- **File to be imported**: Select the terms and conditions file to import by clicking **Browse** and then navigating to the file’s location.
- **Image**: Select the image file to import by clicking **Browse** and then navigating to the file’s location.
- **Default Terms & Conditions**: Select whether this file is the default document for users who are members of multiple groups with different terms and conditions. The default is **Off**.

### Verified access device policy

December 5, 2018

On Chrome OS devices, administrators can enable verified access. With verified access enabled, devices cannot access the network unless they are unmodified and are policy-compliant. For more information on Verified Access, see [Enable Verified Access with Chrome devices](#).

You can configure the verified access policy for the following platforms. Each platform requires a different set of values, which are described in detail in this article.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see [Device policies](#).
Chrome OS settings

- **User Verified Access**
  - **Enable user verified access:** If enabled, users must comply with the Verified Access requirements to access your network. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is **On**.
  - **Access Control - Accounts with Full Access:** List of users allowed to call the Verified Access API and receive device IDs. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration.
  - **Access Control - Accounts with Limited Access:** List of users allowed to call the Verified Access API but can’t receive device IDs. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration.

- **Device Verified Access**
  - **Enable device verified access:** If enabled, devices must comply with the Verified Access requirements to access your network. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is **On**.
  - **Enable Content Protection:** If enabled, the device can play protected content. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration. Default is **On**.
  - **Access Control - Accounts with Full Access:** List of devices allowed to call the Verified Access API and receive device IDs. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration.
  - **Access Control - Accounts with Limited Access:** List of devices allowed to call the Verified Access API but can’t receive device IDs. Requires G Suite Chrome configuration.

VPN device policy

December 17, 2018
The VPN device policy configures virtual private network (VPN) settings that enable user devices to connect securely to corporate resources. You can configure the VPN device policy for the following platforms. Each platform requires a different set of values, which are described in detail in this article.

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.

**iOS settings**

**Note:**

**To prepare for device upgrades to iOS 12:** The Citrix VPN connection type in the VPN device policy for iOS doesn’t support iOS 12. Perform these steps to delete your existing VPN device policy and create a VPN device policy with the Citrix SSO connection type:

1. Delete your VPN device policy for iOS.
2. Add a VPN device policy for iOS. Important settings:
   - **Connection type =** Citrix SSO
   - **Enable per-app VPN =** On
   - **Provider type =** Packet tunnel
3. Add an App Attributes device policy for iOS. For **Per-app VPN identifier**, choose **iOS_VPN**.

- **Connection name:** Type a name for the connection.
- **Connection type:** In the list, click the protocol to be used for this connection. The default is **L2TP**.
  - **L2TP:** Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with pre-shared key authentication.
– **PPTP**: Point-to-Point Tunneling.
– **IPSec**: Your corporate VPN connection.
– **Cisco Legacy AnyConnect**: This connection type requires that the Cisco Legacy AnyConnect VPN client is installed on the user device. Cisco is phasing out the Cisco Legacy AnyConnect client that was based on a now deprecated VPN framework. For more information, see the Endpoint Management support article [https://support.citrix.com/article/CTX227708](https://support.citrix.com/article/CTX227708).

To use the current Cisco AnyConnect client, use a **Connection type** of **Custom SSL**. For required settings, see “Configure Custom SSL protocol” in this section.

– **Juniper SSL**: Juniper Networks SSL VPN client.
– **F5 SSL**: F5 Networks SSL VPN client.
– **SonicWALL Mobile Connect**: Dell unified VPN client for iOS.
– **Ariba VIA**: Ariba Networks Virtual Internet Access client.
– **IKEv2 (iOS only)**: Internet Key Exchange version 2 for iOS only.
– **Citrix SSO**: Citrix SSO client for iOS 12 and later.
– **Custom SSL**: Custom Secure Socket Layer. This connection type is required for the Cisco AnyConnect client that has a bundle ID of `com.cisco.anyconnect`. Specify a **Connection name** of **Cisco AnyConnect**. You can also deploy the VPN policy and enable a Network Access Control (NAC) filter for iOS devices. The filter blocks a VPN connection for devices that have non-compliant apps installed. The configuration requires specific settings for the iOS VPN policy as described in the iOS section below. For more information about other settings required to enable the NAC filter, see **Network Access Control**.

The following sections list the configuration options for each of the preceding connection types.

### Configure L2TP Protocol for iOS

- **Server name or IP address**: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.
- **User Account**: Type an optional user account.
- Select either **Password authentication** or **RSA SecureID authentication**.
- **Shared secret**: Type the IPSec shared secret key.
- **Send all traffic**: Select whether to send all traffic over the VPN. The default is **Off**.

### Configure PPTP Protocol for iOS

- **Server name or IP address**: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.
- **User Account**: Type an optional user account.
- Select either **Password authentication** or **RSA SecureID authentication**.
- **Encryption level**: In the list, click an encryption level. The default is **None**.
  - **None**: Use no encryption.
- **Automatic**: Use the strongest encryption level supported by the server.
- **Maximum (128-bit)**: Always use 128-bit encryption.

  - **Send all traffic**: Select whether to send all traffic over the VPN. The default is **Off**.

### Configure IPSec Protocol for iOS

- **Server name or IP address**: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.
- **User Account**: Type an optional user account.
- **Authentication type for the connection**: In the list, click either **Shared Secret** or **Certificate** for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is **Shared Secret**.
  - If you enable **Shared Secret**, configure these settings:
    - **Group name**: Type an optional group name.
    - **Shared secret**: Type an optional shared secret key.
    - **Use hybrid authentication**: Select whether to use hybrid authentication. With hybrid authentication, the server first authenticates itself to the client, and then the client authenticates itself to the server. The default is **Off**.
    - **Prompt for password**: Select whether to prompt users for their passwords when they connect to the network. The default is **Off**.
  - If you enable **Certificate**, configure these settings:
    - **Identity credential**: In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is **None**.
    - **Prompt for PIN when connecting**: Select whether to require users to enter their PIN when connecting to the network. The default is **Off**.
    - **Enable VPN on demand**: Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is **Off**. For information on configuring settings when **Enable VPN on demand** is **On**, see Configure Enable VPN on demand settings for iOS.
  - **Enable per-app VPN**: Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is **Off**.
  - **On-demand match app enabled**: Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication. The default is **Off**.
  - **Safari domains**: Click **Add** to add a Safari domain name.

### Configure Cisco Legacy AnyConnect Protocol for iOS

To transition from the Cisco Legacy AnyConnect client to the new Cisco AnyConnect client, use the Custom SSL protocol.

- **Provider bundle identifier**: For the Legacy AnyConnect client, the bundle ID is com.cisco.anyconnect.gui.
- **Server name or IP address**: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.
- **User Account**: Type an optional user account.
• **Group:** Type an optional group name.

• **Authentication type for the connection:** In the list, click either **Password** or **Certificate** for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is **Password**.
  - If you enable **Password**, type an optional authentication password in the **Auth password** field.
  - If you enable **Certificate**, configure these settings:
    * **Identity credential:** In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is **None**.
    * **Prompt for PIN when connecting:** Select whether to prompt users for their PIN when they connect to the network. The default is **Off**.
    * **Enable VPN on demand:** Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is **Off**. For information on configuring settings when **Enable VPN on demand** is **On**, see Configure Enable VPN on demand settings for iOS.

• **Per-app VPN:** Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is **Off**. If you enable this option, configure these settings:
  - **On-demand match enabled:** Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication. The default is **Off**.
  - **Safari domains:** For each Safari domains that can trigger a per-app VPN connection you want to include, click **Add** and do the following:
    * **Domain:** Type the domain to be added.
    * Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.

**Configure Juniper SSL Protocol for iOS**

• **Server name or IP address:** Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.

• **User account:** Type an optional user account.

• **Realm:** Type an optional realm name.

• **Role:** Type an optional role name.

• **Authentication type for the connection:** In the list, click either **Password** or **Certificate** for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is **Password**.
  - If you enable **Password**, type an optional authentication password in the **Auth password** field.
  - If you enable **Certificate**, configure these settings:
    * **Identity credential:** In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is **None**.
    * **Prompt for PIN when connecting:** Select whether to prompt users for their PIN when they connect to the network. The default is **Off**.
* **Enable VPN on demand:** Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is Off. For information on configuring settings when **Enable VPN on demand** is On, see Configure Enable VPN on demand settings for iOS.

• **Per-app VPN:** Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is Off. If you enable this option, configure these settings:
  - **On-demand match enabled:** Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication. The default is Off.
  - **Safari domains:** For each Safari domains that can trigger a per-app VPN connection you want to include, click **Add** and do the following:
    * **Domain:** Type the domain to be added.
    * Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.

**Configure F5 SSL Protocol for iOS**

• **Server name or IP address:** Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.

• **User Account:** Type an optional user account.

• **Authentication type for the connection:** In the list, click either **Password** or **Certificate** for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is **Password**.
  - If you enable **Password**, type an optional authentication password in the **Auth password** field.
  - If you enable **Certificate**, configure these settings:
    * **Identity credential:** In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is **None**.
    * **Prompt for PIN when connecting:** Select whether to prompt users for their PIN when they connect to the network. The default is **Off**.
    * **Enable VPN on demand:** Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is **Off**. For information on configuring settings when **Enable VPN on demand** is On, see Configure Enable VPN on demand settings for iOS.

• **Per-app VPN:** Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is Off. If you enable this option, configure these settings:
  - **On-demand match enabled:** Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication.
  - **Safari domains:** For each Safari domains that can trigger a per-app VPN connection you want to include, click **Add** and do the following:
    * **Domain:** Type the domain to be added.
    * Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.
Configure SonicWALL Protocol for iOS

- **Server name or IP address**: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.
- **User Account**: Type an optional user account.
- **Logon group or domain**: Type an optional logon group or domain.
- **Authentication type for the connection**: In the list, click either Password or Certificate for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is Password.
  - If you enable Password, type an optional authentication password in the Auth password field.
  - If you enable Certificate, configure these settings:
    * **Identity credential**: In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is None.
    * **Prompt for PIN when connecting**: Select whether to prompt users for their PIN when they connect to the network. The default is Off.
    * **Enable VPN on demand**: Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is Off. For information on configuring settings when Enable VPN on demand is On, see Configure Enable VPN on demand settings for iOS.
- **Per-app VPN**: Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is Off. If you set this option to ON, configure these settings:
  - **On-demand match enabled**: Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication.
  - **Safari domains**: For each Safari domains that can trigger a per-app VPN connection you want to include, click Add and do the following:
    * **Domain**: Type the domain to be added.
    * Click Save to save the domain or click Cancel to not save the domain.

Configure Ariba VIA protocol for iOS

- **Server name or IP address**: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.
- **User Account**: Type an optional user account.
- **Authentication type for the connection**: In the list, click either Password or Certificate for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is Password.
  - If you enable Password, type an optional authentication password in the Auth password field.
  - If you enable Certificate, configure these settings:
    * **Identity credential**: In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is None.
    * **Prompt for PIN when connecting**: Select whether to prompt users for their PIN when they connect to the network. The default is Off.
Enable VPN on demand: Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is Off. For information on configuring settings when Enable VPN on demand is On, see Configure Enable VPN on demand settings for iOS.

Per-app VPN: Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is Off. If you enable this option, configure these settings:

- On-demand match enabled: Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication.
- Safari domains: For each Safari domains that can trigger a per-app VPN connection you want to include, click Add and do the following:
  - Domain: Type the domain to be added.
  - Click Save to save the domain or click Cancel to not save the domain.

Configure IKEv2 protocols for iOS

This section includes settings used for the IKEv2, AlwaysOn IKEv2, and AlwaysOn IKEv2 Dual Configuration protocols.

- Allow user to disable automatic connection: For the AlwaysOn protocols. Select whether to allow users to turn off automatic connection to the network on their devices. The default is Off.
- Host name or IP address for server: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.
- Local Identifier: The FQDN or IP address for the IKEv2 client. This field is required.
- Remote Identifier: The FQDN or IP address for the VPN server. This field is required.
- Machine Authentication: Choose Shared Secret or Certificate for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is Shared Secret.
  - If you choose Shared Secret, type an optional shared secret key.
  - If you choose Certificate, choose an Identity credential to use. The default is None.
- Extended Authentication Enabled: Select whether to enable Extended Authentication Protocol (EAP). If you choose On, type the User account and Authentication password.
- Dead Peer Detection Interval: Choose how often a peer device is contacted to ensure that the peer device remains reachable. The default is None. Options are:
  - None: Disable dead peer detection.
  - Low: Contact peer every 30 minutes.
  - Medium: Contact peer every 10 minutes.
  - High: Contact peer every 1 minute.
• **Disable Mobility and Multihoming:** Choose whether to disable this feature.

• **Use IPv4/IPv6 internal subnet attributes:** Choose whether to enable this feature.

• **Disable redirects:** Choose whether to disable redirects.

• **Enable NAT keepalive while the device is asleep:** For the AlwaysOn protocols. Keepalive packets maintain NAT mappings for IKEv2 connections. The chip sends these packets at regular interval when the device is awake. If this setting is on, the chip sends keepalive packets even while the device is asleep. The default interval is 20 seconds over WiFi and 110 seconds over cellular. You can change the interval by using the NAT keepalive interval parameter.

• **NAT keepalive Interval (seconds):** Defaults to 20 seconds.

• **Enable Perfect Forward Secrecy:** Choose whether to enable this feature.

• **DNS server IP addresses:** Optional. A list of DNS server IP address strings. These IP addresses can include a mixture of IPv4 and IPv6 addresses. Click **Add** to type an address.

• **Domain name:** Optional. The primary domain of the tunnel.

• **Search domains:** Optional. A list of domain strings used to qualify single-label host names fully.

• **Append supplemental match domains to resolver’s list:** Optional. Determines whether to append the domains in the supplemental match domains list to the list of search domains for the resolver. 0 means append; 1 means don’t append. Default is 0.

• **Supplemental match domains:** Optional. A list of domain strings used to determine which DNS queries are to use the DNS resolver settings contained in the DNS server addresses. This key creates a split DNS configuration where only hosts in certain domains get resolved by using the DNS resolver of the tunnel. Hosts not in one of the domains in this list get resolved by using the default resolver of the system.

If this parameter contains an empty string, that string is used as the default domain. This is how a split-tunnel configuration can direct all DNS queries first to the VPN DNS servers before the primary DNS servers. If the VPN tunnel becomes the default route of the network, the DNS servers listed become the default resolver. In that case, the supplemental match domains list is ignored.

• **IKE SA Parameters** and **Child SA Parameters.** Configure these settings for each Security Association (SA) parameters option:

  – **Encryption Algorithm:** In the list, click the IKE encryption algorithm to use. The default is **3DES**.

  – **Integrity Algorithm:** In the list, click the integrity algorithm to use. The default is **SHA1-96**.

  – **Diffie Hellman Group:** In the list, click the Diffie Hellman group number. The default is **2**.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- **LifeTime in Minutes:** Type an integer between 10 and 1440 representing the SA lifetime (rekey interval). The default is 1440 minutes.

**Service Exceptions:** For the AlwaysOn protocols. Service exceptions are system services that are exempt from AlwaysOn VPN. Configure these service exceptions settings:

- **Voice Mail:** In the list, click how to handle the voice mail exception. The default is Allow traffic via tunnel.
- **AirPrint:** In the list, click how to handle the AirPrint exception. The default is Allow traffic via tunnel.
- **Allow traffic from captive web sheet outside the VPN tunnel:** Select whether to allow users to connect to public hotspots outside the VPN tunnel. The default is Off.
- **Allow traffic from all captive networking apps outside the VPN tunnel:** Select whether to allow all hotspot networking apps outside the VPN tunnel. The default is Off.
- **Captive networking app bundle identifiers:** For each hotspot networking app bundle identifier that users are allowed to access, click Add and type the hotspot networking app Bundle Identifier. Click Save to save the app bundle identifier.

**Per-app VPN.** Configure these settings for IKEv2 connection types.

- **Enable per-app VPN:** Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is Off.
- **On-demand match app enabled:** Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication. The default is Off.
- **Safari domains:** Click Add to add a Safari domain name.

**Proxy configuration:** Choose how the VPN connection routes through a proxy server. Default is None.

**Configure Citrix SSO protocol for iOS**

The Citrix SSO client is available in the Apple Store here.

- **Server name or IP address:** Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.
- **User Account:** Type an optional user account.
- **Authentication type for the connection:** In the list, click either Password or Certificate for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is Password.
  - If you enable Password, type an optional authentication password in the Auth password field.
  - If you enable Certificate, configure these settings:
    - **Identity credential:** In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is None.
* **Prompt for PIN when connecting:** Select whether to prompt users for their PIN when they connect to the network. The default is **OFF**.

* **Enable VPN on demand:** Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is **OFF**. For information on configuring settings when **Enable VPN on demand** is **On**, see Configure Enable VPN on demand settings for iOS.

• **Per-app VPN:** Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is **Off**. If you set this option to **ON**, configure the following settings:
  - **On-demand match enabled:** Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication.
  - **Provider type:** Set to **Packet tunnel**.
  - **Safari domains:** For each Safari domains that can trigger a per-app VPN connection you want to include, click **Add** and do the following:
    * **Domain:** Type the domain to be added.
    * Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.

• **Custom XML:** For each custom XML parameter you want to add, click **Add** and specify the key/value pairs. Available parameters are:
  - **disableL3:** Disables system level VPN. Allows only per app VPN. No **Value** is needed.
  - **useragent:** Associates with this device policy any Citrix Gateway policies that are targeted to VPN plugin clients. The **Value** for this key is automatically appended to the VPN plugin for the requests initiated by the plugin.

**Configure Custom SSL protocol for iOS**

To transition from the Cisco Legacy AnyConnect client to the Cisco AnyConnect client:

1. Configure the VPN device policy with the Custom SSL protocol. Deploy the policy to iOS devices.
3. Remove the old VPN device policy from iOS devices.

**Settings:**

• **Custom SSL identifier (reverse DNS format):** Set to the bundle identifier. For the Cisco AnyConnect client, use **com.cisco.anyconnect**.

• **Provider Bundle Identifier:** If the app specified in **Custom SSL identifier** has multiple VPN providers of the same type (App proxy or Packet tunnel), then specify this bundle identifier. For the Cisco AnyConnect client, use **com.cisco.anyconnect**.

• **Server name or IP address:** Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.

• **User Account:** Type an optional user account.
• **Authentication type for the connection:** In the list, click either Password or Certificate for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is **Password**.
  - If you enable **Password**, type an optional authentication password in the Auth password field.
  - If you enable **Certificate**, configure these settings:
    * **Identity credential:** In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is **None**.
    * **Prompt for PIN when connecting:** Select whether to prompt users for their PIN when they connect to the network. The default is **OFF**.
    * **Enable VPN on demand:** Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is **OFF**. For information on configuring settings when Enable VPN on demand is On, see **Configure Enable VPN on demand settings for iOS**.

• **Per-app VPN:** Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is **Off**. If you set this option to ON, configure the following settings:
  - **On-demand match enabled:** Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication.
  - **Provider Type:** A provider type indicates whether the provider is a VPN service or proxy service. For VPN service, choose **Packet tunnel**. For proxy service, choose **App proxy**. For the Cisco AnyConnect client, choose **Packet tunnel**.
  - **Safari domains:** For each Safari domains that can trigger a per-app VPN connection you want to include, click **Add** and do the following:
    * **Domain:** Type the domain to be added.
    * Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.

• **Custom XML:** For each custom XML parameter you want to add, click **Add** and do the following:
  - **Parameter name:** Type the name of the parameter to be added.
  - **Value:** Type the value associated with **Parameter name**.
  - Click **Save** to save the parameter or click **Cancel** to not save the parameter.

To configure the VPN device policy to support NAC

1. The **Connection type** of Custom SSL is required for configuring the NAC filter.
2. Specify a **Connection name of VPN**.
3. For **Custom SSL identifier**, type `com.citrix.NetScalerGateway.ios.app`

The values in step 3 and 4 come from the required Citrix SSO 1.0.1 installation for NAC filtering. Note that you do not configure an authentication password. For more information on using the NAC function, see **Network Access Control**.
Configure Enable VPN on demand options for iOS

- **On Demand Domain:** For each domain and associated action to be taken when users connect to them that you want to add, click **Add** to and do the following:
  - **Domain:** Type the domain to be added.
  - **Action:** In the list click one of the possible actions:
    - **Always establish:** The domain always triggers a VPN connection.
    - **Never establish:** The domain never triggers a VPN connection.
    - **Establish if necessary:** The domain triggers a VPN connection attempt if domain name resolution fails, such as when the DNS server cannot resolve the domain, redirects to a different server, or times out.
    - Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.

- **On demand rules**
  - **Action:** In the list, click the action to be taken. The default is **EvaluateConnection**. Possible actions are:
    - **Allow:** Allow VPN on demand to connect when triggered.
    - **Connect:** Unconditionally initiate a VPN connection.
    - **Disconnect:** Remove the VPN connection and do not reconnect on demand as long as the rule matches.
    - **EvaluateConnection:** Evaluate the ActionParameters array for each connection.
    - **Ignore:** Leave any existing VPN connection up, but do not reconnect on demand as long as the rule matches.
  - **DNSDomainMatch:** For each domain against which a device's search domain list can match that you want to add, click **Add** to and do the following:
    - **DNS Domain:** Type the domain name. You can use the wildcard “**” prefix for matching multiple domains. For example, *.example.com matches mydomain.example.com, yourdomain.example.com, and herdomain.example.com.
    - Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.
  - **DNSServerAddressMatch:** For each IP address to which any of the network's specified DNS servers can match that you want to add, click **Add** and do the following:
    - **DNS Server Address:** Type the DNS server address you want to add. You can use the wildcard “**” suffix for matching DNS servers. For example, 17.* matches any DNS server in the class A subnet.
    - Click **Save** to save the DNS server address or click **Cancel** to not save the DNS server address.
  - **InterfaceTypeMatch:** In the list, click the type of primary network interface hardware in use. The default is **Unspecified**. Possible values are:
    - **Unspecified:** Matches any network interface hardware. This is the default.
    - **Ethernet:** Matches only Ethernet network interface hardware.
    - **WiFi:** Matches only WiFi network interface hardware.
* **Cellular**: Matches only Cellular network interface hardware.

- **SSIDMatch**: For each SSID to match against the current network that you want to add, click Add and do the following.
  - **SSID**: Type the SSID to add. If the network is not a WiFi network, or if the SSID does not appear, the match fails. Leave this list empty to match any SSID.
  - Click Save to save the SSID or click Cancel to not save the SSID.

- **URLStringProbe**: Type a URL to fetch. If this URL is successfully fetched without redirection, this rule matches.

- **ActionParameters : Domains**: For each domain that EvaluateConnection checks that you want to add, click Add and do the following:
  - **Domain**: Type the domain to be added.
  - Click Save to save the domain or click Cancel to not save the domain.

- **ActionParameters : DomainAction**: In the list, click the VPN behavior for the specified ActionParameters : Domains domains. The default is ConnectIfNeeded. Possible actions are:
  - **ConnectIfNeeded**: The domain triggers a VPN connection attempt if domain name resolution fails, such as when the DNS server cannot resolve the domain, redirects to a different server, or times out.
  - **NeverConnect**: The domain never triggers a VPN connection.

- **ActionParameters : RequiredDNSServers**: For each DNS server IP address to be used for resolving the specified domains, click Add and do the following:
  - **DNS Server**: Valid only when ActionParameters : DomainAction = ConnectIfNeeded. Type the DNS server to add. This server need not be part of the device’s current network configuration. If the DNS server is not reachable, a VPN connection is established in response. This DNS server should be either an internal DNS server or a trusted external DNS server.
  - Click Save to save the DNS server or click Cancel to not save the DNS server.

- **ActionParameters : RequiredURLStringProbe**: Optionally, type an HTTP or HTTPS (preferred) URL to probe, using a GET request. If the URL’s hostname cannot be resolved, if the server is unreachable, or if the server does not respond with a 200 HTTP status code, a VPN connection is established in response. Valid only when ActionParameters : DomainAction = ConnectIfNeeded.

- **OnDemandRules : XML content**: Type, or copy and paste, XML configuration on demand rules.
  - Click Check Dictionary to validate the XML code. You will see Valid XML in green text below the XML content text box if the XML is valid; otherwise, you will see an error message in orange text describing the error.

- **Proxy**
  - **Proxy configuration**: In the list, click how the VPN connection routes through a proxy
server. The default is None.

* If you enable Manual, configure these settings:
  - **Host name or IP address for the proxy server:** Type the host name or IP address for the proxy server. This field is required.
  - **Port for the proxy server:** Type the proxy server port number. This field is required.
  - **Username:** Type an optional proxy server user name.
  - **Password:** Type an optional proxy server password.

* If you configure Automatic, configure this setting:
  - **Proxy server URL:** Type the URL for the proxy server. This field is required.

**Policy Settings**

- Under **Policy Settings**, next to Remove policy, click either **Select date** or **Duration until removal (in hours)**.
- If you click **Select date**, click the calendar to select the specific date for removal.
- In the Allow user to remove policy list, click Always, **Password required**, or Never.
- If you click **Password required**, next to **Removal password**, type the necessary password.

**Configure a per-app VPN**

Per-app VPN options for iOS are available for these connection types: Cisco AnyConnect, Juniper SSL, F5 SSL, SonicWALL Mobile Connect, Ariba VIA, Citrix VPN, Citrix SSO, and Custom SSL.

To configure a per-app VPN:

1. In **Configure > Device Policies**, create a VPN policy. For example:
A per-app VPN policy for Secure Hub has the following setting requirements:

- **Connection Name**: Set to Endpoint Management. Endpoint Management uses the Connection Name as the VPN provider localized description. Secure Hub uses the VPN localized description to differentiate the device-wide provider from the per-app provider.

- **Connection type**: Set to Custom SSL.

- **Custom SSL Identifier**: Set to the bundle identifier of Secure Hub.

- **Provider Bundle Identifier**: Set to the bundle identifier of the Secure Hub network extension. That bundle identifier is the Secure Hub bundle identifier, specified in Custom SSL identifier, with .NE appended.

- **Provider Type**: Set to Packet tunnel.

2. In **Configure > Device Policies**, create an App Attributes policy to associate an app to the per-app VPN policy. For **Per-app VPN identifier**, choose the name of the VPN policy created in Step 1. For **Managed app bundle ID**, choose from the app list or type the app bundle ID. (If you deploy an iOS App Inventory policy, the app list contains apps.)
macOS settings

• **Connection name**: Type a name for the connection.
• **Connection type**: In the list, click the protocol to be used for this connection. The default is L2TP.
  - **L2TP**: Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with pre-shared key authentication.
  - **PPTP**: Point-to-Point Tunneling.
  - **IPSec**: Your corporate VPN connection.
  - **Cisco AnyConnect**: Cisco AnyConnect VPN client.
  - **Juniper SSL**: Juniper Networks SSL VPN client.
  - **F5 SSL**: F5 Networks SSL VPN client.
  - **SonicWALL Mobile Connect**: Dell unified VPN client for iOS.
  - **Ariba VIA**: Ariba Networks Virtual Internet Access client.
  - **Citrix VPN**: Citrix VPN client.
  - **Custom SSL**: Custom Secure Socket Layer.

The following sections list the configuration options for each of the preceding connection types.

**Configure L2TP Protocol for macOS**

• **Server name or IP address**: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.
• **User Account**: Type an optional user account.
• Select one of Password authentication, RSA SecureID authentication, Kerberos authentication, CryptoCard authentication. The default is Password authentication.

• Shared secret: Type the IPSec shared secret key.

• Send all traffic: Select whether to send all traffic over the VPN. The default is Off.

Configure PPTP Protocol for macOS

• Server name or IP address: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.

• User Account: Type an optional user account.

• Select one of Password authentication, RSA SecureID authentication, Kerberos authentication, CryptoCard authentication. The default is Password authentication.

• Encryption level: Select the desired encryption level. The default is None.
  – None: Use no encryption.
  – Automatic: Use the strongest encryption level supported by the server.

• Send all traffic: Select whether to send all traffic over the VPN. The default is Off.

Configure IPSec Protocol for macOS

• Server name or IP address: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.

• User account: Type an optional user account.

• Authentication type for the connection: In the list, click either Shared Secret or Certificate for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is Shared Secret.
  – If you enable Shared Secret authentication, configure these settings:
    * Group name: Type an optional group name.
    * Shared secret: Type an optional shared secret key.
    * Use hybrid authentication: Select whether to use hybrid authentication. With hybrid authentication, the server first authenticates itself to the client, and then the client authenticates itself to the server. The default is Off.
    * Prompt for password: Select whether to prompt users for their passwords when they connect to the network. The default is Off.
  – If you enable Certificate authentication, configure these settings:
    * Identity credential: In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is None.
    * Prompt for PIN when connecting: Select whether to require users to enter their PIN when connecting to the network. The default is Off.
    * Enable VPN on demand: Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is Off. For information on configuring set-
tings when Enable VPN on demand is On, see Configure Enable VPN on demand options.

Configure Cisco AnyConnect Protocol for macOS

- **Server name or IP address**: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.
- **User account**: Type an optional user account.
- **Group**: Type an optional group name.
- **Authentication type for the connection**: In the list, click either Password or Certificate for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is Password.
  - If you enable Password, type an optional authentication password in the Auth password field.
  - If you enable Certificate, configure these settings:
    * **Identity credential**: In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is None.
    * **Prompt for PIN when connecting**: Select whether to prompt users for their PIN when they connect to the network. The default is Off.
    * **Enable VPN on demand**: Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is Off. For information on configuring settings when Enable VPN on demand is On, see Configure Enable VPN on demand options.

- **Per-app VPN**: Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is Off. If you enable this option, configure these settings:
  * **On-demand match enabled**: Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication. The default is Off.
  * **Safari domains**: For each Safari domains that can trigger a per-app VPN connection you want to include, click Add and do the following:
    * **Domain**: Type the domain to be added.
    * Click Save to save the domain or click Cancel to not save the domain.

Configure Juniper SSL Protocol for macOS

- **Server name or IP address**: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.
- **User account**: Type an optional user account.
- **Realm**: Type an optional realm name.
- **Role**: Type an optional role name.
- **Authentication type for the connection**: In the list, click either Password or Certificate for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is Password.
If you enable Password, type an optional authentication password in the Auth password field.

If you enable Certificate, configure these settings:

- **Identity credential:** In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is None.
- **Prompt for PIN when connecting:** Select whether to prompt users for their PIN when they connect to the network. The default is Off.
- **Enable VPN on demand:** Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is Off. For information on configuring settings when Enable VPN on demand is On, see Configure Enable VPN on demand settings.

- **Per-app VPN:** Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is Off. If you enable this option, configure the following settings:
  - **On-demand match enabled:** Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication. The default is Off.
  - **Safari domains:** For each Safari domains that can trigger a per-app VPN connection you want to include, click Add and do the following:
    - **Domain:** Type the domain to be added.
    - **Click Save to save the domain or click Cancel to not save the domain.**

**Configure F5 SSL Protocol for macOS**

- **Server name or IP address:** Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.
- **User account:** Type an optional user account.
- **Authentication type for the connection:** In the list, click either Password or Certificate for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is Password.
  - If you enable Password, type an optional authentication password in the Auth password field.
  - If you enable Certificate, configure these settings:
    - **Identity credential:** In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is None.
    - **Prompt for PIN when connecting:** Select whether to prompt users for their PIN when they connect to the network. The default is Off.
    - **Enable VPN on demand:** Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is Off. For information on configuring settings when Enable VPN on demand is On, see Configure Enable VPN on demand settings.
- **Per-app VPN:** Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is Off. If you enable this op-
tion, configure these settings:

- **On-demand match enabled**: Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication. The default is **Off**.
- **Safari domains**: For each Safari domains that can trigger a per-app VPN connection you want to include, click **Add** and do the following:
  * **Domain**: Type the domain to be added.
  * Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.

**Configure SonicWALL Protocol for macOS**

- **Server name or IP address**: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.
- **User account**: Type an optional user account.
- **Logon group or domain**: Type an optional logon group or domain.
- **Authentication type for the connection**: In the list, click either **Password** or **Certificate** for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is **Password**.
  - If you enable **Password**, type an optional authentication password in the **Auth password** field.
  - If you enable **Certificate**, configure these settings:
    * **Identity credential**: In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is **None**.
    * **Prompt for PIN when connecting**: Select whether to prompt users for their PIN when they connect to the network. The default is **Off**.
    * **Enable VPN on demand**: Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is **Off**. For information on configuring settings when **Enable VPN on demand** is **On**, see Configure Enable VPN on demand settings.
- **Per-app VPN**: Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is **Off**. If you enable this option, configure these settings:
  - **On-demand match enabled**: Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication. The default is **Off**.
  - **Safari domains**: For each Safari domains that can trigger a per-app VPN connection you want to include, click **Add** and do the following:
    * **Domain**: Type the domain to be added.
    * Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.
Configure Ariba VIA protocol for macOS

- **Server name or IP address**: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.
- **User account**: Type an optional user account.
- **Authentication type for the connection**: In the list, click either **Password** or **Certificate** for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is **Password**.
  - If you enable **Password**, type an optional authentication password in the **Auth password** field.
  - If you enable **Certificate**, configure these settings:
    * **Identity credential**: In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is **None**.
    * **Prompt for PIN when connecting**: Select whether to prompt users for their PIN when they connect to the network. The default is **Off**.
    * **Enable VPN on demand**: Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is **Off**. For information on configuring settings when **Enable VPN on demand** is **On**, see Configure Enable VPN on demand settings.
- **Per-app VPN**: Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is **Off**. If you enable this option, configure these settings:
  - **On-demand match enabled**: Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication. The default is **Off**.
  - **Safari domains**: For each Safari domains that can trigger a per-app VPN connection you want to include, click **Add** and do the following:
    * **Domain**: Type the domain to be added.
    * Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.

Configure Citrix VPN protocol for macOS

The Citrix VPN client is available in the Apple Store [here](#).

- **Server name or IP address**: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server.
- **User account**: Type an optional user account.
- **Authentication type for the connection**: In the list, click either **Password** or **Certificate** for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is **Password**.
  - If you enable **Password**, type an optional authentication password in the **Auth password** field.
  - If you enable **Certificate**, configure these settings:
    * **Identity credential**: In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is **None**.
* Prompt for PIN when connecting: Select whether to prompt users for their PIN when they connect to the network. The default is OFF.

* Enable VPN on demand: Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is OFF. For information on configuring settings when Enable VPN on demand is On, see Configure Enable VPN on demand settings.

- Per-app VPN: Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is Off. If you enable this option, configure these settings:
  - On-demand match enabled: Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication.
  - Safari domains: For each Safari domains that can trigger a per-app VPN connection you want to include, click Add and do the following:
    * Domain: Type the domain to be added.
    * Click Save to save the domain or click Cancel to not save the domain.

- Custom XML: For each custom XML parameter you want to add, click Add and specify the key/value pairs. Available parameters are:
  - disableL3: Disables system level VPN. Allows only per app VPN. No Value is needed.
  - useragent: Associates with this device policy any Citrix Gateway policies that are targeted to VPN plugin clients. The Value for this key is automatically appended to the VPN plugin for the requests initiated by the plugin.

Configure Custom SSL protocol for macOS

- Custom SSL identifier (reverse DNS format): Type the SSL identifier in reverse DNS format. This field is required.
- Server name or IP address: Type the server name or IP address for the VPN server. This field is required.
- User account: Type an optional user account.
  - Authentication type for the connection: In the list, click either Password or Certificate for the type of authentication for this connection. The default is Password.
  - If you enable Password, type an optional authentication password in the Auth password field.
  - If you enable Certificate, configure these settings:
    * Identity credential: In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is None.
    * Prompt for PIN when connecting: Select whether to prompt users for their PIN when they connect to the network. The default is OFF.
    * Enable VPN on demand: Select whether to enable triggering a VPN connection when users connect to the network. The default is OFF. For information on configuring set-
settings when **Enable VPN on demand** is **On**, see **Configure Enable VPN on demand settings**.

- **Per-app VPN**: Select whether to enable per-app VPN. The default is **Off**. If you enable this option, configure these settings:
  
  * **On-demand match enabled**: Select whether per-app VPN connections are triggered automatically when apps linked to the per-app VPN service initiate network communication.
  * **Safari domains**: For each Safari domains that can trigger a per-app VPN connection you want to include, click **Add** and do the following:
    - **Domain**: Type the domain to be added.
    - Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.

- **Custom XML**: For each custom XML parameter you want to add, click **Add** and do the following:
  
  * **Parameter name**: Type the name of the parameter to be added.
  * **Value**: Type the value associated with **Parameter name**.
  * Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.

**Configure Enable VPN on demand options**

- **On Demand Domain**: For each domain and associated action to be taken when users connect to them that you want to add, click **Add** to and do the following:
  
  * **Domain**: Type the domain to be added.
  * **Action**: In the list click one of the possible actions:
    * **Always establish**: The domain always triggers a VPN connection.
    * **Never establish**: The domain never triggers a VPN connection.
    * **Establish if necessary**: The domain triggers a VPN connection attempt if domain name resolution fails, such as when the DNS server cannot resolve the domain, redirects to a different server, or times out.
  
  - Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.

- **On demand rules**
  
  * **Action**: In the list, click the action to be taken. The default is **EvaluateConnection**. Possible actions are:
    * **Allow**: Allow VPN on demand to connect when triggered.
    * **Connect**: Unconditionally initiate a VPN connection.
    * **Disconnect**: Remove the VPN connection and do not reconnect on demand as long as the rule matches.
    * **EvaluateConnection**: Evaluate the **ActionParameters** array for each connection.
    * **Ignore**: Leave any existing VPN connection up, but do not reconnect on demand as long as the rule matches.
  
  - **DNSDomainMatch**: For each domain against which a user device’s search domain list can
match that you want to add, click **Add** to and do the following:

* **DNS Domain:** Type the domain name. You can use the wildcard “*” prefix for matching multiple domains. For example, *.example.com matches mydomain.example.com, yourdomain.example.com, and herdomain.example.com.
  * Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.

  – **DNSServerAddressMatch:** For each IP address to which any of the network’s specified DNS servers can match that you want to add, click **Add** and do the following:
    * **DNS Server Address:** Type the DNS server address you want to add. You can use the wildcard “*” suffix for matching DNS servers. For example, 17.* matches any DNS server in the class A subnet.
    * Click **Save** to save the DNS server address or click **Cancel** to not save the DNS server address.

  – **InterfaceTypeMatch:** In the list, click the type of primary network interface hardware in use. The default is **Unspecified**. Possible values are:
    * **Unspecified:** Matches any network interface hardware. This is the default.
    * **Ethernet:** Matches only Ethernet network interface hardware.
    * **WiFi:** Matches only WiFi network interface hardware.
    * **Cellular:** Matches only Cellular network interface hardware.

  – **SSIDMatch:** For each SSID to match against the current network that you want to add, click **Add** and so the following.
    * **SSID:** Type the SSID to add. If the network is not a WiFi network, or if the SSID does not appear, the match fails. Leave this list empty to match any SSID.
    * Click **Save** to save the SSID or click **Cancel** to not save the SSID.

  – **URLStringProbe:** Type a URL to fetch. If this URL is successfully fetched without redirection, this rule matches.

  – **ActionParameters : Domains:** For each domain that EvaluateConnection checks that you want to add, click **Add** and do the following:
    * **Domain:** Type the domain to be added.
    * Click **Save** to save the domain or click **Cancel** to not save the domain.

  – **ActionParameters : DomainAction:** In the list, click the VPN behavior for the specified **ActionParameters : Domains** domains. The default is **ConnectIfNeeded**. Possible actions are:
    * **ConnectIfNeeded:** The domain triggers a VPN connection attempt if domain name resolution fails, such as when the DNS server cannot resolve the domain, redirects to a different server, or times out.
    * **NeverConnect:** The domain never triggers a VPN connection.

  – **Action Parameters: RequiredDNSServers:** For each DNS server IP address to be used for resolving the specified domains, click **Add** and do the following:
    * **DNS Server:** Valid only when **ActionParameters : DomainAction** = **ConnectIfNeeded**.
tifNeeded. Type the DNS server to add. This server need not be part of the device's current network configuration. If the DNS server is not reachable, a VPN connection is established in response. This DNS server should be either an internal DNS server or a trusted external DNS server.

* Click Save to save the DNS server or click Cancel to not save the DNS server.

- ActionParameters : RequiredURLStringProbe: Optionally, type an HTTP or HTTPS (preferred) URL to probe, using a GET request. If the URL's hostname cannot be resolved, if the server is unreachable, or if the server does not respond with a 200 HTTP status code, a VPN connection is established in response. Valid only when ActionParameters : Domain-Action = ConnectIfNeeded.

- OnDemandRules : XML content: Type, or copy and paste, XML configure on demand rules.

  * Click Check Dictionary to validate the XML code. You will see Valid XML in green text below the XML content text box if the XML is valid; otherwise, you will see an error message in orange text describing the error.

- Proxy
  - Proxy configuration: In the list, click how the VPN connection routes through a proxy server. The default is None.
    * If you enable Manual, configure these settings:
      · Host name or IP address for the proxy server: Type the host name or IP address for the proxy server. This field is required.
      · Port for the proxy server: Type the proxy server port number. This field is required.
      · User name: Type an optional proxy server user name.
      · Password: Type an optional proxy server password.
    * If you configure Automatic, configure this setting:
      · Proxy server URL: Type the URL for the proxy server. This field is required.
Configure Citrix VPN protocol for Android

- **Connection name**: Type a name for the VPN connection. This field is required.
- **Server name or IP address**: Type the FQDN or IP address of the Citrix Gateway.
- **Authentication type for the connection**: Choose an authentication type and complete any of these fields that appear for the type:
  - **User name and Password**: Type your VPN credentials for the **Authentication types** of **Password** or **Password and Certificate**. Optional. If you don’t provide the VPN credentials, the Citrix VPN app prompts for a user name and password.
  - **Identity credential**: Appears for the **Authentication types** of **Certificate** or **Password and Certificate**.
- **Enable per-app VPN**: Select whether to enable per-app VPN. If you don’t enable per-app VPN, all traffic goes through the Citrix VPN tunnel. If you enable per-app VPN, specify the following settings. The default is **Off**.
  - **Whitelist** or **Blacklist**: Choose a setting. If **Whitelist**, all apps in the whitelist tunnel through this VPN. If **Blacklist**, all apps except those on the blacklist tunnel through this VPN.
  - **Application List**: Specify the whitelisted or blacklisted apps. Click **Add** and then type a comma-separated list of app package names.
- **Custom XML**: Click **Add** and then type custom parameters. Endpoint Management supports these parameters for Citrix VPN:
– **disableL3Mode**: Optional. To enable this parameter, type **Yes** for the **Value**. If enabled, Endpoint Management doesn’t display user-added VPN connections and the user cannot add a new connection. This is a global restriction and applies to all VPN profiles.

– **userAgent**: A string value. You can specify a custom User Agent string to send in each HTTP request. The specified user agent string gets appended to the existing Citrix VPN user agent.

**Configure Cisco AnyConnect VPN protocol for Android**

- **Connection name**: Type a name for the Cisco AnyConnect VPN connection. This field is required.
- **Server name or IP address**: Type the name or IP address of the VPN server. This field is required.
- **Backup VPN server**: Type the backup VPN server information.
- **User group**: Type the user group information.
- **Identity credential**: In the list, select an identity credential.
- **Trusted Networks**
  - **Automatic VPN policy**: Enable or disable this option to set how the VPN reacts to trusted and untrusted networks. If enabled, configure these settings:
    - **Trusted network policy**: In the list, click the desired policy. The default is **Disconnect**. Possible options are:
      - **Disconnect**: The client terminates the VPN connection in the trusted network. This is the default.
      - **Connect**: The client initiates a VPN connection in the trusted network.
      - **Do Nothing**: The client takes no action.
      - **Pause**: Suspends the VPN session (rather than disconnecting it) when a user enters a network configured as trusted after establishing a VPN session outside the trusted network. When the user leaves the trusted network again, the session resumes. This eliminates the need to establish a new VPN session after leaving a trusted network.
    - **Untrusted network policy**: In the list, click the desired policy. The default is **Connect**. Possible options are:
      - **Connect**: The client initiates a VPN connection in the untrusted network.
      - **Do Nothing**: The client starts a VPN connection in the untrusted network. This option disables always-on VPN.
  - **Trusted domains**: For each domain suffix that the network interface may have when the client is in the trusted network, click **Add** to do the following:
    - **Domain**: Type the domain to be added.
    - **Click Save** to save the domain or **Click Cancel** to not save the domain.
- **Trusted servers:** For each server address that a network interface may have when the client is in the trusted network, click **Add** and do the following:
  * **Servers:** Type the server to be added.
  * Click **Save** to save the server or click **Cancel** to not save the server.

**Samsung SAFE settings**

![VPN Policy](image)

- **Connection name:** Type a name for the connection.
- **Vpn type:** In the list, click the protocol to be used for this connection. The default is **L2TP with pre-shared key**. Possible options are:
  - **L2TP with pre-shared key:** Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with pre-shared key authentication. This is the default setting.
  - **L2TP with certificate:** Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with certificate.
  - **PPTP:** Point-to-Point Tunneling.
  - **Enterprise:** Your corporate VPN connection. Applicable to SAFE versions earlier than 2.0.
  - **Generic:** A generic VPN connection. Applicable to SAFE versions 2.0 or higher.

**Configure L2TP with pre-shared key protocol for Samsung SAFE**

- **Host name:** Type the name of the VPN host. This option is required.
- **User name:** Type an optional user name.
- **Password:** Type an optional password.
- **Pre-shared key:** Type the pre-shared key. This option is required.
Configure L2TP with certificate protocol for Samsung SAFE

- **Host name**: Type the name of the VPN host. This option is required.
- **Username**: Type an optional user name.
- **Password**: Type an optional password.
- **Identity credential**: In the list, click the identity credential to be used. The default is **None**.

Configure PPTP protocol for Samsung SAFE

- **Host name**: Type the name of the VPN host. This option is required.
- **Username**: Type an optional user name.
- **Password**: Type an optional password.
- **Enable encryption**: Select whether to enable encryption on the VPN connection.

Configure Enterprise protocol for Samsung SAFE

- **Host name**: Type the name of the VPN host. This option is required.
- **Enable backup server**: Select whether to enable a backup VPN server. If enabled, in **Backup VPN server**, type the FQDN or IP address of the backup VPN server.
- **Enable user authentication**: Select whether to require user authentication. If enabled, configure the following settings:
  - **Username**: Type a user name.
  - **Password**: Type the user password.
- **Group name**: Type an optional group name.
- **Authentication method**: In the list, click the authentication method to be used. Possible options are:
  - **Certificate**: Use certificate authentication. This is the default. If selected, in the Identity credential list, click the credential to use. The default is **None**.
  - **Pre-shared key**: Use a pre-shared key. If selected, in the Pre-shared key field, type the shared secret key.
  - **Hybrid RSA**: Use hybrid authentication using RSA certificates.
  - **EAP MD5**: Authenticate the EAP peer to the EAP server, but does no mutual authentication.
  - **EAP MSCHAPv2**: Use Microsoft’s challenge-handshake authentication for mutual authentication.
- **CA certificate**: In the list, click the certificate to be used. The default is **None**.
- **Enable default route**: Select whether to enable a default route to the VPN server. The default is **Off**.
- **Enable smartcard authentication**: Select whether to allow users to authenticate by using smart cards. The default is **Off**.
• **Enable mobile option:** Select whether to enable mobile option. The default is **Off**.

• **Diffie-Hellman group value (key strength):** In the list, click the key strength to be used. The default is **0**.

• **Split tunnel type:** In the list, click the type of split tunnel to use. The default is **Auto**. Possible options are:
  – **Auto:** Split tunneling is used automatically.
  – **Manual:** Split tunneling is used over the IP address and port specified on the VPN server.
  – **Disabled:** Split tunneling is not used.

• **SuiteB type:** In the list, click the level of NSA Suite B encryption to use. The default is **GCM-128**. Possible options are:
  – **GCM-128:** Use 128-bit AES-GCM encryption
  – **GMAC-128:** Use 128-bit AES-GMAC encryption.
  – **GMAC-256:** Use 256-bit AES-GMAC encryption.
  – **None:** Use no encryption.

• **Forward routes:** If your corporate VPN server supports forwarding routes, for each forwarding route to use, click **Add** and do the following:
  – **Forward route:** Type the IP address for the forwarding route.
  – Click **Save** to save the route or click **Cancel** to not save the route.

---

### Configure Generic protocol for Samsung SAFE

• **Hostname:** Type the name of the VPN host. This option is required.

• **Enable user authentication:** Select whether to require user authentication. If enabled, in **Password**, type the user password.

• **Username:** Type a user name.

• **Package Name Agent VPN:** The package name, or ID, of the VPN installed on the device; for example, Mocana or Pulse Secure.

• **Vpn Connection type:** In the list, click either **IPSEC** or **SSL** for the connection type to be used. The default is **IPSEC**. The following sections describe the configuration settings for each connection type.

---

### Configure IPSEC connection type settings for Samsung SAFE

• **Identity:** Type an optional identifier for this configuration.

• **IPsec group ID type:** In the list, click the IPsec group ID type to use. The default is **Default**. Possible options are:
  – **Default**
  – **IPv4 address**
  – **Fully qualified domain name (FQDN)**
- User FQDN
- IKE key ID

**IKE version:** In the list, click the Internet Key Exchange version to use. The default is **IKEv1**.

**Authentication method:** In the list, click the authentication method to be used. The default is **Certificate**. Possible options are:

- **Certificate:** Use certificate authentication. If selected, in the **Identity credential** list, click the credential to use. The default is **None**.
- **Pre-shared key:** Use a pre-shared key. If selected, in the **Pre-shared key** field, type the shared secret key.
- **Hybrid RSA:** Use hybrid authentication using RSA certificates.
- **EAP MDS:** Authenticate the EAP peer to the EAP server, but does not use mutual authentication.
- **EAP MSCHAPv2:** Use Microsoft’s challenge-handshake authentication for mutual authentication.
- **CAC based Authentication:** Use a Common Access Card (CAC) for authentication.

**Identity credential:** In the list, click the identity credential to use. The default is **None**.

**CA certificate:** In the list, click the certificate to be used.

**Enable dead peer detection:** Select whether to contact a peer to ensure that it remains alive. The default is **Off**.

**Enable default route:** Select whether to enable a default route to the VPN server.

**Enable mobile option:** Select whether to enable mobile option.

**IKE LifeTime in Minutes:** Type the number of minutes before the VPN connection must be reestablished. The default is 1440 minutes (24 hours).

**Diffie-Hellman group value (key strength):** In the list, click the key strength to be used. The default is 0.

**IKE Phase 1 key exchange mode:** Select either **Main** or **Aggressive** for the IKE Phase 1 negotiation mode. The default is **Main**.

- **Main:** No information is exposed to potential attackers during negotiation, but is slower than **Aggressive** mode.
- **Aggressive:** Some information (for example, the identity of the negotiating peers) is exposed to potential attackers during negotiation, but is faster than **Main** mode.

**Perfect forward secrecy (PFS) value:** Select whether to use PFS to require a new key exchange renegotiating a connection.

**Split tunnel type:** In the list, click the type of split tunnel to use. Possible options are:

- **Auto:** Split tunneling is automatically used.
- **Manual:** Split tunneling is used over the IP address and port specified on the VPN server.
- **Disabled:** Split tunneling is not used.

**IPSEC Encryption algorithm:** A VPN configuration that the IPSEC protocol uses.

**IKE Encryption Algorithm:** A VPN configuration that the IPSEC protocol uses.

**IKE Integrity Algorithm:** A VPN configuration that the IPSEC protocol uses.
• **Vendor:** A personal profile for generic agents that communicate with the KNOX API.

• **Forward routes:** If your corporate VPN server supports forwarding routes, for each forwarding route to use, click **Add** and do the following:
  - **Forward route:** Type the IP address for the forwarding route.
  - Click **Save** to save the route or click **Cancel** to not save the route.

• **Per App Vpn:** For each per-app VPN you want to add, click **Add** and do the following:
  - **Per App Vpn:** The VPN configuration that the app uses to communicate.
  - Click **Save** to save the per-app VPN or click **Cancel** to not save the per-app VPN.

**Configure SSL connection type settings for Samsung SAFE**

• **Authentication method:** In the list, click the authentication method to be used. The default is Not Applicable. Possible options are:
  - Not Applicable
  - **Certificate:** Use certificate authentication. If selected, in the Identity credential list, click the credential to use. The default is None.
  - **CAC based Authentication:** Use a Common Access Card (CAC) for authentication.

• **CA certificate:** In the list, click the certificate to be used.

• **Enable default route:** Select whether to enable a default route to the VPN server.

• **Enable mobile option:** Select whether to enable mobile option.

• **Split tunnel type:** In the list, click the type of split tunnel to use. Possible options are:
  - **Auto:** Split tunneling is automatically used.
  - **Manual:** Split tunneling is used over the IP address and port specified on the VPN server.
  - **Disabled:** Split tunneling is not used.

• **SSL Algorithm:** Type the SSL algorithm to use for client-server negotiation.

• **Vendor:** A personal profile for generic agents that communicate with the KNOX API.

• **Forward routes:** If your corporate VPN server supports forwarding routes, for each forwarding route to use, click **Add** and do the following:
  - **Forward route:** Type the IP address for the forwarding route.
  - Click **Save** to save the route or click **Cancel** to not save the route.

• **Per App Vpn:** For each per-app VPN you want to add, click **Add** and do the following:
  - **Per App Vpn:** The VPN configuration that the app uses to communicate.
  - Click **Save** to save the per-app VPN or click **Cancel** to not save the per-app VPN.
When you configure any policy for Samsung KNOX, it applies only inside the Samsung KNOX container.

- **Vpn Type:** In the list, click the type of VPN connection to configure, either Enterprise (applicable to KNOX versions earlier than 2.0) or Generic (applicable to KNOX versions 2.0 or higher). The default is Enterprise.

The following sections list the configuration options for each of the preceding connection types.

### Configure Enterprise protocol for Samsung KNOX

- **Connection name:** Type a name for the connection. This field is required.
- **Host name:** Type the name of the VPN host. This option is required.
- **Enable backup server:** Select whether to enable a backup VPN server. If enabled, in Backup VPN server, type the FQDN or IP address of the backup VPN server.
- **Enable user authentication:** Select whether to require user authentication. If enabled, configure the following settings:
  - **Username:** Type a user name.
  - **Password:** Type the user password.
- **Group name:** Type an optional group name.
- **Authentication method:** In the list, click the authentication method to be used. Possible options are:
- **Certificate**: Use certificate authentication. For certificate authentication, also select the credential to use from the **Identity credential** list.
- **Pre-shared key**: Use a pre-shared key. If selected, in the Pre-shared key field, type the shared secret key.
- **Hybrid RSA**: Use hybrid authentication using RSA certificates.
- **EAP MD5**: Authenticate the EAP peer to the EAP server, but does no mutual authentication.
- **EAP MSCHAPv2**: Use Microsoft’s challenge-handshake authentication for mutual authentication.

- **CA certificate**: In the list, click the certificate to be used.
- **Enable default route**: Select whether to enable a default route to the VPN server.
- **Enable smartcard authentication**: Select whether to allow users to authenticate by using smart cards. The default is **Off**.
- **Enable mobile option**: Select whether to enable mobile option.
- **Diffie-Hellman group value (key strength)**: In the list, click the key strength to be used. The default is **0**.
- **Split tunnel type**: In the list, click the type of split tunnel to use. Possible options are:
  - **Auto**: Split tunneling is automatically used.
  - **Manual**: Split tunneling is used over the IP address and port specified on the VPN server.
  - **Disabled**: No split tunneling is used.
- **SuiteB type**: In the list, click the level of NSA Suite B encryption to use. Possible options are:
  - **GCM-128**: Use 128-bit AES-GCM encryption: This is the default.
  - **GCM-256**: Use 256-bit AES-GCM encryption.
  - **GMAC-128**: Use 128-bit AES-GMAC encryption.
  - **GMAC-256**: Use 256-bit AES-GMAC encryption.
  - **None**: Use no encryption.
- **Forward routes**: Click **Add** to add any optional forwarding routes if your corporate VPN server supports multiple route tables.

**Configure generic protocol for Samsung KNOX**

- **Connection name**: Type a name for the connection. This field is required.
- **Package Name Agent VPN**: The package name, or ID, of the VPN installed on the device; for example, Mocana or Pulse Secure.
- **Host name**: Type the name of the VPN host. This option is required.
- **Enable user authentication**: Select whether to require user authentication. If enabled, configure the following settings:
  - **User name**: Type a user name.
  - **Password**: Type the user password.
- **Identity**: Type an optional identifier for this configuration. Only applies when **Vpn Connection**
type = IPSEC.

- **Vpn Connection type:** In the list, click either IPSEC or SSL for the connection type to be used. The default is IPSEC. The following sections describe the configuration settings for each connection type.

- **Configure IPSEC connection settings**
  - **Identity:** Type an optional identifier for this configuration.
  - **IPsec group ID type:** In the list, click the IPsec group ID type to use. The default is Default. Possible options are:
    - Default
    - IPv4 address
    - Fully qualified domain name (FQDN)
    - User FQDN
    - IKE key ID
  - **IKE version:** In the list, click the Internet Key Exchange version to use. The default is IKEv1.
  - **Authentication method:** In the list, click the authentication method to be used. The default is Certificate. Possible options are:
    - Certificate: Use certificate authentication. If selected, in the Identity credential list, click the credential to use. The default is None.
    - Pre-shared key: Use a pre-shared key. If selected, in the Pre-shared key field, type the shared secret key.
    - Hybrid RSA: Use hybrid authentication using RSA certificates.
    - EAP MD5: Authenticate the EAP peer to the EAP server, but does no mutual authentication.
    - EAP MSCHAPv2: Use Microsoft’s challenge-handshake authentication for mutual authentication.
    - CA based Authentication: Use a Common Access Card (CAC) for authentication.
  - **CA certificate:** In the list, click the certificate to be used.
  - **Enable dead peer detection:** Select whether to contact a peer to ensure that it remains alive. The default is Off.
  - **Enable default route:** Select whether to enable a default route to the VPN server.
  - **Enable mobile option:** Select whether to enable mobile option.
  - **Ike LifeTime in Minutes:** Type the number of minutes before the VPN connection must be reestablished. The default is 1440 minutes (24 hours).
  - **ipsec LifeTime in Minutes:** Type the number of minutes before the VPN connection must be reestablished. The default is 1440 minutes (24 hours).
  - **Diffie-Hellman group value (key strength):** In the list, click the key strength to be used. The default is 0.
  - **IKE Phase 1 key exchange mode:** Select either Main or Aggressive for the IKE Phase 1 negotiation mode. The default is Main.
Main: No information is exposed to potential attackers during negotiation, but is slower than Aggressive mode.

Aggressive: Some information (for example, the identity of the negotiating peers) is exposed to potential attackers during negotiation, but is faster than Main mode.

- Perfect forward secrecy (PFS) value: Select whether to use PFS to require a new key exchange renegotiating a connection.

- Split tunnel type: In the list, click the type of split tunnel to use. Possible options are:
  * Auto: Split tunneling is automatically used.
  * Manual: Split tunneling is used over the IP address and port specified on the VPN server.
  * Disabled: Split tunneling is not used.

- SuiteB Type: In the list, click the level of NSA Suite B encryption to use. The default is GCM-128. Possible options are:
  * GCM-256: Use 256-bit AES-GCM encryption.
  * GMAC-128: Use 128-bit AES-GMAC encryption.
  * GMAC-256: Use 256-bit AES-GMAC encryption.
  * None: Use no encryption.

- IPSEC Encryption algorithm: VPN configuration that the IPSec protocol uses.
- IKE Encryption Algorithm: VPN configuration that the IPSec protocol uses.
- IKE Integrity Algorithm: VPN configuration that the IPSec protocol uses.
- Knox: Configurations for Samsung KNOX only.
- Vendor: A personal profile for generic agents that communicate with the KNOX API.
- Forward routes: If your corporate VPN server supports forwarding routes, for each forwarding route to use, click Add and do the following:
  * Forward route: Type the IP address for the forwarding route.
  * Click Save to save the route or click Cancel to not save the route.
- Per App Vpn: For each per-app VPN you want to add, click Add and do the following:
  * Per App Vpn: The VPN configuration the app uses to communicate.
  * Click Save to save the per-app VPN or click Cancel to not save the per-app VPN.

- Configure SSL connection settings

- Authentication method: In the list, click the authentication method to use. Possible options are:
  * Not Applicable: No authentication method applies. This is the default.
  * Certificate: Use certificate authentication. This is the default. If selected, in the Identity credential list, click the credential to use. The default is None.
  * CAC based Authentication: Use a Common Access Card (CAC) for authentication.
- CA certificate: In the list, click the certificate to be used.
- Enable default route: Select whether to enable a default route to the VPN server.
- **Enable mobile option:** Select whether to enable mobile option.
- **Split tunnel type:** In the list, click the type of split tunnel to use. Possible options are:
  * **Auto:** Split tunneling is automatically used.
  * **Manual:** Split tunneling is used over the IP address and port specified.
  * **Disabled:** No split tunneling is used.
- **Suite B Type:** In the list, click the level of NSA Suite B encryption to use. The default is GCM-128. Possible options are:
  * **GCM-128:** Use 128-bit AES-GCM encryption.
  * **GCM-256:** Use 256-bit AES-GCM encryption.
  * **GMAC-128:** Use 128-bit AES-GMAC encryption.
  * **GMAC-256:** Use 256-bit AES-GMAC encryption.
  * **None:** Use no encryption: Type the SSL algorithm to use for client-server negotiation.
- **SSL Algorithm:** Type the SSL algorithm to use for client-server negotiation.
- **Knox:** Configurations for Samsung KNOX only.
- **Vendor:** A personal profile for generic agents that communicate with the KNOX API.
- **Forward routes:** If your corporate VPN server supports forwarding routes, for each forward route to use, click Add and do the following:
  * **Forward route:** Type the IP address for the forwarding route.
  * Click Save to save the route or click Cancel to not save the route.
- **Per App Vpn:** For each per-app VPN you want to add, click Add and do the following:
  * **Per App Vpn:** The VPN configuration the app uses to communicate.
  * Click Save to save the per-app VPN or click Cancel to not save the per-app VPN.
Windows Phone settings

These settings are supported only on Window 10 and later supervised phones.

- **Connection name**: Enter a name for the connection. This field is required.
- **Profile type**: In the list, click either Native or Plugin. The default is Native. The following sections describe the settings for each of these options.
- **Configure Native profile type settings**: These settings apply to the VPN built into users’ Windows phones.
  - **VPN server name**: Type the FQDN or IP address for the VPN server. This field is required.
  - **Tunneling protocol**: In the list, click the type of VPN tunnel to use. The default is L2TP. Possible options are:
    * L2TP: Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with pre-shared key authentication.
    * PPTP: Point-to-Point Tunneling.
    * IKEv2: Internet Key Exchange version 2.
  - **Authentication method**: In the list, click the authentication method to use. The default is EAP. Possible options are:
    * EAP: Extended Authentication Protocol.
    * MSChapV2: Use Microsoft challenge-handshake authentication for mutual authentication. This option is not available when you select IKEv2 for the tunnel type. When you choose MSChapV2, an **Automatically use Windows credentials** option appears; the default is Off.
    * EAP method: In the list, click the EAP method to be used. The default is TLS. This field is
not available when MS Chap V2 authentication is enabled. Possible options are:

* **TLS:** Transport Layer Security
* **PEAP:** Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol

- **DNS Suffix:** Type the DNS suffix.
- **Trusted networks:** Type a list of networks separated by commas that do not require a VPN connection for access. For example, when users are on your company wireless network, they can access protected resources directly.
- **Require smart card certificate:** Select whether to require a smart card certificate. The default is OFF.
- **Automatically select client certificate:** Select whether to automatically choose the client certificate to use for authentication. The default is OFF. This option is unavailable when Require smart card certificate is enabled.
- **Remember credential:** Select whether to cache the credential. The default is OFF. When enabled, credentials are cached whenever possible.
- **Always on VPN:** Select whether the VPN is always on. The default is OFF. When enabled, the VPN connection remains on until the user manually disconnects.
- **Bypass For Local:** Type the address and port number to allow local resources to bypass the proxy server.

- **Configure Plugin protocol type:** These settings apply to VPN plug-ins obtained from the Windows Store and installed on users’ devices.
  - **Server address:** Type the URL, host name, or IP address for the VPN server.
  - **Client app ID:** Type the package family name for the VPN plug-in.
  - **Plugin Profile XML:** Select the custom VPN plugin profile to be used by clicking Browse and navigating to the file’s location. Contact the plugin provider for format and details.
  - **DNS Suffix:** Type the DNS suffix.
  - **Trusted networks:** Type a list of networks separated by commas that do not require a VPN connection for access. For example, when users are on your company wireless network, they can access protected resources directly.
  - **Remember credential:** Select whether to cache the credential. The default is OFF. When enabled, credentials are cached whenever possible.
  - **Always on VPN:** Select whether the VPN is always on. The default is OFF. When enabled, the VPN connection remains on until the user manually disconnects.
  - **Bypass For Local:** Type the address and port number to allow local resources to bypass the proxy server.
Windows Desktop/Tablet settings

- **Connection name**: Enter a name for the connection. This field is required.
- **Profile type**: In the list, click either **Native** or **Plugin**. The default is **Native**.
- **Configure Native profile type**: These setting apply to the VPN built into users' Windows devices.
  - **Server address**: Type the FQDN or IP address for the VPN server. This field is required.
  - **Remember credential**: Select whether to cache the credential. The default is **Off**. When enabled, credentials are cached whenever possible.
  - **DNS Suffix**: Type the DNS suffix.
  - **Tunnel type**: In the list, click the type of VPN tunnel to use. The default is **L2TP**. Possible options are:
    * **L2TP**: Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with pre-shared key authentication.
    * **PPTP**: Point-to-Point Tunneling.
    * **IKEv2**: Internet Key Exchange version 2.
  - **Authentication method**: In the list, click the authentication method to use. The default is **EAP**. Possible options are:
    * **EAP**: Extended Authentication Protocol.
    * **MSChapV2**: Use Microsoft's challenge-handshake authentication for mutual authentication. This option is not available when you select **IKEv2** for the tunnel type.
  - **EAP method**: In the list, click the EAP method to be used. The default is **TLS**. This field is not available when MSChapV2 authentication is enabled. Possible options are:
**TLS**: Transport Layer Security
**PEAP**: Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol

- **Trusted networks**: Type a list of networks separated by commas that do not require a VPN connection for access. For example, when users are on your company wireless network, they can access protected resources directly.

- **Require smart card certificate**: Select whether to require a smart card certificate. The default is **Off**.

- **Automatically select client certificate**: Select whether to automatically choose the client certificate to use for authentication. The default is **Off**. This option is unavailable when you enable **Require smart card certificate**.

- **Always on VPN**: Select whether the VPN is always on. The default is **Off**. When enabled, the VPN connection remains on until the user manually disconnects.

- **Bypass For Local**: Type the address and port number to allow local resources to bypass the proxy server.

**Configure Plugin profile type**: These settings apply to VPN plug-ins obtained from the Windows Store and installed on users’ devices.

- **Server address**: Type the FQDN or IP address for the VPN server. This field is required.

- **Remember credential**: Select whether to cache the credential. The default is **Off**. When enabled, credentials are cached whenever possible.

- **DNS Suffix**: Type the DNS suffix.

- **Client app ID**: Type the package family name for the VPN plug-in.

- **Plugin Profile XML**: Select the custom VPN plugin profile to be used by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file’s location. Contact the plugin provider for format and details.

- **Trusted networks**: Type a list of networks separated by commas that do not require a VPN connection for access. For example, when users are on your company wireless network, they can access protected resources directly.

- **Always on VPN**: Select whether the VPN is always on. The default is **Off**. When enabled, the VPN connection remains on until the user manually disconnects.

- **Bypass For Local**: Type the address and port number to allow local resources to bypass the proxy server.
Amazon settings

- **Connection name**: Enter a name for the connection.
- **Vpn type**: Click the connection type. Possible options are:
  - **L2TP PSK**: Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with pre-shared key authentication. This is the default.
  - **L2TP RSA**: Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol with RSA authentication.
  - **IPSEC XAUTH PSK**: Internet Protocol Security with pre-shared key and extended authentication.
  - **IPSEC HYBRID RSA**: Internet Protocol Security with hybrid RSA authentication.
  - **PPTP**: Point-to-Point Tunneling.

The following sections list the configuration options for each of the preceding connection types.

**Configure L2TP PSK settings for Amazon**

- **Server address**: Type the IP address for the VPN server.
- **User name**: Type an optional user name.
- **Password**: Type an optional password.
- **L2TP Secret**: Type the shared secret key.
- **IPSec Identifier**: Type the name of the VPN connection that users see on their devices when connecting.
- **IPSec pre-shared key**: Type the secret key.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- **DNS search domains**: Type the domains against which a user device's search domain list can match.
- **DNS servers**: Type the IP addresses of DNS servers to be used for resolving the specified domains.
- **Forwarding routes**: If your corporate VPN server supports forwarding routes, for each forwarding route to use, click **Add** and do the following:
  - **Forward route**: Type the IP address for the forwarding route.
  - Click **Save** to save the route or click **Cancel** to not save the route.

**Configure L2TP RSA settings for Amazon**

- **Server address**: Type the IP address for the VPN server.
- **User name**: Type an optional user name.
- **Password**: Type an optional password.
- **L2TP Secret**: Type the shared secret key.
- **DNS search domains**: Type the domains against which a user device's search domain list can match.
- **DNS servers**: Type the IP addresses of DNS servers to be used for resolving the specified domains.
- **Server certificate**: In the list, click the server certificate to be used.
- **CA certificate**: In the list, click the CA certificate to be used.
- **Identity credential**: In the list, click the identity credential to be used.
- **Forwarding routes**: If your corporate VPN server supports forwarding routes, for each forwarding route to use, click **Add** and do the following:
  - **Forward route**: Type the IP address for the forwarding route.
  - Click **Save** to save the route or click **Cancel** to not save the route.

**Configure IPSEC XAUTH PSK settings for Amazon**

- **Server address**: Type the IP address for the VPN server.
- **User name**: Type an optional user name.
- **Password**: Type an optional password.
- **IPSec Identifier**: Type the name of the VPN connection that users see on their devices when connecting.
- **IPSec pre-shared key**: Type the shared secret key.
- **DNS search domains**: Type the domains against which a user device's search domain list can match.
- **DNS servers**: Type the IP addresses of DNS servers to be used for resolving the specified domains.
• **Forwarding routes:** If your corporate VPN server supports forwarding routes, for each forwarding route to use, click **Add** and do the following:
  – **Forward route:** Type the IP address for the forwarding route.
  – Click **Save** to save the route or click **Cancel** to not save the route.

**Configure IPSEC AUTH RSA settings for Amazon**

- **Server address:** Type the IP address for the VPN server.
- **User name:** Type an optional user name.
- **Password:** Type an optional password.
- **DNS search domains:** Type the domains against which a user device's search domain list can match.
- **DNS servers:** Type the IP addresses of DNS servers to be used for resolving the specified domains.
- **Server certificate:** In the list, click the server certificate to be used.
- **CA certificate:** In the list, click the CA certificate to be used.
- **Identity credential:** In the list, click the identity credential to be used.
- **Forwarding routes:** If your corporate VPN server supports forwarding routes, for each forwarding route to use, click **Add** and do the following:
  – **Forward route:** Type the IP address for the forwarding route.
  – Click **Save** to save the route or click **Cancel** to not save the route.

**Configure IPSEC HYBRID RSA settings for Amazon**

- **Server address:** Type the IP address for the VPN server.
- **User name:** Type an optional user name.
- **Password:** Type an optional password.
- **DNS search domains:** Type the domains against which a user device's search domain list can match.
- **DNS servers:** Type the IP addresses of DNS servers to be used for resolving the specified domains.
- **Server certificate:** In the list, click the server certificate to be used.
- **CA certificate:** In the list, click the CA certificate to be used.
- **Forwarding routes:** If your corporate VPN server supports forwarding routes, for each forwarding route to use, click **Add** and do the following:
  – **Forward route:** Type the IP address for the forwarding route.
  – Click **Save** to save the route or click **Cancel** to not save the route.
Configure PPTP settings for Amazon

- **Server address**: Type the IP address for the VPN server.
- **User name**: Type an optional user name.
- **Password**: Type an optional password.
- **DNS search domains**: Type the domains against which a user device's search domain list can match.
- **DNS servers**: Type the IP addresses of DNS servers to be used for resolving the specified domains.
- **PPP encryption (MPPE)**: Select whether to enable data encryption with Microsoft Point-to-Point Encryption (MPPE). The default is **Off**.
- **Forwarding routes**: If your corporate VPN server supports forwarding routes, for each forwarding route to use, click **Add** and do the following:
  - **Forward route**: Type the IP address for the forwarding route.
  - Click **Save** to save the route or click **Cancel** to not save the route.

Chrome OS settings

- **VPN connection name**: Type a user-friendly description of this connection. This setting is required.
- **Priority of this network**: Type a suggested priority value for this network. Use an integer value.
- **Connection type:** In the list, select **OpenVPN** as the connection type.

Selecting **OpenVPN** reveals more settings that are specific to OpenVPN connections. Scroll to see all settings.

- **Host:** Type the host name or IP address of server the VPN connects to. Required for OpenVPN. The value you type here is the primary host. Optionally, you can configure extra hosts to connect to if the primary host fails to connect.
- **Auto connect:** Select whether the VPN connects to the host automatically. If this setting is set to **ON**, the VPN connects to the host automatically. Default is **OFF**.
- **Port:** Type the host server port number. Default is **1194**.
- **Protocol:** Type the protocol used when communicating with the host server. Default is **UPD**.
- **User authentication type:** In the list, choose the required form of user authentication:
  - **None:** No password or one-time PIN required.
  - **Password:** Password only. You can configure this value or let the user provide it at the time of connection.
  - **Password and OTP:** Password and one-time PIN. You can configure these values or let the
user provide it at the time of connection.

- **OTP:** One-time PIN. You can configure this value or let the user provide it at the time of connection.

- **User name:** Type the user name that is used to connect to the VPN. If not specified, user is prompted for a user name at time of connection. This value is subject to text string expansions:
  - ${LOGIN_ID} expands to the email address of the user before the @ symbol.
  - ${LOGIN_EMAIL} expands to the email address of the user.

- **Password:** Type the password text string that is used to connect to the VPN. If not specified, user is prompted for a password at time of connection.

- **OTP:** Type the one-time PIN text string that is used to connect to the VPN. A password text string. If not specified, user is prompted for a one-time PIN at time of connection.

- **Save credentials:** Select whether user credentials are saved after a connection. If this setting is set to **OFF**, users must enter their credentials each time they connect.

- **Cache credentials in memory:** Select whether user passwords and one-time PINs entered by users are cached in memory on the device. If this setting is set to **ON**, caching is enabled. Default is **OFF**.

- **Auth:** Type the authentication algorithm used to secure the connection. Defaults to **SHA-1**.

- **Authentication retry type:** In the list, select the way the VPN responds when user credentials are not verified. Options are **Fail with error on retry**, **Retry without asking for authentication**, and **Ask again for authentication each time**. Default is **Fail with error on retry**.

- **Cipher:** Type the cipher algorithm used to secure connection. Default is **BF-CBC**.

- **LZO compression:** Select whether to use LZO compression for the VPN. If this setting is set to **ON**, the VPN uses LZO compression. Default is **OFF**.

- **Adaptive compression:** Select whether to use adaptive compression for the VPN. If this setting is set to **ON**, the VPN uses adaptive compression. Default is **OFF**.
- **Extra hosts**: Configure a list of hosts to try, in order, if the device cannot connect to the primary host. Configuring these extra hosts is optional.
  1. Click **Add** to the right of **Host name**.
  2. Type the host name or IP address or server.
  3. Click **Save**.

  Repeat these steps to add more extra hosts.

- **Server poll time-out in seconds**: Type the maximum number of seconds to try to connect to this server before moving on to the next server in the list.

- **Ignore default route**: Select whether the host ignores VPN gateway. By default, the device creates a default route to the gateway address advertised by the VPN server. If this setting is set to ON, split tunneling is allowed. Default is OFF. If the server pushes a redirect-configuration flag to the client, this setting is ignored.

- **Key direction**: Type the key direction text string. The key direction is passed in as “–key-direction”.

- **Peer certificate type**: Type “server” to check the peer certificate type. If this setting is not set, the peer certificate type is not checked.

- **Push peer information**: Select whether peer certificate information is pushed to this host. If this setting is set to **ON**, peer information is pushed. Default is **OFF**.
· **Peer certificate extended key usage:** Type the explicit extended key usage text string, in OID notation, that the peer certificate must be signed with. Optional.

**Wallpaper device policy**

December 17, 2018

The Wallpaper device policy lets you add a .png or .jpg file to set wallpaper on an iOS device lock screen, home screen, or both. To use different wallpaper on iPads and iPhones, you need to create different wallpaper policies and deploy them to the appropriate users.

The following table lists the Apple recommended image dimensions for iOS devices.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Device</th>
<th>Image dimensions in pixels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iPhone 5, 5c, 5s</td>
<td>640 x 1136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPhone 6, 6s</td>
<td>750 x 1334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPhone 6 Plus</td>
<td>1080 x 1920</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPad Air, 2</td>
<td>1536 x 2048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPad 4, 3</td>
<td>1536 x 2048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iPad Mini 2, 3</td>
<td>1536 x 2048</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.

**iOS settings**

· **Apply to:** In the list, select **Lock screen**, **Home (icon list) screen**, or **Lock and home screens** to set where the wallpaper is to appear.

· **Wallpaper file:** To select the wallpaper file, click **Browse** and then navigate to the file location.

**Web content filter device policy**

December 17, 2018

You can filter web content on iOS devices by using the Apple auto-filter function with specific sites that you add to whitelists and blacklists. Web content filter device policy is available only on iOS devices.
in Supervised mode. For information about placing an iOS device into Supervised mode, see To place an iOS device in Supervised mode by using the Apple Configurator.

Note:
Android devices don’t support web content filtering.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

iOS settings

- **Filter type:** In the list, click either **Built-in** or **Plug-in**, and then follow the procedures that follow for the option you choose. The default is **Built-in**.

**Built-in filter type**

- **Web Content Filter**
  - **Auto filter enabled:** Whether to use the Apple auto-filter function to analyze websites for inappropriate content. The default is **Off**.
  - **Permitted URLs:** This list is ignored when **Auto filter enabled** is set to **Off**. When **Auto filter enabled** is set to **On**, the items in this list are always accessible whether or not the auto filter allows access. For each URL you want to add to the whitelist, click **Add** and do the following:
    * Type the URL of the permitted website. You must add `https://` or `https://` before the web address.
    * Click **Save** to save the website to the whitelist or click **Cancel** not to save it.
  - **Blacklisted URLs:** Items in this list are always blocked. For each URL you want to add to the blacklist, click **Add** and do the following:
    * Enter the URL of the website to be blocked. You must add `https://` or `https://` before the web address.
    * Click **Save** to save the website to the blacklist or click **Cancel** not to save it.

- **Bookmark whitelist**
  - **Bookmark Whitelist:** Specifies the sites that users can access. To enable access to web sites, add their URL.
    * **URL:** The URL of each web site that users can access. For example, to enable access to the Secure Hub store, add the Endpoint Management server URL to the **URL** list. You must add `https://` or `https://` before the web address. This field is required.
    * **Bookmark folder:** Enter an optional bookmark folder name. If this field is left blank, the bookmark is added to the default bookmarks directory.
**Title:** Enter a descriptive title for the website. For example, type “Google” for the URL https://google.com.
* Click Save to save the website to the blacklist or click Cancel not to save it.

Plug-in filter type

- **Filter name:** Enter a unique name for the filter.
- **Identifier:** Enter the bundle ID of the plugin that provides the filtering service.
- **Service address:** Enter an optional server address. Valid formats are IP address, host name, or URL.
- **User name:** Enter an optional user name for the service.
- **Password:** Enter an optional password for the service.
- **Certificate:** In the list, click an optional identity certificate to be used to authenticate the user to the service. The default is None.
- **Filter WebKit traffic:** Select whether to filter WebKit traffic.
- **Filter Socket traffic:** Select whether to filter socket traffic.
- **Custom Data:** For each custom key you want to add to the web filter, click Add and then do the following:
  - **Key:** Type the custom key.
  - **Value:** Type a value for the custom key.
  - Click Save to save the custom key or click Cancel not to save it.

**Webclip device policy**

August 21, 2018

You can place shortcuts, or webclips, to websites to appear alongside apps on users’ devices. You can specify your own icons to represent the webclips for iOS, macOS, and Android devices; Windows tablet only requires a label and a URL.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.

**iOS settings**

- **Label:** Type the label that is to appear with the webclip.
- **URL:** Type the URL associated with the webclip. The URL must begin with a protocol, for example, https://server.
- **Removable:** Select whether users can remove the webclip. The default is Off.
• **Icon to be updated**: Select the icon to be used for the webclip by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file location.

• **Precomposed icon**: Select whether the icon has effects (rounded corners, drop shadow, and reflective shine) applied to it. The default is **Off**, which adds the effects.

• **Full screen**: Select whether the linked web page opens in full-screen mode. The default is **Off**.

**macOS settings**

• **Label**: Type the label that is to appear with the webclip.

• **URL**: Type the URL associated with the webclip. The URL must begin with a protocol, for example, `https://server`.

• **Icon to be updated**: Select the icon to be used for the webclip by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file location.

**Android settings**

• **Rule**: Select whether this policy adds or removes a webclip. The default is **Add**.

• **Label**: Type the label that is to appear with the webclip.

• **URL**: Type the URL associated with the webclip.

• **Define an icon**: Select whether to use an icon file. The default is **Off**.

• **Icon file**: If **Define an icon** is **On**, select the icon file to use by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file location.

**Windows Desktop/Tablet settings**

• **Name**: Type the label that is to appear with the webclip.

• **URL**: Type the URL associated with the webclip.

**WiFi device policy**

December 17, 2018

The WiFi device policy lets you manage how users connect their devices to WiFi networks by defining the following items:

• Network names and types
• Authentication and security policies
• Proxy server use
• Other WiFi related details
To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.

**Prerequisites**

Before you create a policy, complete these steps:

- Create any delivery groups that you plan to use.
- Know the network name and type.
- Know any authentication or security types that you plan to use.
- Know any proxy server information that you might need.
- Install any necessary CA certificates.
- Have any necessary shared keys.
- Create the PKI entity for certificate-based authentication.
- Configure credential providers.

For more information, see **Authentication** and its subarticles.

**iOS settings**

- **Network type:** In the list, choose **Standard, Legacy Hotspot**, or **Hotspot 2.0** to set the network type you plan to use.
• **Network Name:** Type the SSID that is seen in the list of available networks for the device. Does not apply to Hotspot 2.0.

• **Hidden network (enable if network is open or off):** Choose whether the network is hidden.

• **Auto Join (automatically join this wireless network):** Choose whether the network is joined automatically. The default is On.

• **Security type:** In the list, choose the security type you plan to use. Does not apply to Hotspot 2.0.
  - None - Requires no further configuration.
  - WEP
  - WPA/WPA2 Personal
  - Any (Personal)
  - WEP Enterprise
  - WPA/WPA2 Enterprise: For the latest release of Windows 10, use of WPA-2 Enterprise requires that you configure SCEP. Endpoint Management can then send the certificate to devices to authenticate to the WiFi server. To configure SCEP, go to Distribution page of Settings > Credential Providers. For more information, see Credential providers.
  - Any (Enterprise)

The following sections list the options you configure for each of the preceding connection types.

**WPA, WPA Personal, Any (Personal) settings for iOS**

**Password:** Type an optional password. If you leave this field blank, users might be prompted for their passwords when they log on.

**WEP Enterprise, WPA Enterprise, WPA2 Enterprise, Any (Enterprise) settings for iOS**

When you choose any of these settings, their settings are listed after **Proxy server settings**.

• **Protocols, accepted EAP types:** Enable the EAP types you want to support and then configure the associated settings. The default is Off for each of the available EAP type.

• **Inner authentication (TTLS): Required only when you enable TTLS.** In the list, choose the inner authentication method to use. Options are: PAP, CHAP, MSCHAP, or MSCHAPv2. The default is MSCHAPv2.

• **Protocols, EAP-FAST:** Choose whether to use protected access credentials (PACs).
  - If you choose Use PAC, choose whether to use a provisioning PAC.
    * If you choose Provisioning PAC, choose whether to allow an anonymous TLS handshake between the end-user client and Endpoint Management.
  
• **Authentication:**
- **User name:** Type a user name.
- **Per-connection password:** Choose whether to require a password each time that users log on.
- **Password:** Type an optional password. If you leave this field blank, users might be prompted for their passwords when they log on.
- **Identity credential (Keystore or PKI credential):** In the list, choose the type of identity credential. The default is *None*.
- **Outer identity: Required only when you enable PEAP, TTLS, or EAP-FAST.** Type the externally visible user name. You can increase security by typing a generic term such as “anonymous” so that the user name isn’t visible.
- **Require a TLS certificate:** Choose whether to require a TLS certificate.

**Trust**

- **Trusted certificates:** To add a trusted certificate, click **Add** and, for each certificate you want to add, do the following:
  * **Application:** In the list, choose the application you want to add.
  * Click **Save** to save the certificate or click **Cancel**.
- **Trusted server certificate names:** To add trusted server certificate common names, click **Add** and, for each name you want to add, do the following:
  * **Certificate:** Type the name of the server certificate. You can use wildcards to specify the name, such as wpa.*.example.com.
  * Click **Save** to save the certificate name or click **Cancel**.

**Allow trust exceptions:** Choose whether the certificate trust dialog appears on users devices when a certificate is untrusted. The default is **On**.

**Proxy server settings**

- **Proxy configuration:** In the list, choose None, Manual, or Automatic to set how the VPN connection routes through a proxy server and then configure any additional options. The default is *None*, which requires no further configuration.

  - If you choose **Manual**, configure these settings:
    * **Hostname/IP address:** Type the host name or IP address of the proxy server.
    * **Port:** Type the proxy server port number.
    * **User name:** Type an optional user name to authenticate to the proxy server.
    * **Password:** Type an optional password to authenticate to the proxy server.

  - If you choose **Automatic**, configure these settings:
    * **Server URL:** Type URL of the PAC file that defines the proxy configuration.
    * **Allow direct connection if PAC is unreachable:** Choose whether to allow users to connect directly to the destination if the PAC file is unreachable. The default is **On**.
macOS settings

- **Network type**: In the list, choose Standard, Legacy Hotspot, or Hotspot 2.0 to set the network type you plan to use.
- **Network Name**: Type the SSID that is seen in the list of available networks for the device. Does not apply to Hotspot 2.0.
- **Hidden network (enable if network is open or off)**: Choose whether the network is hidden.
- **Auto Join (automatically join this wireless network)**: Choose whether the network is joined automatically. The default is On.
- **Security type**: In the list, choose the security type you plan to use. Does not apply to Hotspot 2.0.
  - None - Requires no further configuration.
  - WEP
  - WPA/WPA2 Personal
  - Any (Personal)
  - WEP Enterprise
  - WPA/WPA2 Enterprise
  - Any (Enterprise)
The following sections list the options you configure for each of the preceding connection types.

**WPA, WPA Personal, WPA 2 Personal, Any (Personal) settings for macOS**

- **Password**: Type an optional password. If you leave this field blank, users might be prompted for their passwords when they log on.

**WEP Enterprise, WPA Enterprise, WPA2 Enterprise, Any (Enterprise) settings for macOS**

When you choose any of these settings, their settings are listed after **Proxy server settings**.

- **Protocols, accepted EAP types**: Enable the EAP types you want to support and then configure the associated settings. The default is **Off** for each of the available EAP type.

- **Inner authentication (TTLS)**: Required only when you enable TTLS. In the list, choose the inner authentication method to use. Options are: PAP, CHAP, MSCHAP, or MSCHAPv2. The default is **MSCHAPv2**.

- **Protocols, EAP-FAST**: Choose whether to use protected access credentials (PACs).
  - If you select **Use PAC**, choose whether to use a provisioning PAC.
    - If you choose **Provisioning PAC**, choose whether to allow an anonymous TLS handshake between the end-user client and Endpoint Management.

- **Authentication**:
  - **Username**: Type a user name.
  - **Per-connection password**: Choose whether to require a password each time users log on.
  - **Password**: Type an optional password. If you leave this field blank, users might be prompted for their passwords when they log on.
  - **Identity credential (Keystore or PKI credential)**: In the list, choose the type of identity credential. The default is **None**.
  - **Outer identity**: Required only when you enable PEAP, TTLS, or EAP-FAST. Type the externally visible user name. You can increase security by typing a generic term like “anonymous” so that the user name isn’t visible.
  - **Require a TLS certificate**: Choose whether to require a TLS certificate.

- **Trust**
  - **Trusted certificates**: To add a trusted certificate, click **Add** and, for each certificate you want to add, do the following:
    - **Application**: In the list, choose the application you want to add.
    - Click **Save** to save the certificate or click **Cancel**.
  - **Trusted server certificate names**: To add trusted server certificate common names, click **Add** and, for each name you want to add, do the following:
**Certificate:** Type the name of the server certificate you want to add. You can use wildcards to specify the name, such as wpa.*.example.com.

* Click **Save** to save the certificate name or click **Cancel**.

- **Allow trust exceptions:** Choose whether the certificate trust dialog appears on user devices when a certificate is untrusted. The default is **On**.

- **Use as a Login Window configuration:** Choose whether to use the same credentials entered at the login window to authenticate the user.

- **Proxy server settings**
  - **Proxy configuration:** In the list, choose **None**, **Manual**, or **Automatic** to set how the VPN connection routes through a proxy server and then configure any additional options. The default is **None**, which requires no further configuration.
  - If you choose **Manual**, configure these settings:
    * **Hostname/IP address:** Type the host name or IP address of the proxy server.
    * **Port:** Type the proxy server port number.
    * **User name:** Type an optional user name to authenticate to the proxy server.
    * **Password:** Type an optional password to authenticate to the proxy server.
  - If you choose **Automatic**, configure these settings:
    * **Server URL:** Type URL of the PAC file that defines the proxy configuration.
    * **Allow direct connection if PAC is unreachable:** Choose whether to allow users to connect directly to the destination if the PAC file is unreachable. The default is **On**.

**Android settings**

- **Network name:** Type the SSID that is in the list of available networks on the user device.

- **Authentication:** In the list, choose the type of security to use with the WiFi connection.
- Open
- Shared
- WPA
- WPA-PSK
- WPA2
- WPA2-PSK
- 802.1x EAP

The following sections list the options you configure for each of the preceding connection types.

**Open, Shared settings for Android**

- **Encryption**: In the list, choose either Disabled or WEP. The default is WEP.
- **Password**: Type an optional password.

**WPA, WPA-PSK, WPA2, WPA2-PSK settings for Android**

- **Encryption**: In the list, choose either TKIP or AES. The default is TKIP.
- **Password**: Type an optional password.

**802.1x settings for Android**

- **EAP Type**: In the list, choose PEAP, TLS, or TTLS. The default is PEAP.
- **Password**: Type an optional password.
- **Authentication phase 2**: In the list, choose None, PAP, MSCHAP, MSCHAPPv2, or GTC. The default is PAP.
- **Identity**: Type the optional user name and domain.
- **Anonymous**: Type the optional, externally visible user name. You can increase security by typing a generic term like “anonymous” so that the user name isn’t visible.
- **CA certificate**: In the list, choose the certificate to use.
- **Identity credential**: In the list, choose the identity credential to use. The default is None.
- **Hidden network (Enable if network is open or off)**: Choose whether the network is hidden.
Android Enterprise settings

- **Network name**: Type the SSID that is in the list of available networks on the user device.
- **Authentication**: In the list, choose the type of security to use with the WiFi connection.
  - Open
  - Shared
  - WPA
  - WPA-PSK
  - WPA2
  - WPA2-PSK
  - 802.1x EAP

The following sections list the options you configure for each of the preceding connection types. The default is **Open**.

**Open, Shared settings for Android Enterprise**

- **Encryption**: In the list, choose either **Disabled** or **WEP**. The default is **WEP**.
- **Password**: Type an optional password.

**WPA, WPA-PSK, WPA2, WPA2-PSK settings for Android**

- **Encryption**: In the list, choose either **TKIP** or **AES**. The default is **TKIP**.
- **Password**: Type an optional password.
802.1x settings for Android

- **EAP Type**: In the list, choose PEAP, TLS, or TTLS. The default is PEAP.
- **Password**: Type an optional password.
- **Authentication phase 2**: In the list, choose None, PAP, MSCHAP, MSCHAPPv2, or GTC. The default is PAP.
- **Identity**: Type the optional user name and domain.
- **Anonymous**: Type the optional, externally visible user name. You can increase security by typing a generic term like “anonymous” so that the user name isn’t visible.
- **CA certificate**: In the list, choose the certificate to use.
- **Identity credential**: In the list, choose the identity credential to use. The default is None.
- **Hidden network (Enable if network is open or off)**: Choose whether the network is hidden.

Windows Phone settings

- **Network name**: Type the SSID that is in the list of available networks on the user device.
- **Authentication**: In the list, choose the type of security to use with the WiFi connection.
  - Open
  - WPA Personal
  - WPA-2 Personal
  - WPA-2 Enterprise: For the latest release of Windows 10, use of WPA-2 Enterprise requires that you configure SCEP. SCEP configuration enables Endpoint Management to send the certificate to devices to authenticate to the WiFi server. To configure SCEP, go to **Distribution** page of **Settings > Credential Providers**. For more information, see **Credential**
The following sections list the options you configure for each of the preceding connection types.

**Open settings for Windows Phone**

- **Connect if hidden**: Choose whether to connect when the network is hidden.
- **Connect automatically**: Choose whether to connect to the network automatically.

**WPA Personal, WPA-2 Personal settings for Windows Phone**

- **Encryption**: In the list, choose either AES or TKIP to set the type of encryption. The default is AES.
- **Connect if hidden**: Choose whether to connect when the network is hidden.
- **Connect automatically**: Choose whether to connect to the network automatically.

**WPA-2 Enterprise settings for Windows Phone**

- **Encryption**: In the list, choose either AES or TKIP to set the type of encryption. The default is AES.
- **EAP Type**: in the list, choose either PEAP-MSCHAPv2 or TLS to set the EAP type. The default is PEAP-MSCHAPv2.
- **Connect if hidden**: Choose whether to connect when the network is hidden.
- **Connect automatically**: Choose whether to connect to the network automatically.
- **Push certificate via SCEP**: Choose whether to push the certificate to user devices via Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP).
- **Credential provider for SCEP**: In the list, choose the SCEP credential provider. The default is None.
- **Proxy server settings**
  - **Host name or IP address**: Type the name or IP address of the proxy server.
  - **Port**: Type the port number for the proxy server.
Windows 10 settings

• **Authentication**: In the list, click the type of security to use with the WiFi connection.
  - Open
  - WPA Personal
  - WPA-2 Personal
  - WPA Enterprise
  - WPA-2 Enterprise: For the latest release of Windows 10, use of WPA-2 Enterprise requires that you configure SCEP. SCEP configuration enables Endpoint Management to send the certificate to devices to authenticate to the WiFi server. To configure SCEP, go to **Distribution** page of Settings > Credential Providers. For more information, see Credential providers.

The following sections list the options you configure for each of the preceding connection types.

**Open settings for Windows 10**

• **Hidden network (Enable if network is open or off)**: Choose whether the network is hidden.
• **Connect automatically**: Choose whether to connect to the network automatically.

**WPA Personal, WPA-2 Personal settings for Windows 10**

• **Encryption**: In the list, choose either AES or TKIP to set the type of encryption. The default is AES.
• **Hidden network (Enable if network is open or off):** Choose whether the network is hidden.
• **Connect automatically:** Choose whether to connect to the network automatically.

**WPA-2 Enterprise settings for Windows 10**

• **Encryption:** In the list, choose either **AES** or **TKIP** to set the type of encryption. The default is **AES**.
• **EAP Type:** in the list, choose either **PEAP-MSCHAPv2** or **TLS** to set the EAP type. The default is **PEAP-MSCHAPv2**.
• **Connect if hidden:** Choose whether the network is hidden.
• **Connect automatically:** Choose whether to connect to the network automatically.
• **Push certificate via SCEP:** Choose whether to push the certificate to user devices by using Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP).
• **Credential provider for SCEP:** In the list, choose the SCEP credential provider. The default is **None**.

**Chrome OS settings**

• **Name:** Type a user-friendly description of this connection. This setting is required.
• **Priority:** Type a suggested priority value for this network. This value can determine which network to connect to when multiple configured networks are available.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- **Allow gateway ARP Polling**: If On, this setting allows ARP messages to be sent to the default gateway to monitor the status of the current connection. Default is On.
- **Auto connect**: If On, devices connect to the network automatically when in range. Default is Off.
- **Hidden SSID**: When set to On, the SSID of the network is not broadcast. Default is Off.
- **Roam threshold**: Type the roam threshold for this network. The roam threshold is the signal-to-noise value (in dB) below which device attempts to roam to a new network.
- **Select type of security**: Choose the type of security used with this WiFi connection. Options are None and WPA-PSK. Default is None.

**Workspace Hub settings**

Citrix Ready workspace hub devices can’t connect to 5 Ghz WiFi networks. Configure your device to connect to a 2.4 Ghz WiFi network.

- **Name**: Type a user-friendly description of this connection. This setting is required.
- **Authentication**: If Open, no authentication is required. If WPA-2 Enterprise, configure authentication settings for the device. Default is Open.
- **EAP Type**: Select an authentication protocol type. If Automatic, the workspace hub device automatically determines the authentication protocol. You can also select PEAP-MSCHAPv2. Default is Automatic.
- **Identity**: Type a user name for authentication.
- **Password**: Type a password for authentication.
- **Anonymous**: Type an optional, externally visible user name. You can increase security by typing a generic term like “anonymous” so that the user name isn't visible.
- **CA certificate**: In the list, choose the certificate to use.

To push the WiFi policy to the device, it must first be connected using ethernet. After the device reboots, it connects to WiFi automatically.

**Windows Agent device policy**

August 21, 2018

Use the Windows Agent device policy to point to the location of PowerShell scripts. You can point to script files uploaded to Endpoint Management as an enterprise app and to other servers that host scripts. For information about adding enterprise apps, see Add apps.

After you create this device policy, you then deploy the script files to managed Windows Desktops and Tablets.

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
To add or configure this policy, go to **Configure > Device Policies**. For more information, see **Device policies**.

**Windows Desktop and Tablet settings**

- **Config name**: Type a descriptive name for your configuration.
- **Task type**: Select **PowerShell**.
- **Select script location**: Select **Uploaded script** for scripts that you have uploaded to Endpoint Management or select **Script location URL** for scripts hosted externally.
  - **Select script**: If you chose **Uploaded script**, select the script to run.
  - **Enter script location URL**: If you chose **Script location URL**, enter the location of the script to run. This URL must deliver the script as a payload. Endpoint Management doesn’t support URLs that deliver scripts as a JavaScript download.
- **Run Schedule**: Select **Run Once** to run the selected script one time.

To check on the status of a script, navigate to **Manage > Devices** in your console. Select the device on which you want to check the script status and click **Edit**. Under **Properties**, you can check the status...
of your scripts by clicking **Download** under the **Windows Agent** heading.

**Windows Hello for Business device policy**

August 21, 2018

Windows Hello for Business allows users to sign on to Windows devices by using their Active Directory or Azure Active Directory account. You use the Windows Hello for Business device policy to enable the feature so users can provision Windows Hello for Business on their device. The policy also lets you configure passcode limitations and other security features.

Go to **Configure > Device Policies** to add the Windows Hello for Business policy. Configure these settings:

**Windows Phone and Windows Desktop/Tablet settings**

- **Use Windows Hello for Business**: Enable the feature to allow users to provision Windows Hello for Business on their device.
- **Require security device**: Require that users have a Trusted Platform Module (TPM) to sign on.
• Minimum/Maximum PIN length: Minimum and maximum length for user PINs. Minimum PIN Length defaults to 4. Maximum PIN Length defaults to 127.

• Uppercase letters, Lowercase letters, Special characters: Select whether to Allow, Require, or Do not allow each type of character. Defaults to Do not allow.

• Digits: Whether to Allow, Require, or Do not allow digits. Defaults to Require.

• History: The number of past PINs that users can’t reuse. Defaults to 0, meaning users can reuse all PINs.

• Expiration: The number of days before a user must change their PIN. Defaults to 0, which means that PINs don’t expire.

• Use Biometrics: Allow the use of biometrics instead of PINs for user sign-on.

Windows Information Protection device policy

August 21, 2018

Windows Information Protection (WIP), previously known as enterprise data protection (EDP), is a Windows technology that protects against the potential leakage of enterprise data. Data leakage can occur through sharing of enterprise data to non-enterprise protected apps, between apps, or outside of the organization network. For more information, see Protect your enterprise data using Windows Information Protection (WIP) on Microsoft TechNet.

You can create a device policy in Endpoint Management to specify the apps that require Windows Information Protection at the enforcement level you set. The Windows Information Protection policy is for Windows 10 version 1607 and later supervised Phone, Tablet, and Desktop.

Endpoint Management includes some common apps and you can add others. You specify for the policy an enforcement level that affects the user experience. For example, you can:

• Block any inappropriate data sharing.
• Warn about inappropriate data sharing and allow users to override the policy.
• Run WIP silently while logging and permitting inappropriate data sharing.

To exclude apps from Windows Information Protection, define the apps in Microsoft AppLocker XML files and then import those files into Endpoint Management.

To add or configure this policy, go to Configure > Device Policies. For more information, see Device policies.
**Windows Phone and Windows Desktop/Tablet settings**

- **Desktop App** (Windows 10 Tablet), **Store App** (Windows 10 Phone and Tablet): Endpoint Management includes some common apps, as shown in the sample above. You can edit or remove those apps as needed.

  To add other apps: In the **Desktop App** or **Store App** table, click **Add** and provide the app information.

  **Allowed** apps can read, create, and update enterprise data. **Denied** apps can’t access enterprise data. **Exempt** apps can read enterprise data but can’t create or modify the data.

- **AppLocker XML**: Microsoft provides a list of Microsoft apps that have known compatibility issues with WIP. To exclude those apps from WIP, click **Browse** to upload the list. Endpoint Management combines the uploaded AppLocker XML and the configured desktop and store apps in the policy sent to the device. For more information, see [Recommended deny list for Windows Information Protection](#).

- **Enforcement level**: Select an option to specify how you want Windows Information Protection to protect and manage data sharing. Defaults to **Off**.
  
  * **0-Off**: WIP is off and doesn’t protect or audit your data.
  * **1-Silent**: WIP runs silently, logs inappropriate data sharing, and doesn’t block anything. You can access logs through Reporting CSP.
  * **2-Override**: WIP warns users about potentially unsafe data sharing. Users can override warnings and share the data. This mode logs actions, including user overrides, to your audit log.
  * **3-Block**: WIP prevents users from completing potentially unsafe data sharing.

- **Protected domain names**: The domains that your enterprise uses for its user identities. This list of managed identity domains, along with the primary domain, make up the identity of your managing enterprise. The first domain in the list is the primary corporate iden-
Data recovery certificate: Click Browse and then select a recovery certificate to use for data recovery of encrypted files. This certificate is the same as the data recovery agent (DRA) certificate for the encrypting file system (EFS), only delivered through MDM instead of Group Policy. If a recovery certificate isn’t available, create it. For information, see “Create a data recovery certificate” in this section.

Network domain names: A list of domains that comprise the boundaries of the enterprise. WIP protects all traffic to the fully qualified domains in this list. This setting, with the IP range setting, detects whether a network endpoint is enterprise or personal on private networks. Use a comma to separate list items. For example: corp.example.com,region.example.com

IP range: A list of the enterprise IPv4 and IPv6 ranges that define the computers in the enterprise network. WIP considers these locations as a safe destination for enterprise data sharing. Use commas to separate list items. For example:


IP ranges list is authoritative: To prevent auto-detection of IP ranges by Windows, change this setting to On. Defaults to Off.

Proxy servers: A list of the proxy servers that the enterprise can use for corporate resources. This setting is required if you use a proxy in your network. Without a proxy server, enterprise resources might be unavailable when a client is behind a proxy. For example, resources might be unavailable from certain WiFi hotspots at hotels and restaurants. Use commas to separate list items. For example:

proxy.example.com:80;157.54.11.118:443

Internal proxy servers: A list of the proxy servers that your devices go through to reach your cloud resources. Using this server type indicates that the cloud resources you’re connecting to are enterprise resources. Don’t include in this list any of the servers in the Proxy servers setting, which are used for non-WIP-protected traffic. Use commas to separate list items. For example:

eexample.internalproxy1.com;10.147.80.50

Cloud resources: A list of cloud resources protected by WIP. For each cloud resource, you can also optionally specify a proxy server in the Proxy servers list to route traffic for this cloud resource. All traffic routed through the Proxy servers is treated as enterprise traffic. Use commas to separate list items. For example:
Set Require protection under lock: Windows 10 Phone only. If On, the Passcode device policy is also required. Otherwise, the Windows Information Protection policy deployment fails. Also, if this policy is On, the setting Require protection under lock appears. Default is Off.

Require protection under lock: Windows 10 Phone only. Specifies whether to encrypt enterprise data using a key that’s protected by an employee PIN on a locked device. Apps can’t read corporate data on a locked device. Defaults to On.

Revoke WIP certificate on unenroll: Specifies whether to revoke local encryption keys from a user device when it’s unenrolled from Windows Information Protection. After the encryption keys are revoked, a user can’t access encrypted corporate data. If Off, the keys aren’t revoked and the user continues to have access to protected files after unenrollment. Defaults to On.

Show overlay icons: Specifies whether to include the Windows Information Protection icon overlay on corporate files in Explorer and enterprise only app tiles in the Start menu. Defaults to Off.

Create a data recovery certificate

A data recover certificate is required to enable the Windows Information Protection policy.

1. On the Endpoint Management server, open a command prompt and navigate to a folder (other than Windows\System32) where you want to create a certificate.

2. Run this command:

   cipher /r:ESFDRA

3. When prompted, enter a password to protect the private key file.

   The cipher command creates a .cer and a .pfx file.

4. In the Endpoint Management console, go to Settings > Certificates and import the .cer file, which applies to both Windows 10 tablets and phones.

User experience

When Windows Information Protection is in effect, apps and files include an icon:
If a user copies or saves a protected file to a non-protected location, the following notification appears, depending on the enforcement level configured.
Deprecated device policies

November 28, 2018

Note:
Starting the second quarter of 2018, support for Symbian and Windows Mobile/CE devices is no longer available to new customers. For information about the Microsoft product lifecycle, see https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/lifecycle/search/1143.

APN device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)

You use the Access Point Name (APN) device policy if your organization doesn’t use a consumer APN to connect to the Internet from a mobile device. An APN policy determines the settings used to connect your devices to a specific phone carrier’s General Packet Radio Service (GPRS). This setting is already defined in most newer phones.

Windows Mobile/CE settings

- **APN**: Type the name of the access point. This name must match an accepted Android APN or the policy fails.
- **Network**: In the list, click the type of network to use. The default is **Built-in office**.
- **User name**: This string specifies the user name for this APN. If the user name is missing, the device prompts for the string during profile installation.
• **Password:** The password for the user for this APN. For obfuscation purposes, the password is encoded. If it is missing from the payload, the device prompts for the password during profile installation.

**App access device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)**

The app access device policy in Endpoint Management allows you to define a list of apps that meet any of these conditions:

- Required to be installed on the device
- Can be installed on the device
- Must not be installed on the device.

You can then create an automated action to react to the device compliance with that list of apps.

You can only configure one type of access policy at a time. You can add a policy for either a list of required apps, suggested apps, or forbidden apps. You can’t include a mix of required, suggested, or forbidden apps within the same app access policy. If you create a policy for each type of list, we recommend that you name each policy carefully. That practice enables you to know which policy in Endpoint Management applies to which list of apps.

**Mobile/CE settings**

- **Access policy:** Click **Required**, **Suggested**, or **Forbidden**. The default is **Required**.
  - To add one or more apps to the list, click **Add** and then do the following:
    - **App name:** Enter an app name.
    - **App Identifier:** Enter an optional app identifier.
    - Click **Save** or **Cancel**.
    - Repeat these steps for each app you want to add.

**App inventory device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)**

The App inventory policy lets you collect an inventory of the apps on managed devices. Endpoint Management can then compare the inventory to any app access policies deployed to those devices. In this way, you can detect apps that appear on an app blacklist or whitelist and take action accordingly.

An app appears in a blacklist when the app is forbidden in an app access policy. An app appears in a whitelist when the app is required in an app access policy.
Citrix Endpoint Management

Windows Mobile/CE settings

- For each platform you select, leave the default setting or change the setting to **Off**. The default is **On**.

App uninstall device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)

The App uninstall policy lets you remove apps from user devices for any number of reasons. It may be that you no longer want to support certain apps. Or perhaps your company wants to replace existing apps with similar apps from different vendors.

The apps are removed when this policy is deployed to user devices. Users receive a prompt to uninstall the app.

Windows Mobile/CE settings

- **Apps to uninstall**: For each app you want to add, click **Add** and then do the following:
  - **App name**: In the list, click an existing app or click **Add new** to enter a new app name. If there are no apps configured for this platform, the list is empty and you must add new apps.
  - Click **Add** to add the app or click **Cancel** to cancel adding the app.

App tunneling device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)

Application tunnels (app tunnels) are designed to increase service continuity and data transfer reliability for your mobile apps. App tunnels define proxy parameters between the client component of any mobile device app and the app server component.

Any app traffic sent through a tunnel that you define in this policy goes through Endpoint Management before being redirected to the server running the app.

Windows Mobile/CE settings

- **Connection initiated by**: Click **Device** or **Server** to specify the source initiating the connection.
- **Protocol**: In the list, click the protocol to use. The default is **Generic TCP**.
- **Maximum connections per device**: Type a number to specify how many concurrent TCP connections the app can establish. This field applies only to device-initiated connections.
- **Define connection time out**: Select whether to set a length of time an app can be idle before the tunnel is closed.
- **Connection time out**: Specify the time out when you set Define connection time out to On. The time out is the number of seconds that an app can be idle before the tunnel is closed.

- **Block cellular connections passing by this tunnel**: Select whether this tunnel is blocked while roaming. WiFi and USB connections aren't blocked.

- **Redirect to Endpoint Management**: In the list, click how the device connects to Endpoint Management. The default is Through app settings.
  
  - If you select Using a local alias, type the alias in Local alias. The default is localhost.
  
  - If you select An IP address range, type the from IP address in IP address range from. Then type the to IP address in IP address range to.

- **Client port**: Type the client port number. Usually, this value is the same as for the server port.

- **IP address or server name**: Type the IP address or name of the app server. This field applies only to device-initiated connections.

- **Server port**: Type the server port number.

**Connection manager device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)**

In Endpoint Management, you can specify the connection settings for apps that connect automatically to the Internet and to private networks. This policy is only available on Windows Pocket PCs.

**Windows Mobile/CE settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Built-in office</strong> means that all connections are to your company's intranet. <strong>Built-in Internet</strong> means that all connections are to the Internet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Apps that connect to a private network automatically use**: In the list, click either Built-in office or Built-in Internet. The default is Built-in office.

- **Apps that connect to the Internet automatically use**: In the list, click either Built-in office or Built-in Internet. The default is Built-in office.

**Connection scheduling device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)**

You create connection scheduling policies to control how and when user devices connect to Endpoint Management. You can specify that users connect their devices manually, that devices stay connected permanently, or that devices connect within a defined time frame.
Windows Mobile/CE settings

- **Require devices to connect**: Click the option you want to set for this schedule.
  - **Always**: Keep the connection alive permanently. Endpoint Management on the user’s device attempts to reconnect to the Endpoint Management server after a network connection loss. Endpoint Management monitors the connection by transmitting control packets at regular intervals. Citrix recommends this option for optimized security. When you choose **Always**, also use for the device **Tunnel Policy**, the **Define connection time-out** setting to ensure that the connection is not draining battery. By keeping the connection alive, you can push security commands like wipe or lock to the device on-demand. Ensure that you also select the **Deployment Schedule** option **Deploy for always-on connections** in each policy deployed to the device.
  - **Never**: Connect manually. Users must initiate the connection from Endpoint Management on their devices. Citrix doesn’t recommend this option for production deployments because it prevents you from deploying security policies to devices. As a result, users don’t receive any new apps or policies.
  - **Every**: Connect at the designated interval. When this option is in effect and you send a security policy such as a lock or a wipe: Endpoint Management processes the action on the device the next time that the device connects. When you select this option, the **Connect every N minutes** field appears where you must enter the number of minutes after which the device must reconnect. The default, and minimum value, is 120.
  - **Define schedule**: When enabled, Endpoint Management on the user’s device attempts to reconnect to the Endpoint Management server after a network connection loss. Endpoint Management monitors the connection by transmitting control packets at regular intervals within the time frame that you define. See Defining a connection time frame, next, for how to define a connection time frame.
    * **Maintain permanent connection during these hours**: Users’ devices must be connected for the defined time frame.
    * **Require a connection within each of these ranges**: Users’ devices must be connected at least once in any of the defined time frames.
    * **Use local device time rather than UTC**: Synchronize the defined time frames to local device time rather than Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

### Defining a connection time frame

When you enable the following options, a timeline appears where you can define the time frames you want. You can enable either or both options to require a permanent connection during specific hours or to require a connection within certain time frames. Each square in the timeline is 30 minutes. Thus, if you want a connection between 8:00 AM and 9:00 AM every weekday, click the two squares on the timeline between 8 AM and 9 AM every weekday.
For example, the two timelines in the following figure require:

- A permanent connection between 8:00 AM and 9:00 AM every weekday.
- A permanent connection between 12:00 AM Saturday and 1:00 AM Sunday.
- At least one connection every weekday between 5:00 AM and 8:00 AM or between 10:00 AM and 11:00 PM.

**Credentials device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)**

You can create credentials device policies in Endpoint Management to enable integrated authentication with your PKI configuration in Endpoint Management. For example, to integrate with a PKI entity, a keystore, a credential provider, or a server certificate. For more information about credentials, see [Certificates and authentication](#).

**Note:**

Before you can create this policy, you need the credential information you plan to use for each platform, plus any certificates and passwords.

**Windows Mobile/CE settings**

- **Store device:** In the list, click the location of the certificate store for the credential. The default is **root**. Options are:
  - **Privileged execution trust authorities:** Applications signed with a certificate belonging to this store runs with privileged trust level.
  - **Unprivileged execution trust authorities:** Applications signed with a certificate belonging to this store runs with normal trust level.
  - **SPC (Software Publisher Certificate):** The Software Publishing Certificate (SPC) is used for signing .cab files.
  - **root:** A certificate store that contains root, or self-signed, certificates.
  - **CA:** A certificate store that contains cryptographic information, including intermediary certification authorities.
  - **MY:** A certificate store that contains end-user personal certificates.
- **Credential type:** Certificate is the only credential type for Windows Mobile/CE devices.
- **The credential file path:** Select the credential file by clicking **Browse** and then navigating to the file’s location.

**Custom XML device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)**

You can create custom XML policies in Endpoint Management to customize the following features:
• Provisioning, which includes configuring the device, and enabling or disabling features
• Device configuration, which includes allowing users to change settings and device parameters
• Software upgrades, which include providing new software or bug fixes to be loaded onto the device, including apps and system software
• Fault management, which includes receiving error and status reports from the device

For Windows devices: You create your custom XML configuration by using the Open Mobile Alliance Device Management (OMA DM) API in Windows. Creating custom XML with the OMA DM API is beyond the scope of this topic. For more information about using the OMA DM API, see OMA Device Management on the Microsoft Developer Network site.

Windows Mobile/CE settings

• XML content: Type, or cut and paste, the custom XML code you want to add to the policy.

After you click Next, Endpoint Management checks the XML content syntax. Any syntax errors appear below the content box. Fix any errors before you continue.

If there are no syntax errors, the Custom XML Policy assignment page appears.

Delete files and folders device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)

You can create a policy in Endpoint Management to delete specific files or folders from Windows Mobile/CE devices.

Windows Mobile/CE settings

• Files and folders to delete: for each file or folder you want to delete, click Add and then do the following:
  – Path: Type the path to the file or folder.
  – Type: In the list, click File or Folder. The default is File.
  – Click Save to save the file or folder, or click Cancel not to save the file or folder.

Delete registry keys and values device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)

You can create a policy in Endpoint Management to delete specific registry keys and values from Windows Mobile/CE devices.
Windows Mobile/CE settings

- **Registry keys and values to delete**: for each registry key and value you want to delete, click Add and then do the following:
  - **Key**: Type the registry key path. This field is required. The registry key path should either start with HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\ or HKEY_CURRENT_USER\ or HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\ or HKEY_USERS\.
  - **Value**: Type the value name to be deleted or leave this field blank to delete the entire registry key.
  - Click **Save** to save the key and value, or click **Cancel** not to save the key and value.

Files device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)

You can add script files to Endpoint Management that perform certain functions for users. You can add the following file types with this policy:

- Text-based files (.xml, .html, .py, and so on)
- Script files created with MortScript

Windows Mobile/CE settings

- **File to be imported**: Select the file to import by clicking Browse and navigating to the file location.
- **File type**: Select either File or Script. When you select Script, **Execute immediately** appears. Select whether the script is executed when the file is uploaded. The default is **Off**.
- **Replace macro expressions**: Select whether to replace macro token names in a script with a device or user property. The default is **Off**.
- **Destination folder**: In the list, select the location in which to store the uploaded file or click **Add new** to choose an unlisted file location. In addition, you can use any of the following macros as the start of a path identifier:
  - %Flash Storage%
  - %Endpoint Management Folder%
  - %Program Files%
  - %My Documents%
  - %Windows%
- **Destination file name**: Optionally, type a different name for the file if it must be changed before being deployed on a device.
- **Copy file only if different**: In the list, select whether to copy the file if it is different from the existing file. The default is to copy the file only if it is different.
- **Read only file**: Select whether the file is to be read-only. The default is **Off**.
• **Hidden file:** Select whether the file is not to be shown in the file list. The default is **Off**.

**Proxy device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)**

You can add a device policy in Endpoint Management to specify global HTTP proxy settings for devices running Windows Mobile/CE. You can deploy only one global HTTP proxy policy per device.

**Windows Mobile/CE settings**

- **Network:** In the list, click the network type to use. The default is **Built-in office**. Possible options are:
  - User-defined office
  - User-defined Internet
  - Built-in office
  - Built-in Internet
- **Network:** In the list, click the network connection protocol to use. The default is **HTTP**. Possible options are:
  - HTTP
  - WAP
  - Socks 4
  - Socks 5
- **Hostname or IP address for the proxy server:** Type the host name or IP address of the proxy server. This field is required.
- **Port for the proxy server:** Type the proxy server port number. This field is required. The default is **80**.
- **User name:** Type an optional user name to authenticate to the proxy server.
- **Password:** Type an optional password to authenticate to the proxy server.
- **Domain name:** Type an optional domain name.
- **Enable:** Select whether to enable the proxy. The default is **On**.

**Registry device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)**

The Windows Mobile/CE registry stores data about apps, drivers, user preferences, and configuration settings. In Endpoint Management, you can define the registry keys and values that let you administer Windows Mobile/CE devices.

**Windows Mobile/CE settings**

For each registry key or registry key/value pair you want to add, click **Add** and do the following:
- **Registry key path**: Type the full path for the registry key. For example, type `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows` to specify the route to the Windows key from the HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE root key.

- **Registry value name**: Type the name for the registry key value. For example, type `ProgramFilesDir` to add that value name to the registry key path `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion`. If you leave this field blank, it means that you are adding a registry key and not a registry key/value pair.

- **Type**: In the list, click the data type for the value. The default is **DWORD**. Possible options are:
  - **DWORD**: A 32-bit unsigned integer.
  - **String**: Any string.
  - **Extended string**: A string value that can contain environment variables like `%TEMP%` or `%USERPROFILE%`.
  - **Binary**: Any arbitrary binary data.

- **Value**: Type the value associated with Registry value name. For example, to specify the value of `ProgramFilesDir`, type `C:\Program Files`.

- Click **Save** to save the registry key information or click **Cancel** not to save the registry key information.

### Restrictions device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)

The Restrictions device policy allows or restricts certain features or functionality on user devices, such as the camera. You can also set security restrictions, as well as restrictions on media content and restrictions on the types of apps users can and cannot install. Most of the restriction settings default to **On**, or **allows**.

**Tip:**

Any option for which you select **On** means that the user can perform the operation or use the feature. For example:

**Camera**. If **On**, the user can use the camera on their device. If **Off**, the user cannot use the camera on their device.
Citrix Endpoint Management

Windows Mobile/CE settings

- **Bluetooth/infrared beaming (Obex):** Enable OBEX (OBject EXchange protocol) over Bluetooth or infrared to exchange data between devices.
- **Camera:** Enable the camera on user devices.
- **WiFi switch:** Allow users to switch WiFi networks.
- **Bluetooth:** Enable Bluetooth on users’ devices.

Roaming device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)

You can add a device policy in Endpoint Management to configure whether to allow voice and data roaming. When voice roaming is disabled, data roaming is automatically disabled.

Windows Mobile/CE settings

- **While roaming**
  - **Use on-demand connection only:** The device only connects to Endpoint Management if users manually trigger the connection on their devices or if a mobile application requests a forced connection. For example, such as a push mail request if the Exchange Server has been set accordingly. This option temporarily disables the default device connection schedule policy.
  - **Block all cellular connections except the ones managed by Endpoint Management:** Except for the data traffic officially declared in a Endpoint Management application tunnel or other Endpoint Management device management task: No other data is sent or received
by the device. For example, this option disables all connections to the Internet through the device’s web browser.

- **Block all cellular connections managed by Endpoint Management**: All application data transiting through a Endpoint Management tunnel is blocked (including Endpoint Management Remote Support). The data traffic related to pure device management, however, is not blocked.

- **Block all cellular connections to Endpoint Management**: Until the device is either re-connected through USB, WiFi, or its default mobile operator cellular network: There is no traffic transiting between the device and Endpoint Management.

* • **While domestic roaming**  
  - **Ignore domestic roaming**: No data is blocked while users roam domestically.

**WiFi device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)**

WiFi policies let you manage how users connect their devices to WiFi networks by defining the following items:

- Network names and types
- Authentication and security policies
- Proxy server use
- Other WiFi details

**Prerequisites**

Before you create a policy, be sure that you complete these steps:

- Create any delivery groups that you plan to use.
- Know the network name and type.
- Know any authentication or security types that you plan to use.
- Know any proxy server information that you might need.
- Install any necessary CA certificates.
- Have any necessary shared keys.
- Create the PKI entity for certificate-based authentication.
- Configure credential providers.

For more information, see Authentication and its subarticles.

**Windows Mobile/CE settings**

- **Network name**: Type the SSID that is in the list of available networks on the user device.
- **Device-to-device connection (ad-hoc)**: Allows two devices to connect directly. Default is Off.
• **Network:** Choose whether the device is connected to an external internet source or an Office intranet.

• **Authentication:** In the list, choose the type of security to use with the WiFi connection.
  – Open
  – WPA Personal
  – WPA-2 Personal
  – WPA-2 Enterprise

The following sections list the options you configure for each of the preceding connection types.

**Open settings for Windows Mobile/CE**

• **Hidden network (Enable if network is open or off):** Choose whether the network is hidden.

• **Connect automatically:** Choose whether to connect to the network automatically.

**WPA Personal, WPA-2 Personal settings for Windows Mobile/CE**

• **Encryption:** In the list, choose either AES or TKIP to set the type of encryption. The default is AES.

• **Hidden network (Enable if network is open or off):** Choose whether the network is hidden.

• **Connect automatically:** Choose whether to connect to the network automatically.

**WPA-2 Enterprise settings for Windows Mobile/CE**

• **Encryption:** In the list, choose either AES or TKIP to set the type of encryption. The default is AES.

• **EAP Type:** in the list, choose either PEAP-MSCHAPv2 or TLS to set the EAP type. The default is PEAP-MSCHAPv2.

• **Connect if hidden:** Choose whether the network is hidden.

• **Connect automatically:** Choose whether to connect to the network automatically.

• **Push certificate via SCEP:** Choose whether to push the certificate to user devices by using Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol (SCEP).

• **Credential provider for SCEP:** In the list, choose the SCEP credential provider. The default is None.

• **Key provided (automatic):** Choose whether the key is automatically provided. Default is **Off**.

• **Password:** Type the password in this field.

• **Key index:** Choose the key index. Available options are **1, 2, 3,** and **4**.
**Windows CE certificate device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)**

You can create a device policy in Endpoint Management to create and deliver Windows Mobile/CE certificates from an external PKI to users’ devices.

**Windows CE settings**

- **Credential provider:** In the list, click the credential provider. The default is **None**.
- **Password of generated PKCS#12:** Type the password used to encrypt the credential.
- **Destination folder:** In the list, click the destination folder for the credential or click **Add new** to add a folder not already in the list. The predefined options are:
  - %Flash Storage%
  - %Endpoint Management Folder%
  - %Program Files%
  - %My Documents%
  - %Windows%
- **Destination file name:** Type the name of the credential file.

**Endpoint Management options device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)**

You add a Endpoint Management options policy to configure Secure Hub behavior when connecting to Endpoint Management from Windows Mobile/CE devices.

**Windows Mobile/CE settings**

- **Device agent configuration**
  - **Endpoint Management backup configuration:** In the list, click an option for backing up the Endpoint Management configuration on the users’ devices. The default is **Disabled**. Available options are:
    - **Disabled**
    - **At the first connection after Endpoint Management installation**
    - **At the first connection after each device reboot**
  - **Connect to the office network**
  - **Connect to the Internet network**
  - **Connect to the built-in office network:** When set to **On**, Endpoint Management automatically detects the network.
  - **Connect to the built-in Internet network:** When set to **On**, Endpoint Management automatically detects the network.
- **Tray bar notification - hide tray bar icon**: Select whether the tray bar icon is hidden or visible. The default is **Off**.
- **Connection time-out(s)**: Type the length of time in seconds that a connection can be idle before the connection times out. The default is 20 seconds.
- **Keep-alive interval(s)**: Type the length of time in seconds to keep a connection open. The default is 120 seconds.

**Remote support**
- **Prompt the user before allowing remote control**: Select whether to prompt the user before allowing remote support control. The default is **Off**.
- **Before a file transfer**: In the list, click whether to warn the user about a file transfer or whether to ask the user for permission. Available values: **Do not warn the user**, **Warn the user**, and **Ask for user permission**. The default is **Do not warn the user**.

**Endpoint Management uninstall device policy (Windows Mobile/CE)**

You can add a device policy in Endpoint Management to uninstall Endpoint Management from Windows Mobile/CE devices. When deployed, this policy removes Endpoint Management from all devices in the deployment group.

**Windows Mobile/CE settings**

- **Uninstall Endpoint Management from devices**: Select whether to uninstall Endpoint Management from every device to which you deploy this policy. The default is **Off**.

**Add apps**

January 25, 2019

**Important:**

The MDX 10.7.5 release is the final release that supports the wrapping of Citrix mobile productivity apps. You cannot use the MDX Service or the MDX Toolkit 10.7.10 and later to wrap 10.7.5 or later versions of the Citrix mobile productivity apps. You must access mobile productivity apps from the public app stores.

You add apps to Endpoint Management for management. You add the apps to the Endpoint Management console, where you can then arrange the apps in categories and deploy the apps to users.

You can add the following types of apps to Endpoint Management:

- **MDX**. These apps are wrapped with the MDX Service or Toolkit. You deploy MDX apps that you get from internal and public stores.
• **Public App Store.** These apps include free or paid apps available in a public app store, such as iTunes or Google Play. For example, GoToMeeting.
• **Web and SaaS.** These apps include apps accessed from an internal network (web apps) or over a public network (SaaS). You can create your own apps, or choose from a set of app connectors for single sign-on authentication to existing Web apps. For example, GoogleApps_SAML.
• **Enterprise.** These apps are native apps that are not wrapped with MDX and do not contain the policies associated with MDX apps.
• **Web Link.** These apps are Web addresses (URLs) to public or private sites, or to web apps that don’t require single sign-on.

**About silent installations**

Citrix supports the silent installation of iOS and Samsung Android apps. Silent installation means that users are not prompted to install apps that you deploy to the device. The apps install silently in the background.

Prerequisites to implement silent installation:

- For iOS apps, put the managed iOS device in supervised mode. For details, see Import iOS & macOS Profile device policy.
- For Android apps, enable Samsung for Enterprise (SAFE) or KNOX policies on the device.
  To do so, you set the Samsung MDM license key device policy to generate Samsung ELM and KNOX license keys. For details, see Samsung MDM license key device policies.

**How mobile and MDX apps work**

Endpoint Management supports iOS and Android, including Citrix mobile productivity apps, such as Secure Hub, Secure Mail and Secure Web, and the use of MDX policies. Using the Endpoint Management console, you can upload apps and then deliver the apps to user devices. In addition to the Citrix mobile productivity apps, you can add the following types of apps:

- Apps you develop for your users.
- Apps in which you want to allow or restrict device features by using MDX policies.

To distribute Citrix mobile productivity apps, follow these general steps:

2. Upload those files to the Endpoint Management console (Configure > Apps), updating MDX policies as needed.
3. Upload the MDX files to the public app stores. For more information, see Add an MDX app in this article.

The MDX Toolkit wraps apps for iOS and Android devices with Citrix logic and policies. The tool can securely wrap an app that was created within your organization or an app created outside the company.

**About required and optional apps**

When you add apps to a delivery group, you choose whether they are optional or required. For apps marked as required, users can promptly receive updates in situations such as:

- You upload a new app and mark it as required.
- You mark an existing app as required.
- As user deletes a required app.
- A Secure Hub update is available.

**Requirements for forced deployment of required apps**

- Secure Hub 10.5.15 for iOS and 10.5.20 for Android (minimum versions)
- MDX Service or MDX Toolkit 10.6 (minimum version)
- Custom server property, `force.server.push.required.apps`

The forced deployment of required apps is disabled by default. To enable the feature, create a Custom Key server property. Set the **Key** and **Display name** to `force.server.push.required.apps` and set the **Value** to `true`.

- After you upgrade Endpoint Management and Secure Hub: Users with enrolled devices must sign off and then sign on to Secure Hub, one time, to obtain the required app deployment updates.

**Examples**

The following examples show the sequence of adding the Secure Tasks app to a delivery group and then deploying the delivery group.

**Note:**

Secure Notes and Secure Tasks reached End of Life (EOL) status on December 31, 2018. For details, see EOL and deprecated apps.
After the sample app, Secure Tasks, deploys to the user device, Secure Hub prompts the user to install the app.

**Important:**

MDX-enabled required apps, including enterprise apps and public app store apps, upgrade immediately, even if you configure an MDX policy for an app update grace period and the user chooses to upgrade the app later.

**iOS required app workflow for enterprise and public store apps**

1. Deploy the mobile productivity app during initial enrollment. The required app is installed on the device.
2. Update the app on the Endpoint Management console.
3. Use the Endpoint Management console to deploy required apps.
4. The app on the home screen is updated. And, for public store apps, the upgrade starts automatically. Users are not prompted to update.
5. Users open the app from the home screen. Apps upgrade immediately even if you set an App update grace period and the user taps to upgrade the app later.
Android required app workflow for enterprise apps

1. Deploy the mobile productivity app during initial enrollment. The required app is installed on the device.
2. Use the Endpoint Management console to deploy required apps.
3. The app is upgraded. (Nexus devices prompt for install updates, but Samsung devices do a silent install.)
4. Users open the app from the home screen. Apps upgrade immediately even if you set an App update grace period and the user taps to upgrade the app later. (Samsung devices do a silent install.)

Android required app workflow for public store apps

1. Deploy the mobile productivity app during initial enrollment. The required app is installed on the device.
2. Update the app on the Endpoint Management console.
3. Use the Endpoint Management console to deploy required apps. Or, open the Secure Hub Store on the device. The update icon appears in the store.
4. App upgrade starts automatically. (Nexus devices prompt users to install the update.)
5. Open the app on the home screen. The app is upgraded. Users are not prompted for a grace period. (Samsung devices do a silent install.)

Uninstall an app when the app is configured as required

To allow users to uninstall an app that is configured as required, go to Configure > Delivery Groups and move the app from Required Apps to Optional Apps.

Recommended: Use a special delivery group to temporarily change an app to optional, so that specific users can uninstall the app. You can then change an existing required app to optional, deploy the app to that delivery group, and then uninstall the app from those devices. After that, if you want future enrollments for that delivery group to require the app, you can set the app back to required.

How Web and SaaS apps work

Endpoint Management comes with a set of application connectors, which are templates that you can configure for single sign-on to web and SaaS apps. Sometimes you can configure the templates for user account creation and management. Endpoint Management includes Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) connectors. SAML connectors are used for web applications that support SAML protocol for SSO and user account management. Endpoint Management supports SAML 1.1 and SAML 2.0.
You can also build your own enterprise SAML connectors.

**How enterprise apps work**

Enterprise applications typically reside in your internal network. Users can connect to the apps by using Secure Hub. When you add an enterprise app, Endpoint Management creates the app connector for it.

**How the public app store works**

You can configure settings to retrieve app names and descriptions from the Apple App Store. When you retrieve the app information from the store, Endpoint Management overwrites the existing name and description. You must manually configure Google Play store app information. See Add a public app store app for more details.

**How web links work**

A web link is a web address to an internet or intranet site. A web link can also point to a web application that doesn’t require SSO. When you finish configuring a web link, the link appears as an icon in the app store. When users log on with Secure Hub, the link appears with the list of available apps and desktops.

**Add an MDX app**

When you receive a wrapped MDX mobile app for an iOS or Android device, you can upload the app to Endpoint Management. After you upload the app, you can configure app details and policy settings. For more information about the app policies that are available for each device platform type, see MDX Policies at a Glance. Detailed policy descriptions also in that section.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click **Configure > Apps**. The **Apps** page appears.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add App** dialog box appears.

![Add App dialog box]

3. Click **MDX**. The **MDX App Information** page appears.

4. On the **App Information** pane, type the following information:
   - **Name**: Type a descriptive name for the app. The name appears under **App Name** on the **Apps** table.
   - **Description**: Type an optional description of the app.
   - **App category**: Optionally, in the list, click the category to which you want to add the app. For more information about app categories, see Create app categories.

5. Click **Next**. The **App Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

   When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, see Step 11 for how to set the platform deployment rules.

7. To select an MDX file to upload, click **Upload** and navigate to the file location.
   - If you add an iOS VPP B2B app, click **Your application is a VPP B2B application?** Then, in the list, click the B2B VPP account to use.

8. Click **Next**. The **App details** page appears.

9. Configure these settings:
   - **File name**: Type the file name associated with the app.
   - **App Description**: Type a description for the app.
   - **App version**: Optionally, type the app version number.
• **Minimum OS version:** Optionally, type the oldest operating system version that the device can run to use the app.

• **Maximum OS version:** Optionally, type the most recent operating system that the device must run to use the app.

• **Excluded devices:** Optionally, type the manufacturer or models of devices that cannot run the app.

• **Remove app if MDM profile is removed:** Select whether to remove the app from a device when the MDM profile is removed. The default is **ON**.

• **Prevent app data backup:** Select whether to prevent users from backing up app data. The default is **ON**.

• **Force app to be managed:** Select whether, when the app is installed unmanaged, to prompt users to allow the app to be managed on unsupervised devices. The default is **ON**.

• **App deployed via VPP:** Select whether to deploy the app by using VPP. If **ON**, and you deploy an MDX version of the app and use VPP to deploy the app, Secure Hub shows only the VPP instance. Default is **OFF**.

10. Configure the **MDX Policies**. MDX policies vary by platform and include options for such policy areas as Authentication, Device Security, Encryption, App Interaction, and App Restrictions. In the console, each of the policies has a tooltip that describes the policy.

    For more information about app policies for MDX apps, see **MDX Policies at a Glance**. That article includes a table showing which policies apply to each platform.

11. Configure the deployment rules. For information, see **Deploy resources**.

12. Expand **Store Configuration**.
Optionally, you can add an FAQ for the app or screen captures that appear in the app store. You can also set whether users can rate or comment on the app.

- **Configure these settings:**
  - **App FAQ:** Add FAQ questions and answers for the app.
  - **App screenshots:** Add screen captures to help classify the app in the app store. The graphic you upload must be a PNG. You cannot upload a GIF or JPEG image.
  - **Allow app ratings:** Select whether to permit a user to rate the app. The default is ON.
  - **Allow app comments:** Select whether to permit users to comment about the selected app. The default is ON.

13. Click **Next**. The **Approvals** page appears.
You use workflows when you need approval when creating user accounts. If you don’t want to set up approval workflows, you can skip to Step 15.

Configure these settings to assign or create a workflow:

- **Workflow to Use**: In the list, click an existing workflow or click **Create a new workflow**. The default is **None**.
- If you select **Create a new workflow**, configure these settings. For more information, see Create and manage workflows.
- **Name**: Type a unique name for the workflow.
- **Description**: Optionally, type a description for the workflow.
- **Email Approval Templates**: In the list, select the email approval template to be assigned. When you click the eye icon to the right of this field, a dialog box appears where you can preview the template.
- **Levels of manager approval**: In the list, select the number of levels of manager approval required for this workflow. The default is 1 level. Possible options are:
  - Not Needed
  - 1 level
  - 2 levels
  - 3 levels
- **Select Active Directory domain**: In the list, select the appropriate Active Directory domain to be used for the workflow.
- **Find additional required approvers**: Type the name of the additional required person in the search field and then click **Search**. Names originate in Active Directory.
- When the name appears in the field, select the check box next to the name. The name and email address appear in the **Selected additional required approvers** list.
  - To remove a person from the **Selected additional required approvers** list, do one of the following:
* Click **Search** to see a list of all the persons in the selected domain.
* Type a full or partial name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the search results.
* Persons in the **Selected additional required approvers** list have check marks next to their name in the search results list. Scroll through the list and clear the check box next to each name you want to remove.

14. Click **Next**. The **Delivery Group Assignment** page appears.

15. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

16. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

   - Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**.
   - Next to Deployment schedule, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
   - If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
   - Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
   - Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

   **Note:**

   This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**.

   The always-on option:
   - Is not available for iOS devices
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Is not available for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS to customers who began using Endpoint Management with version 10.18.19 or later
- Is not recommended for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS to customers who began using Endpoint Management with before version 10.18.19

The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for Deploy for always-on connection.

17. Click Save.

Create app categories

When users log on to Secure Hub, they receive a list of the apps, web links, and stores that you set up in Endpoint Management. You can use app categories to let users access only certain apps, stores, or web links. For example, you can create a Finance category and then add apps to the category that only pertain to finance. Or, you can configure a Sales category to which you assign sales apps.

You configure categories on the Apps page in the Endpoint Management console. Then, when you add or edit an app, web link, or store, you can add the app to one or more of the configured categories.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click Configure > Apps. The Apps page appears.
2. Click Category. The Categories dialog box appears.
3. For each category you want to add, do the following:

- Type the name of the category you want to add in the **Add a new category** field at the bottom of the dialog box. For example, you might type Enterprise Apps to create a category for enterprise apps.
- Click the plus sign (+) to add the category. The newly created category is added and appears in the **Categories** dialog box.
4. When you’re done adding categories, close the Categories dialog box.

5. On the Apps page, you can place an existing app into a new category.
   - Select the app you want to categorize.
   - Click Edit. The App Information page appears.
   - In the App category list, apply the new category by selecting the category check box. Clear the check boxes for any existing categories that you don’t want to apply to the app.
   - Click the Delivery Groups Assignments tab or click Next on each of the following pages to step through the remaining app set-up pages.
   - Click Save on the Delivery Groups Assignments page to apply the new category. The new category is applied to the app and appears in the Apps table.

Add a public app store app

You can add free or paid apps to Endpoint Management that are available in a public app store, such as iTunes or Google Play.
When you add a paid public app store app for Android Enterprise, you can review the Bulk Purchase licensing status. That status is the total number of licenses available, the number currently in use, and the email address of each user consuming the licenses. The Bulk Purchase plan for Android Enterprise simplifies the process of finding, buying, and distributing apps and other data in bulk for an organization.

Configure app information and choose platforms to deliver the app to:

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click Configure > Apps. The Apps page appears.

2. Click Add. The Add App dialog box appears.


4. On the App Information pane, type the following information:

   - Name: Type a descriptive name for the app. This name appears under App Name on the Apps table.
   - Description: Type an optional description of the app.
   - App category: Optionally, in the list, click the category to which you want to add the app. For more information about app categories, see Create app categories.
5. Click **Next**. The **App Platforms** page appears.

6. Under **Platforms**, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.

Next you configure the app settings for each platform. When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, set the platform deployment rules and store configuration.

**Important**: Configuring settings Google Play store apps requires different steps than apps for other platforms. You must manually configure Google Play store app information.

Configure app settings for Google Play apps

1. Ensure that **Google Play** is selected under **Platforms**.

2. Go to the Google Play store. From the Google Play store, copy the package ID. The ID can be found in the URL of the app.
3. When adding a Public Store app in the Citrix Endpoint Management console, paste the package ID in the search bar. Click Search.

4. If the package ID is valid, a UI appears allowing you to enter app details.
5. You can configure the URL for the image to appear with the app in the store. To use the image from the Google Play store:

   a) Go the Google Play store. Right-click the app image and copy the image address.
   b) Paste the image address into the **Image URL** field.
   c) Click **Upload image**. The image appears beside **Image**.

If you don’t configure an image, the generic Android image appears with the app.

**Configure app settings for platforms other than Google Play**

1. Select an app to add by typing the app name in the search box and clicking **Search**. Apps matching the search criteria appear. The following figure shows the result of searching for **podio**.
2. Click the app you want to add. The **App Details** fields are pre-populated with information related to the chosen app (including the name, description, version number, and associated image).

3. Configure these settings:
   - If necessary, change the name and description for the app.
   - **App URL**: Enter a comma-separated list of URLs to launch your apps from the Workspace app. This field is only available for iPhone and iPad devices.
   - **Paid app**: This field is preconfigured and cannot be changed.
   - **Remove app if MDM profile is removed**: Select whether to remove the app if the MDM profile is removed. The default is **ON**.
   - **Prevent app data backup**: Select whether to prevent the app from backing up data. The default is **ON**.
• **Force app to be managed**: Select whether, when the app is installed unmanaged, to prompt users to allow the app to be managed on unsupervised devices. The default is OFF.

• **Force license to association to device**: Select whether to associate an app that has been developed with device association enabled to a device rather than to a user. If the app you chose does not support assignment to a device, this field can't be changed.

**Configure deployment rules**

For information, see Deploy resources.

**Set up store configuration**

1. Expand **Store Configuration**.

   Optionally, you can add an FAQ for the app or screen captures that appear in the app store. You can also set whether users can rate or comment on the app.
• Configure these settings:
  – **App FAQ**: Add FAQ questions and answers for the app.
  – **App screenshots**: Add screen captures to help classify the app in the app store. The graphic you upload must be a PNG. You cannot upload a GIF or JPEG image.
  – **Allow app ratings**: Select whether to permit a user to rate the app. The default is ON.
  – **Allow app comments**: Select whether to permit users to comment about the selected app.

2. Expand **Volume Purchase Program** or, for Android Enterprise, expand **Bulk Purchase**.

For the Volume Purchase Program, complete the following steps.

a) In the **VPP license** list, click **Upload a VPP license** file if you want to enable Endpoint Management to apply a VPP license for the app.

b) In the dialog box that appears, import the license.

For Android Enterprise Bulk Purchase, expand the **Bulk Purchase** section.

The License Assignment table shows the number of licenses in use for the app, out of the total licenses available.

For Android Enterprise, you can select a user and then click **Disassociate** to end their license assignment and free up a license for another user. You can only disassociate the license, however, if the user is not part of a delivery group that contains the specific app.

For iOS, you can disassociate Volume Purchase Program licenses for an individual user, user groups, or for all assignments. Doing so ends the license assignments and frees licenses.
Clicking **Disassociate groups** opens a dialog box where you select groups.

3. After you complete the **Volume Purchase Program** or **Bulk Purchase** settings, click **Next**. The **Approvals** page appears.

You use workflows when you need approval when creating user accounts. If you don’t need to set up approval workflows, you can skip to the next step.

Configure these settings if you need to assign or create a workflow:

- **Workflow to Use**: In the list, click an existing workflow or click **Create a new workflow**. The default is **None**.

- If you select **Create a new workflow**, configure these settings:
  - **Name**: Type a unique name for the workflow.
  - **Description**: Optionally, type a description for the workflow.
  - **Email Approval Templates**: In the list, select the email approval template to be assigned. When you click the eye icon to the right of this field, a dialog box appears where you can preview the template.
  - **Levels of manager approval**: In the list, select the number of levels of manager approval required for this workflow. The default is **1 level**. Possible options are: * Not Needed * 1 level * 2 levels * 3 levels
  - **Select Active Directory domain**: In the list, select the appropriate Active Directory domain to be used for the workflow.
- **Find additional required approvers:** Type the name of the additional required person in the search field and then click **Search**. Names originate in Active Directory.
- When the name appears in the field, select the check box next to the name. The name and email address appear in the **Selected additional required approvers** list.
  * To remove a person from the **Selected additional required approvers** list, do one of the following:
  * Click **Search** to see a list of all the persons in the selected domain.
  * Type a full or partial name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the search results.
  * Persons in the **Selected additional required approvers** list have check marks next to their name in the search results list. Scroll through the list and clear the check box next to each name you want to remove.

4. Click **Next**. The **Delivery Group Assignment** page appears.

5. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

6. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:
   - Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**.
   - Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
   - If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
   - Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
   - Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

   **Note:**
   
   This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**.

   The always-on option:
   - Is not available for iOS devices
   - Is not available for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS to customers who began using Endpoint Management with version 10.18.19 or later
   - Is not recommended for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS to customers who began using Endpoint Management with before version 10.18.19

   The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always-on connection**.

7. Click **Save**.
Add a Web or SaaS app

Using the Endpoint Management console, you can give users single sign-on (SSO) authorization to your mobile, enterprise, web, and SaaS apps. You can enable apps for SSO by using application connector templates. For a list of connector types available in Endpoint Management, see Application connector types. You can also build your own connector in Endpoint Management when you add a Web or SaaS app.

If an app is available for SSO only: After you save the settings, the app appears on the Apps tab in the Endpoint Management console.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click **Configure > Apps**. The Apps page opens.
2. Click **Add**. The **Add App** dialog box appears.

3. Click **Web & SaaS**. The **App Information** page appears.
4. Configure an existing or new app connector, as follows.

To configure an existing app connector

1. In the App Information page, Choose from existing connectors is already selected, as shown above. Click the connector you want to use in the App Connectors list. The app connector information appears.

2. Configure these settings:

   - **App name:** Accept the pre-filled name or type a new name.
   - **App description:** Accept the pre-filled description or type one of your own.
   - **URL:** Accept the pre-filled URL or type the web address for the app. Depending on the connector you choose, this field may contain a placeholder that you must replace before you can move to the next page.
   - **Domain name:** If applicable, type the domain name of the app. This field is required.
   - **App is hosted in internal network:** Select whether the app is running on a server in your internal network. If users connect from a remote location to the internal app, they must connect through Citrix Gateway. Setting this option to ON adds the VPN keyword to the app and allows users to connect through Citrix Gateway. The default is OFF.
   - **App category:** In the list, click an optional category to apply to the app.
   - **User account provisioning:** Select whether to create user accounts for the application. If you use the Globoforce_SAML connector, you must enable this option to ensure seamless SSO integration.
   - If you enable User account provisioning, configure these settings:
     - **Service Account**
* **User name**: Type the name of the app administrator. This field is required.
* **Password**: Type the app administrator password. This field is required.

- **User Account**
  * **When user entitlement ends**: In the list, click the action to take when users are no longer allowed access to the app. The default is **Disable account**.

- **User Name Rule**
  * For each user name rule you want to add, do the following:
    - **User attributes**: In the list, click the user attribute to add to the rule.
    - **Length (characters)**: In the list, click the number of characters from the user attribute to use in the user name rule. The default is **All**.
    - **Rule**: Each user attribute you add is automatically appended to the user name rule.

- **Password Requirement**
  - **Length**: Type the minimum user password length. The default is **8**.

- **Password Expiration**
  - **Validity (days)**: Type the number of days the password is valid. Valid values are **0–90**. The default is 90.
  - **Automatically reset password after it expires**: Select whether to reset the password automatically when it expires. The default is **OFF**. If you don’t enable this field, users can’t open the app after their passwords expire.

**To configure a new app connector**

1. In the **App Information** page, select **Create a new connector**. The app connector fields appear.
2. Configure these settings:

- **Name**: Type a name for the connector. This field is required.
- **Description**: Type a description for the connector. This field is required.
- **Logon URL**: Type, or copy and paste, the URL where users log on to the site. For example, if the app you want to add has a logon page, open a web browser and go to the logon page for the app. For example, it might be `https://www.example.com/logon`. This field is required.
- **SAML version**: Select either **1.1** or **2.0**. The default is **1.1**.
- **Entity ID**: Type the identity for the SAML app.
- **Relay state URL**: Type the web address for the SAML application. The relay state URL is the response URL from the app.
- **Name ID format**: Select either **EmailAddress** or **Unspecified**. The default is **EmailAddress**.
- **ACS URL**: Type the Assertion Consumer Service URL of the identity provider or service provider. The ACS URL gives users SSO capability.
- **Image**: Select whether to use the default Citrix image or to upload your own app image. The default is Use default.
  - To upload your own image, click **Browse** and navigate to the file location. The file must be a .PNG file. You can’t upload a JPEG or GIF file. When you add a custom graphic, you can’t change it later.
3. When you’re finished, click **Add**. The **Details** page appears.

4. Click **Next**. The **App Policy** page appears.

5. Configure these settings:
   - **Device Security**
     - **Block jailbroken or rooted**: Select whether to block jailbroken or rooted devices from accessing the app. The default is **ON**.
   - **Network Requirements**
     - **WiFi required**: Select whether a WiFi connection is required to run the app. The default is **OFF**.
     - **Internal network required**: Select whether an internal network is required to run the app. The default is **OFF**.
     - **Internal WiFi networks**: If you enabled WiFi required, type the internal WiFi networks to use.

6. Expand **Store Configuration**.
Optionally, you can add an FAQ for the app or screen captures that appear in the app store. You can also set whether users can rate or comment on the app.

- **App FAQ**: Add FAQ questions and answers for the app.
- **App screenshots**: Add screen captures to help classify the app in the app store. The graphic you upload must be a PNG. You cannot upload a GIF or JPEG image.
- **Allow app ratings**: Select whether to permit a user to rate the app. The default is ON.
- **Allow app comments**: Select whether to permit users to comment about the selected app. The default is ON.

7. Click **Next**. The **Approvals** page appears.
You use workflows when you need approval when creating user accounts. If you don’t need to set up approval workflows, you can skip to Step 8.

Configure these settings if you need to assign or create a workflow:

- **Workflow to Use**: In the list, click an existing workflow or click **Create a new workflow**. The default is **None**.
- If you select **Create a new workflow**, configure these settings:
  - **Name**: Type a unique name for the workflow.
  - **Description**: Optionally, type a description for the workflow.
  - **Email Approval Templates**: In the list, select the email approval template to be assigned. When you click the eye icon to the right of this field, a dialog box appears where you can preview the template.
- **Levels of manager approval**: In the list, select the number of levels of manager approval required for this workflow. The default is **1 level**. Possible options are:
  - Not Needed
  - 1 level
  - 2 levels
  - 3 levels
- **Select Active Directory domain**: In the list, select the appropriate Active Directory domain to be used for the workflow.
- **Find additional required approvers**: Type the name of the additional required person in the search field and then click **Search**. Names originate in Active Directory.
- When the name appears in the field, select the check box next to the name. The name and email address appear in the **Selected additional required approvers** list.
  - To remove a person from the **Selected additional required approvers** list, do one of the following:
* Click **Search** to see a list of all the persons in the selected domain.
* Type a full or partial name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the search results.
* Persons in the **Selected additional required approvers** list have check marks next to their name in the search results list. Scroll through the list and clear the check box next to each name you want to remove.

8. Click **Next**. The **Delivery Group Assignment** page appears.

9. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

10. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

   - Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**.
   - Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
   - If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
   - Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
   - Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.

   **Note:**
   This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in **Settings > Server Properties**.

   The always-on option:
   - Is not available for iOS devices
   - Is not available for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS to customers who began using Endpoint Management with version 10.18.19 or later
   - Is not recommended for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS to customers who began using Endpoint Management with before version 10.18.19

   The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for **Deploy for always-on connection**.

11. Click **Save**.

**Add an enterprise app**

Enterprise apps in Endpoint Management represent native apps that are not wrapped with the MDX Toolkit and do not contain the policies associated with MDX apps. You can upload an enterprise app on
the Apps tab in the Endpoint Management console. Enterprise apps support the following platforms (and corresponding file types):

- iOS (.ipa file)
- Android (.apk file)
- Samsung KNOX (.apk file)
- Android Enterprise (.apk file)
- See also: Add Win32 apps as Enterprise apps

Note:
Adding apps downloaded from the Google Play store as enterprise apps is not supported. Add apps from the Google Play store as public app store apps instead. See Add a public app store app.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click Configure > Apps. The Apps page opens.
2. Click Add. The Add App dialog box appears.
3. Click Enterprise. The App Information page appears.
4. On the App Information pane, type the following information:
   - Name: Type a descriptive name for the app. This name is listed under App Name on the Apps table.
   - Description: Type an optional description of the app.
   - App category: Optionally, in the list, click the category to which you want to add the app.
   For more information about app categories, see Create app categories.
5. Click Next. The App Platforms page appears.
6. Under Platforms, select the platforms you want to add. If you are only configuring for one platform, clear the others.
When you finish configuring the settings for a platform, see Step 10 for how to set the platform deployment rules.

7. For each platform you chose, select the file to upload by clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file location.

8. Click **Next**. The app information page for the platform appears.

9. Configure the settings for the platform type, such as:

   - **File name**: Optionally, type a new name for the app.
   - **App description**: Optionally, type a new description for the app.
   - **App version**: You can't change this field.
   - **Minimum OS version**: Optionally, type the oldest operating system version that the device can run to use the app.
   - **Maximum OS version**: Optionally, type the most recent operating system that the device must run to use the app.
   - **Excluded devices**: Optionally, type the manufacturer or models of devices that cannot run the app.
   - **Remove app if MDM profile is removed**: Select whether to remove the app from a device when the MDM profile is removed. The default is **ON**.
   - **Prevent app data backup**: Select whether to prevent the app from backing up data. The default is **ON**.
   - **Force app to be managed**: If you are installing an unmanaged app, select **ON** if you want users on unsupervised devices to be prompted to allow management of the app. If they accept the prompt, the app is managed.

10. Configure the deployment rules. For information, see **Deploy resources**.

11. Expand **Store Configuration**.
Optionally, you can add an FAQ for the app or screen captures that appear in the app store. You can also set whether users can rate or comment on the app.

Configure these settings:

- **App FAQ**: Add FAQ questions and answers for the app.
- **App screenshots**: Add screen captures to help classify the app in the app store. The graphic you upload must be a PNG. You cannot upload a GIF or JPEG image.
- **Allow app ratings**: Select whether to permit a user to rate the app. The default is **ON**.
- **Allow app comments**: Select whether to permit users to comment about the selected app. The default is **ON**.

12. Click **Next**. The **Approvals** page appears.

You use workflows when you need approval when creating user accounts. If you don’t need to set up approval workflows, you can skip to Step 13.

Configure these settings if you need to assign or create a workflow:

- **Workflow to Use**: In the list, click an existing workflow or click **Create a new workflow**. The default is **None**.
If you select **Create a new workflow**, configure these settings:

- **Name**: Type a unique name for the workflow.
- **Description**: Optionally, type a description for the workflow.
- **Email Approval Templates**: In the list, select the email approval template to be assigned. When you click the eye icon to the right of this field, a dialog box appears where you can preview the template.
- **Levels of manager approval**: In the list, select the number of levels of manager approval required for this workflow. The default is **1 level**. Possible options are:
  * Not Needed
  * 1 level
  * 2 levels
  * 3 levels
- **Select Active Directory domain**: In the list, select the appropriate Active Directory domain to be used for the workflow.
- **Find additional required approvers**: Type the name of the additional required person in the search field and then click **Search**. Names originate in Active Directory.
- When the name appears in the field, select the check box next to the name. The name and email address appear in the **Selected additional required approvers** list.
  * To remove a person from the **Selected additional required approvers** list, do one of the following:
    · Click **Search** to see a list of all the persons in the selected domain.
    · Type a full or partial name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the search results.
    · Persons in the **Selected additional required approvers** list have check marks next to their name in the search results list. Scroll through the list and clear the check box next to each name you want to remove.

13. Click **Next**. The **Delivery Group Assignment** page appears.

14. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

15. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:

- Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**.
- Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
- If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
- Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
- Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.
Note:
This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in Settings > Server Properties.

The always-on option:
- Is not available for iOS devices
- Is not available for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS to customers who began using Endpoint Management with version 10.18.19 or later
- Is not recommended for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS to customers who began using Endpoint Management with before version 10.18.19

The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for Deploy for always-on connection.

16. Click Save.

Add Win32 apps as Enterprise apps

You can upload MSI files for Win32 apps to the Endpoint Management console for deployment to managed Windows 10 Desktop and Tablet devices. After you use Endpoint Management to deploy an MSI, the Windows device then installs the app as follows:

- If the upgraded app removes the old version during installation, then the device includes only the upgraded app.
- If the upgraded app can’t remove the old version, but the new version can install, then the device includes both versions of the app. Endpoint Management no longer contains the information for the old version.
- If the upgraded app can’t install when an old version exists, the new app doesn’t install. In that case, first deploy the App Uninstall device policy to remove the old version. Then, deploy the new version.

Requirements

- Windows 10, version 1607 (minimum version)
- Windows 10 Professional or Windows 10 Enterprise
- Standalone Win 32 MSI apps installed with the /quiet option. For this deployment use case, Microsoft doesn’t support MSIs containing multiple apps, nested MSIs, or interactive installation.
Look up MSI metadata

When you add a Win32 app to Endpoint Management, specify the metadata for the app. To look up the metadata, use the Orca application on a Windows computer and make note of the following information:

- Product code
- Product name
- Product version
- Package install type, either per user or per machine

Add a Win32 app to Endpoint Management

1. Go to Configure > Apps, click Enterprise, and type a name for the app in the App Information page.
2. Clear all Platform checkboxes except for Windows Desktop/Tablet.
3. On the Windows Desktop/Tablet Enterprise App page, click Upload and navigate to the MSI.
4. Configure these settings:

   - **App name**: The name of the app, from the app metadata.
   - **Description**: A description for the app.
• **App version:** The app version number, from the app metadata.
• **Minimum OS version:** Optional. The oldest operating system version that the device can run to use the app.
• **Maximum OS version:** Optional. The most recent operating system that the device must run to use the app.
• **Excluded devices:** Optional. The manufacturer or models of devices that cannot run the app.
• **Product Code:** The MSI app product code, in UUID format, from the app metadata.
• **Installation Context:** Based on the app metadata, select whether the app is to install for the device or user.
• **Command Line:** The command-line options to use when calling MSIEXEC.exe
• **Retry Count:** The number of times you can retry a download and installation operation before marking the installation as failed.
• **Time Out:** The number of minutes that the installation process runs before the installer interprets the installation as failed and no longer monitors the process.
• **Retry Interval:** The number of minutes between retry operations.

5. Specify deployment rules and store configuration as needed.

6. Click **Next** until you get to the **Summary** page and then click **Save**.

7. Go to **Configure > Delivery Groups** and add the Win32 app as a required app.

8. After you deploy the app, let your users know that the app is available.

### Upgrade a Win32 app

1. Look up the metadata for the app, as described earlier in “Look up MSI metadata.”
2. Go to **Configure > Apps** to upload the new version of the app. Update the **App version**. If the new version of the app has a different **Product Code**, update that setting.
3. Submit the changes and deploy the app.

### Add a Web link

In Endpoint Management, you can establish a web address (URL) to a public or private site, or to a web app that doesn’t require single sign-on (SSO).

You can configure web links from the **Apps** tab in the Endpoint Management console. When you finish configuring the web link, the link appears as a link icon in the list in the **Apps** table. When users log on with Secure Hub, the link appears with the list of available apps and desktops.

To add the link, you provide the following information:

- **Name for the link**
1. In the Endpoint Management console, click **Configure > Apps**. The **Apps** page appears.

2. Click **Add**. The **Add App** dialog box appears.

3. Click **Web Link**. The **App Information** page appears.

4. Configure these settings:

   - **App name**: Accept the pre-filled name or type a new name.
   - **App description**: Accept the pre-filled description or type one of your own.
   - **URL**: Accept the pre-filled URL or type the web address for the app. Depending on the connector you choose, this field may contain a placeholder that you must replace before you can move to the next page.
   - **App is hosted in internal network**: Select whether the app is running on a server in your internal network. If users connect from a remote location to the internal app, they must connect through Citrix Gateway. Setting this option to **ON** adds the VPN keyword to the app and allows users to connect through Citrix Gateway. The default is **OFF**.
   - **App category**: In the list, click an optional category to apply to the app.
   - **Image**: Select whether to use the default Citrix image or to upload your own app image. The default is **Use default**.
     - To upload your own image, click **Browse** and navigate to the file location. The file must be a .PNG file. You can’t upload a JPEG or GIF file. When you add a custom
graphic, you can't change it later.

5. Expand **Store Configuration**.

Optionally, you can add an FAQ for the app or screen captures that appear in the app store. You can also set whether users can rate or comment on the app.

Configure these settings:

- **App FAQ**: Add FAQ questions and answers for the app.
- **App screenshots**: Add screen captures to help classify the app in the app store. The graphic you upload must be a PNG. You cannot upload a GIF or JPEG image.
- **Allow app ratings**: Select whether to permit a user to rate the app. The default is **ON**.
- **Allow app comments**: Select whether to permit users to comment about the selected app. The default is **ON**.

6. Click **Next**. The **Delivery Group Assignment** page appears.

7. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select a group or groups in the list. The groups you select appear in the **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

8. Expand **Deployment Schedule** and then configure the following settings:
• Next to Deploy, click ON to schedule deployment or click OFF to prevent deployment. The default option is ON.

• Next to Deployment schedule, click Now or Later. The default option is Now.

• If you click Later, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.

• Next to Deployment condition, click On every connection or click Only when previous deployment has failed. The default option is On every connection.

• Next to Deploy for always-on connection, click ON or OFF. The default option is OFF.

Note:
This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in Settings > Server Properties.

The always-on option:
- Is not available for iOS devices
- Is not available for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS to customers who began using Endpoint Management with version 10.18.19 or later
- Is not recommended for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS to customers who began using Endpoint Management with before version 10.18.19

The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for Deploy for always-on connection.

9. Click Save.

Enable Microsoft 365 apps
You can open the MDX container to allow Secure Mail, Secure Web, and Citrix Files to transfer documents and data to Microsoft Office 365 apps. For details, see Allowing Secure Interaction with Office 365 Apps.

Create and manage workflows
You can use workflows to manage the creation and removal of user accounts. Before you can use a workflow, identify individuals in your organization who have the authority to approve user account requests. Then, you can use the workflow template to create and approve user account requests.

When you set up Endpoint Management for the first time, you configure workflow email settings, which must be set before you can use workflows. You can change workflow email settings at any time. These settings include the email server, port, email address, and whether the request to create the user account requires approval.
You can configure workflows in two places in Endpoint Management:

- In the Workflows page in the Endpoint Management console. On the Workflows page, you can configure multiple workflows for use with app configurations. When you configure workflows on the Workflows page, you can select the workflow when you configure the app.
- When you configure an application connector in the app, you provide a workflow name and then configure the individuals who can approve the user account request.

You can assign up to three levels for manager approval of user accounts. If you need other persons to approve the user account, you can search for and select persons by name or email address. When Endpoint Management finds the person, you then add them to the workflow. All individuals in the workflow receive emails to approve or deny the new user account.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The Settings page appears.
2. Click Workflows. The Workflows page appears.

3. Click Add. The Add Workflow page appears.
4. Configure these settings:

- **Name**: Type a unique name for the workflow.
- **Description**: Optionally, type a description for the workflow.
- **Email Approval Templates**: In the list, select the email approval template to be assigned. You create email templates in the Notification Templates section under Settings in the Endpoint Management console. When you click the eye icon to the right of this field, the following dialog box appears.
• **Levels of manager approval**: In the list, select the number of levels of manager approval required for this workflow. The default is 1 level. Possible options are:
  - Not Needed
  - 1 level
  - 2 levels
  - 3 levels

• **Select Active Directory domain**: In the list, select the appropriate Active Directory domain to be used for the workflow.

• **Find additional required approvers**: Type the name of the additional required person in the search field and then click **Search**. Names originate in Active Directory.

• When the name appears in the field, select the check box next to the name. The name and email address appear in the **Selected additional required approvers** list.

• To remove a person from the **Selected additional required approvers** list, do one of the following:
  - Click **Search** to see a list of all the persons in the selected domain.
  - Type a full or partial name in the search box, and then click **Search** to limit the search results.
  - Persons in the **Selected additional required approvers** list have check marks next to their name in the search results list. Scroll through the list and clear the check box next to each name you want to remove.

5. Click **Save**. The created workflow appears on the **Workflows** page.

After you create the workflow, you can view the workflow details, view the apps associated with the workflow, or delete the workflow. You cannot edit a workflow after you create the workflow. If you need a workflow with different approval levels or approvers, you must create another workflow.
To view details and delete a workflow

1. On the Workflows page, select a workflow by clicking the row in the table or by selecting the check box next to the workflow.
2. To delete a workflow, click Delete. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click Delete again.

   Important:
   You cannot undo this operation.

App store and Citrix Secure Hub branding

You can set how apps appear in the store and add a logo to brand Secure Hub and the app store. These branding features are available for iOS and Android devices.

   Note:
   Before you begin, make sure you have your custom image ready and accessible.

The custom image must meet these requirements:

- The file must be in .png format
- Use a pure white logo or text with a transparent background at 72 dpi.
- The company logo should not exceed this height or width: 170 px x 25 px (1x) and 340 px x 50 px (2x).
- Name the files as Header.png and Header@2x.png.
- Create a .zip file from the files, not a folder with the files inside it.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The Settings page appears.
Configure the following settings:

- **Store name**: The store name appears in the user’s account information. Changing the name also changes the URL used to access store services. You typically do not need to change the default name.
- **Default store view**: Select either **Category** or **A-Z**. The default is **A-Z**.
- **Device option**: Select either **Phone** or **Tablet**. The default is **Phone**.
- **Branding file**: Select an image or .zip file of images to use for branding by, clicking **Browse** and navigating to the file’s location.

3. Click **Save**.

To deploy this package to user devices, create a deployment package and then deploy the package.

**Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops through the app store**

Endpoint Management can collect apps from Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops and make the apps available to mobile device users in the app store. Users subscribe to the apps directly inside the app store and launch them from Citrix workspace. The Citrix Workspace app must be installed on user devices to launch the apps.

Following is a video that shows an iOS device performing an enrollment to Citrix Endpoint Management using the Citrix Workspace app.
To configure this setting, you need the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or IP address and port number for an on-premises StoreFront.

1. In the Endpoint Management web console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The Settings page appears.

3. Configure these settings:
   - **Host**: Type the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) or IP address for StoreFront.
   - **Port**: Type the port number for StoreFront. The default is 80.
   - **Relative Path**: Type the path. For example, /Citrix/PNAgent/config.xml
   - **Use HTTPS**: Select whether to enable secure authentication between StoreFront and the client device. The default is **OFF**.

4. Click **Test Connection** to verify that Endpoint Management can connect to the specified XenApp and XenDesktop server.

5. Click **Save**.

### App connector types

August 21, 2018

The following table lists the connectors and the types of connectors that are available in Endpoint Management when you add a Web or SaaS app. You can also add a new connector to Endpoint Management when you add a Web or SaaS app.

The table indicates whether the connector supports user account management, which lets you create new accounts automatically or by using a workflow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Connector name</th>
<th>SSO SAML</th>
<th>Supports user account management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EchoSign_SAML</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Globoforce_SAML</td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note</strong>: When using this connector, you must enable User Management for Provisioning to ensure seamless SSO integration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GoogleApps_SAML</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GoogleApps_SAML_IDP</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lynda_SAML</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office365_SAML</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salesforce_SAML</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salesforce_SAML_SP</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SandBox_SAML</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Citrix Endpoint Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Connector name</th>
<th>SSO SAML</th>
<th>Supports user account management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SuccessFactors_SAML</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShareFile_SAML</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ShareFile_SAML_SP</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WebEx_SAML_SP</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Citrix Launcher**

September 24, 2018

Citrix Launcher lets you customize the user experience for Android devices deployed by Endpoint Management. The minimum Android version supported for Secure Hub management of Citrix Launcher is Android 4.0.3. Citrix Launcher and the Launcher Configuration device policy are not compatible with Android Enterprise.

You can add the **Launcher Configuration Policy** to control these Citrix Launcher features:

- Manage Android devices so that users can access only the apps that you specify.
- Optionally specify a custom logo image for the Citrix Launcher icon and a custom background image for Citrix Launcher.
- Specify a password that users must enter to exit the launcher.

While Citrix Launcher enables you to apply those device-level restrictions, the launcher grants users built-in access to device settings such as Wi-Fi settings, Bluetooth settings, and device passcode settings. Citrix Launcher isn’t intended as an extra layer of security over what the device platform already provides.

To provide Citrix Launcher to Android devices, follow these general steps.

1. Download the Citrix Launcher app from the [Citrix XenMobile download](#) page for your Endpoint Management edition. The file name is CitrixLauncher.apk. The file is ready for uploading into Endpoint Management and doesn’t require wrapping.

2. Add the device policy **Launcher Configuration Policy**. Go to **Configure > Device Policies**, click **Add**, and in the **Add a New Policy** dialog box, start typing Launcher. For more information, see Launcher Configuration Policy.
3. Add the Citrix Launcher app to Endpoint Management as an enterprise app. In Configure > Apps, click Add and then click Enterprise. For more information, see Add an enterprise app.

4. Create a Delivery Group for Citrix Launcher with the following configuration in Configure > Delivery groups.

   - On the Policies page, add the Launcher Configuration Policy.
   - On the Apps page, drag Citrix Launcher to Required Apps.
   - On the Summary page, click Deployment Order and ensure that the Citrix Launcher app precedes the Launcher Configuration policy.
iOS Volume Purchase Program

August 21, 2018

You can manage iOS app licensing by using the Apple iOS Volume Purchase Program (VPP). The VPP solution simplifies the process to find, buy, and distribute apps and other data in bulk for an organization.

With VPP, you can use Endpoint Management to distribute public app store apps. VPP is not supported for Citrix mobile productivity apps or for apps wrapped by using the MDX Toolkit. Although you can distribute the Endpoint Management public store apps with VPP, the deployment is not optimal. Further enhancements to Endpoint Management and the Secure Hub store are required to address the limitations. For a list of known issues with deploying the Endpoint Management public store apps via VPP and potential workarounds, see this article in the Citrix knowledge center.

With VPP, you can distribute the applicable apps directly to your devices. Or, you assign content to your users by using redeemable codes. You configure settings specific to the iOS VPP in Endpoint Management.

Endpoint Management periodically reimports VPP licenses from Apple to ensure that the licenses reflect all changes. Such changes include when you manually delete an imported app from VPP. By default, Endpoint Management refreshes the VPP license baseline a minimum of every 720 minutes.
Citrix Endpoint Management

You can change the baseline interval through the server property, VPP baseline interval (vpp.baseline). For information, see Server properties.

This article focuses on using VPP with managed licenses, which enables you to use Endpoint Management to distribute apps. If you currently use redemption codes and want to change to managed distribution, see this Apple Support document: Migrate from redemption codes to managed distribution with the Volume Purchase Program.


After you save these iOS VPP settings in Endpoint Management, the purchased apps appear on the Configure > Apps page in the Endpoint Management console.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The Settings page appears.

2. Click iOS Settings. The iOS Settings configuration page appears.

After you save these iOS VPP settings in Endpoint Management, the purchased apps appear on the Configure > Apps page in the Endpoint Management console.

3. Configure these settings:

   • **Store user password in Secure Hub**: Select whether to store a user name and password in Secure Hub for Endpoint Management authentication. The default is to store the information by using this secure method.

   • **User property for VPP country mapping**: Type a code to allow users to download apps from country-specific app stores.

   Endpoint Management uses this mapping to choose the property pool of the VPP. For example, if the user property is United States, that user cannot download apps if the VPP code for the app is for the United Kingdom. Contact your VPP plan administrator for more information about the country mapping code.

4. For each VPP account you want to add, click Add. The Add VPP account dialog box appears.
5. Configure these settings for each account you add:

   **Note:** If you use Apple Configurator 1, upload a license file: Go to Configure > Apps, go to a platform page, and then expand Volume Purchase Program.

   - **Name:** Type the VPP account name.
   - **Suffix:** Type the suffix to appear with the names of apps obtained through the VPP account. For example, if you enter VPP, the Secure Mail app appears in the apps list as Secure Mail - VPP.
   - **Company Token:** Copy and paste the VPP service token obtained from Apple. To obtain the token: In the Account Summary page of the Apple VPP portal, click the Download button to generate and download the VPP file. The file contains the service token and other information, like the country code and expiry. Save the file in a secure location.
   - **User Login:** Type an optional authorized VPP account administrator name used to import custom B2B apps.
   - **User Password:** Type the VPP account administrator password.

6. Click Save to close the dialog box.

7. Click Save to save the iOS settings.

   A message appears stating that Endpoint Management adds the apps to the list on the Configure > Apps page. On that page, notice that the app names from your VPP account include the suffix you provided in the preceding configuration.

You can now configure the VPP app settings and then tune your delivery group and device policy settings for VPP apps. After you complete those configurations, users can enroll their devices. The following notes provide considerations for those processes.
• When configuring VPP app settings (Configure > Apps), enable **Force license association to device**. An advantage of using Apple VPP and DEP with supervised devices: The ability to use Endpoint Management to assign the app at the device (rather than user) level. As a result, you don’t have to use an Apple ID device. Also, users don’t receive an invitation to join the VPP program. Users can also download the apps without signing into their iTunes account.

To view the VPP info for that app, expand **Volume Purchase Program**. Notice in the VPP ID Assignment table, the license is associated with a device. If the user removes the token and then imports it again, the word **Hidden** appears instead of the serial number, due to Apple privacy restrictions.

To disassociate a license, click the row for the license and then click **Disassociate**.
If you associate VPP licenses with users, Endpoint Management integrates users into your VPP account and associates their iTunes ID with the VPP account. The iTunes ID of users is never visible to your company or to the Endpoint Management server. Apple transparently creates the association to retain user privacy. You can retire a user from the VPP program, to disassociate all licenses from the user account. To retire a user, go to Manage > Devices.

Endpoint Management periodically reimports VPP licenses from Apple to ensure that the licenses reflect all changes. To force a sync with your VPP account, go to Settings > iOS Settings.
and click **Force synchronization**.

After you click to confirm the action, Endpoint Management imports the VPP information. The import might take several minutes, depending on the number of VPP licenses. After the sync completes, Endpoint Management refreshes the **iOS Settings** page and updates the sync date and time in the new **Last Sync Date** column.

- When you assign an app to a delivery group, by default Endpoint Management identifies the app as an optional app. To ensure that Endpoint Management deploys an app to devices, go to **Configure > Delivery Groups**. On the **Apps** page, move the app to the **Required Apps** list.

- When an update for a public app store app is available: When VPP pushes the app, the app automatically updates on devices. To push an update for Secure Hub, when assigned to device and not to a user, do the following. In **Configure > Apps**, on a platform page, click **Check for Updates** and apply the update.
Endpoint Management displays a License Expiration Warning when Apple VPP or DEP tokens are nearing expiration or have expired.
Deploy Microsoft Store for Business apps from Endpoint Management

August 21, 2018

Microsoft Store for Business is a location where you can find and distribute free and paid apps in volume for your organization. By connecting Citrix Endpoint Management to Microsoft Store for Business, the Store for Business apps appear in the Endpoint Management Configure > Apps page. You can then deploy those apps to Windows 10 devices.

Endpoint Management supports only online license app management, which is the default licensing model supported by Microsoft Store for Business. This model requires users and devices to connect to Microsoft Store services to acquire an app and its license.

To learn more about Microsoft Store for Business, see the Microsoft documentation at https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/microsoft-store/microsoft-store-for-business-overview.

Prerequisites to access Microsoft Store for Business apps

- Azure Active Directory
  To access Microsoft Store for Business apps, you must first configure Azure Active Directory as an Identity Provider. For information on performing this configuration, see Single sign in with Azure Active Directory.
- Microsoft Store for Business
Connect Endpoint Management to Microsoft Store for Business

1. In the Endpoint Management console Settings page, search for and click the link for Microsoft Store for Business.

2. Configure these settings:
   - **Azure AD configuration**: Select the Azure Active Directory instance you configured as part of the prerequisites.
   - **App Suffix**: Enter a suffix added to all Microsoft Store for Business apps for easy identification.
   - **Localization**: Select the language to use for the app details downloaded from Store for Business to Endpoint Management.

3. Click Save. Endpoint Management adds the Microsoft Store for Business apps to the Configure > Apps page.

4. To resync the apps later, return to the Microsoft Store for Business settings page and click the Force Sync button.
Citrix Endpoint Management

Associate your Microsoft Store for Business account with Endpoint Management

1. Log in to the Microsoft Business Store using the same tenant account that you use to sign in to Azure Active Directory.
2. In the Business Store, choose Settings > Management tools.
3. On the Management tools page, choose Add a management tool.
4. Next, choose the name you specified for the MDM solution (such as Endpoint Management or XenMobile) when configuring Azure Active Directory in the Azure portal.

Sync apps with the Store for Business

By default, Endpoint Management syncs with Microsoft Store for Business every 24 hours. To force a sync, go to Settings > Microsoft Store for Business and click Force sync.

To change the sync interval, go to Settings > Server Properties and update the value for the Minimum MSB baseline interval server property.
Assign Store for Business apps to delivery groups

Apps synced from Microsoft Store for Business have the suffix you configured on the Settings > Microsoft Store for Business page.

1. To add those apps to delivery groups: Go to Configure > Delivery Groups, select a group, click Edit, and then click Apps. Move the apps to the Required Apps list.
2. Go to Configure > Apps. Select one or more apps, click Edit, and then click Delivery Group Assignments.

Revoke a user license for an app

1. Go to Configure > Apps, select the Store for Business app, and then click Edit.
3. Scroll down and expand Microsoft Store for Business.
4. Select the user and click **Disassociate**.

**Citrix Files use with Endpoint Management**

January 23, 2019

Endpoint Management has two options for integrating with Citrix Files: Citrix Files Enterprise and StorageZone Connectors.

**Citrix Files Enterprise**

You can configure Endpoint Management to provide access to your Citrix Files Enterprise account. That configuration:

- Gives mobile users access to the full Citrix Files feature set, such as file sharing, file sync, and StorageZone Connectors.
- Can provide Citrix Files with single sign-on authentication of mobile productivity app users, AD-based user account provisioning, and comprehensive access control policies.
- Provides Citrix Files configuration, service level monitoring, and license usage monitoring through the Endpoint Management console.
Citrix Endpoint Management

For more information about configuring Endpoint Management for Citrix Files Enterprise, see SAML for single sign-on with Citrix Files.

**StorageZone Connectors**

You can configure Endpoint Management to provide access only to StorageZone Connectors that you create through the Endpoint Management console. That configuration:

- Provides secure mobile access to existing on-premises storage repositories, such as SharePoint sites and network file shares.
- Doesn’t require that you set up a Citrix Files subdomain, provision users to Citrix Files, or host Citrix Files data.
- Provides users with mobile access to data through the Citrix mobile productivity apps for Citrix Files for iOS and Android. Users can edit Microsoft Office documents. Users can also preview and annotate Adobe PDF files from mobile devices.
- Complies with security restrictions against leaking user information outside of the corporate network.
- Provides simple setup of StorageZone Connectors through the Endpoint Management console. If you later decide to use the full Citrix Files functionality with Endpoint Management, you can change the configuration in the Endpoint Management console.

For a Endpoint Management integration with StorageZone Connectors only:

- Citrix Files uses your single sign-on configuration to Citrix Gateway to authenticate with StorageZones Controller.
- Endpoint Management doesn’t authenticate through SAML because the Citrix Files control plane isn’t used.

The following diagram shows the high-level architecture for Endpoint Management use with Storage-Zone Connectors.
Requirements

- Minimum component versions:
  - ShareFile for iOS (MDX) 5.3
  - ShareFile for Android (MDX) 5.3
  - ShareFile StorageZones Controller 5.0

  This article contains instructions for how to configure ShareFile StorageZones Controller 5.0

- Ensure that the server to run StorageZones Controller meets the system requirements. For requirements, see System requirements.

The requirements for StorageZones for Citrix Files Data and for Restricted StorageZones don’t apply to a Endpoint Management integration with StorageZone Connectors only.

Endpoint Management doesn’t support Documentum connectors.

- To run PowerShell scripts:
  - Run the scripts in the 32-bit (x86) version of PowerShell.

Installation tasks

Complete the following tasks, in the order presented, to install and set up StorageZones Controller. These steps are specific to Endpoint Management integration with StorageZone Connectors only. Some of these articles are in the StorageZones Controller documentation.

1. Configure NetScaler for StorageZones Controller

   You can use Citrix Gateway as a DMZ proxy for StorageZones Controller.
2. **Install an SSL certificate**

   A StorageZones Controller that hosts standard zones requires an SSL certificate. A StorageZones Controller that hosts restricted zones and uses an internal address doesn’t require an SSL certificate.

3. **Prepare your server**

   IIS and ASP.NET setup is required for StorageZone Connectors.

4. **Install StorageZones Controller**

5. **Prepare StorageZones Controller for use with StorageZone Connectors-only**

6. **Specify a proxy server for StorageZones**

   The StorageZones Controllers console enables you to specify a proxy server for StorageZones Controllers. You can also specify a proxy server using other methods.

7. **Configure the domain controller to trust the StorageZones Controller for delegation**

   Configure the domain controller to support NTLM or Kerberos authentication on network shares or SharePoint sites.

8. **Join a secondary StorageZones Controller to a StorageZone**

   To configure a StorageZone for high availability, connect at least two StorageZones Controllers to it.

### Install StorageZones Controller

1. Download and install the StorageZones Controller software:

   a) From the Citrix Files download page at [https://www.citrix.com/downloads/sharefile.html](https://www.citrix.com/downloads/sharefile.html), log on and download the latest StorageZones Controller installer.

   b) Installing StorageZones Controller changes the default website on the server to the installation path of the controller. Enable **Anonymous Authentication** on the default website.

2. On the server where you want to install StorageZones Controller, run StorageCenter.msi.

   The StorageZones Controller Setup wizard starts.

3. Respond to the prompts:

   - In the **Destination Folder** page, if Internet Information Services (IIS) is installed in the default location, leave the defaults. If not, browse to the IIS installation location.
   - When installation is complete, clear the check box for **Launch StorageZones Controller Configuration Page** and then click **Finish**.
4. When prompted, restart the StorageZones Controller.

5. To test that the installation was successful, navigate to https://localhost/. (If you get a certificate error, consider connecting with http instead.) If the installation is successful, the Citrix Files logo appears.

   If the Citrix Files logo does not appear, clear the browser cache and try again.

   **Important:**
   
   If you plan to clone the StorageZones Controller, capture the disk image before you proceed with configuring the StorageZones Controller.

---

**Prepare StorageZones Controller for use with StorageZone Connectors-only**

For an integration only with StorageZone Connectors, you don’t use the StorageZones Controller administrative console. That interface requires a Citrix Files administrator account, which isn’t necessary for this solution. As a result, you run a PowerShell script to prepare the StorageZones Controller for use without the Citrix Files control plane. The script does the following:

- Registers the current StorageZones Controller as a primary StorageZones Controller. You can later join secondary StorageZones Controllers to the primary controller.
- Creates a zone and sets the passphrase for it.
1. From your StorageZone Controller server, download the PsExec tool: Navigate to Microsoft Windows Sysinternals and then click **Download PsTools**. Extract the tool to the root of the C drive.

![Windows Sysinternals](image1.png)

2. Run the PsExec tool: Open the Command Prompt as the Administrator User and then type the following:

```
1
2 cd c:\pstoools
3 PsExec.exe -i -u "NT AUTHORITY\NetworkService" C:\Windows\SysWOW64\WindowsPowerShell\v1.0\powershell.exe
4
```

![Command Prompt](image2.png)

3. When prompted, click **Agree** to run the Sysinternals tool.
A PowerShell widow opens.

4. In the PowerShell window, type the following:

```powershell
'''
1
2 Import-Module "C:\inetpub\wwwroot\Citrix\StorageCenter\Tools\SfConfig\SfConfig.dll"
3 New-Zone -Passphrase passphrase -ExternalAddress https://szcfqdn.com
4 '''

Where:

**Passphrase:** Is the passphrase you want to assign to the site. Make a note of it. You cannot recover the passphrase from the controller. If you lose the passphrase, you cannot reinstall StorageZones, join more StorageZones Controllers to the StorageZone, or recover the StorageZone if the server fails.

**ExternalAddress:** Is the external fully qualified domain name of the StorageZones Controller server.

Your primary StorageZones Controller is now ready.
Before you log in to Endpoint Management to create StorageZone Connectors: Complete the following configuration, if applicable:

Specify a proxy server for StorageZones
Configure the domain controller to trust the StorageZones Controller for delegation
Join a secondary StorageZones Controller to a StorageZone

To create StorageZone Connectors, see Define StorageZones Controller connections in Endpoint Management.

Join a secondary StorageZones Controller to a StorageZone

To configure a StorageZone for high availability, connect at least two StorageZones Controllers to it. To join a secondary StorageZones Controller to a zone, install StorageZones Controller on a second server. Then join that controller to the zone of the primary controller.

1. Open a PowerShell window on the StorageZones Controller server that you want to join to the primary server.
2. In the PowerShell window, type the following:

   ```
   Join-Zone -Passphrase <passphrase> -PrimaryController <HostnameOrIP>
   ``

   For example:

   ```
   Join-Zone -Passphrase secret123 -PrimaryController 10.10.110.210
   ```

Define StorageZones Controller connections in Endpoint Management

Before you add StorageZone Connectors, you configure connection information for each StorageZones Controller enabled for StorageZone Connectors. You can define StorageZones Controllers as described in this section, or when you add a connector.

On your first visit to the Configure > Citrix Files page, the page summarizes the differences between using Endpoint Management with Citrix Files Enterprise and with StorageZone Connectors.
Click Configure Connectors to continue with the configuration steps in this article.

1. In Configure > ShareFile, click Manage StorageZones.

2. In Manage StorageZones, add the connection information.
• **Name**: A descriptive name for the StorageZone, used to identify the StorageZone in Endpoint Management. Don’t include a space or special characters in the name.

• **FQDN and Port**: The fully qualified domain name and port number for a StorageZones Controller that is reachable from the Endpoint Management server.

• **Secure Connection**: If you use SSL for connections to StorageZones Controller, use the default setting, ON. If you don’t use SSL for connections, change this setting to OFF.

• **Administrator user name and Administrator password**: An administrator service account user name (in the form domain\admin) and password. Alternatively, a user account with read and write permissions on the StorageZones Controllers.

3. Click **Save**.

4. To test the connection, verify that the Endpoint Management server can reach the fully qualified domain name of the StorageZones Controller on port 443.

5. To define another StorageZones Controller connection, click the **Add** button in **Manage StorageZones**.

To edit or delete the information for a StorageZones Controller connection, select the connection name in **Manage StorageZones**. Then, click **Edit** or **Delete**.
Add a StorageZone Connector in Endpoint Management

1. Go to Configure > ShareFile and then click Add.

2. On the Connector Info page, configure these settings:

   - **Connector Name**: A name that identifies the StorageZone Connector in Endpoint Management.
   - **Description**: Optional notes about this Connector.
   - **Type**: Choose either SharePoint or Network.
   - **StorageZone**: Choose the StorageZone associated with the Connector. If the StorageZone isn't listed, click Manage StorageZones to define the StorageZones Controller.
   - **Location**: For SharePoint, specify the URL of the SharePoint root-level site, site collection, or document library, in the form https://sharepoint.company.com. For a network share, specify the fully qualified domain name of the Uniform Naming Convention (UNC) path, in the form \server\share.

3. On the Delivery Group Assignment page, optionally assign the Connector to delivery groups. Alternatively, you can associate connectors to delivery groups using Configure > Delivery Groups.
1. On the **Summary** page, you can review the options you configured. To adjust the configuration, click **Back**.

2. Click **Save** to save the Connector.

3. Test the connector:
   
   a) **When you wrap the Citrix Files clients, set the Network access policy to **Tunneled - Web SSO**.**

   In this mode of tunneling, the MDX framework terminates SSL/HTTP traffic from an MDX app. MDX then initiates new connections to internal connections on behalf of the user. This policy setting enables the MDX framework to detect and respond to authentication challenges issued by web servers.

   b) **Add the Citrix Files clients to Endpoint Management. For details, see **To add Citrix Files clients to Endpoint Management**.**

   c) **From a supported device, verify single sign-on to Citrix Files and connectors.**

   In the following samples, SharefileDev is the name of a connector.
Filter the StorageZone Connectors list

You can filter the list of StorageZone Connectors by Connector type, assigned delivery groups, and StorageZone.

1. Go to Configure > ShareFile and then click Show filter.
2. Expand the filter headings to make selections. To save a filter, click **Save This View**, type the filter name, and click **Save**.

3. To rename or delete a filter, click the arrow icon beside the filter name.
Switch to Citrix Files Enterprise

After integrating StorageZone Connectors with Endpoint Management, you can later switch to the full Citrix Files Enterprise feature set. Endpoint Management retains your existing StorageZone Connector integration settings.

Go to Configure > ShareFile, click the StorageZone Connectors drop-down menu, and then click Configure ShareFile Enterprise.
For information about configuring Citrix Files Enterprise, see SAML for single sign-on with Citrix Files.

**SmartAccess for HDX apps**

October 25, 2018

This feature allows you to control access to HDX apps based on device properties, user properties of a device, or applications installed on a device. You use this feature by setting automated actions to mark the device as out of compliance to deny that device access. HDX apps used with this feature are configured in Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops by using a SmartAccess policy that denies access to out-of-compliance devices. Endpoint Management communicates the status of the device to StoreFront using a signed, encrypted tag. StoreFront then allows or denies access based on the access control policy of the app.

To use this feature, your deployment requires:

- Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops
- Citrix Endpoint Management
- Citrix workspace experience
- Endpoint Management configured with a SAML certificate to be used for signing and encrypting tags. The same certificate without private key is uploaded on the StoreFront server.

To start using this feature:

- Configure the Endpoint Management server certificate to the StoreFront store
- Configure at least one Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops delivery group with the required SmartAccess policy
- Set the automated action in Endpoint Management
Export and configure the Endpoint Management server certificate and upload it to the StoreFront store

SmartAccess uses signed and encrypted tags to communicate between the Endpoint Management and StoreFront servers. To enable that communication, you add the Endpoint Management server certificate to the StoreFront store.

For more information about integrating StoreFront and Endpoint Management when Endpoint Management is enabled with domain and certificate-based authentication, see the Support Knowledge Center.

Export the SAML certificate from Endpoint Management

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The Settings page appears. Click Certificates.

2. Locate the SAML certificate for the Endpoint Management server.

3. Ensure that Export private key is set to Off. Click Export to export the certificate to your download directory.
4. Locate the certificate in your download directory. The certificate is in PEM format.

Convert the certificate from PEM to CER

1. Open the Microsoft Management Console (MMC) and right-click **Certificates > All Tasks > Import**.

2. When the certificate import wizard appears, click **Next**.
3. Browse to the certificate in the download directory.
4. Select **Place all certificates in the following store** and select **Personal** as the certificate store. Click **Next**.
5. Review your selections and click **Finish**. Click **OK** to dismiss the confirmation window.

6. In the MMC, right-click the certificate and then choose **All Tasks > Export**.

7. When the certificate export wizard appears, click **Next**.
8. Choose the format **DER encoded binary X.509 (.CER)**. Click **Next**.
9. Browse to the certificate. Type a name for the certificate and then click **Next**.
10. Save the certificate.

11. Browse to the certificate and click **Next**.
12. Review your selections and click **Finish**. Click **OK** to dismiss the confirmation window.
13. Locate the certificate in your download directory. Note that the certificate is in CER format.
Copy the certificate to the StoreFront Server

1. On the StoreFront server, create a folder called **SmartCert**.
2. Copy the certificate to the **SmartCert** folder.

![Image of folder with certificate]

Configure the certificate on the StoreFront store

On the StoreFront server, run this PowerShell command to configure the converted Endpoint Management server certificate on the store:

```powershell
Grant-STFStorePnaSmartAccess -StoreService $store -CertificatePath "C:\xms\xms.cer" -ServerName "XMS server"
```

![Administrator: Windows PowerShell]

If there are any existing certificates on the StoreFront store, run this PowerShell command to revoke them:
Alternatively, you can run any of these PowerShell commands on the StoreFront server to revoke existing certificates on the StoreFront store:

- **Revoke by name:**

```powershell
$store = Get-STFStoreService -VirtualPath /Citrix/Store
Revoke-STFStorePnaSmartAccess -StoreService $store -ServerName "My XM Server"
```

- **Revoke by thumbprint:**

```powershell
$store = Get-STFStoreService -VirtualPath /Citrix/Store
Revoke-STFStorePnaSmartAccess -StoreService $store -CertificateThumbprint "1094821dec7834d5d42bb456329efe4fca86c60b"
```

- **Revoke by server object:**

```powershell
$store = Get-STFStoreService -VirtualPath /Citrix/Store
$access = Get-STFStorePnaSmartAccess -StoreService $store
Revoke-STFStorePnaSmartAccess -StoreService $store -SmartAccess $access.AccessConditionsTrusts[0]
```

**Configure the SmartAccess policy for Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops**

To add the required SmartAccess policy to the delivery group delivering the HDX app:

1. Open Citrix Studio from the Citrix Cloud console.
2. Select Delivery Groups in the Studio navigation pane.
3. Select a group delivering the app or apps you want to control access to. Then select Edit Delivery Group in the Actions pane.
4. On the Access Policy page, select Connections through Citrix Gateway and Connection meeting any of the following.

5. Click Add.

6. Add an access policy where Farm is XM and Filter is XMCompliantDevice.

7. Click Apply to apply any changes you made and keep the window open, or click OK to apply changes and close the window.

Set automated actions in Endpoint Management

The SmartAccess policy that you set in the delivery group for an HDX app denies access to a device when the device is out of compliance. Use automated actions to mark the device as out of compliance.
1. From the Endpoint Management console, click **Configure > Actions**. The **Actions** page appears.

2. Click **Add** to add an action. The **Action Information** page appears.

3. On the **Action Information** page, type a name and description for the action.

4. Click **Next**. The **Action details** page appears. In the following example, a trigger is created that immediately marks devices as out of compliance if they have the user property name **eng5** or **eng6**.

5. In the **Trigger** list, choose **Device property**, **User property**, or **Installed app name**. SmartAccess doesn’t support event triggers.

6. In the **Action** list:
   - Choose **Mark the device as out of compliance**.
   - Choose **Is**.
   - Choose **True**.
   - To set the action to mark the device as out of compliance immediately when the trigger condition is met, set the time frame to **0**.
7. Choose the Endpoint Management delivery group or groups to apply this action to.

8. Review the summary of the action.

9. Click **Next** and then click **Save**.

When device is marked out of compliance, the HDX apps no longer appear in the Secure Hub store. The user is no longer subscribed to the apps. No notification is sent to the device and nothing in the Secure Hub store indicates that the HDX apps were previously available.

If you want users to be notified when a device is marked out of compliance, create a notification and then create an automated action to send that notification.

This example creates and sends this notification when a device is marked out of compliance: “Device serial number or telephone number no longer complies with the device policy and HDX applications will be blocked.”

Create the notification users see when a device is marked as out of compliance

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Settings** page appears.

2. Click **Notification Templates**. The **Notification Templates** page appears.
3. Click Add to add on the Notification Templates page.

4. When prompted to set up the SMS server first, click No, set up later.

5. Configure these settings:
   - **Name**: HDX Application Block
   - **Description**: Agent notification when device is out of compliance
   - **Type**: Ad-Hoc Notification
   - **Secure Hub**: Activated
   - **Message**: Device ${(firstnull(device.TEL_NUMBER,device.serialNumber))} no longer complies with the device policy and HDX applications will be blocked.

6. Click Save.
Create the action that sends the notification when a device is marked out of compliance

1. From the Endpoint Management console, click Configure > Actions. The Actions page appears.
2. Click Add to add an action. The Action Information page appears.
3. On the Action Information page, enter a name and description for the action:
   - Name: HDX blocked notification
   - Description: HDX blocked notification because device is out of compliance
5. In the Trigger list:
   - Choose Device property.
   - Choose Out of compliance.
   - Choose Is.
   - Choose True.
6. In the Action list, specify the actions that occur when the trigger is met:
   - Choose Send notification
   - Choose HDX Application Block, the notification you created.
   - Choose 0. Setting this value to 0 causes the notification to be sent as soon as the trigger condition is met.
7. Select the Endpoint Management delivery group or groups to apply this action to. In this example, choose AllUsers.
8. Review the summary of the action.
9. Click Next and then click Save.
For more information on setting automated actions, see Automated actions.

**How users regain access to HDX apps**

Users can gain access to HDX apps again after the device is brought back into compliance:

1. On the device, go to the Secure Hub store to refresh the apps in the store.
2. Go to the app and tap **Add** to the app.

After the app is added, it appears in My Apps with a blue dot next to it, because it is a newly installed app.

---

**Upgrade MDX or enterprise apps**

August 21, 2018

To upgrade an MDX or Enterprise app in Endpoint Management, disable the app in the Endpoint Management console, and then upload the new version of the app.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click **Configure > Apps**. The **Apps** page appears.
2. For managed devices (devices enrolled in Endpoint Management for mobile device management), skip to Step 3. For unmanaged devices (devices enrolled in Endpoint Management for enterprise app management purposes only), do the following:
• In the **Apps** table, select the check box next to the app or click the line containing the app you want to update.
• Click **Disable** in the menu that appears.

![Apps Table](image)

• Click **Disable** in the confirmation dialog box. **Disabled** appears in the **Disable** column for the app.

![Apps Table](image)

**Note:**

Disabling an app puts the app in maintenance mode. While the app is disabled, users cannot reconnect to the app after they log off. Disabling an app is an optional setting, but we recommend disabling the app to avoid issues with app functionality. Issues may result from policy updates, for example, or if users request a download at the same time you are uploading the app to Endpoint Management.

3. In the **Apps** table, click the check box next to the app or click the line containing the app you want to update.

4. Click **Edit** in the menu that appears. The **App Information** page appears with the platforms you originally chose for the app selected.

5. Configure these settings:
   • **Name**: Optionally, change the app name.
**Citrix Endpoint Management**

- **Description**: Optionally, change the app description.
- **App category**: Optionally, change the app category.

6. Click **Next**. The first selected platform page appears. Do the following for each selected platform:
   - Choose the replacement file you want to upload by clicking **Upload** and navigating to the file location. The app uploads to Endpoint Management.
   - Optionally, change the app details and policy settings for the platform.
   - Optionally, configure deployment rules and the app store. For information, see **Add an MDX app**.

7. Click **Save**. The **Apps** page appears.

8. If you disabled the app in Step 2, do the following:
   - In the **Apps** table, click to select the app you updated and then in the menu that appears, click **Enable**.
   - In the confirmation dialog box that appears, click **Enable**. Users can now access the app and receive a notification prompting them to upgrade the app.

---

**Add media**

**December 17, 2018**

You add media to Endpoint Management so you can deploy the media to user devices. You can use Endpoint Management to deploy iBooks that you obtain through the Apple Volume Purchase Program (VPP).

After you configure a VPP account in Endpoint Management, your purchased and free books appear in **Configure > Media**. From the **Media** pages, you configure iBooks for deployment to iOS devices by choosing delivery groups and specifying deployment rules.

The first time that a user receives an iBook and accepts the VPP license, deployed books install on the device. The books appear in the Apple iBook app. You can’t disassociate the book license from the user or remove the book from the device. Endpoint Management installs iBooks as required media. If a user deletes an installed book from their device, the book remains in the iBook app, ready for download.

**Prerequisites**

- iOS devices
- Configure iOS VPP in Endpoint Management, as described in **iOS Volume Purchase Plan**.
Citrix Endpoint Management

**Configure iBooks**

iBooks obtained through VPP appear on the **Configure > Media** page.

To configure an iBook for deployment

1. In **Configure > Media**, select an iBook and click **Edit**. The **Book Information** page appears.

The **Name** and **Description** appear only in the Endpoint Management console and logs.

2. In the **iPhone iBook Settings** and **iPad iBook Settings** pages: While you can optionally change the iBook name and description, Citrix recommends that you don’t change these settings. The image is for your information and isn’t editable. **Paid iBook** indicates that an iBook is purchased through VPP.
You can also specify deployment rules or view VPP information.

3. Optionally, assign the iBook to delivery groups and set a deployment schedule.
You can also assign iBooks to delivery groups from the Media tab for Configure > Delivery Groups. Endpoint Management currently supports required book deployment only.

4. Use the Media tab for Manage > Devices to view deployment status.
Note:

On the Configure > Media page, if you select a book and click Delete, Endpoint Management removes the book from the list. However, the next time Endpoint Management syncs with VPP, the book reappears on the list unless it has been removed from VPP. Deleting a book from the list doesn’t remove the book from devices.

iBooks appear on user devices as shown in the following example.
Deploy resources

October 3, 2018

Device configuration and management typically involve creating resources (policies, apps, and media) and actions in the Endpoint Management console and then packaging them using delivery groups. The order in which Endpoint Management pushes resources and actions in a delivery group to devices is called the deployment order. This article describes how:

- To add, manage, and deploy delivery groups
- To change the deployment order of resources and actions in delivery groups
- Endpoint Management determines deployment order when a user is in multiple delivery groups that have duplicate or conflicting policies.

Delivery groups specify the category of users to whose devices you deploy combinations of policies, apps, media, and actions. Inclusion in a delivery group is typically based on user characteristics, such as company, country, department, office address, and title. Delivery groups give you greater control over who gets what resources and when they get them. You can deploy a delivery group to everyone or to a more narrowly defined group of users.

Deploying to a delivery group means sending a push notification to all users with supported iOS and Windows devices. Those users must belong to the delivery group to reconnect to Endpoint Management. You can reevaluate the devices and deploy policies, apps, media, and actions that are part of a delivery group.

For users with Android devices: If they are already connected, they receive the resources immediately. Otherwise, based on their scheduling policy, they receive resources the next time that they connect.

The default AllUsers delivery group is created when you install and configure Endpoint Management. It contains all local users and Active Directory users. You cannot delete the AllUsers group, but you can disable the group when you do not want to push resources to all users.

Deployment Ordering

Deployment order is the sequence in which Endpoint Management pushes resources to devices. Deployment order is supported only for MDM mode.

When determining deployment order, Endpoint Management applies filters and control criteria, such as deployment rules and deployment schedule, to policies, apps, media, actions, and delivery groups. Before adding delivery groups, consider how the information in this section relates to your deployment goals.

Here’s a summary of the main concepts related to deployment order:
- **Deployment order**: The sequence in which Endpoint Management pushes resources (policies, apps, and media) and actions to a device. Deployment order for some policies, such as Terms and Conditions and Software Inventory, has no effect on other resources. The order in which actions are deployed has no effect on other resources, so their position is ignored when Endpoint Management deploys the resources.

- **Deployment rules**: Endpoint Management uses the deployment rules that you specify for device properties to filter policies, apps, media, actions, and delivery groups. For example, a deployment rule might specify to push the deployment package when a domain name matches a particular value.

- **Deployment schedule**: Endpoint Management uses the deployment schedule that you specify for policies, apps, media, and actions to control deployment of those items. You can specify that a deployment occurs immediately, on a particular date and time, or according to deployment conditions.

The following table shows filter and control criteria for the various object and resource types. Deployment rules are based on device properties.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Object/Resource</th>
<th>Device platform</th>
<th>Deployment rule</th>
<th>Deployment schedule</th>
<th>User/groups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device policy</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Media</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delivery group</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is very likely that, in a typical environment, multiple delivery groups become assigned to a single user, with the following possible results:

- Duplicate objects exist within the delivery groups.
- A specific policy is configured differently in more than one delivery group that is assigned to a user.

When either of those situations occur, Endpoint Management calculates a deployment order for all the objects that it must deliver to a device or act upon. The calculation steps are independent of the device platform.

Calculation steps:

1. Determine all the delivery groups for a specific user, based on the filters of users, groups, and deployment rules.
2. Create an ordered list of all resources (policies, apps, media, and actions) within the selected delivery groups. The list is based on the filters of device platform, deployment rules, and deployment schedule. The ordering algorithm is as follows:

   a) Place resources from delivery groups that have a user-defined deployment order ahead of resources from delivery groups without one. The rationale for this placement is described after these steps.

   b) As a tie-breaker among delivery groups, order resources from delivery groups by delivery group name. For example, place resources from delivery group A ahead of resources from delivery group B.

   c) While sorting, if a user-defined deployment order is specified for resources of a delivery group, maintain that order. Otherwise, sort the resources within that delivery group by resource name.

   d) If the same resource appears more than once, then remove the duplicate resource.

Resources that have a user-defined order associated with them deploy before resources without a user-defined order. A resource can exist in multiple delivery groups assigned to user. As indicated in the steps above, the calculation algorithm removes redundant resources and only delivers the first resource in this list. By removing duplicate resources in that way, Endpoint Management enforces the order defined by the Endpoint Management administrator.

For example, suppose that you have two delivery groups as follows:

- Delivery group, Account Managers 1: With unspecified order for resources. Contains the policies WiFi and Passcode.
- Delivery group, Account Managers 2: With specified order for resources. Contains the policies Connection scheduling, Restrictions, Passcode, and WiFi. In this case, you want to deliver the Passcode policy before the WiFi policy.
If the calculation algorithm ordered deployment groups only by name, Endpoint Management would perform the deployment in this order, starting with the delivery group Account Managers 1: WiFi, Passcode, Connection scheduling, and Restrictions. Endpoint Management would ignore Passcode and WiFi, both duplicates, from the Account Managers 2 delivery group.

However, the Account Managers 2 group has an admin-specified deployment order. Therefore, the calculation algorithm places resources from the Account Managers 2 delivery group higher in the list than the resources from the other delivery group. As a result, Endpoint Management deploys the policies in this order: Connection scheduling, Restrictions, Passcode, and WiFi. Endpoint Management ignores the policies WiFi and Passcode from the Account Managers 1 delivery group, because they are duplicates. That algorithm therefore respects the order specified by the Endpoint Management administrator.

To add a delivery group

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click Configure > Delivery Groups. The Delivery Groups page appears.

2. From the Delivery Groups page, click Add. When the Delivery Group Information page appears, enter the following information:
   - Name: Type a descriptive name for the delivery group.
   - Description: Type an optional description of the delivery group.

3. Click Next. The User Assignments page appears. Configure these settings:
Select domain: From the list, select the domain from which to choose users.

Include user groups: Do one of the following:

- In the list of user groups, click the groups you want to add. The selected groups appear in the Selected user groups list.
- Click Search to see a list of all user groups in the selected domain.
- Type a full or partial group name in the search box, and then click Search to limit the list of user groups.

To remove a user group from the Selected user groups list, do one of the following:

- In the Selected user groups list, click the X next to each of the groups you want to remove.
- Click Search to see a list of all user groups in the selected domain. Scroll through the list and clear the check box of each of the groups you want to remove.
- Type a full or partial group name in the search box, and then click Search to limit the list of user groups. Scroll through the list and clear the check box of each of the groups you want to remove.

Or/And: Select whether users may be in any group (Or) or whether they must be in all groups (And) for the resource to be deployed to them.

Deploy to anonymous user: Select whether to deploy to unauthenticated users in the delivery group.

Unauthenticated users are users whom you were not able to authenticate, but you allowed
their devices to connect to Endpoint Management anyway.

4. Configure the deployment rules

5. Expand Deployment Rules and then configure the following settings: The Base tab appears by default.

   • In the lists, click options to specify when to deploy the policy. You can choose to deploy the policy when all conditions are met or when any conditions are met. The default option is All.
   • Click New Rule to define the conditions.
   • In the lists, click the conditions, such as Device ownership and BYOD.
   • Click New Rule again to add conditions.

6. Click the Advanced tab to combine the rules with Boolean options. The conditions you chose on the Base tab appear.

7. You can use more advanced Boolean logic to combine, edit, or add rules.

   • Click AND, OR, or NOT.
   • To add the condition to the rule: In the lists, choose the conditions to add to the rule and then click the Plus sign (+) on the right side.

     At any time, you can click to select a condition and then click EDIT to change the condition or Delete to remove the condition.

   • Click New Rule again if you want to add conditions.

8. Click Next. The Delivery Group Resources page appears. You optionally add policies, apps, or actions for the delivery group here. To skip this step, under Delivery Group, click Summary to see a summary the delivery group configuration.

To skip a resource, under Resources (optional), click the resource you want to add and follow the steps for that resource.

To add policies

1. For each policy you want to add, do the following:

   • Scroll through the list of available policies to find the policy you want to add.
   • Or, to limit the list of policies, type a full or partial policy name in the search box, and then click Search.
   • Click the policy you want to add and drag it into the box on the right.

To remove a policy, click the X next to the policy name in the box on the right.
2. Click Next. The Apps page appears.

To add apps

1. For each app you want to add, do the following:
   - Scroll through the list of available apps to find the app you want to add.
   - Or, to limit the list of apps, type a full or partial app name in the search box, and then click Search.
   - Click the app you want to add and drag it into either the Required Apps box or the Optional Apps box.

For apps marked as required, users can promptly receive updates in situations such as:
   - You upload a new app and mark it as required.
   - You mark an existing app as required.
   - As user deletes a required app.
   - A Secure Hub update is available.

For information about forced deployment of required apps, including how to enable the feature, see About required and optional apps.
To remove an app, click the X next to the app name in the box on the right.

2. Click Next. The Media page appears.

To add media

1. For each book you want to add, do the following:
   - Scroll through the list of available books to find the book you want to add.
   - Or, to limit the list of books, type a full or partial book name in the search box, and then click Search.
   - Click the book you want to add and drag it into the Required Books box.
For books marked as required, users promptly receive updates in situations such as:

- You upload a new book and mark it as required.
- You mark an existing book as required.
- As user deletes a required book.
- A Secure Hub update is available.

To remove a book, click the **X** next to the book name in the box on the right.

2. Click **Next**. The **Actions** page appears.

**To add actions**

1. For each action you want to add, do the following:
   
   - Scroll through the list of available actions to find the action you want to add.
   - Or, to limit the list of actions, type a full or partial action name in the search box, and then click **Search**.
   - Click the action you want to add and drag it into the box on the right.

   To remove an action, click the **X** next to the action name in the box on the right.
2. Click Next. The ShareFile page appears.

To apply the Citrix Files configuration

The Citrix Files page differs depending on whether you configured Endpoint Management (Configure > ShareFile) for Citrix Files Enterprise or for StorageZone Connectors.

If you configured Citrix Files Enterprise for use with Endpoint Management: Set Enable ShareFile to ON to provide the delivery group single sign-on access to Citrix Files content and data.
If you configured StorageZone Connectors for use with Endpoint Management, select the StorageZone Connectors to include in the delivery group.

To select an enrollment profile

- **Enrollment Profile**: Select an Enrollment Profile. To create an enrollment profile, see Device enrollment limit.
- Click Next. The Summary page appears.
To review configured options and change deployment order

On the Summary page, you can review the options you have configured for the delivery group and change the deployment order of resources. The Summary page shows your resources by category. The Summary page doesn’t reflect the deployment order.

1. Click Back to return to previous pages to make any necessary adjustments to the configuration.

2. Click Deployment Order to view the deployment order or to reorder the deployment order. The Deployment Order dialog box appears.
3. Click a resource and drag it to the location from which you want it deployed. After you change the deployment order, Endpoint Management deploys resources in the list from top to bottom.

4. Click **Save** to save the deployment order.

5. Click **Save** to save the delivery group.

**To edit a delivery group**

You can’t change the name of an existing delivery group. To update other settings: Go to **Configure > Delivery Groups**, select the group you want to edit, and then click **Edit**.

**To enable and disable the AllUsers delivery group**

AllUsers is the only delivery group that you can enable or disable.

From the **Delivery Groups** page, choose the AllUsers delivery group by selecting the check box next to **AllUsers** or by clicking in the line containing AllUsers. Then do one of the following:

- Click **Disable** to disable the AllUsers delivery group. This command is only available if AllUsers is enabled (the default). **Disabled** appears under the **Disabled** heading in the delivery group table.
- Click **Enable** to enable the AllUsers delivery group. This command is only available if AllUsers is disabled. **Disabled** disappears from under the **Disabled** heading in the delivery group table.
To deploy to delivery groups

Deploying to a delivery group means sending a push notification to all users with iOS, Windows Phone, and Windows tablet devices. Those users must belong to the delivery group to reconnect to Endpoint Management. In that way, you can reevaluate the devices and deploy apps, policies, and actions.

For users with other platform devices: If those devices are already connected to Endpoint Management, they receive the resources immediately. Otherwise, based on their scheduling policy, they receive the resources the next time that they connect.

For updated apps to appear in the Updated Available list in the app store on Android devices: First deploy an App Inventory policy to the user devices.

1. On the Delivery Groups page, do one of the following:
   - To deploy to more than one delivery group at a time, select the check boxes next to the groups you want to deploy.
   - To deploy to a single delivery group, either select the check box next to its name or click the line containing its name.

2. Click Deploy.

   Depending on how you select a single delivery group, the Deploy command appears above or to the right of the delivery group.

   Verify that the groups to which you want to deploy apps, policies, and actions are listed and then click Deploy. The apps, policies, and actions are deployed to the selected groups based on device platform and scheduling policy.

   You can check deployment status on the Delivery Groups page in one of these ways:
   - Look at the deployment icon under the Status heading for the delivery group, which indicates any deployment failure.
   - Click the line containing the delivery group to display an overlay that indicates Installed, Pending, and Failed deployments.
To delete delivery groups

You cannot delete the AllUsers delivery group, but you can disable the group when you do not want to push resources to all users.

1. On the Delivery Groups page, do one of the following:

   - To delete more than one delivery group at a time, select the check boxes next to the groups you want to delete.
   - To delete a single delivery group, either select the check box next to its name or click the line containing its name.

2. Click Delete. The Delete dialog box appears.

   Depending on how you select a single delivery group, the Delete command appears above or to the right of the delivery group.

   Important:
   You cannot undo a delete.

3. Click Delete.

To export the Delivery Groups table

1. Click the Export button above the Delivery Groups table. Endpoint Management extracts the information in the Delivery Groups table and converts it to a .csv file.
2. Open or save the .csv file by following the usual steps for your browser. You can also cancel the operation.

**Macros**

August 21, 2018

Endpoint Management provides macros as a way to populate user or device property data within the text field of the following items:

- Policies
- Notifications
- Enrollment templates
- Device configuration XML file
- Automated actions
- Credential provider Certificate Signing Requests

Endpoint Management replaces a macro with the corresponding user or system values. For example, you can prepopulate the mailbox value for a user in a single Exchange profile across thousands of users.

**Macro syntax**

A macro can take the following form:

- ${ type.PROPERTYNAME }
- ${ type.PROPERTYNAME ['DEFAULT VALUE'] [ | FUNCTION [(ARGUMENT1, ARGUMENT2)] ]}

Enclose all syntax following the dollar sign ($) in curly brackets ({}).

- Qualified property names reference either a user property, a device property, or a custom property.
- Qualified property names consist of a prefix, followed by the actual property name.
- User properties take the form ${ user.[PROPERTYNAME] (prefix="user.") }.
- Device properties take the form ${ device.[PROPERTYNAME] (prefix="device.") }.
- Property names are case-sensitive.
- A function can be a limited list or a link to a third-party reference that defines functions. This macro for a notification message includes the function firstnull:

Device ${ firstnull(device.TEL_NUMBER,device.serialNumber)} has been blocked...
• For custom macros (properties that you define), the prefix is \${custom}. You can omit the prefix.

Here’s an example of a commonly used macro, \${user.username}, that populates the user name value in the text field of a policy. This macro is useful for configuring Exchange ActiveSync profiles and other profiles used by multiple users. The following example shows how to use macros in an Exchange policy. The macro for User is \${user.username}. The macro for Email address is \${user.mail}.

The following example shows how to use macros for a certificate signing request. The macro for Subject name is CN={user.username}. The macro for the Value of a Subject alternative name is \${user.userprincipalname}.
The following example shows how to use macros in a notification template. The example template defines the message sent to a user when HDX applications are blocked because of a non-compliant device. The macro for the Message is:

Device $\{ \text{firstnonnull(device.TEL_NUMBER, device.serialNumber)} \}$ no longer complies with the device policy and HDX applications will be blocked.

For more examples of macros used in notifications, go to **Settings > Notification Templates**, select a pre-defined template, and click **Edit**.

The following example shows a macro in the Device Name device policy. You can type a macro, a combination of macros, or a combination of macros and text to name each device uniquely. For example, use ${\{ \text{device.serialnumber} \}}$ to set the device names to the serial number of each device. Use ${\{ \text{device.serialnumber} \}}$ ${\{ \text{user.username} \}}$ to include the user name in the device name. The Device Name device policy works on supervised iOS and macOS devices.
Macros for default notification templates

You can use the following macros in the default notification templates:

- ${account.SUPPORT_EMAIL }
- ${applicationName }
- ${enrollment.android.agent.download.url }
- ${enrollment.ios.agent.download.url }
- ${enrollment.pin }
- ${enrollment.url }
- ${enrollment.urls }
- ${enrollment.ios.url }
- ${enrollment.macos.url }
- ${enrollment.android.url }
- ${enrollment.ios.platform }
- ${enrollment.macos.platform }
- ${enrollment.android.platform }
- ${firstnonnull(device.TEL_NUMBER,device.serialNumber)}
- ${firstnonnull(device.TEL_NUMBER,user.mobile)}
- ${outofcompliance.reason(smg_block)}
- ${outofcompliance.reason(whitelist_blacklist_apps_name)}
- ${vpp.account }
- ${vpp.appname }
- ${vpp.url }
- ${zdmserver.hostPath } /enroll

This example shows how to create a notification that includes enrollment URLs for multiple device platforms. The macro for the **Message** is:

${enrollment.urls}
These examples show how to create messages for notifications that prompt the users to click the enrollment URL for their device platforms:

Example 1:

```bash
1 To enroll, click the link below that applies to your device platform:
2
3 ${
4   enrollment_ios_platform
5   - ${
6   enrollment_ios_url
7
8
9 ${
10  enrollment_macos_platform
11  - ${
12  enrollment_macos_url
13
14
15 ${
```
Example 2:

To enroll an iOS device, click the link 

```
${enrollment.ios.url}
```

To enroll a macOS device, click the link 

```
${enrollment.macos.url}
```

To enroll an Android device, click the link 

```
${enrollment.android.url}
```

**Macros for specific policies**

For the Device Name device policy (for iOS and macOS), you can use these macros for the Device name:

- `${device.serialnumber}
- `${user.username} @example.com
- `${device.serialnumber}
- `${device.serialnumber}
- `${user.username}
- `${enrollment.pin}
- `${user.dnsroot}

For the Cellular device policy (for iOS), you can use macros for the values of non-string fields, such as Proxy server port. For example, you can now use a macro such as `${device.xyz}` or `${setting.xyz}`, which expands into an integer.

For a device configuration XML file that you import into Endpoint Management by using the Import iOS & macOS Profile device policy, you can use macros for the values of non-string fields.

For the Samsung MDM License Key device policy, you can use this macro for the **ELM license key**:

- `${elm.license.key}

For the Webclip device policy, you can use this macro for the **URL**:

- `${webeas-url}`
## Macros to obtain built-in device properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display name</th>
<th>Macros</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Device Id</td>
<td>$device.id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device IMEI</td>
<td>$device.imei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OS Family</td>
<td>$device.OSFamily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serial Number</td>
<td>$device.serialNumber</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Macros for all device properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display name</th>
<th>Web element</th>
<th>Macros</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Account Suspended?</td>
<td>GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_SUSPENDED</td>
<td>$device.GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_SUSPENDED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activation lock bypass code</td>
<td>ACTIVATION_LOCK_BYPASS_CODE</td>
<td>$device.ACTIVATION_LOCK_BYPASS_CODE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activation lock enabled</td>
<td>ACTIVATION_LOCK_ENABLED</td>
<td>$device.ACTIVATION_LOCK_ENABLED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active iTunes account</td>
<td>ACTIVE_ITUNES</td>
<td>$device.ACTIVE_ITUNES</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActiveSync device known by MSP</td>
<td>AS_DEVICE_KNOWN_BY_ZMSP</td>
<td>$device.AS_DEVICE_KNOWN_BY_ZMSP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActiveSync ID</td>
<td>EXCHANGE_ACTIVESYNC_ID</td>
<td>$device.EXCHANGE_ACTIVESYNC_ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrator disabled</td>
<td>ADMIN_DISABLED</td>
<td>$device.ADMIN_DISABLED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIK Present?</td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_AIK_PRESENT</td>
<td>${ device.WINDOWS_HAS_AIK_PRESENT }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon MDM API available</td>
<td>AMAZON_MDM</td>
<td>${ device.AMAZON_MDM }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Android Enterprise Device ID</td>
<td>GOOGLE_AW_DEVICE_ID</td>
<td>${ device.GOOGLE_AW_DEVICE_ID }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Android Enterprise Enabled Device?</td>
<td>GOOGLE_AW_ENABLED_DEVICE</td>
<td>${ device.GOOGLE_AW_ENABLED_DEVICE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Android Enterprise Install Type</td>
<td>GOOGLE_AW_INSTALL_TYPE</td>
<td>${ device.GOOGLE_AW_INSTALL_TYPE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antispyware Signature status</td>
<td>ANTI_SPYWARE_SIGNATURE_STATUS</td>
<td>${ device.ANTI_SPYWARE_SIGNATURE_STATUS }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antispyware Status</td>
<td>ANTI_SPYWARE_STATUS</td>
<td>${ device.ANTI_SPYWARE_STATUS }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antivirus Signature Status</td>
<td>ANTI_VIRUS_SIGNATURE_STATUS</td>
<td>${ device.ANTI_VIRUS_SIGNATURE_STATUS }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antivirus Status</td>
<td>ANTI_VIRUS_STATUS</td>
<td>${ device.ANTI_VIRUS_STATUS }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASM DEP activation lock bypass code</td>
<td>DEP_ACTIVATION_LOCK_BYPASS_CODE</td>
<td>${ device.DEP_ACTIVATION_LOCK_BYPASS_CODE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASM DEP escrow key</td>
<td>DEP_ESCROW_KEY</td>
<td>${ device.DEP_ESCROW_KEY }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asset tag</td>
<td>ASSET_TAG</td>
<td>${ device.ASSET_TAG }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically check software updates</td>
<td>AutoCheckEnabled</td>
<td>${ device.AutoCheckEnabled }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically download software updates in the background</td>
<td>BackgroundDownloadEnabled</td>
<td>${ device.BackgroundDownloadEnabled }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Key</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically install app updates</td>
<td><code>AutomaticAppInstallation</code></td>
<td>Automatically install app updates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically install OS updates</td>
<td><code>AutomaticOSInstallation</code></td>
<td>Automatically install OS updates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatically install security updates</td>
<td><code>AutomaticSecurityUpdates</code></td>
<td>Automatically install security updates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autoupdate Status</td>
<td><code>AUTOUPDATE_STATUS</code></td>
<td>Autoupdate Status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available RAM</td>
<td><code>MEMORY_AVAILABLE</code></td>
<td>Available RAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available software updates</td>
<td><code>AVAILABLE_OS_UPDATE_HUMAN_READABLE</code></td>
<td>Available software updates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Available storage space</td>
<td><code>FREEDISK</code></td>
<td>Available storage space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Backup battery</td>
<td><code>BACKUP_BATTERY_PERCENT</code></td>
<td>Backup battery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baseband firmware version</td>
<td><code>MODEM_FIRMWARE_VERSION</code></td>
<td>Baseband firmware version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery Charging</td>
<td><code>BATTERY_CHARGING_STATUS</code></td>
<td>Battery Charging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery charging</td>
<td><code>BATTERY_CHARGING</code></td>
<td>Battery charging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery Remaining</td>
<td><code>BATTERY_ESTIMATED_CHARGE_REMAINING</code></td>
<td>Battery Remaining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery Runtime</td>
<td><code>BATTERY_RUNTIME</code></td>
<td>Battery Runtime</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Expression</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Battery Status</td>
<td>BATTERY_STATUS</td>
<td>${ device.BATTERY_STATUS }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bes device known by MSP</td>
<td>BES_DEVICE_KNOWN_BY_ZMSP</td>
<td>${ device.BES_DEVICE_KNOWN_BY_ZMSP }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BES PIN</td>
<td>BES_PIN</td>
<td>${ device.BES_PIN }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BES server agent ID</td>
<td>AGENT_ID</td>
<td>${ device.AGENT_ID }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BES server name</td>
<td>BES_SERVER</td>
<td>${ device.BES_SERVER }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BES server version</td>
<td>BES_VERSION</td>
<td>${ device.BES_VERSION }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOS Info</td>
<td>BIOS_INFO</td>
<td>${ device.BIOS_INFO }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BitLocker Status</td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_BIT_LOCKER_STATUS</td>
<td>${ device.WINDOWS_HAS_BIT_LOCKER_STATUS }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bluetooth MAC address</td>
<td>BLUETOOTH_MAC</td>
<td>${ device.BLUETOOTH_MAC }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boot Debugging Enabled?</td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_BOOT_DEBUGGING_ENABLED</td>
<td>${ device.WINDOWS_HAS_BOOT_DEBUGGING_ENABLED }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boot Manager Rev List Version</td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_BOOT_MGR_REV_LIST_VERSION</td>
<td>${ device.WINDOWS_HAS_BOOT_MGR_REV_LIST_VERSION }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrier Code</td>
<td>CARRIER_CODE</td>
<td>${ device.CARRIER_CODE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrier settings version</td>
<td>CARRIER_SETTINGS_VERSION</td>
<td>${ device.CARRIER_SETTINGS_VERSION }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catalog URL</td>
<td>CatalogURL</td>
<td>${ device.CatalogURL }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellular altitude</td>
<td>GPS_ALTITUDE_FROM_CELLULAR</td>
<td>${ device.GPS_ALTITUDE_FROM_CELLULAR }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellular course</td>
<td>GPS_COURSE_FROM_CELLULAR { device.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GPS_COURSE_FROM_CELLULAR }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellular horizontal accuracy</td>
<td>GPS_HORIZONTAL_ACCURACY_FROM_CELLULAR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GPS_HORIZONTAL_ACCURACY_FROM_CELLULAR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellular latitude</td>
<td>GPS_LATITUDE_FROM_CELLULAR { device.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GPS_LATITUDE_FROM_CELLULAR }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellular longitude</td>
<td>GPS_LONGITUDE_FROM_CELLULAR { device.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GPS_LONGITUDE_FROM_CELLULAR }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellular speed</td>
<td>GPS_SPEED_FROM_CELLULAR { device.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GPS_SPEED_FROM_CELLULAR }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellular technology</td>
<td>CELLULAR_TECHNOLOGY { device.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CELLULAR_TECHNOLOGY }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellular timestamp</td>
<td>GPS_TIMESTAMP_FROM_CELLULAR { device.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GPS_TIMESTAMP_FROM_CELLULAR }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellular vertical accuracy</td>
<td>GPS_VERTICAL_ACCURACY_FROM_CELLULAR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GPS_VERTICAL_ACCURACY_FROM_CELLULAR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Change Password at Next Login</td>
<td>GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_CHANGE_PASSWORD { device.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_CHANGE_PASSWORD }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client device ID</td>
<td>CLIENT_DEVICE_ID { device.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLIENT_DEVICE_ID }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloud backup enabled</td>
<td>CLOUD_BACKUP_ENABLED { device.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLOUD_BACKUP_ENABLED }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code Integrity Enabled?</td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_CODE_INTEGRITY_ENABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_CODE_INTEGRITY_ENABLED</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code Integrity Rev List Version</td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_CODE_INTGTY_REV_LIST_VERSION</td>
<td>Use to manage code integrity version on Windows devices.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
<td>COLOR</td>
<td>Use to determine device color.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU clock speed</td>
<td>CPU_CLOCK_SPEED</td>
<td>Use to check the CPU clock speed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU type</td>
<td>CPU_TYPE</td>
<td>Use to identify the CPU type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creation Time</td>
<td>GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_CREATION_TIME</td>
<td>Use to track the time of Google Aw directory creation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical software updates</td>
<td>AVAILABLE_OS_UPDATE_IS_CRITICAL</td>
<td>Use to check if the update is critical.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current carrier network</td>
<td>CARRIER</td>
<td>Use to identify the current carrier network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current mobile country code</td>
<td>CURRENT_MCC</td>
<td>Use to check the current mobile country code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current mobile network code</td>
<td>CURRENT_MNC</td>
<td>Use to check the current mobile network code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data roaming allowed</td>
<td>DATA_ROAMING_ENABLED</td>
<td>Use to check if data roaming is enabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of the last iCloud backup</td>
<td>LAST_CLOUD_BACKUP_DATE</td>
<td>Use to check the date of the last iCloud backup.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default catalog</td>
<td>IsDefaultCatalog</td>
<td>Use to check if the catalog is the default.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEP account name</td>
<td>BULK_ENROLLMENT_DEP_ACCC</td>
<td>Use to check the DEP account name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEP Policy</td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_DEP_POLICY</td>
<td>Use to check the DEP policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEP profile assigned</td>
<td>PROFILE_ASSIGN_TIME</td>
<td>Use to check the DEP profile assigned.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEP profile pushed</td>
<td>PROFILE_PUSH_TIME</td>
<td>${device.PROFILE_PUSH_TIME}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEP profile removed</td>
<td>PROFILE_REMOVE_TIME</td>
<td>${device.PROFILE_REMOVE_TIME}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEP registration by</td>
<td>DEVICE_ASSIGNED_BY</td>
<td>${device.DEVICE_ASSIGNED_BY}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEP registration date</td>
<td>DEVICE_ASSIGNED_DATE</td>
<td>${device.DEVICE_ASSIGNED_DATE}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>DESCRIPTION</td>
<td>${device.DESCRIPTION}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device model</td>
<td>SYSTEM_OEM</td>
<td>${device.SYSTEM_OEM}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device name</td>
<td>DEVICE_NAME</td>
<td>${device.DEVICE_NAME}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device Type</td>
<td>DEVICE_TYPE</td>
<td>${device.DEVICE_TYPE}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do Not Disturb activated</td>
<td>DO_NOT_DISTURB</td>
<td>${device.DO_NOT_DISTURB}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELAM Driver Loaded?</td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_ELAM_DRIVER_</td>
<td>${device.WINDOWS_HAS_ELAM_DRIVER_LOADED}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encryption Compliance</td>
<td>ENCRYPTION_COMPLIANCE</td>
<td>${device.ENCRYPTION_COMPLIANCE}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENROLLMENT_KEY_GENERATION_DATE</td>
<td>ENROLLMENT_KEY_GENERATION_DATE</td>
<td>${device.ENROLLMENT_KEY_GENERATION_DATE}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise ID</td>
<td>ENTERPRISEID</td>
<td>${device.ENTERPRISEID}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External storage 1: available space</td>
<td>EXTERNAL_STORAGE1_FREE_S</td>
<td>${device.EXTERNAL_STORAGE1_FREE_SPACE}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External storage 1: name</td>
<td><code>EXTERNAL_STORAGE1_NAME</code></td>
<td>${ device. EXTERNAL_STORAGE1_NAME }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External storage 1: total space</td>
<td><code>EXTERNAL_STORAGE1_TOTAL_SPACE</code></td>
<td>${ device. EXTERNAL_STORAGE1_TOTAL_SPACE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External storage 2: available space</td>
<td><code>EXTERNAL_STORAGE2_FREE_SPACE</code></td>
<td>${ device. EXTERNAL_STORAGE2_FREE_SPACE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External storage 2: name</td>
<td><code>EXTERNAL_STORAGE2_NAME</code></td>
<td>${ device. EXTERNAL_STORAGE2_NAME }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External storage 2: total space</td>
<td><code>EXTERNAL_STORAGE2_TOTAL_SPACE</code></td>
<td>${ device. EXTERNAL_STORAGE2_TOTAL_SPACE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External storage encrypted</td>
<td><code>EXTERNAL_ENCRYPTION</code></td>
<td>${ device. EXTERNAL_ENCRYPTION }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FileVault Enabled</td>
<td><code>IS_FILEVAULT_ENABLED</code></td>
<td>${ device. IS_FILEVAULT_ENABLED }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firewall Status</td>
<td><code>DEVICE_FIREWALL_STATUS</code></td>
<td>${ device. DEVICE_FIREWALL_STATUS }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firewall Status</td>
<td><code>FIREWALL_STATUS</code></td>
<td>${ device. FIREWALL_STATUS }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firmware version</td>
<td><code>FIRMWARE_VERSION</code></td>
<td>${ device. FIRMWARE_VERSION }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First synchronization</td>
<td><code>ZMSP_FIRST_SYNC</code></td>
<td>${ device. ZMSP_FIRST_SYNC }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Google Directory Alias</td>
<td><code>GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_GOOG</code></td>
<td>${ device. GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_GOOGLE_ALIAS }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Google Directory Family Name</td>
<td><code>GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_FAMILY_NAME</code></td>
<td>${ device. GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_FAMILY_NAME }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Citrix Endpoint Management</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Google Directory Name</td>
<td>GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_NAME ${ device. GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_NAME }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Google Directory Primary Email</td>
<td>GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_PRIMARY device. GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_PRIMARY }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Google Directory User ID</td>
<td>GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_USER ${ device. GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_USER_ID }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS altitude</td>
<td>GPS_ALTITUDE_FROM_GPS ${ device. GPS_ALTITUDE_FROM_GPS }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS course</td>
<td>GPS_COURSE_FROM_GPS ${ device. GPS_COURSE_FROM_GPS }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS horizontal accuracy</td>
<td>GPS_HORIZONTAL_ACCURACY_FROM_GPS ${ device. GPS_HORIZONTAL_ACCURACY_FROM_GPS }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS latitude</td>
<td>GPS_LATITUDE_FROM_GPS ${ device. GPS_LATITUDE_FROM_GPS }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS longitude</td>
<td>GPS_LONGITUDE_FROM_GPS ${ device. GPS_LONGITUDE_FROM_GPS }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS speed</td>
<td>GPS_SPEED_FROM_GPS ${ device. GPS_SPEED_FROM_GPS }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS timestamp</td>
<td>GPS_TIMESTAMP_FROM_GPS ${ device. GPS_TIMESTAMP_FROM_GPS }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS vertical accuracy</td>
<td>GPS_VERTICAL_ACCURACY_FROM_GPS ${ device. GPS_VERTICAL_ACCURACY_FROM_GPS }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hardware Device ID</td>
<td>HW_DEVICE_ID ${ device.HW_DEVICE_ID }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hardware encryption capabilities</strong></td>
<td><code>HARDWARE_ENCRYPTION_CAPS</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.HARDWARE_ENCRYPTION_CAPS }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HAS_CONTAINER</strong></td>
<td><code>HAS_CONTAINER</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.HAS_CONTAINER }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hash of the iTunes store account currently logged on</strong></td>
<td><code>ITUNES_STORE_ACCOUNT_HAS</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.ITUNES_STORE_ACCOUNT_HASH }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Home carrier network</strong></td>
<td><code>SIM_CARRIER_NETWORK</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.SIM_CARRIER_NETWORK }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Home mobile country code</strong></td>
<td><code>SIM_MCC</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.SIM_MCC }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Home mobile network code</strong></td>
<td><code>SIM_MNC</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.SIM_MNC }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HTC API version</strong></td>
<td><code>HTC_MDM_VERSION</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.HTC_MDM_VERSION }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HTC MDM API available</strong></td>
<td><code>HTC_MDM</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.HTC_MDM }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ICCID</strong></td>
<td><code>ICCID</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.ICCID }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Identity</strong></td>
<td><code>AS_DEVICE_IDENTITY</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.AS_DEVICE_IDENTITY }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMEI/MEID number</strong></td>
<td><code>IMEI</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.IMEI }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMSI</strong></td>
<td><code>SIM_ID</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.SIM_ID }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Internal storage encrypted</strong></td>
<td><code>LOCAL_ENCRYPTION</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.LOCAL_ENCRYPTION }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IP location</strong></td>
<td><code>IP_LOCATION</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.IP_LOCATION }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IPV4 Address</strong></td>
<td><code>IP_ADDRESSV4</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.IP_ADDRESSV4 }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IPV6 Address</strong></td>
<td><code>IP_ADDRESSV6</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.IP_ADDRESSV6 }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Issued At</strong></td>
<td><code>WINDOWS_HAS_ISSUED_AT</code></td>
<td><code>{ device WINDOWS_HAS_ISSUED_AT }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Jailbroken/Rooted</strong></td>
<td><code>ROOT_ACCESS</code></td>
<td><code>{ device.ROOT_ACCESS }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kernel Debugging Enabled?</td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_OS_KERNEL_DEBUG</td>
<td>${device.WINDOWS_HAS_OS_KERNEL_DEBUGGING_ENABLED}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kiosk mode</td>
<td>IS_KIOSK</td>
<td>${device.IS_KIOSK}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last known IP address</td>
<td>LAST_IP_ADDR</td>
<td>${device.LAST_IP_ADDR}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last policy update time</td>
<td>LAST_POLICY_UPDATE_TIME</td>
<td>${device.LAST_POLICY_UPDATE_TIME}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last scan date</td>
<td>PreviousScanDate</td>
<td>${device.PreviousScanDate}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last scan result</td>
<td>PreviousScanResult</td>
<td>${device.PreviousScanResult}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last scheduled software updates</td>
<td>AVAILABLE_OS_UPDATE_INSTALL</td>
<td>${device.AVAILABLE_OS_UPDATE_INSTALL_LAST_ATTEMPT_TIME}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last scheduled software updates failure message</td>
<td>AVAILABLE_OS_UPDATE_INSTALL_FAIL_MESSAGE</td>
<td>${device.AVAILABLE_OS_UPDATE_INSTALL_FAIL_MESSAGE}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last scheduled software updates status</td>
<td>AVAILABLE_OS_UPDATE_INSTALL</td>
<td>${device.AVAILABLE_OS_UPDATE_INSTALL_STATUS}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last synchronization</td>
<td>ZMSP_LAST_SYNC</td>
<td>${device.ZMSP_LAST_SYNC}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locator service enabled</td>
<td>DEVICE_LOCATOR</td>
<td>${device.DEVICE_LOCATOR}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC Address</td>
<td>MAC_ADDRESS</td>
<td>${device.MAC_ADDRESS}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC Address Network Connection</td>
<td>MAC_NETWORK_CONNECTION</td>
<td>${device.MAC_NETWORK_CONNECTION}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC Address Type</td>
<td>MAC_ADDRESS_TYPE</td>
<td>${device.MAC_ADDRESS_TYPE}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mailbox Setup</td>
<td>GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_MAIL</td>
<td>${ device.GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_MAILBOX_SETUP }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main battery</td>
<td>MAIN_BATTERY_PERCENT</td>
<td>${ device.MAIN_BATTERY_PERCENT }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDM lost mode enabled</td>
<td>IS_MDM_LOST_MODE_ENABLED</td>
<td>${ device.IS_MDM_LOST_MODE_ENABLED }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDX_SHARED_ENCRYPTION_KEY</td>
<td>MDX_SHARED_ENCRYPTION_KEY</td>
<td>${ device.MDX_SHARED_ENCRYPTION_KEY }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEID</td>
<td>MEID</td>
<td>${ device.MEID }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile phone number</td>
<td>TEL_NUMBER</td>
<td>${ device.TEL_NUMBER }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model ID</td>
<td>MODEL_ID</td>
<td>${ device.MODEL_ID }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Model Number</td>
<td>MODEL_NUMBER</td>
<td>${ device.MODEL_NUMBER }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Adapter Type</td>
<td>NETWORK_ADAPTER_TYPE</td>
<td>${ device.NETWORK_ADAPTER_TYPE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NitroDesk TouchDown installed</td>
<td>TOUCHDOWN_FIND</td>
<td>${ device.TOUCHDOWN_FIND }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NitroDesk TouchDown licensed via MDM</td>
<td>TOUCHDOWN_LICENSED_VIA_MDM</td>
<td>${ device.TOUCHDOWN_LICENSED_VIA_MDM }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating system build</td>
<td>SYSTEM_OS_BUILD</td>
<td>${ device.SYSTEM_OS_BUILD }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating System Edition</td>
<td>OS_EDITION</td>
<td>${ device.OS_EDITION }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating system language (locale)</td>
<td>SYSTEM_LANGUAGE</td>
<td>${ device.SYSTEM_LANGUAGE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating system version</td>
<td>SYSTEM_OS_VERSION</td>
<td>${ device.SYSTEM_OS_VERSION }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Environment Variable</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization address</td>
<td>ORGANIZATION_ADDRESS</td>
<td><code>${ device. ORGANIZATION_ADDRESS }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization e-mail</td>
<td>ORGANIZATION_EMAIL</td>
<td><code>${ device. ORGANIZATION_EMAIL }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization magic</td>
<td>ORGANIZATION_MAGIC</td>
<td><code>${ device. ORGANIZATION_MAGIC }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization name</td>
<td>ORGANIZATION_NAME</td>
<td><code>${ device. ORGANIZATION_NAME }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization phone number</td>
<td>ORGANIZATION_PHONE</td>
<td><code>${ device. ORGANIZATION_PHONE }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Out of Compliance</td>
<td>OUT_OF_COMPLIANCE</td>
<td><code>${ device. OUT_OF_COMPLIANCE }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owned by</td>
<td>CORPORATE_OWNED</td>
<td><code>${ device. CORPORATE_OWNED }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passcode compliant</td>
<td>PASSCODE_IS_COMPLIANT</td>
<td><code>${ device. PASSCODE_IS_COMPLIANT }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passcode compliant with</td>
<td>PASSCODE_IS_COMPLIANT_WITH_CFG</td>
<td><code>${ device. PASSCODE_IS_COMPLIANT_WITH_CFG }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>configuration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passcode present</td>
<td>PASSCODE_PRESENT</td>
<td><code>${ device. PASSCODE_PRESENT }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR0</td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_PCR0</td>
<td><code>${ device. WINDOWS_HAS_PCR0 }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perimeter breach</td>
<td>GPS_PERIMETER_BREACH</td>
<td><code>${ device. GPS_PERIMETER_BREACH }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periodic check</td>
<td>PerformPeriodicCheck</td>
<td><code>${ device. PerformPeriodicCheck }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal Hotspot activated</td>
<td>PERSONAL_HOTSPOT_ENABLED</td>
<td><code>${ device. PERSONAL_HOTSPOT_ENABLED }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIN code for geofence</td>
<td>PIN_CODE_FOR_GEO_FENCE</td>
<td>${ device.PIN_CODE_FOR_GEO_FENCE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platform</td>
<td>SYSTEM_PLATFORM</td>
<td>${ device.SYSTEM_PLATFORM }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platform API level</td>
<td>API_LEVEL</td>
<td>${ device.API_LEVEL }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Policy name</td>
<td>POLICY_NAME</td>
<td>${ device.POLICY_NAME }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary Phone Number</td>
<td>IDENTITY1_PHONENUMBER</td>
<td>${ device.IDENTITY1_PHONENUMBER }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary SIM Carrier Operator</td>
<td>IDENTITY1_CARRIER_NETWORK_OPERATOR</td>
<td>${ device.IDENTITY1_CARRIER_NETWORK_OPERATOR }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary SIM ICCID</td>
<td>IDENTITY1_ICCID</td>
<td>${ device.IDENTITY1_ICCID }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary SIM IMEI</td>
<td>IDENTITY1_IMEI</td>
<td>${ device.IDENTITY1_IMEI }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary SIM IMSI</td>
<td>IDENTITY1_IMSI</td>
<td>${ device.IDENTITY1_IMSI }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary SIM Roaming</td>
<td>IDENTITY1_ROAMING</td>
<td>${ device.IDENTITY1_ROAMING }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary SIM Roaming Compliance</td>
<td>IDENTITY1_ROAMING_COMPLIANCE</td>
<td>${ device.IDENTITY1_ROAMING_COMPLIANCE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product name</td>
<td>PRODUCT_NAME</td>
<td>${ device.PRODUCT_NAME }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher Device ID</td>
<td>PUBLISHER_DEVICE_ID</td>
<td>${ device.PUBLISHER_DEVICE_ID }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset Count</td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_RESET_COUNT</td>
<td>${ device.WINDOWS_HAS_RESET_COUNT }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Window or API</td>
<td>Command or Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restart Count</td>
<td><code>WINDOWS_HAS_RESTART_COUNT</code>{ device. <code>WINDOWS_HAS_RESTART_COUNT</code> }</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safe Mode Enabled?</td>
<td><code>WINDOWS_HAS_SAFE_MODE</code></td>
<td><code>{$ device. </code>WINDOWS_HAS_SAFE_MODE` }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samsung KNOX API available</td>
<td><code>SAMSUNG_KNOX</code></td>
<td><code>{$ device.SAMSUNG_KNOX }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samsung KNOX API version</td>
<td><code>SAMSUNG_KNOX_VERSION</code></td>
<td><code>{$ device. </code>SAMSUNG_KNOX_VERSION` }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samsung KNOX attestation</td>
<td><code>SAMSUNG_KNOX_ATTESTED</code></td>
<td><code>{$ device. </code>SAMSUNG_KNOX_ATTESTED` }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samsung KNOX attestation updated date</td>
<td><code>SAMSUNG_KNOX_ATT_UPDATED</code></td>
<td><code>{$ device. </code>SAMSUNG_KNOX_ATT_UPDATED_TIME` }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samsung SAFE API available</td>
<td><code>SAMSUNG_MDM</code></td>
<td><code>{$ device.SAMSUNG_MDM }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samsung SAFE API version</td>
<td><code>SAMSUNG_MDM_VERSION</code></td>
<td><code>{$ device. </code>SAMSUNG_MDM_VERSION` }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBCP Hash</td>
<td><code>WINDOWS_HAS_SBCP_HASH</code></td>
<td><code>{$ device. </code>WINDOWS_HAS_SBCP_HASH` }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen: height</td>
<td><code>SCREEN_HEIGHT</code></td>
<td><code>{$ device. </code>SCREEN_HEIGHT` }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen: number of colors</td>
<td><code>SCREEN_NB_COLORS</code></td>
<td><code>{$ device. </code>SCREEN_NB_COLORS` }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen: size</td>
<td><code>SCREEN_SIZE</code></td>
<td><code>{$ device. </code>SCREEN_SIZE` }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen: width</td>
<td><code>SCREEN_WIDTH</code></td>
<td><code>{$ device. </code>SCREEN_WIDTH` }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen: X-axis resolution</td>
<td><code>SCREEN_XDPI</code></td>
<td><code>{$ device. </code>SCREEN_XDPI` }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Variable Name</td>
<td>Property Expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen: Y-axis resolution</td>
<td>SCREEN_YDPI</td>
<td>${ device.SCREEN_YDPI }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary Phone Number</td>
<td>IDENTITY2_PHONENUMBER</td>
<td>${ device.IDENTITY2_PHONENUMBER }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary SIM Carrier Operator</td>
<td>IDENTITY2_CARRIER_NETWORK_OPERATOR</td>
<td>${ device.IDENTITY2_CARRIER_NETWORK_OPERATOR }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary SIM ICCID</td>
<td>IDENTITY2_ICCID</td>
<td>${ device.IDENTITY2_ICCID }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary SIM IMEI</td>
<td>IDENTITY2 IMEI</td>
<td>${ device.IDENTITY2 IMEI }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary SIM IMSI</td>
<td>IDENTITY2 IMSI</td>
<td>${ device.IDENTITY2 IMSI }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary SIM Roaming</td>
<td>IDENTITY2 ROAMING</td>
<td>${ device.IDENTITY2 ROAMING }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary SIM Roaming Compliance</td>
<td>IDENTITY2 ROAMING_COMPLI</td>
<td>${ device.IDENTITY2 ROAMING_COMPLI }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Boot Enabled?</td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_SECURE_BOOT_ENABLED</td>
<td>${ device.WINDOWS_HAS_SECURE_BOOT_ENABLED }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Boot Status</td>
<td>SECURE_BOOT_STATE</td>
<td>${ device.SECURE_BOOT_STATE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SecureContainer Enabled</td>
<td>DLP_ACTIVE</td>
<td>${ device.DLP_ACTIVE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security patch level</td>
<td>SYSTEM_SECURITY_PATCH_LEVEL</td>
<td>${ device.SYSTEM_SECURITY_PATCH_LEVEL }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serial number</td>
<td>SERIAL_NUMBER</td>
<td>${ device.SERIAL_NUMBER }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMS capable</td>
<td>IS_SMS_CAPABLE</td>
<td>${ device.IS_SMS_CAPABLE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sony Enterprise API available</td>
<td>SONY_MDM</td>
<td>${ device.SONY_MDM }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>Expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sony Enterprise API version</td>
<td>SONY_MDM_VERSION</td>
<td><code>${ device.SONY_MDM_VERSION }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supervised</td>
<td>SUPERVISED</td>
<td><code>${ device.SUPERVISED }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suspension Reason</td>
<td>GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_SUSPENSION_REASON</td>
<td><code>${ device.GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_SUSPENSION_REASON }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tampered Status</td>
<td>TAMPERED_STATUS</td>
<td><code>${ device.TAMPERED_STATUS }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terms &amp; Conditions</td>
<td>TERMS_AND_CONDITIONS</td>
<td><code>${ device.TERMS_AND_CONDITIONS }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terms And Agreement Accepted?</td>
<td>GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_AGREED_TO_TERMS</td>
<td><code>${ device.GOOGLE_AW_DIRECTORY_AGREED_TO_TERMS }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test Signing Enabled?</td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_TEST_SIGNING</td>
<td><code>${ device.WINDOWS_HAS_TEST_SIGNING_ENABLED }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total RAM</td>
<td>MEMORY</td>
<td><code>${ device.MEMORY }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total storage space</td>
<td>TOTAL_DISK_SPACE</td>
<td><code>${ device.TOTAL_DISK_SPACE }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPM version</td>
<td>TPM_VERSION</td>
<td><code>${ device.TPM_VERSION }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDID</td>
<td>UDID</td>
<td><code>${ device.UDID }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Account Control Status</td>
<td>UAC_STATUS</td>
<td><code>${ device.UAC_STATUS }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User agent</td>
<td>USER_AGENT</td>
<td><code>${ device.USER_AGENT }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User defined #1</td>
<td>USER_DEFINED_1</td>
<td><code>${ device.USER_DEFINED_1 }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User defined #2</td>
<td>USER_DEFINED_2</td>
<td><code>${ device.USER_DEFINED_2 }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User defined #3</td>
<td>USER_DEFINED_3</td>
<td><code>${ device.USER_DEFINED_3 }</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Template</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User language (locale)</td>
<td>USER_LANGUAGE</td>
<td>${ device.USER_LANGUAGE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vendor</td>
<td>VENDOR</td>
<td>${ device.VENDOR }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice capable</td>
<td>IS_VOICE_CAPABLE</td>
<td>${ device.IS_VOICE_CAPABLE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice roaming allowed</td>
<td>VOICE_ROAMING_ENABLED</td>
<td>${ device.VOICE_ROAMING_ENABLED }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSM Enabled?</td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_VSM_ENABLED</td>
<td>${ device.WINDOWS_HAS_VSM_ENABLED }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WiFi MAC address</td>
<td>WIFI_MAC</td>
<td>${ device.WIFI_MAC }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WINDOWS_ENROLLMENT_KEY</td>
<td>WINDOWS_ENROLLMENT_KEY</td>
<td>${ device.WINDOWS_ENROLLMENT_KEY }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WinPE Enabled?</td>
<td>WINDOWS_HAS_WINPE</td>
<td>${ device.WINDOWS_HAS_WINPE }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WNS Notification Status</td>
<td>PROPERTY_WNS_PUSH_STATUS</td>
<td>${ devicePROPERTY_WNS_PUSH_STATUS }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WNS Notification URL</td>
<td>PROPERTY_WNS_PUSH_URL</td>
<td>${ devicePROPERTY_WNS_PUSH_URL }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WNS Notification URL expiry date</td>
<td>PROPERTY_WNS_PUSH_URL_EXPIRY</td>
<td>${ devicePROPERTY_WNS_PUSH_URL_EXPIRY }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Management agent ID</td>
<td>ENROLLMENT_AGENT_ID</td>
<td>${ device.ENROLLMENT_AGENT_ID }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Management agent revision</td>
<td>EW_REVISION</td>
<td>${ device.EW_REVISION }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endpoint Management agent version</td>
<td>EW_VERSION</td>
<td>${ device.EW_VERSION }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zebra API available</td>
<td>ZEBRA_MDM</td>
<td>${ device.ZEBRA_MDM }</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Zebra MXMF version

| ZEBRA_MDM_VERSION | ${ device. ZEBRA_MDM_VERSION } |

### Zebra Patch version

| ZEBRA_PATCH_VERSION | ${ device. ZEBRA_PATCH_VERSION } |

### Macros to obtain built-in user properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display name</th>
<th>Macros</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>domainname (domain name; default domain)</td>
<td>${ user.domainname }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loginname (user name plus domain name)</td>
<td>${ user.loginname }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>username (login name minus the domain, if any)</td>
<td>${ user.username }</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Macros for all user properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display name</th>
<th>Web element</th>
<th>Macros</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Directory failed logon tries</td>
<td>badpwdcount</td>
<td>${ user.badpwdcount }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ActiveSync user email</td>
<td>asuseremail</td>
<td>${ user.asuseremail }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASM data source</td>
<td>asmpersonsource</td>
<td>${ user.asmpersonsource }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASM DEP account name</td>
<td>asmdepaccount</td>
<td>${ user.asmdepaccount }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASM managed Apple ID</td>
<td>asmpersonmanagedappleid</td>
<td>${ user.asmpersonmanagedappleid }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASM passcode type</td>
<td>asmpersonpasscodetype</td>
<td>${ user.asmpersonpasscodetype }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Template</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASM person ID</td>
<td>asmpersonid</td>
<td>${ user.asmpersonid }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASM person status</td>
<td>asmpersonstatus</td>
<td>${ user.asmpersonstatus }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASM person title</td>
<td>asmpersontitle</td>
<td>${ user.asmpersontitle }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASM person unique ID</td>
<td>asmpersonuniqueid</td>
<td>${ user.asmpersonuniqueid }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASM source system ID</td>
<td>asmpersonsourcesystemid</td>
<td>${ user.asmpersonsourcesystemid }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASM student grade</td>
<td>asmpersongrade</td>
<td>${ user.asmpersongrade }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BES user email</td>
<td>besuseremail</td>
<td>${ user.besuseremail }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company</td>
<td>company</td>
<td>${ user.company }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company name</td>
<td>companyname</td>
<td>${ user.companyname }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>${ user.c }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Department</td>
<td>department</td>
<td>${ user.department }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>description</td>
<td>${ user.description }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disabled user</td>
<td>disableduser</td>
<td>${ user.disableduser }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display name</td>
<td>displayname</td>
<td>${ user.displayname }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distinguished name</td>
<td>distinguishedname</td>
<td>${ user.distinguishedname }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Domain name</td>
<td>domainname</td>
<td>${ user.domainname }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
<td>mail</td>
<td>${ user.mail }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First name</td>
<td>givenname</td>
<td>${ user.givenname }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home address</td>
<td>homestreetaddress</td>
<td>${ user.homestreetaddress }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home city</td>
<td>homecity</td>
<td>${ user.homecity }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home country</td>
<td>homecountry</td>
<td>${ user.homecountry }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home fax</td>
<td>homefax</td>
<td>${ user.homefax }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home phone</td>
<td>homephone</td>
<td>${ user.homephone }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home state/region</td>
<td>homestate</td>
<td>${ user.homestate }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Home zip or post code</td>
<td>homezip</td>
<td>${ user.homezip }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP phone</td>
<td>ipphone</td>
<td>${ user.ipphone }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle initial</td>
<td>middleinitial</td>
<td>${ user.middleinitial }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle name</td>
<td>middlename</td>
<td>${ user.middlename }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile</td>
<td>mobile</td>
<td>${ user.mobile }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name</td>
<td>cn</td>
<td>${ user.cn }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office address</td>
<td>physicaldeliveryofficename</td>
<td>${ user.physicaldeliveryofficename }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office city</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>${ user.l }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office fax number</td>
<td>facsimiletelephonenumber</td>
<td>${ user.facsimiletelephonenumber }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office state/province</td>
<td>st</td>
<td>${ user.st }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office street address</td>
<td>officestreetaddress</td>
<td>${ user.officestreetaddress }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office telephone number</td>
<td>telephonenumber</td>
<td>${ user.telephonenumber }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office zip or post code</td>
<td>postalcode</td>
<td>${ user.postalcode }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.O. box</td>
<td>postofficebox</td>
<td>${ user.postofficebox }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pager</td>
<td>pager</td>
<td>${ user.pager }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary group ID</td>
<td>primarygroupid</td>
<td>${ user.primarygroupid }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAM account</td>
<td>samaccountname</td>
<td>${ user.samaccountname }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Street address</td>
<td>streetaddress</td>
<td>${ user.streetaddress }</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surname</td>
<td>sn</td>
<td>${ user.sn }</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Automated actions

October 26, 2018

You create automated actions in Endpoint Management to program a reaction to events, user or device properties, or the existence of apps on user devices. When you create an automated action, the triggers defined for the action determine what happens on the user device when it is connected to Endpoint Management. When an event is triggered, you can send a notification to the user to correct an issue before more serious action is taken.

For example, suppose that you want to detect an app that you previously blacklisted (for example, “Words with Friends”). You can specify a trigger that sets the user device out of compliance when “Words with Friends” is detected on the device. The action then notifies users that they must remove the app to bring their device back into compliance. You can also set a time limit for how long to wait for users to comply. After that time limit, a defined action occurs, such as selectively wiping the device.

In cases in which a user device is put into an out of compliance state, and then the user fixes the device: You must configure a policy to deploy a package that resets the device into a compliant state.

The effects that you set to happen automatically range from the following:

- Fully or selectively wiping the device.
- Setting the device to out of compliance.
- Revoking the device.
- Sending a notification to the user to correct an issue before more severe action is taken.

You can configure app lock and app wipe actions for MAM-only mode.

You can use automated actions use to mark Windows 10 devices joined to Azure Active Directory (AD) out of compliance in Azure AD.

**Note:**

Before you can notify users, you must configure notification servers in the Endpoint Management settings for SMTP and SMS so that Endpoint Management can send the messages. For information, see Notifications. Also, set up any notification templates you plan to use before proceeding. For details, see Create and update notification templates.

To add, edit, and filter automated actions:
1. From the Endpoint Management console, click **Configure > Actions**. The **Actions** page appears.

2. On the **Actions** page, do one of the following:
   - Click **Add** to add an action.
   - Select an existing action to edit or delete. Click the option you want to use.

3. The **Action Information** page appears.

4. On the **Action Information** page, enter or modify the following information:
   - **Name**: Type a name to identify the action. This field is required.
   - **Description**: Describe what the action is meant to do.

5. Click **Next**. The **Action details** page appears.

   The following example shows how to set up an **Event** trigger. If you select a different trigger, the resulting options differ from those shown here.

6. On the **Action details** page, enter or modify the following information:

   In the **Trigger** list, click the event trigger type for this action. The meaning of each trigger is as follows:
   - **Event**: Reacts to a predefined event.
   - **Device property**: Checks for a device attribute on the device gathered in MDM mode and reacts to it. For more information, see the **Device property names and values** PDF.
   - **User property**: Reacts to a user attribute, usually from Active Directory.
   - **Installed app name**: Reacts to an app being installed. Doesn’t apply to MAM-only mode.
     Requires the app inventory policy to be enabled on the device. The app inventory policy is enabled on all platforms by default. For details, see **App inventory device policy**.

7. In the next list, click the response to the trigger.
8. In the **Action** list, click the action to be performed when the trigger criterion is met. Except for **Send notification**, you choose a time frame in which users can resolve the issue that caused the trigger. If the issue isn’t resolved within that time frame, the selected action is taken. For a definition of the actions, see **Security actions**.

If you pick **Send notification**, use the following steps to send a notification action.

9. In the next list, select the template to use for the notification. Notification templates relevant to the selected event appear, unless a template doesn’t yet exist for the notification type. In that case, you are prompted to configure a template with the message: No template for this event type. Create template using **Notification Template** in **Settings**.

Before you can notify users, you must have configured notification servers in **Settings** for SMTP and SMS so that Endpoint Management can send the messages, see **Notifications**. Also, set up any notification templates you plan to use before proceeding. For details on setting up notification templates, see **Create and update notification templates**.

After you select the template, you can preview the notification by clicking **Preview notification message**.

10. In the following fields, set the delay in days, hours, or minutes before performing the action. Set the interval at which the action repeats until the user addresses the triggering issue.
11. In **Summary**, verify that you created the automated action as you intended.

12. After you configure the action details, you can configure deployment rules for each platform individually. To do so, complete step 13 for each platform you choose.

13. Configure deployment rules. For general information about configuring deployment rules, see [Deploy resources](#).

   For this example:
   - Device ownership must be **BYOD**.
   - Device local encryption must be **True**.
   - Device must be passcode compliant.
   - Device mobile country code cannot be only Andorra.

14. When you are done configuring the platform deployment rules for the action, click **Next**. The **Actions assignment** page appears, where you assign the action to a delivery group or groups. This step is optional.

15. Next to **Choose delivery groups**, type to find a delivery group or select groups in the list. The groups you select appear **Delivery groups to receive app assignment** list.

16. Expand Deployment Schedule and then configure the following settings:
   - Next to **Deploy**, click **ON** to schedule deployment or click **OFF** to prevent deployment. The default option is **ON**. If you choose **OFF**, no other options are required.
   - Next to **Deployment schedule**, click **Now** or **Later**. The default option is **Now**.
   - If you click **Later**, click the calendar icon and then select the date and time for deployment.
   - Next to **Deployment condition**, click **On every connection** or click **Only when previous deployment has failed**. The default option is **On every connection**.
   - Next to **Deploy for always-on connection**, click **ON** or **OFF**. The default option is **OFF**.
This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in Settings > Server Properties.

Note:
This option applies when you have configured the scheduling background deployment key in Settings > Server Properties.

The always-on option:
- Is not available for iOS devices
- Is not available for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS to customers who began using Endpoint Management with version 10.18.19 or later
- Is not recommended for Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS to customers who began using Endpoint Management with before version 10.18.19

The deployment schedule you configure is the same for all platforms. Any changes you make apply to all platforms, except for Deploy for always-on connection.

17. Click Next. The Summary page appears, where you can verify the action configuration.

18. Click Save to save the action.

App lock and App wipe actions for MAM-only mode

You can wipe or lock apps on a device in response to all four categories of triggers listed in the Endpoint Management console: event, device property, user property, and installed app name.

To configure automatic app wipe or app lock

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click Configure > Actions.
2. On the Actions page, click Add.
3. On the Action Information page, enter a name for the action and an optional description.
4. On the Action Details page, select the trigger you want.
5. In Action, select an action.

For this step, keep the following conditions in mind:

When the trigger type is Event and the value is not Active Directory disabled user, the App wipe and App lock actions don’t appear.

When the trigger type is Device property and the value is MDM lost mode enabled, the following actions don’t appear:
- Selectively wipe the device
• Completely wipe the device
• Revoke the device

For each option, a 1 hour delay is automatically set, but you can select the delay period in minutes, hours or days. The intent of the delay is to give users time to fix an issue before the action occurs. For more information about the App wipe and App lock actions, see Security actions.

Note:
If you set the trigger to event, the repeat interval is automatically a minimum of 1 hour. The device must carry out a refresh of the policies to synchronize with the server for the notification to come in. Typically, a device synchronizes with the server when users sign on or manually refresh their policies through Secure Hub.

An extra delay of approximately 1 hour may occur before any action is carried out, to allow the Active Directory database to synchronize with Endpoint Management.

6. Configure deployment rules and then click Next.
7. Configure delivery group assignments and a deployment schedule and then click Next.
8. Click Save.

To check app lock or app wipe status

1. Go to Manage > Devices, click a device, and then click Show more.
2. Scroll to **Device App Wipe** and **Device App Lock**.

After a device gets wiped, the user is prompted to enter a PIN code. If the user forgets the code, you can look it up in the Device Details.
Marking Windows 10 devices out of compliance in Azure AD

When Windows 10 devices joined to Azure AD are marked out of compliance by Endpoint Management, they can also be marked out of compliance in Azure AD. To enable this functionality, add permissions to On-premises MDM application to access the Microsoft Graph API in the Azure AD portal.

1. Log in to the Azure AD portal with your Azure AD administrator credentials.
2. In the Azure AD portal, navigate to Azure Active Directory > Mobility (MDM and MAM). Choose On-premises MDM application.
3. Click On-premises Application Settings > Required Permissions > Add > Select an API > Microsoft Graph. Click Select and save.
4. Under Required permissions, select Microsoft Graph. Under Enable Access, select Read and write directory data.
5. Under Required permissions, select Microsoft Graph. Then click Grant permissions.
6. Click Yes to grant permissions.

Whenever a Windows 10 Azure AD enrolled device is marked out of compliance by Endpoint Management, it is also marked out of compliance in Azure AD.

Monitor and support

January 3, 2019

You can use the Endpoint Management Dashboard and the Endpoint Management Support page to monitor and troubleshoot your Endpoint Management server. Use the Endpoint Management Support page to access support-related information and tools.
In the Endpoint Management console, click the wrench icon in the upper-right corner.

The Troubleshooting and Support page appears.

Use the Endpoint Management Support page to:

- Access diagnostics.
- Access links to Citrix Product Documentation and the Knowledge Center.
- Access log operations.
- Use advanced configuration options.
- Access a set of tools and utilities.

You can also view information at a glance by accessing your Endpoint Management console dashboard. With this information, you can see issues and successes quickly by using widgets.

The dashboard is usually the page that first appears when you sign on to the Endpoint Management console. To access the dashboard from elsewhere in the console, click Analyze. Click Customize on the dashboard to edit the layout of the page and to edit the widgets that appear.

- **My Dashboards:** You can save up to four dashboards. You can edit these dashboards separately and view each one by selecting the saved dashboard.
• **Layout Style:** In this row, you can select how many widgets appear on your dashboard and how the widgets are laid out.

• **Widget Selection:** You can choose which information appears on your dashboard.
  - **Notifications:** Mark the check box above the numbers on the left to add a Notifications bar above your widgets. This bar shows the number of compliant devices, inactive devices, and devices wiped or enrolled in the last 24 hours.
  - **Devices By Platform:** Displays the number of managed and unmanaged devices by platform.
  - **Devices By Carrier:** Displays the number of managed and unmanaged devices by carrier. Click each bar to see a breakdown by platform.
  - **Managed Devices By Platform:** Displays the number of managed devices by platform.
  - **Unmanaged Devices By Platform:** Displays the number of unmanaged devices by platform. Devices that appear in this chart might have an agent installed, but their privileges are revoked or the devices are wiped.
  - **Devices By ActiveSync Gateway Status:** Displays the number of devices grouped by ActiveSync Gateway status. The information shows Blocked, Allowed, or Unknown status. You can click each bar to break down the data by platform.
  - **Devices By Ownership:** Displays the number of devices grouped by ownership status. The information shows corporate-owned, employee-owned, or unknown ownership status.
  - **Android TouchDown License Status:** Displays the number of devices that have a TouchDown license.
  - **Failed Delivery Group Deployments:** Displays the total number of failed deployments per package. Only packages that have failed deployments appear.
  - **Devices By Blocked Reason:** Displays the number of devices blocked by ActiveSync
  - **Installed Apps:** Type an app name for a graph of app information.
  - **VPP Apps License Usage:** Displays license usage statistics for Apple Volume Purchase Program apps.

With each widget, you can click the individual parts to drill down for more information.
You can also export the information as a .csv file by clicking the **Action** drop-down.
Monitor page for help desk administrators

You can monitor and troubleshoot Endpoint Management on the Monitor page. This interface is customized for help desk administrators to carry out user-based troubleshooting efficiently.

Help Desk administrators must have the following permissions to access the Monitor page and all available workflows:

- Authorized access
  - Admin console access
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Public api access
- Console Features
  - Monitor
  - Devices
  - Full Wipe Device
  - View Locations
    - Locate Device
    - Track Device
  - Lock device
  - Unlock device
  - App Lock
  - App Wipe
  - App

The Monitor page gives you a consolidated view of device policies and configuration. The view includes troubleshooting actions such as app lock/unlock, app wipe, device lock/unlock, and device wipe.

Use the Monitor page to:

- Search for an Active Directory (AD) user and device you want to troubleshoot.
- Analyze the Device Details page containing:
  - Policies: Displays device and app policies for the selected device and app. For information about modifying policies, see Device policies and Add apps.
  - Configuration: Displays the device configuration. This panel includes icons that indicate
whether the device has location services enabled, is jailbroken, and is MAM/MDM managed. The panel also shows the storage encryption status.

- **Running Applications** table: Displays the details of the applications currently running on the device.

- Troubleshoot the device. Security actions available on this page are based on the enrollment of the device, and the permissions available to the logged in administrator:
  - Device lock/unlock
  - Device wipe
  - App lock/unlock (available if the device is MAM enrolled)
  - App wipe (available if the device is MAM enrolled)

For more information about the actions you can take, see [Security actions](#).

The Monitor page might not operate as expected 60 minutes after it was last loaded, because it does not handle refreshes of the login token. As a workaround, refresh the token by reloading the page: Click the **Citrix Cloud** link on your service console and then click **Endpoint Management > Manage > Monitor**.

### Access to Endpoint Management Tools from the console

You can access these Endpoint Management Tools from the Endpoint Management console:

- **Endpoint Management Analyzer** – Identify and triage potential issues with your deployment.
- **APNs Portal** – Submit a request to Citrix to sign an APNs certificate, which you then submit to Apple.
- **Auto Discovery Service** – Request and configure Auto Discovery for Endpoint Management in your domain.
- **Manage Push Notifications** – Manage push notifications for iOS and Windows mobile apps.
- **MDX Service** – Wraps apps that you can then manage by using Endpoint Management.

To access these tools, go to **Settings > Endpoint Management Tools**. This page is available to users with the Cloud Admin or Customer Admin role.
**View and analyze log files in Endpoint Management**

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the wrench icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Support** page opens.


3. Select the log you want to view:
   - Debug Log Files contain information useful for Citrix Support, such as error messages and server-related actions.
   - Admin Audit Log Files contain audit information about activity on the Endpoint Management console.
   - User Audit Log Files contain information related to configured users.

4. Use the actions at the top of the table to download all, view, or download a single log.
If you select multiple log files, only **Download All** is available.

5. Do one of the following:

- **Download All**: The console downloads all the logs present on the system (including debug, admin audit, user audit, server logs, and so on).
- **View**: Shows the contents of the selected log below the table.
- **Download**: The console downloads only the single log file type selected. The console also downloads any archived logs for that same type.

Endpoint Management uses the log4j syslog appenders to send RFC5424 formatted syslog messages. The message data in syslog message is plain text does not have any specific format.

**Connectivity checks**

October 26, 2018

From the Endpoint Management **Support** page, you can check the Endpoint Management connection to Citrix Gateway and to other servers and locations.

**Conducting Endpoint Management Connectivity Checks**

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the wrench icon in the upper-right corner of the console. The **Support** page appears.

2. Under **Diagnostics**, click **Endpoint Management Connectivity Checks**. The **Endpoint Management Connectivity Checks** page appears. If your Endpoint Management environment contains clustered nodes, all nodes are shown.
3. Select the servers you want to include in the connectivity test and then click **Test Connectivity**. The test results page appears.

4. Select a server in the test results table to see detailed results for that server.
Conducting Citrix Gateway Connectivity Checks

1. On the Support page, under Diagnostics, click NetScaler Gateway Connectivity Checks. The NetScaler Gateway Connectivity Checks page appears. The table is empty if there is no connection between Endpoint Management and Citrix Gateway.

2. Click Add. The Add NetScaler Gateway Server dialog box appears.
3. In **NetScaler Gateway Management IP**, type the management IP address for the server running Citrix Gateway that you want to test. If you’re conducting a connectivity check for a Citrix Gateway server that has already been added before, the IP address is provided.

4. Type your administrator credentials for this Citrix Gateway. If you’re conducting a connectivity check for a Citrix Gateway server that has already been added before, the username is provided.

5. Click **Add**. The Citrix Gateway is added to the table on the **NetScaler Gateway Connectivity Checks** page.

6. Select the Citrix Gateway server and then click **Test Connectivity**. The results appear in a test results table.

7. Select a server in the test results table to see detailed results for that server.

**Device screen sharing**

August 21, 2018

You can view the screen of a remote device from your Endpoint Management console. Screen sharing is supported on MDM-managed iOS devices. To enable screen sharing, users run the AetherPal Mobile Support Management app (AetherPal Mobile Support) on the remote device. You can view the remote device screen in read-only mode.

This feature gives you a real-time view of reported issues and lets you diagnose efficiently and help rectify the issues.
Prerequisites on the remote device:

- MDM-managed iOS devices
- Submit an activation request at the AetherPal activation site. Alternatively, email citrixsales@aetherpal.com.
- The remote device must have outbound connectivity to.
- The remote device must run iOS version 11 or later. On devices running iOS versions 9.3 through 11, live streaming of the screen is not supported. However, the user can share static screenshots.

To set up screen sharing, first, define the AetherPal Mobile Support app and the corresponding configuration policy, and then push the app and policy to the user device.

1. **Add the AetherPal Mobile Support app.** Follow the steps described in Add a public app store app. On the App Information page, under Platforms, choose iOS and clear the others.

2. **Add an App Configuration device policy for the AetherPal Mobile Support app.** Follow the steps described in App configuration device policy.
   - In the App Configuration Policy page, under Platforms, choose iOS and clear the others.
   - From Identifier, select the app you defined earlier.
   - Type the Dictionary Content provided by AetherPal on customer activation.

3. **Deploy to the Delivery Group.** Deploy the AetherPal Mobile Support app as a required app. Also, deploy the App Configuration device policy. Follow the steps described in Deploy resources.

The AetherPal Mobile Support app is now available on the remote device when the device connects to Endpoint Management.

- Instruct the user to accept the app and allow its installation.
- Instruct the user to launch the app. The provisioning information provided via the app configuration policy gets loaded and the device gets enrolled with the AetherPal server.
- Instruct the user to initiate screen sharing from the AetherPal Mobile Support app on the remote device. For more information, download the AetherPal Citrix-Remote Management Guide.

4. **Launch screen sharing.** From the Endpoint Management console, go to the Monitor tab, search for the user, and select the device you want to troubleshoot. On the Device Details page, click Screen Sharing. This button is enabled only when the device is MDM-managed and enrolled with the AetherPal server.
5. A new tab opens in your browser. It shows the status of your connection to the remote device.

6. After the connection establishes, the remote device screen is available on your browser.
You can enable Endpoint Management to use the Mobile Service Provider interface to query BlackBerry and Exchange ActiveSync devices and issue operations.

For example, your organization may have 1,000 users and each user may use one or more devices. After you communicate to every user that he or she must enroll their devices with Endpoint Management for management, the Endpoint Management console indicates the number of devices that users enroll. By configuring this setting, you can determine how many devices connect to Exchange Server. In this way, you can do the following:

- Determine if any users still need to enroll their devices.
- Issue commands to user devices that connect to Exchange Server, such as data wipes.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The Settings page appears.

2. Under Server, click Mobile Service Provider. The Mobile Service Provider page appears.

3. Configure these settings:

   - **Web service URL**: Type the URL of the Web service; for example, `https://XmmServer/services/xdmservice`.
   - **User name**: Type the user name in the format `domain\admin`.
   - **Password**: Type the password.
   - **Automatically update BlackBerry and ActiveSync device connections**: Select whether to automatically update device connections. The default is OFF.
   - **Click Test Connection** to verify connectivity.
Click Save.

**Reports**

October 22, 2018

Endpoint Management provides the following pre-defined reports that let you analyze your app and device deployments. Each report appears as a table and a chart. You can sort and filter the tables by column. You can select elements in charts from more detailed information.

- **Total Apps Deployment Attempts**: Lists deployed apps that users tried to install on their devices.
- **Apps by Platform**: Lists apps and app versions by device platform and version.
- **Apps by Type**: Lists apps by version, type, and category.
- **Device Enrollment**: Lists all enrolled devices.
- **Devices & Apps**: Lists devices that are running managed apps.
- **Inactive Devices**: A list of devices that have not had any activity for the number of days specified by the Endpoint Management server property `device.inactivity.days.threshold`.
- **Jailbroken/Rooted Devices**: Lists jailbroken iOS devices and rooted Android devices.
- **Terms & Conditions**: Lists users who have accepted and declined Terms and Conditions agreements. You can select areas of the chart to view more details.
- **Top 10 Apps**: Failed Deployment - Lists up to 10 apps that have failed to deploy.
- **Blacklisted Apps by Device & User**: Lists blacklisted apps that users have on their devices.

You can export the data in each table in .csv format, which you can open by using programs like Microsoft Excel. You can export the chart for each report in PDF format.

**To generate a report**

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click **Analyze > Reporting**. The **Reporting** page appears.
2. Click the report you want to generate.
To view more details of a report

1. Click areas of the chart to drill down and see more details information.
To sort, filter, or search a table column, click the column heading

1. Click a column heading to view the filter settings.

2. From Filter Condition, choose how you want to restrict the dates reported.
3. Use the date chooser to specify dates.

4. A column with a date filter displays as shown the following example.

5. To remove a filter, click the column heading and then click **Remove Filter**
Citrix Endpoint Management

To export a chart or table

- To export the chart in PDF format, click **Actions** then **Export graph as PDF**.
- To export the table data in CSV format, click **Actions** then **Export data as CSV**.

Endpoint Management Analyzer

January 30, 2019

Endpoint Management Analyzer is a cloud-based tool that you can use to check the authentication and enrollment setup for Citrix Endpoint Management.

Configure the tool to point to your Endpoint Management server and provide information, such as server deployment type, mobile platform, authentication type, and user credentials. The tool then connects to the server and scans your environment for configuration issues. If Endpoint Management Analyzer discovers issues, the tool provides recommendations to correct the issues.
Citrix Endpoint Management

**Key features**

- Secure, cloud-based micro-service to troubleshoot issues related to Endpoint Management.
- Recommendations to resolve Endpoint Management configuration issues.
- Reduced support calls and accelerated troubleshooting of Endpoint Management environments.
- Zero-day support for Endpoint Management releases.
- Health check scheduling on a daily or weekly cadence.
- Citrix ADC configuration checks. The Citrix ADC Configuration Report displays a badge notification indicating the number of recommendations.
- Secure Mail autodiscovery service checks.

**Prerequisites**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Supported Version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Citrix ADC</td>
<td>10.5 and later</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client Enrollment Simulation</td>
<td>iOS and Android</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Accessing Endpoint Management Analyzer**

Use one of the following methods to access Endpoint Management Analyzer:

- In the Endpoint Management console, click the wrench icon in the upper-right corner to open the **Troubleshooting and Support** page.

- Use your My Citrix credentials to access the tool from [https://xmanalyzer.xm.citrix.com/](https://xmanalyzer.xm.citrix.com/). On the Endpoint Management Analyzer Checks page, click **Endpoint Management Environment**.
Endpoint Management Analyzer contains the following options:

- **Environment Check**: This option guides you in setting up tests to check your setup. The option provides recommendations and solutions on device, user enrollment, and authentication issues.

- **Gateway Configuration Check**: This option guides you in checking your Citrix ADC configurations for Endpoint Management deployment readiness.

- **Secure Mail Test Tool**: This option directs you to download the Exchange ActiveSync Test application. This tool helps troubleshoot the ActiveSync servers for their readiness to be deployed in an Endpoint Management environment.

- **Server Connectivity**: This option instructs you to test the connectivity of your servers.

- **Citrix Insight Services**: This option opens Citrix Insight Services to find further issues that the environment check might have missed.

- **Contact Citrix support**: If you are still having issues, you can create a Citrix support case.

The following sections describe each option in more detail.
Performing an environment check

1. Log on to Endpoint Management Analyzer and then click Endpoint Management Environment.
2. Click Add Test Environment.
3. In the new Add Test Environment dialog box, do the following:
   a. Provide a unique name for the test that will help identify the test in the future.
   b. In FQDN, UPN login, Email or URL Invitation URL, enter the information that is used to access the server.
   c. In Instance Name, if you use a custom instance, provide that value.
   d. In Choose Platform, select either iOS or Android as the platform for testing.
   e. Expand Advanced Deployment Options and then in the Deployment Mode list, select your deployment mode. The options are:
• **Enterprise (MDM + MAM)**
• **App Management (MAM)**
• **Device Management (MDM).**

4. Click **Continue**.

5. On the **Test Options** tab, choose one or more of the following tests and then click **Continue**.

![Add Test Environment](image)

- **Secure Web Connectivity.** Provide an intranet URL. The tool tests for the reachability of the URL. This test detects if there are any connectivity issues that may potentially occur in Secure Web while trying to reach intranet URLs.

- **Secure Mail ADS.** Provide a user email ID. Endpoint Management Analyzer uses this ID to test autodiscovery of the Exchange Server in your environment.

- **ShareFile SSO.** Endpoint Management Analyzer tests if the ShareFile DNS resolution happens successfully. The tool also checks if ShareFile single sign-on (SSO) is compatible with the provided user credentials.
6. On the **User Credentials** tab, depending on your server setup, different Secure Hub user credentials fields appear, such as **Username, Username and Password**, or **Username, Password**, and **Enrollment PIN**.

7. Click **Save & Run** to start the tests.

   A progress notification appears. You can leave the progress dialog box open or close the dialog box and the tests continue to run.

   Tests that pass appear in green. Tests that fail appear as red.

8. Click the **View Report** icon to see test results.

   - To rerun the same test, click **Run Again**.
   - To download the report, click **Download Report**.
   - To select another Endpoint Management Analyzer option, click **Go To Endpoint Management Analyzer Checks**.
   - To return to the list of tests on the **Environment Lists** page, in the upper-left of the page, click **Environment Check**.

9. On the **Environment List** page, you can copy and edit tests. To do so, select a test, click **More** and then select **Duplicate and Edit**.

   A copy of the selected test is created and the **Add Test Environment** dialog box opens, allowing you to modify the new test.
Adding a schedule to environment checks

You can configure tests to run on an automatic schedule with results sent to a list of users you configure.

1. To add a schedule, do one of the following:
   a. On the Environment List page, select the environment for which you want to set up a schedule and then click Add Schedule.
   b. In a test result, click Add Schedule.

2. The Add Schedule window displays a message warning you that Endpoint Management Analyzer saves credentials for running tests on a schedule. Citrix recommends that you use an account with limited access for running scheduled tests. Click I Agree to continue.

3. Enter a Username and Password for running the test.

4. Configure a schedule for the test to run.
a. Select **Daily** or **Weekly**.

b. Select a time of day for the test to run and a time zone.

c. Use the date picker to select a date for the scheduled test to stop running or leave it blank for the test to run indefinitely.

d. Enter a list of email addresses to receive reports, separated by commas.

e. Click **Save**.

5. A clock symbol to the left of your test indicates that a schedule is configured. If you select your test, click **Edit Schedule** to change when the test runs.

   ![Edit Schedule](image)

   - You can change when the test runs.
   - You can disable the test, by clicking the switch at the top from **ON** to **OFF**.

**Performing a Citrix ADC check**

1. Log on to Citrix Endpoint Analyzer and then click **Gateway Configuration**. The **Gateway Configuration Check** page appears.
2. Upload the latest \texttt{ns.conf} file from your instance of Citrix Gateway. You can either drag the file into the upload box or click \textbf{Browse} to search and add the \texttt{ns.conf} file. For more information on how you can download the latest \texttt{ns.conf} file, see the \textbf{Support Knowledge Center}.

\textbf{Note:}

Endpoint Management Analyzer does not save the \texttt{ns.conf} file. After the check is complete, you can view and download the report.

3. Click \textbf{Run Check}.

Endpoint Management Analyzer runs two types of configuration checks.

- Essential Checks looks for components that are critical for a successful Endpoint Management deployment.
- Advanced Checks looks for components that are not critical, but are complementary to Endpoint Management deployments.

When the check is complete, the following screen appears:

4. To view recommendations on Essential and Advanced Checks for Citrix Gateway, click \textbf{View Report}.

The \textbf{Configuration Report} page appears.
The notification badge within the Configuration Report indicates the number of recommendations in the Essential Configuration check for Gateway servers configured through the Citrix ADC wizard. The badge also indicates recommendations for user-configured Gateways.

**Note:**

Citrix Gateway Analyzer supports gateway servers configured through the Citrix ADC wizard. Citrix Gateway instances always have the following title convention: ‘_XM_*name-provided-by-user-when-deploying’.

The overall status is a **Success** when the essential configuration checks have passed.

When an Essential Configuration check fails, the Recommendations table lists the **Policy Check**, **Details**, and **Results**.

When an Advanced Configuration check fails, the Recommendations table lists the **Policy**, **Details**, and **Results**. To view the full report details, click **Essential Configuration Checks** and **Advanced Configuration Checks** (or click the expand icon).

On the **Configuration Report** page, the following options are also available.

- To run another Gateway configuration check, click **Run another test**.
- To download a report of the results, click **Download report and ns.conf file bundle**.
- To view other troubleshooting and analyzing tools, click **Go to Citrix Endpoint Analyzer Checks**.
- To email the report and the ns.conf bundle, next to **Email report and ns.conf bundle**, type one or more email addresses, separated by comments. Click **Send**.

**Known issues**

The following issues are known in the XenMobile Analyzer:

- When performing the Secure Web Connectivity checks, typing multiple URLs in the text box is not supported.
The shared devices authentication feature of Secure Hub is not supported.
Secure Web tests only check the connectivity to the URLs entered and not the authentication to the corresponding sites.

REST APIs

August 21, 2018

With the Endpoint Management REST API, you can call services that are exposed through the Endpoint Management console. You can call REST services by using any REST client. The API does not require you to sign on to the Endpoint Management console to call the services.

For the complete current set of available APIs, download the Public API for REST Services PDF.

Permissions required to access the REST API

Access to the REST API requires one of the following permissions:

- Citrix Cloud administrator
- Public API access permission set as part of role-based access configuration. For information, see Configuring roles with RBAC.
- Super user permission

To invoke REST API services

You can invoke REST API services by using the REST client or CURL commands. The following examples use the Advanced REST client for Chrome.

Note:
In the following examples, change the host name and port number to match your environment.

Log in

URL: https://<host-name>:<port-number>/xenmobile/api/v1/authentication/login
Request: { "login":"administrator", "password":"password"}
Method type: POST
Content type: application/json
ActiveSync Gateway

August 21, 2018

ActiveSync is a mobile data synchronization protocol developed by Microsoft. ActiveSync synchronizes data with handheld devices and desktop (or laptop) computers.

You can configure ActiveSync Gateway rules in Endpoint Management. Based on these rules, you can allow or deny devices access to ActiveSync data. For example, if you activate the rule Missing Required Apps, Endpoint Management checks the App Access Policy for required apps and denies access to ActiveSync data if the required apps are missing. For each rule, you can choose either **Allow** or **Deny**. The default setting is **Allow**.

For more information about the App Access device policy, see [App access device policy](#).

---

**Related information**

- [Endpoint Management REST API](#)
Endpoint Management supports the following rules:

**Anonymous Devices:** Checks if a device is in anonymous mode. This check is available if Endpoint Management can't re-authenticate the user when a device attempts to reconnect.

**Failed Samsung KNOX attestation:** Checks if a device failed a query of the Samsung KNOX attestation server.

**Forbidden Apps:** Checks if a device has forbidden apps, as defined in an App Access policy.

**Implicit Allow and Deny:** This action is the default for the ActiveSync Gateway. The gateway creates a Device List of all devices that do not meet any of the other filter rule criteria and allows or denies connections based on that list. If no rule matches, the default is Implicit Allow.

**Inactive Devices:** Checks if a device is inactive as defined by the Device Inactivity Days Threshold setting in Server Properties.

**Missing Required Apps:** Checks if a device is missing required apps, as defined in an App Access policy.

**Non-suggested Apps:** Checks if a device has non-suggested apps, as defined in an App Access policy.

**Noncompliant Password:** Checks if the user password is compliant. On iOS and Android devices, Endpoint Management can determine whether the password currently on the device is compliant with the passcode policy sent to the device. For instance, on iOS, the user has 60 minutes to set a password if Endpoint Management sends a passcode policy to the device. Before the user sets the password, the passcode might be non-compliant.

**Out of Compliance Devices:** Checks whether a device is out of compliance, based on the Out of Compliance device property. That property is usually changed by the automated actions or by a 3rd party leveraging Endpoint Management APIs.

**Revoked Status:** Checks whether the device certificate was revoked. A revoked device cannot re-enroll until it is authorized again.

**Rooted Android and Jailbroken iOS Devices:** Checks whether an Android or iOS device is jailbroken.

**Unmanaged Devices:** Check whether a device is still in a managed state, under Endpoint Management control. For example, a device running in MAM mode or an un-enrolled device is not managed.

**Send Android domain users to ActiveSync Gateway:** Click **YES** to ensure that Endpoint Management sends Android device information to the ActiveSync Gateway.

**To configure the ActiveSync Gateway settings**

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Under **Server**, click **ActiveSync Gateway**. The **ActiveSync Gateway** page appears.

1. In **Activate the following rules**, select one or more rules you want to activate.

2. In **Android-only**, in **Send Android domain users to ActiveSync Gateway**, click **YES** to ensure that Endpoint Management sends Android device information to the ActiveSync Gateway.

3. Click **Save**.

**Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync**

September 13, 2018

XenMobile Mail Manager is now Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync. For more detail about the Citrix unified portfolio, see the [Citrix product guide](#).
The connector provides the functionality that extends the capabilities of Endpoint Management in the following ways:

- Dynamic Access Control for Exchange Active Sync (EAS) devices. EAS devices can be automatically allowed or blocked access to Exchange services.
- The ability for Endpoint Management to access EAS device partnership information provided by Exchange.
- The ability for Endpoint Management to perform an EAS Wipe on a mobile device.
- The ability for Endpoint Management to access information about Blackberry devices, and to perform control operations such as Wipe and ResetPassword.

To download Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync, go to the Server Components section under Endpoint Management Server on Citrix.com.

What’s new in version 10.1.7

- XenMobile Mail Manager is now Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync.
- We have deprecated the **Disable Pipelining** option in the Exchange configuration dialog box. You can achieve the same functionality by configuring multiple steps for each command in the config.xml file. [CXM-54593]

The following issues are fixed in version 10.1.7:

- In the Snapshot History window, error messages might be shown with little context. Now, error messages are prefixed with the context of where they occurred. [CXM-49157]
- The XmmGoogleAnalytics.dll did not have the corresponding file version for the release. [CXM-52518]
- To improve diagnostics, we recently changed the string format for a list of device IDs used to set a mailbox Allowed/Blocked state. A specification of too many devices, however, exceeded the maximum string size. Now, we use an internal array data structure. This structure does not have a size limit and also formats the data appropriately for diagnostic purposes. [CXM-52610]
- When device policies that are not in sync with Exchange are detected, their commands may include devices that do not belong to the relevant mailbox. Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync now ensures that commands to Exchange represent only devices that belong to their respective mailboxes. [CXM-54842]
- In some environments, a Microsoft assembly is not available. The required assembly is now explicitly installed with the application. [CXM-55439]
- If Distinguished Names for devices or mailboxes have spaces between the attribute name and the equals, and/or spaces after the equals and before the value, Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync may not properly match a device with its mailbox and vice versa. The result could be that some devices and/or mailboxes are rejected during the snapshot reconciliation. [CXM-56088]
What’s new in earlier versions

Note:
The following What’s New sections refer to Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync by its former name of XenMobile Mail Manager. The name changed as of version 10.1.7.

Update in version 10.1.6.20

An update to 10.1.6 contains the following fix in version 10.1.6.20:

- When device policies that are not in sync with Exchange are detected, their commands may include devices that do not belong to the relevant mailbox. XenMobile Mail Manager now insures that commands to Exchange represent only devices that belong to their respective mailboxes. [CXM-54842]

What’s new in version 10.1.6

XenMobile Mail Manager version 10.1.6 contains the following fixed issues and enhancements:

- The snapshot history window, at times, enters a state where the window is no longer updating. The windows refresh mechanism is improved to update more reliably. [CXM-47983]
- Two separate modes and code paths were used for partitioned and non-partitioned snapshots. Because non-partitioned snapshots are equivalent to partitioned snapshots with a configuration using a single “*” partition, the non-partitioned snapshot mode is eliminated. The default snapshot mode is now partitioned snapshots with 36 partitions (0–9, A–Z). [CXM-49093]
- In the Snapshot History window, error messages are overwritten by status messages. Now, XenMobile Mail Manager provides two separate fields so that users can view status and errors simultaneously. [CXM-51942]
- When connecting to Exchange Online (Office 365), snapshot-related queries could result in a truncated dataset. This issue may occur when XenMobile Mail Manager executes a multi-command pipelined script. The upstream command cannot pass the data quickly enough to the downstream command, which then completes the work prematurely; incomplete data occurs as a result. XenMobile Mail Manager can now mimic the pipeline itself and wait until the upstream command is done before invoking the downstream command. This change should result in all data being processed and captured. [CXM-52280]
- If a non-resolvable error occurs in a policy update command to Exchange, the same command is returned to the work queue repeatedly for a long period of time. This situation resulted in the command being sent to Exchange many times. In this version of XenMobile Mail Manager, a command that results in an error is only returned to the work queue a discrete number of times. [CXM-52633]
• If a policy update for a specific mailbox involved the allowing or blocking of all devices: The issued `Set-CASMailbox` command would fail due to the empty list being converted to an empty string instead of a `NULL`. The proper data is now sent. [CXM-53759]

• When processing a new device, Exchange can return the state as “DeviceDiscovery” for a period of time (usually 15 minutes). XenMobile Mail Manager was not specifically handling this state. XenMobile Mail Manager now handles the state. In the Monitor tab of the UI, users can filter for devices in this state. [CXM-53840]

• XenMobile Mail Manager did not check for the ability to write to the XenMobile Mail Manager database. Consequently, if permissions were restricted, the behavior could not be predicted. XenMobile Mail Manager now captures and validates required permissions from the database. XenMobile Mail Manager indicates reduced permissions when either testing the connection (message shown) or in the Database indicator (hover for message) at the bottom of the main Configure window. [CXM-54219]

• Depending on the current workload, when directed to, the XenMobile Mail Manager service may not stop promptly. Therefore, the service appears to be in an unresponsive state. Improvements allow ongoing tasks to be interrupted, resulting in a more graceful shutdown. [CXM-54282]

What’s new in version 10.1.5

XenMobile Mail Manager version 10.1.5 contains the following fixed issues:

• When Exchange is applying throttling to XenMobile Mail Manager activity, there is no indication (outside of the logs) that the throttling is occurring. With this release, a user can hover over the active snapshot and a “throttling” state appears. Additionally, while XenMobile Mail Manager is being throttled, the start of a major snapshot is prohibited until Exchange lifts the throttling embargo. [CXM-49617]

• If XenMobile Mail Manager is being throttled by Exchange during a major snapshot: It is possible that an insufficient amount of time is allowed to elapsed before executing the next attempt of a snapshot. This issue results in further throttling and a failed snapshot. XenMobile Mail Manager now waits a minimum of the time that Exchange specifies to wait between snapshot attempts. [CXM-49618]

• When diagnostics is enabled, the commands file shows `Set-CasMailbox` commands that have missing hyphens before each property name. This issue only occurs in the formatting of the diagnostics file and not the actual command to Exchange. The missing hyphen prevents a user from cutting the command and directly pasting it to a powershell prompt for testing or validation. The hyphens have been added. [CXM-52520]

• If a mailbox identity is of the form “lastname, firstname”, Exchange adds a backslash before the comma when returning data from a query. This backslash must be stripped when XenMobile Mail Manager uses the identity to query for more data. [CXM-52635]
Known limitation

XenMobile Mail Manager has a known limitation that can cause commands to Exchange to fail. To apply policy changes to Exchange, a `Set_CASMailbox` command is issued by XenMobile Mail Manager. This command can take two lists of devices: one to Allow and one to Block. The command is applied to the devices partnered with a mailbox.

These lists are limited to 256 characters each by the Microsoft API. If one of those lists exceeds the limitation, the command fails in its entirety, preventing all of the policies for those devices of the mailbox to be set. The error reported, which will appear in the XenMobile Mail Manager logs, would look like the following. The example is for the blocked list.

“Message:’Cannot bind parameter ‘ActiveSyncBlockedDeviceIDs’ to the target. Exception setting “ActiveSyncBlockedDeviceIDs”: “The length of the property is too long. The maximum length is 256 and the length of the value provided is …”

Device ID lengths can vary, but a good rule of thumb is that about 10 devices or more simultaneously Allowed or Blocked could exceed the limit. Although having that many devices associated with a specific mailbox is rare, it is a possibility. Until XenMobile Mail Manager is improved to handle such a scenario, we recommend that you limit the number of devices associated with a user and mailbox to 10 or fewer.

What’s new in version 10.1.4

XenMobile Mail Manager version 10.1.4 contains the following fixed issues:

- Due to its weakening security, TLS 1.0 is being deprecated by the PCI Council. Support for TLS 1.1 and 1.2 is added to XenMobile Mail Manager. [CXM-38573, CXM-32560]
- XenMobile Mail Manager includes a new diagnostic file. When `Enable Diagnostics` is selected in the Exchange specification, a new Snapshot History file is generated. With every snapshot attempt, a line is added to the file with the results of the snapshot. [CXM-49631]
- In the Commands diagnostic file, the list of devices allowed or blocked did not appear for the `Set-CASMailbox` command. Instead the internal class name was shown in the file for the related arguments. XenMobile Mail Manager now shows the list of deviceIDs as a comma-delimited list. [CXM-50693]
- When an attempt to acquire a connection to Exchange fails due to a bad specification: The error message is overridden by an incorrect message: “All connections in use”. More descriptive messages now appear, such as “All connections are inoperable”, “Connection pool is empty”, “All connections are throttled”, and “No available connections”. [CXM-50783]
- In some cases, Allow/Block/Wipe commands are queued up in the XenMobile Mail Manager internal cache multiple times. This issue causes a delay in the command being sent to Exchange. XenMobile Mail Manager now only queues up one instance of each command. [CXM-51524]
What’s new in version 10.1.3

- **Google Analytics support:** We want to know how you use XenMobile Mail Manager so we can focus on where we can make the product better.
- **Setting for enabling diagnostics:** An Enable Diagnostic check box appears in the Configure console on the Configuration dialog box.

Fixed issues in version 10.1.3

- In the Snapshot History window, tooltips that show the current state of the snapshot do not reflect the actual state. [CXM-5570]
  Occasionally, XenMobile Mail Manager cannot write to the Commands diagnostics file. When this occurs, the command history is not logged in its entirety. [CXM-49217]
- When an error occurs with a connection, the connection may not be marked as “errored”. As a result, a subsequent command may attempt to use the connection and cause another error. [CXM-49495]
- When throttling from the Exchange Server occurs, an exception could be thrown in the Check Health routine. As a result, connections that have experienced an error or have expired might not be purged. Also, XenMobile Mail Manager might not create connections until the throttling time expires. [CXM-49794].
• When the max session count for Exchange is exceeded, XenMobile Mail Manager reports the error “Device Capture Failed,” which is not an accurate message. Instead, the message should indicate that the two sessions that XenMobile Mail Manager normally uses for Exchange communication are in use. [CXM-49994]

What’s new in version 10.1.2

• **Improved connection to Exchange**: XenMobile Mail Manager uses PowerShell sessions to communicate with Exchange. A PowerShell session, especially when dealing with Office 365, can become unstable after awhile, blocking subsequent commands from succeeding. XenMobile Mail Manager can now set an expiration period for connections. When the connection reaches its expiration time, XenMobile Mail Manager gracefully shuts down the PowerShell session and creates a session. By doing so, the PowerShell session is less likely to become unstable, significantly reducing the chance of a snapshot failure.

• **Improved snapshot workflow**: Major snapshots are a time-consuming and process-intensive operation. If an error occurs during a snapshot, XenMobile Mail Manager now attempts multiple times (up to three) to complete a snapshot. Subsequent attempts do not start from the beginning. XenMobile Mail Manager continues from where it left off. This enhancement improves the success rate of snapshots in general by allowing transient errors to pass while a snapshot is still in progress.

• **Improved diagnostics**: Troubleshooting snapshot operations are now easier with three new diagnostics files optionally generated during a snapshot. These files help identify PowerShell command issues, mailboxes with missing information, and devices that cannot be related to a mailbox. An admin can use these files to identify data that may not be correct in Exchange.

• **Improved memory usage**: XenMobile Mail Manager is now more efficient in its use of memory. Admins can schedule XenMobile Mail Manager to restart automatically to provide a clean slate to the system.

• **Microsoft .NET Framework 4.6 prerequisite**: The prerequisite for Microsoft .NET Framework is now version 4.6.

Fixed issues

• Prompt for credentials error: Office 365 session instability often caused this error. The Improved Connection to Exchange enhancement addresses the problem. (XMHELP-293, XMHELP-311, XMHELP-801)

• Mailbox and device count inaccuracies: XenMobile Mail Manager has an improved Mailbox-to-Device association algorithm. The Improved Diagnostics feature helps in the identification of mailboxes and devices that XenMobile Mail Manager deems are not within its realm of responsibility. (XMHELP-623)
• Allow/Block/Wipe commands not being recognized: A bug was fixed where sometimes, XenMobile Mail Manager allow/block/wipe commands are not recognized. (XMHELP-489)
• Memory management: Better memory management and mitigation. (XMHELP-419)

Architecture

The following diagram shows the main components of Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync. For a detailed reference architecture diagram, see Architecture.

The three main components are:

• **Exchange ActiveSync Access Control Management:** Communicates with Endpoint Management to retrieve an Exchange ActiveSync policy from Endpoint Management, and merges this policy with any locally defined policy to determine the Exchange ActiveSync devices that should be allowed or denied access to Exchange. Local policy allows extending the policy rules to allow access control by Active Directory Group, User, Device Type, or Device User Agent (generally the mobile platform version).

• **Remote PowerShell Management:** Responsible for scheduling and invoking remote PowerShell commands to enact the policy compiled by Exchange ActiveSync Access Control Management. Periodically takes a snapshot of the Exchange ActiveSync database to detect new or changed Exchange ActiveSync devices.

• **Mobile Service Provider:** Provides a web service interface so that Endpoint Management can query Exchange ActiveSync, query Blackberry devices, and issue control operations such as
Wipe against ActiveSync and Blackberry devices.

**System requirements and prerequisites**

The following minimum system requirements are required to use Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync:

- Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2008 R2 (must be an English-based server)
- Microsoft .NET Framework 4.6
- Blackberry Enterprise Service, version 5 (optional)

Minimum supported versions of Microsoft Exchange Server:

- Microsoft Office 365
- Exchange Server 2016
- Exchange Server 2013
- Exchange Server 2010 SP2

**Prerequisites:**

- Windows Management Framework must be installed.
  - PowerShell V5, V4, and V3
- TCP port 80 must be open between the computer running the connector for Exchange ActiveSync and the remote Exchange Server.

**Device email clients:** Not all email clients consistently return the same ActiveSync ID for a device. Because the connector for Exchange ActiveSync expects a unique ActiveSync ID for each device, only email clients that consistently generate the same, unique ActiveSync ID for each device are supported. These email clients have been tested by Citrix and performed without errors:

- HTC native email client
- Samsung native email client
- iOS native email client
- TouchDown for Smartphones

**Exchange:** The requirements for on-premises computer running Exchange are as follows:

The credentials specified in the Exchange Configuration UI must be able to connect to the Exchange Server and be given full access to execute the following Exchange-specific PowerShell cmdlets:

- **For Exchange Server 2010 SP2:**
  - Get-CASMailbox
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Set-CASMailbox
- Get-Mailbox
- Get-ActiveSyncDevice
- Get-ActiveSyncDeviceStatistics
- Clear-ActiveSyncDevice
- Get-ExchangeServer
- Get-ManagementRole
- Get-ManagementRoleAssignment

- **For Exchange Server 2013 and Exchange Server 2016:**
  - Get-CASMailbox
  - Set-CASMailbox
  - Get-Mailbox
  - Get-MobileDevice
  - Get-MobileDeviceStatistics
  - Clear-MobileDevice
  - Get-ExchangeServer
  - Get-ManagementRole
  - Get-ManagementRoleAssignment

- If the connector for Exchange ActiveSync is configured to view the entire forest, permission must have been granted to run: `Set-AdServerSettings -ViewEntireForest $true`
- The supplied credentials must have been granted the right to connect to the Exchange Server via the remote Shell. By default, the user who installed Exchange has this right.
- Per the Microsoft TechNet article, *about_Remote_Requirements*, to establish a remote connection and run remote commands, the credentials must correspond to a user who is an administrator on the remote machine. You can use `Set-PSSessionConfiguration` to eliminate the administrative requirement, but discussion of that command is beyond the scope of this document. For more information, see this blog post, *You Don’t Have to Be An Administrator to Run Remote PowerShell Commands*.
- The Exchange Server must be configured to support remote PowerShell requests via HTTP. Typically, an administrator running the following PowerShell command on the Exchange Server is all that is required: `WinRM QuickConfig`.
- Exchange has many throttling policies. One of the policies controls how many concurrent PowerShell connections are allowed per user. The default number of simultaneous connections allowed for a user is 18 on Exchange 2010. When the connection limit is reached, the connector for Exchange ActiveSync is not able to connect to Exchange Server. There are ways to change the maximum allowed simultaneous connections via PowerShell that are beyond the scope of this documentation. If interested, investigate Exchange throttling policies as related to remote management with PowerShell.
Requirements for Office 365 Exchange

- **Permissions:** The credentials specified in the Exchange Configuration UI must be able to connect to Office 365 and be given full access to execute the following Exchange-specific PowerShell cmdlets:
  - Get-CASMailbox
  - Set-CASMailbox
  - Get-Mailbox
  - Get-MobileDevice
  - Get-MobileDeviceStatistics
  - Get-Mailbox
  - Get-ExchangeServer
  - Get-ManagementRole
  - Get-ManagementRoleAssignment

- **Privileges:** The supplied credentials must have been granted the right to connect to the Office 365 server via the remote Shell. By default, Office 365 online administrator has the requisite privileges.

- **Throttling policies:** Exchange has many throttling policies. One of the policies controls how many concurrent PowerShell connections are allowed per user. The default number of simultaneous connections allowed for a user is three on Office 365. When the connection limit is reached, the connector for Exchange ActiveSync is not able to connect to Exchange Server. There are ways to change the maximum allowed simultaneous connections via PowerShell that are beyond the scope of this documentation. If interested, investigate Exchange throttling policies as related to remote management with PowerShell.

Install and configure

1. Click the XmmSetup.msi file and then follow the prompts in the installer to install Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync.
2. Leave **Launch the Configure utility** selected in the last screen of the setup wizard. Or, from the **Start** menu, open the connector for Exchange ActiveSync.
3. Configure the following database properties:

   - Select the **Configure > Database** tab.
   - Enter the name of the SQL Server (defaults to localhost).
   - Keep the database as the default **CitrixXmm**.

4. Select one of the following authentication modes used for SQL:

   - **SQL**: Enter the user name and password of a valid SQL user.
   - **Windows Integrated**: If you select this option, the logon credentials of the XenMobile Mail Manager Service must be changed to a Windows account that has permissions to access the SQL Server. To do this, open **Control Panel > Administrative Tools > Services**, right-click the XenMobile Mail Manager Service entry and then click the **Log On** tab.

      If Windows Integrated is also chosen for the BlackBerry database connection, the Windows account specified here must also be given access to the BlackBerry database.

5. Click **Test Connectivity** to check that a connection can be made to the SQL Server and then click **Save**.

6. A message prompts you to restart the service. Click **Yes**.
7. Configure one or more Exchange Servers:

- If managing a single Exchange environment, specify a single server only. If managing multiple Exchange environments, specify a single Exchange Server for each Exchange environment.
- Click the **Configure > Exchange** tab and then click **Add**.

8. Select the type of Exchange Server environment: **On Premise** or **Office 365**.

- If you select **On Premise**, enter the name of the Exchange Server to use for Remote PowerShell commands.
- Enter the **user name** of a Windows identity that has appropriate rights on the Exchange Server as specified within the Requirements section and then enter the **Password** for the user.
- Select the schedule for running Major snapshots. A major snapshot detects every
Exchange ActiveSync partnership.

- Select the schedule for running Minor snapshots. A minor snapshot detects newly created Exchange ActiveSync partnerships.

- Select the Snapshot Type: **Deep** or **Shallow**. Shallow snapshots are typically much faster and are sufficient to perform all the Exchange ActiveSync Access Control functions of the connector for Exchange ActiveSync. Deep snapshots may take longer and are only needed if the Mobile Service Provider is enabled for ActiveSync. This option allows Endpoint Management to query for unmanaged devices.

- Select the Default Access: **Allow**, **Block**, or **Unchanged**. This setting controls how all devices other than those devices identified by explicit Endpoint Management or Local rules are treated. If you select **Allow**, ActiveSync access to all such devices is allowed. If you select **Block**, access is denied. If you select **Unchanged**, no change is made.

- Select the ActiveSync Command Mode: **PowerShell** or **Simulation**.

  - In **PowerShell** mode, the connector for Exchange ActiveSync issues PowerShell commands to enact the desired access control. In Simulation mode, the connector for Exchange ActiveSync does not issue PowerShell commands, but logs the intended command and intended outcomes to the database. In Simulation mode, the user can then use the **Monitor** tab to see what would have happened if PowerShell mode was enabled.

  - In **Connection Expiration**, set the hours and minutes for the life of a connection. When a connection reaches the age specified, the connection is marked as expired, so that the connection is never used again. When the expired connection is no longer used, the connector for Exchange ActiveSync gracefully shuts down the connection. When a connection is needed again, a new connection is initialized if none is available. If none is specified, the default of 30 minutes is used.

- Select **View Entire Forest** to configure the connector for Exchange ActiveSync to view the entire Active Directory forest in the Exchange environment.

- Select the authentication protocol: **Kerberos** or **Basic**. The connector for Exchange ActiveSync supports Basic authentication for on-premises deployments. This enables the connector to be used when the connector server is not a member of the domain in which the Exchange server resides.

- Click **Test Connectivity** to check that a connection can be made to the Exchange Server and then click **Save**.

- A message prompts you to restart the service. Click **Yes**.

9. Configure the access rules: Select the **Configure > Access Rules** tab, click the **Citrix Endpoint Management Rules** tab and then click **Add**.
10. On the **Endpoint Management server Service Properties** page, modify the URL string to point to the Endpoint Management server. For example, if the instance name is **zdm**, enter `https://<XdmHostName>/zdm/services/MagConfigService`. In the example, replace **XdmHostName** with the IP or DNS address of the Endpoint Management server.

- Enter an authorized user of the server.
- Enter the password of the user.
• Keep the default values for the **Baseline Interval**, **Delta Interval**, and **Timeout** values.
• Click **Test Connectivity** to check the connection to the server and then click **OK**.

If the **Disabled** check box is selected, the Endpoint Management Mail Service doesn’t collect policies from Endpoint Management.

11. Click the **Local Rules** tab.

- You can add local rules based on ActiveSync Device ID, Device Type, AD Group, User, or device UserAgent. In the list, select the appropriate type.
- Enter text or text fragments in the text box. Optionally, click the query button to view the entities that match the fragment.

For all types other than Group, the system relies on the devices that have been found in a snapshot. Therefore, if you are just starting and haven’t completed a snapshot, no entities are available.

- Select a text value and then click **Allow** or **Deny** to add it to the **Rule List** pane on the right side. You can change the order of rules or remove them using the buttons to the right of the **Rule List** pane. The order is important because, for a given user and device, rules are evaluated in the order shown and a match on a higher rule (nearer the top) causes subsequent rules to have no effect. For example, if you have a rule allowing all iPad devices and a subsequent rule blocking the user Matt, Matt’s iPad will still be allowed because the iPad rule has a higher effective priority than the Matt rule.
To perform an analysis of the rules within the rules list to find any potential overrides, conflicts, or supplemental constructs, click Analyze and then click Save.

12. If you want to construct local rules that operate on Active Directory Groups, click Configure LDAP and then configure the LDAP connection properties.

13. To configure the Mobile Service Provider, click the Configure > MSP tab.

The Mobile Service Provider is optional. That setting is necessary only if Endpoint Management is also configured to use the Mobile Service Provider interface to query unmanaged devices.

a. Set the Service Transport type as HTTP or HTTPS for the Mobile Service Provider service.

b. Set the Service port (typically 80 or 443) for the Mobile Service Provider service. If you use port 443, the port requires an SSL certificate bound to it in IIS.

c. Set the Authorization Group or User. This sets the user or set of users who will be able to connect to the Mobile Service Provider service from Endpoint Management.

d. Set whether ActiveSync queries are enabled or not. If ActiveSync queries are enabled for the Endpoint Management server, the Snapshot type for one or more Exchange Servers must be set to Deep. That setting might have significant performance costs for taking snapshots.

e. By default, ActiveSync devices that match the regular expression Secure Mail.* will not be sent to Endpoint Management. To change this behavior, alter the Filter ActiveSync field as necessary. Blank means that all devices are forwarded to Endpoint Management.

f. Click Save.

14. Optionally, configure one or more instances of BlackBerry Enterprise Server (BES): Click Add and then enter the server name of the BES SQL Server.
a. Enter the database name of the BES management database.

b. Select the Authentication mode. If you select Windows Integrated authentication, the user account of the connector for Exchange ActiveSync service is the account that is used to connect to the BES SQL Server. If you also choose Windows Integrated for the connector database connection, the Windows account specified here must also be given access to the connector database.

c. If you select SQL authentication, enter the username and password.

d. Set the Sync Schedule. This is the schedule used to connect to the BES SQL Server and checks for any device updates.

e. Click Test Connectivity to check connectivity to the SQL Server. If you select Windows Integrated, this test uses the current logged on user and not the connector service user and therefore does not accurately test SQL authentication.

f. To support remote Wipe and ResetPassword of BlackBerry devices from Endpoint Management, select the Enabled check box.
g. Enter the BES fully qualified domain name (FQDN).

h. Enter the BES port used for the admin web service.

i. Enter the fully qualified user and password required by the BES service.

j. Click **Test Connectivity** to test the connection to the BES and then click **Save**.

**Enforce email policies with ActiveSync IDs**

Your corporate email policy may dictate that certain devices are not approved for corporate email use. To comply with this policy, you want to ensure that employees cannot access corporate email from such devices. Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync and Endpoint Management work together to enforce such an email policy. Endpoint Management sets the policy for corporate email access. When an unapproved device enrolls with Endpoint Management, the connector for Exchange ActiveSync enforces the policy.

The email client on a device advertises itself to Exchange Server (or Office 365) using the device ID, also known as the ActiveSync ID, which is used to identify the device. Secure Hub obtains a similar identifier and sends the identifier to Endpoint Management when the device is enrolled. By comparing the two device IDs, the connector for Exchange ActiveSync can determine whether a specific device should have corporate email access. The following figure illustrates this concept:
If Endpoint Management sends the connector for Exchange ActiveSync an ActiveSync ID that is different from the ID the device publishes to Exchange, the connector cannot indicate to Exchange what to do with the device.

Matching ActiveSync IDs works reliably on most platforms. However, Citrix has found that on some Android implementations, the ActiveSync ID from the device is different from the ID that the mail client advertises to Exchange. To mitigate this problem, you can do the following:

- On the Samsung SAFE platform, push the device ActiveSync configuration from Endpoint Management.
- On all other Android platforms, push both the TouchDown app and the TouchDown ActiveSync configuration from Endpoint Management.

This does not, however, prevent an employee from installing an email client other than TouchDown on an Android device. To guarantee that your corporate email access policy is enforced properly, you can adopt a defensive security stance and configure Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync to block emails by setting the static policy to Deny by default. This means that if an employee does configure an email client on an Android device other than TouchDown, and if ActiveSync ID detection does not work properly, the employee is denied corporate email access.

**Access control rules**

Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync provides a rule-based approach for dynamically configuring access control for Exchange ActiveSync devices. A connector access control rule consists of two parts: a matching expression and a desired access state (Allow or Block). A rule may be evaluated against a given Exchange ActiveSync device to determine if the rule applies to, or matches the device. There are multiple kinds of matching expressions; for example, a rule may match all devices of a given Device Type, or a specific Exchange ActiveSync device ID, or all devices of a specific user, and so on.

At any point during the adding, removing, and rearranging of the rules in the rule list, clicking the **Cancel** button reverts the rules list back to the state at which it was when first opened. Unless you click **Save**, any changes made to this window are lost if you close the Configure tool.

Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync has three types of rules: local rules, Endpoint Management server rules (also known as XDM rules), and the default access rule.

**Local rules:** Local rules have the highest priority: If a device is matched by a local rule, rule evaluation stops. Neither Endpoint Management server rules nor the default access rule will be consulted. Local rules are configured locally to the connector for Exchange ActiveSync via the **Configure > Access Rules > Local Rules** tab. Support matching is based upon a user’s membership within a given Active Directory group. Support matching is based on regular expressions for the following fields:

- Active Sync Device ID
• ActiveSync Device Type
• User Principal Name (UPN)
• ActiveSync User Agent (typically the device platform or email client)

As long as a major snapshot has completed and found devices, you should be able to add either a normal or regular expression rule. If a major snapshot has not completed, you can only add regular expression rules.

Endpoint Management server rules: Endpoint Management server rules are references to an external Endpoint Management server that provides rules about managed devices. The Endpoint Management server can be configured with its own high-level rules that identify the devices to be allowed or blocked based on properties known to Endpoint Management, such as whether the device is jailbroken or whether the device contains forbidden apps. Endpoint Management evaluates the high-level rules and produces a set of allowed or blocked ActiveSync Device IDs, which are then delivered to XenMobile Mail Manager.

Default access rule: The default access rule is unique in that it can potentially match every device and is always evaluated last. This rule is the catch-all rule, which means that if a given device does not match a local or Endpoint Management server rule, the desired access state of the device is determined by the desired access state of the default access rule.

• Default Access – Allow: Any device that is not matched by either a local or Endpoint Management server rule will be allowed.
• Default Access – Block: Any device that is not matched by either a local or Endpoint Management server rule will be blocked.
• Default Access - Unchanged: Any device that is not matched by either a local or Endpoint Management server rule will not have its access state modified in any way by the connector for Exchange ActiveSync. If a device has been placed into Quarantine mode by Exchange, no action is taken; for example, the only way to remove a device from Quarantine mode is to have an explicitly Local or XDM rule override the quarantine.

About Rule Evaluations

For each device that Exchange reports to the connector for Exchange ActiveSync, the rules are evaluated in sequence, from highest to lowest priority as follows:

• Local rules
• Endpoint Management server rules
• Default access rule

When a match is found, evaluation stops. For example, if a local rule matches a given device, the device will not be evaluated against any of the Endpoint Management server rules or the default access rule.
This holds true within a given rule type as well. For example, if there's more than a single match for a given device in the local rule list, when the first match is encountered, evaluation stops.

The connector for Exchange ActiveSync reevaluates the currently defined set of rules when device properties change, or when devices are added or removed, or when the rules themselves change. Major snapshots pick up device property changes and removals at configurable intervals. Minor Snapshots pick up new devices at configurable intervals.

Exchange ActiveSync has rules governing access as well. It is important to understand how these rules work in the context of the connector for Exchange ActiveSync. Exchange may be configured with three levels of rules: personal exemptions, device rules, and organization settings. The connector for Exchange ActiveSync automates access control by programmatically issuing Remote PowerShell requests to affect the personal exemptions lists. These are lists of allowed or blocked Exchange ActiveSync device IDs associated with a given mailbox. When deployed, the connector for Exchange ActiveSync effectively takes over management of the exemption lists capability within Exchange. For details, see this Microsoft article.

Analyzing is particularly useful in situations in which multiple rules for the same field have been defined. You can troubleshoot the relationships between rules. You perform analysis from the perspective of rule fields; for example, rules are analyzed in groups based on the field that is being matched, such as ActiveSync device ID, ActiveSync device type, User, User Agent, and so on.

Rule terminology

- **Overriding rule**: An override occurs when more than a single rule could apply to the same device. Because rules are evaluated by priority in the list, the later rule instance(s) which might apply might never be evaluated.

- **Conflicting rule**: A conflict occurs when more than a single rule could apply to the same device but the access (Allow/Block) does not match. If the conflicting rules are not regular expression rules, a conflict always implicitly connotes an override.

- **Supplemental rule**: A supplement occurs when more than one rule is a regular expression rule and hence there might be a need to ensure that the two (or more) regular expressions can either be combined into a single regular expression rule, or are not duplicating functionality. A supplementary rule may also conflict in its access (Allow/Block).

- **Primary rule**: The primary rule is the rule that has been clicked within the dialog box. The rule is indicated visually by a solid border line that surrounds it. The rule will also have one or two green arrows pointing up or down. If an arrow points up, the arrow indicates that there are ancillary rules that precede the primary rule. If an arrow points down, this indicates that there are ancillary rules that come after the primary rule. Only a single primary rule can be active at any time.

- **Ancillary rule**: An ancillary rule is related in some way to the primary rule either through over-
ride, conflict, or a supplementary relationship. The rules are indicated visually by a dashed border that surrounds them. For each primary rule, there can be one to many ancillary rules. When clicking on any underlined entry, the ancillary rule or rules that are highlighted are always from the perspective of the primary rule. For example, the ancillary rule is overridden by the primary rule, and/or the ancillary rule will conflict in its access with the primary rule, and/or the ancillary rule will supplement the primary rule.

**How types of rules appear in the Rule Analysis dialog box**

When there are no conflicts, overrides, or supplements, the Rule Analysis dialog box has no underlined entries. Clicking any of the items has no impact; for example, normal selected item visuals occur.

The Rule Analysis window has a check box which, when selected, displays only those rules which are conflicts, overrides, redundancies, or supplements.

![Rule Analysis Dialog Box](image)

When an override occurs, at least two rules will be underlined: the primary rule and the ancillary rule or rules. At least one ancillary rule appears in a lighter font to indicate that the rule has been overridden by a higher priority rule. You can click the overridden rule to find out which rule or rules have overridden the rule. Any time an overridden rule has been highlighted either as a result of the rule being the primary or ancillary rule, a black circle appears next to it as a further visual indication that the rule is inactive. For example, before clicking the rule, the dialog box appears as follows:
When you click the highest-priority rule, the dialog box appears as follows:

In this example, the regular expression rule `WorkMail.*` is the primary rule (indicated by the solid border) and the normal rule `workmailc633313818` is an ancillary rule (indicated by the dashed border). The black dot next to the ancillary rule is a visual cue that further indicates that the rule is inactive (will never be evaluated) due to the higher-priority regular expression rule that precedes it. After clicking the overridden rule, the dialog box appears as follows:
In the preceding example, the regular expression rule WorkMail.* is the ancillary rule (indicated by the dashed border) and the normal rule workmailc633313818 is a primary rule (indicated by the solid border). For this simple example, there’s not much difference. For a more complicated example, see the complex expression example later in this topic. In a scenario with many rules defined, clicking the overridden rule would quickly identify which rule or rules had overridden it.

When a conflict occurs, at least two rules will be underlined, the primary rule and the ancillary rule or rules. The rules in conflict are indicated by a red dot. Rules that only conflict with one another are only possible with two or more regular expression rules defined. In all other conflict scenarios, there will not only be a conflict, but an override at play. Prior to clicking either of the rules in a simple example, the dialog box appears as follows:

By inspecting the two regular expression rules, it’s evident that the first rule allows all devices with a device ID that contains “App” and that the second rule denies all devices with a device ID that contains “Appl”. In addition, even though the second rule denies all devices with a device ID that contains “Appl”, no devices with that match criteria will ever be denied because of the higher precedence of
the allow rule. After clicking the first rule, the dialog box appears as follows:

In the preceding scenario, both the primary rule (regular expression rule `App.*`) and the ancillary rule (regular expression rule `App1.*`) are both highlighted in yellow. This is simply a visual warning to alert you to the fact that you have applied more than a single regular expression rule to a single matchable field, which could mean a redundancy issue or something more serious.

In a scenario with both a conflict and override, both the primary rule (regular expression rule `App.*`) and the ancillary rule (regular expression rule `App1.*`) are highlighted in yellow. This is simply a visual warning to alert you to the fact that you have applied more than a single regular expression rule to a single matchable field, which could mean a redundancy issue or something more serious.

It is easy to see in the preceding example that the first rule (regular expression rule `SAMSUNG.*`) not only overrides the next rule (normal rule `SAMSUNG-SM-G900A/101.40402`), but that the two rules differ in their access (primary specifies Allow, ancillary specifies Block). The second rule (normal rule `SAMSUNG-SM-G900A/101.40402`) is displayed in lighter text to indicate that it has been overridden.
and is therefore inactive.

After clicking the regular expression rule, the dialog box appears as follows:

The primary rule (regular expression rule `SAMSUNG.*`) is followed by a red dot to indicate that its access state conflicts with one or more ancillary rules. The ancillary rule (normal rule `SAMSUNG-SM-G900A/101.40402`) is followed by a red dot to indicate that its access state conflicts with the primary rule. That rule is also followed by a black dot to indicate that it is overridden and therefore inactive.

At least two rules will be underlined, the primary rule and the ancillary rule or rules. Rules that only supplement one another will only involve regular expression rules. When rules supplement one another, they are indicated with a yellow overlay. Prior to clicking either of the rules, in a simple example, the dialog box appears as follows:

Visual inspection easily reveals that both rules are regular expression rules which have both been applied to the ActiveSync device ID field in Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync. After clicking the first rule, the dialog box looks as follows:
The primary rule (regular expression rule `WorkMail.*`) is highlighted with a yellow overlay to indicate that there exists at least one more ancillary rule which is a regular expression. The ancillary rule (regular expression rule `SAMSUNG.*`) is highlighted with a yellow overlay to indicate that both it and the primary rule are regular expression rules being applied to the same field within the connector for Exchange ActiveSync. In this case, that field is the ActiveSync device ID. The regular expressions may or may not overlap. It is up to you to decide if your regular expressions are properly crafted.

**Example of a complex expression**

Many potential overrides, conflicts, or supplements can occur, making it impossible to give an example of all possible scenarios. The following example discusses what not to do, while also serving to illustrate the full power of the rule analysis visual construct. Most of the items are underlined in the following figure. Many of the items render in a lighter font, which indicates that the rule in question has been overridden by a higher priority rule in some manner. A number of regular expression rules are included in the list as well, as indicated by the icon.
How to Analyze an Override

To see which rule or rules have overridden a particular rule, you click the rule.

**Example 1:** This example examines why `zentrain01@zenprise.com` has been overridden.
The primary rule (AD-Group rule zenprise/TRAINING/ZenTraining B, of which zentrain01@zenprise.com is a member) has the following characteristics:

- Is highlighted in blue and has a solid border.
- Has an upwards pointing green arrow (to indicate that the ancillary rule or rules are all to be found above it).
- Is followed by both a red circle and black circle to indicate respectively that one or more ancillary rule conflicts with its access and that the primary rule has been overridden and is hence inactive.

When you scroll up, you see the following:
In this case, there are two ancillary rules that override the primary rule: the regular expression rule `zen.*` and the normal rule `zentrain01@zenprise.com` (of `zenprise/TRAINING/ZenTraining A`). In the case of the latter ancillary rule, what has occurred is that the Active Directory Group rule `ZenTraining A` contains the user `zentrain01@zenprise.com`, and the Active Directory Group rule `ZenTraining B` also contains the user `zentrain01@zenprise.com`. Because the ancillary rule has a higher precedence than the primary rule, however, the primary rule has been overridden. The primary rule's access is Allow, and because both of the ancillary rule's access is Block, all are followed with a red circle to further indicate an access conflict.

**Example 2:** This example shows why the device with an ActiveSync device ID of 069026593E0C4AEAB8DE7DD589ACED33 has been overridden:
The primary rule (normal device ID rule 069026593E0C4AEAB8DE7DD589ACED33) has the following characteristics:

- Is highlighted in blue and has a solid border.
- Has an upwards pointing green arrow (to indicate that the ancillary rule is to be found above it).
- Is followed by a black circle to indicate an ancillary rule has overridden the primary rule and is hence inactive.

In this case, a single ancillary rule overrides the primary rule: The regular expression ActiveSync device ID rule is 3E.* Because the regular expression 3E.* would match 069026593E0C4AEAB8DE7DD589ACED33, the primary rule will never be evaluated.

How to analyze a supplement and conflict

In this case, the primary rule is the regular expression ActiveSync device type rule touch.* The characteristics are as follows:
• Is indicated by a solid border with a yellow overlay as a warning that there is more than a single regular expression rule operating against a particular rule field, in this case ActiveSync device type.
• Two arrows are pointing up and down respectively, indicating that there is at least one ancillary rule with higher priority and at least one ancillary rule with lower priority.
• The red circle next to it indicates that at least one ancillary rule has its access set to Allow which conflicts with the primary rule's access of Block.
• There are two ancillary rules: the regular expression ActiveSync device type rule SAM.* and the regular expression ActiveSync device type rule Andro.*.
• Both of the ancillary rules are bordered with dashes to indicate that they are ancillary.
• Both of the ancillary rules are overlaid with yellow to indicate that they are also applied to the rule field of ActiveSync device type.
• You should ensure in such scenarios that their regular expression rules are not redundant.

How to further analyze the rules

This example explores how rule relationships are always from the perspective of the primary rule. The preceding example showed how a click the regular expression rule applied to the rule field of device type with a value of touch.*. Clicking the ancillary rule Andro.* shows a different set of ancillary rules highlighted.
The example shows an overridden rule that is included in the rule relationship. This rule is the normal ActiveSync device type rule `Android`, which is overridden (indicated by the lightened font and the black circle next to it) and also conflicts in its access with the primary rule regular expression `ActiveSync device type rule `Android`.*`. That rule was formerly an ancillary rule prior to being clicked. In the preceding example, the normal ActiveSync device type rule `Android`, was not displayed as an ancillary rule because, from the perspective of the then primary rule (the regular expression `ActiveSync device type rule `touch`.*`), it was not related to it.

**To configure a normal expression local rule**

1. Click the **Access Rules** tab.
2. In the **Device ID** list, select the field for which you want to create a Local Rule.

3. Click the magnifying glass icon to display all of the unique matches for the chosen field. In this example, the field **Device Type** has been chosen and the choices are shown below in the list box.
4. Click one of the items in the results list box and then click one of the following options:

- **Allow** means that Exchange will be configured to allow ActiveSync traffic for all matching devices.
- **Deny** means that Exchange will be configured to deny ActiveSync traffic for all matching devices.

In this example, all devices that have a device type of TouchDown are denied access.
To add a regular expression

Regular expression local rules can be distinguished by the icon which appears next to them - . To add a regular expression rule, you can either build a regular expression rule from an existing value from the results list for a given field (as long as a major snapshot has completed), or you can simply type in the regular expression that you want.

To build a regular expression from an existing field value

1. Click the Access Rules tab.
2. In the **Device ID** list, select the field for which you want to create a regular expression Local Rule.

3. Click the magnifying glass icon to display all of the unique matches for the chosen field. In this example, the field **Device Type** has been chosen and the choices are shown below in the list box.
4. Click one of the items in the results list. In this example, **SAMSUNGSPHL720** has been selected and appears in the text box adjacent to **Device Type**.
5. To allow all device types that have “Samsung” in their device type value, add a regular expression rule by following these steps:

   a) Click within the selected item text box.
   b) Change the text from SAMSUNGPHL720 to SAMSUNG.*.
   c) Ensure that the regular expression check box is selected.
   d) Click Allow.

To build an access rule

1. Click the Local Rules tab.
2. To enter the regular expression, you need to make use of both the Device ID list and the selected item text box.
3. Select the field you want to match against. This example uses Device Type.

4. Type in the regular expression. This example uses `samsung.*`

5. Ensure that the regular expression check box is selected and then click Allow or Deny. In this example, the choice is Allow. The final result is as follows:
To find devices

By selecting the regular expression check box, you can run searches for specific devices that match the given expression. This feature is only available if a major snapshot has successfully completed. You can use this feature even if there is no plan to use regular expression rules. For example, assume that you want to find all devices that have the text “workmail” in their ActiveSync device ID. To do so, follow this procedure.

1. Click the Access Rules tab.
2. Ensure that the device match field selector is set to Device ID (the default).
3. Click within the selected item text box (as shown in blue in the preceding figure) and then type workmail.*.

4. Ensure the regular expression check box is selected and then click the magnifying glass icon to display matches as shown in the following figure.
To add an individual user, device, or device type to a static rule

You can add static rules based on user, device ID, or device type on the ActiveSync Devices tab.

1. Click the **ActiveSync Devices** tab.
2. In the list, right-click a user, device, or device type and select whether to allow or deny your selection.

The following image shows the Allow/Deny option when user1 is selected.
Device monitoring

The Monitor tab in Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync lets you browse the Exchange ActiveSync and BlackBerry devices that have been detected and the history of automated PowerShell commands that have been issued. The Monitor tab has the following three tabs:

- **ActiveSync Devices:**
  - You can export the displayed ActiveSync device partnerships by clicking the Export button.
  - You can add Local (static) rules by right-clicking the User, Device ID, or Type columns and selecting the appropriate allow or block rule type.
  - To collapse an expanded row, Ctrl-click the expanded row.

- **Blackberry Devices**
- **Automation History**

The Configure tab shows the history of all snapshots. Snapshot history shows when the snapshot took place, how long it took, how many devices were detected and any errors that occurred:

- On the Exchange tab, click the Info icon for the desired Exchange Server.
- Under the MSP tab, click the Info icon for the desired BlackBerry Server.
Troubleshooting and diagnostics

XEndpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync logs errors and other operational information to its log file: Install Folder\log\XmmWindowsService.log. The connector for Exchange ActiveSync also logs significant events to the Windows Event Log.

Common errors

The following list includes common errors:

- The connector for Exchange ActiveSync service doesn’t start
  
  Check the log file and the Windows Event Log for errors. Typical causes are as follows:
  
  - The connector for Exchange ActiveSync service cannot access the SQL Server. This may be caused by these issues:
    - The SQL Server service is not running.
    - Authentication failure.
    
    If Windows Integrated authentication is configured, the user account of the connector for Exchange ActiveSync service must be an allowed SQL logon. The account of the connector for Exchange ActiveSync service defaults to Local System, but may be changed to any account that has local administrator privileges. If SQL authentication is configured, the SQL logon must be properly configured in SQL.
  
  - The port configured for the Mobile Service Provider (MSP) is not available. A listening port must be selected that is not used by another process on the system.

- Endpoint Management cannot connect to the MSP
  
  Check that the MSP service port and transport is properly configured in the Configure > MSP tab of the connector for Exchange ActiveSync console. Check that the Authorization Group or User is set properly.

  If HTTPS is configured, a valid SSL server certificate must be installed. If IIS is installed, IIS Manager can be used to install the certificate. If IIS is not installed, see https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms733791.aspx for details on installing certificates.

  The connector for Exchange ActiveSync contains a utility program to test connectivity to the MSP service. Run the InstallFolder\MspTestServiceClient.exe program and set the URL and credentials to a URL and credentials that will be configured in the Endpoint Management and then click Test Connectivity. This simulates the web service requests that Endpoint Management issues. If HTTPS is configured, you must specify the actual host name of the server (the name specified in the SSL certificate).
When using **Test Connectivity**, be sure to have at least one ActiveSyncDevice record or the test may fail.

**Troubleshooting Tools**

A set of PowerShell utilities for troubleshooting is available in the Support\PowerShell folder.

A troubleshooting tool performs in-depth analysis of user mailboxes and devices, detecting error conditions and potential areas of failure, and in-depth RBAC analysis of users. It can save raw output of all cmdlets to a text file.

**Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync**

September 13, 2018

XenMobile NetScaler Connector is now Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync. For more detail about the Citrix unified portfolio, see the [Citrix product guide](https://www.citrix.com/citrix-product-guide/).

The connector for Exchange ActiveSync provides a device-level authorization service of ActiveSync clients to NetScaler acting as a reverse proxy for the Exchange ActiveSync protocol. Authorization is controlled by a combination of policies that you define within Endpoint Management and by rules defined locally by Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync.
For more information, see ActiveSync Gateway.

For a detailed reference architecture diagram, see Architecture.

The current release of Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync is version 8.5.2.

What’s new in version 8.5.2

- XenMobile NetScaler Connector is now Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync.

The following issues are fixed in this release:

- If more than one criteria is used in defining a policy rule and if one of the criteria involves the user ID, the following issue may occur: If a user has more aliases, the aliases are not also checked when applying the rule. [CXM-55355]

What’s new in earlier versions

Note:
The following What’s new section refers to Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync by its former name of XenMobile NetScaler Connector. The name changed as of version 8.5.2.

What’s new in version 8.5.1.11

- System requirement change: The current version of NetScaler Connector requires Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5.

- Google Analytics support: We want to know how you use XenMobile NetScaler Connector so we can focus on where we can make the product better.

- Support for TLS 1.1 and 1.2: Due to its weakening security, TLS 1.0 is being deprecated by the PCI Council. Support for TLS 1.1 and 1.2 is added to XenMobile NetScaler Connector.

Monitoring Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync

The Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync configuration utility provides detailed logging that you can use to view all traffic passing through your Exchange Server that is either allowed or blocked by Secure Mobile Gateway.

Use the Log tab to view the history of the ActiveSync requests forwarded to the connector for Exchange ActiveSync for authorization.
Also, to ensure that the connector for Exchange ActiveSync web service is running, load the following URL into a browser on the connector server https://<host:port>/services/ActiveSync/Version. If the URL returns the product version as a string, the web service is responsive.

**To simulate ActiveSync traffic with the connector for Exchange ActiveSync**

You can use Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync to simulate what ActiveSync traffic will look like in conjunction with your policies. In the connector configuration utility, click the **Simulator** tab. The results show you how your policies will apply according to the rules you have configured.

**Choosing filters for the connector for Exchange ActiveSync**

The Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync filters work by analyzing a device for a given policy violation or property setting. If the device meets the criteria, the device is placed in a Device List. This Device List is neither an allow list or a block list. It is a list of devices that meet the criteria defined. The following filters are available for the connector for Exchange ActiveSync within Endpoint Management. The two options for each filter are **Allow** or **Deny**.

- **Anonymous Devices**: Allows or denies devices that are enrolled in Endpoint Management but the user's identity is unknown. For example, this could be a user who was enrolled, but the user's Active Directory password is expired, or a user who enrolled with unknown credentials.
- **Failed Samsung KNOX attestation**: Samsung devices have functionality for security and diagnostics. This filter provides confirmation that the device is setup for KNOX. For details, see the Endpoint Management article on [Samsung KNOX](#).
- **Forbidden Apps**: Allows or denies devices based on the Device List defined by blacklist policies and the presence of blacklisted apps.
- **Implicit Allow/Deny**: Creates a Device List of all devices that do not meet any of the other filter rule criteria and allows or denies based on that list. The Implicit Allow/Deny option ensures that the connector for Exchange ActiveSync status in the Devices tab is enabled and shows the connector status for your devices. The Implicit Allow/Deny option also controls all of the other connector filters that have not been selected. For example, Blacklists Apps will be denied (blocked) by the connector, whereas all other filters will be allowed because the Implicit Allow/Deny option is set to Allow.
- **Inactive devices**: Creates a Device List of devices that have not communicated with Endpoint Management within a specified period of time. These devices are considered inactive. The filter allows or denies the devices accordingly.
- **Missing required apps**: When a user enrolls, the user receives a list of required apps that must be installed. The missing required apps filter indicates that one or more of the apps is no longer present; for example, the user deleted one or more apps.
• **Non-Suggested Apps**: When a user enrolls, the user receives a list of the apps they should install. The non-suggested apps filter checks the device for apps that are not in that list.

• **Noncompliant password**: Creates a Device List of all devices that do not have a passcode on the device.

• **Out of Compliance Devices**: Allows you to deny or allow devices that meet your own internal IT compliance criteria. Compliance is an arbitrary setting defined by the device property named Out of Compliance, which is a Boolean flag that can be either True or False. (You can create this property manually and set the value, or you can use Automated Actions to create this property on a device if the device does or does not meet specific criteria.)
  
  – **Out of Compliance = True**: If a device does not meet the compliance standards and policy definitions set by your IT department, the device is out of compliance.
  
  – **Out of Compliance = False**: If a device does meet the compliance standards and policy definitions set by your IT department, the device is compliant.

• **Revoked Status**: Creates a Device List of all revoked devices and allows or denies based on revoked status.

• **Rooted Android/Jailbroken iOS Devices**: Creates a Device List of all devices flagged as rooted and allows or denies based on rooted status.

• **Unmanaged Devices**: Creates a Device List of all devices in the Endpoint Management database. The Mobile Application Gateway needs to be deployed in a Block Mode.

## To configure a connection to Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync

Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync communicates with Endpoint Management and other remote configuration providers through secure web services.

1. In the connector for Exchange ActiveSync configuration utility, click the **Config Providers** tab and then click **Add**.

2. In the **Config Providers** dialog box, in **Name**, enter a user name that has administrative privileges and are used for basic HTTP authorization with the Endpoint Management server.

3. In **Url**, enter the web address of the Endpoint Management GCS, typically in the format `https://<FQDN>/<instanceName>/services/<MagConfigService>`. The MagConfigService name is case-sensitive.

4. In **Password**, enter the password that will be used for basic HTTP authorization with the Endpoint Management server.

5. In **Managing Host**, enter the connector for Exchange ActiveSync server name.

6. In **Baseline Interval**, specify a time period for when a new refreshed dynamic ruleset is pulled from Device Manager.

7. In **Delta interval**, specify a time period for when an update of dynamic rules is pulled.

8. In **Request Timeout**, specify the server request timeout interval.

9. In **Config Provider** select if the configuration provider server instance is providing the policy
configuration.

10. In **Events Enabled**, enable this option if you want the connector for Exchange ActiveSync to notify Endpoint Management when a device is blocked. This option is required if you are using the connector rules in any of your Endpoint Management Automated Actions.

11. Click **Save** and then click **Test Connectivity** to test gateway-to-configuration provider connectivity. If the connection fails, check that the local firewall settings allow the connection or contact your administrator.

12. When the connection succeeds, clear the **Disabled** check box and then click **Save**.

When you add a new configuration provider, the connector for Exchange ActiveSync automatically creates one or more policies associated with the provider. These policies are defined by a template definition contained in config\policyTemplates.xml in the NewPolicyTemplate section. For each Policy element defined within this section, a new policy is created.

The operator may add, remove, or modify policy elements if the following is true: The policy element conforms to the schema definition and the standard substitution strings (enclosed in braces) are not modified. Next, add new groups for the provider and update the policy to include the new groups.

**To import a policy from Endpoint Management**

1. In the connector for Exchange ActiveSync configuration utility, click the **Config Providers** tab and then click **Add**.

2. In the **Config Providers** dialog box, in **Name**, enter a user name that will be used for basic HTTP authorization with the Endpoint Management server and that has administrative privileges.

3. In **Url**, enter the web address of the Endpoint Management Gateway Configuration Service (GCS), typically in the format `https://<xdmHost>/xdm/services/<MagConfigService>`. The MagConfigService name is case-sensitive.

4. In **Password**, enter the password that is used for basic HTTP authorization with the Endpoint Management server.

5. Click **Test Connectivity** to test gateway-to-configuration provider connectivity. If the connection fails, check that your local firewall settings allow the connection or check with your administrator.

6. When a connection is successfully made, clear the **Disabled** check box and then click **Save**.

7. In **Managing Host**, leave the default DNS name of the local host computer. This setting used to coordinate communication with Endpoint Management when multiple Forefront Threat Management Gateway (TMG) servers are configured in an array.

After you save the settings, open the GCS.
Configuring Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync policy mode

Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync can run in the following six modes:

- **Allow All.** This policy mode grants access for all traffic passing through the connector for Exchange ActiveSync. No other filtering rules are used.
- **Deny All.** This policy mode blocks access for all traffic passing through the connector for Exchange ActiveSync. No other filtering rules are used.
- **Static Rules: Block Mode.** This policy mode executes static rules with an implicit deny or block statement at the end. The connector for Exchange ActiveSync blocks devices that are not allowed or permitted via other filter rules.
- **Static Rules: Permit Mode.** This policy mode executes static rules with an implicit permit or allow statement at the end. Devices that are not blocked or denied via other filter rules are allowed through the connector for Exchange ActiveSync.
- **Static + ZDM Rules: Block Mode.** This policy mode executes static rules first, followed by dynamic rules from Endpoint Management with an implicit deny or block statement at the end. Devices are permitted or denied based on defined filters and Device Manager rules. Any devices that do not match on defined filters and rules are blocked.
- **Static + ZDM Rules: Permit Mode.** This policy mode executes static rules first, followed by dynamic rules from Endpoint Management with an implicit permit or allow statement at the end. Devices are permitted or denied based on defined filters and Endpoint Management rules. Any devices that do not match on defined filters and rules are allowed.

The connector for Exchange ActiveSync process permits or blocks for dynamic rules based on unique ActiveSync IDs for iOS and Windows-based mobile devices received from Endpoint Management. Android devices differ in their behavior based on the manufacturer and some do not readily expose a unique ActiveSync ID. To compensate, Endpoint Management sends user ID information for Android devices to make a permit or block decision. As a result, if a user has only one Android device, permits and blocks function normally. If the user has multiple Android devices, all the devices are allowed because Android devices cannot be differentiated. You can configure the gateway to statically block these devices by ActiveSyncID, if they are known. You can also configure the gateway to block based on device type or user agent.

To specify the policy mode, in the SMG Controller Configuration utility, do the following:

1. Click the **Path Filters** tab and then click **Add**.
2. In the **Path Properties** dialog box, select a policy mode from the **Policy** list and then click **Save**.

You can review rules on the **Policies** tab of the configuration utility. The rules are processed on the connector for Exchange ActiveSync from top to bottom. The Allow policies are displayed with green check mark. The Deny policies are shown as a red circle with a line through it. To refresh the screen and see the most updated rules, click **Refresh**. You can also modify the ordering of rules in the config.xml file.
To test rules, click the Simulator tab. Specify values in the fields. These can also be obtained from the logs. A result message will appear specifying Allow or Block.

**To configure static rules**

Enter static rules with values that the ISAPI filtering of the ActiveSync connection HTTP requests reads. Static rules enable the connector for Exchange ActiveSync to permit or block traffic by the following criteria:

- **User.** The connector for Exchange ActiveSync uses the authorized user value and name structure that was captured during device enrollment. This is commonly found as domain\username as referenced by the server running Endpoint Management connected to Active Directory via LDAP. The Log tab within the connector configuration utility shows the values that are passed through the connector. The values are passed if the value structure needs to be determined or is different.

- **Deviceid (ActiveSyncID).** Also known as the ActiveSyncID of the connected device. This value is commonly found within the specific device properties page in the Endpoint Management console. This value can also be screened from the Log tab in the connector for Exchange ActiveSync configuration utility.

- **DeviceType.** The connector for Exchange ActiveSync can determine if a device is an iPhone, iPad, or other device type and can permit or block based on that criteria. As with other values, the connector configuration utility can reveal all connected device types being processed for the ActiveSync connection.

- **UserAgent.** Contains information on the ActiveSync client that is used. In most cases, the value specified corresponds to a specific operating system build and version for the mobile device platform.

The connector for Exchange ActiveSync configuration utility running on the server always manages the static rules.

1. In the SMG Controller Configuration utility, click the Static Rules tab and then click Add.

2. In the Static Rule Properties dialog box, specify the values that you want to use as criteria. For example, you can enter a user to allow access by entering the user name (for example, AllowedUser) and then clearing the Disabled check box.

3. Click Save.

   The static rule is now in effect. Additionally, you can use regular expressions to define values, but you must enable the rule processing mode in the config.xml file.

**To configure dynamic rules**
Device policies and properties in Endpoint Management define dynamic rules and can trigger a dynamic connector for Exchange ActiveSync filter. The triggers are based on the presence of a policy violation or property setting. The connector for Exchange ActiveSync filters work by analyzing a device for a given policy violation or property setting. If the device meets the criteria, the device is placed in a Device List. This Device List is not an allow list or a block list. It is a list of devices that meets the criteria defined. The following configuration options enable you to define whether you want to allow or deny the devices in the Device List by using the connector for Exchange ActiveSync.

**Note:**

You must use the Endpoint Management console to configure dynamic rules.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.
2. Under **Server**, click **ActiveSync Gateway**. The ActiveSync Gateway page appears.
3. In **Activate the following rules**, select one or more rules you want to activate.
4. In Android-only, in **Send Android domain users to ActiveSync Gateway**, click **YES** to ensure that Endpoint Management sends Android device information to the Secure Mobile Gateway. When this option is enabled, Endpoint Management sends Android device information to the connector for Exchange ActiveSync when Endpoint Management does not have the ActiveSync identifier for the Android device user.

---

**To configure custom policies by editing the connector for Exchange ActiveSync XML file**

You can view the basic policies in the default configuration on the **Policies** tab of the connector for Exchange ActiveSync configuration utility. If you want to create custom policies, you can edit the Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync XML configuration file (config\config.xml).

1. Find the **PolicyList** section in the file and then add a new **Policy** element.
2. If a new group is also required, such as another static group or a group to support another GCP, add the new **Group** element to the **GroupList** section.
3. Optionally, you can change the ordering of groups within an existing policy by rearranging the **GroupRef** elements.

---

**Configuring the connector for Exchange ActiveSync XML File**

The connector for Exchange ActiveSync uses an XML configuration file to dictate the actions of the connector. Among other entries, the file specifies the group files and associated actions the filter take when evaluating HTTP requests. By default, the file is named config.xml and can be found at the following location: ..\Program Files\Citrix\XenMobile NetScaler Connector\config.
GroupRef Nodes

The GroupRef nodes define the logical group names. The defaults are AllowGroup and DenyGroup.

Note:

The order of the GroupRef nodes as they appear in the GroupRefList node is significant.

The ID value of a GroupRef node identifies a logical container or collection of members that are used for matching specific user accounts or devices. The action attributes specifies how the filter treats a member that matches a rule in the collection. For example, a user account or device that matches a rule in the AllowGroup set will “pass.” To pass means to be allowed to access the Exchange CAS. A user account or device that matches a rule in the DenyGroup set is “rejected.” Rejected means not to be allowed to access the Exchange CAS.

When a particular user account/device or combination meets rules in both groups, a precedence convention is used to direct the request's outcome. Precedence is embodied in the order of the GroupRef nodes in the config.xml file from top to bottom. The GroupRef nodes are ranked in priority order. Rules for a given condition in the Allow group will always take precedence over rules for the same condition in the Deny group.

Group Nodes

Additionally, the config.xml defines Group nodes. These nodes link the logical containers AllowGroup and DenyGroup to external XML files. Entries stored in the external files form the basis of the filter rules.

Note:

In this release, only external XML files are supported.

The default installation implements two XML file in the configuration: allow.xml and deny.xml.

Configuring Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync

You can configure Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync to selectively block or allow ActiveSync requests based on the following properties: Active Sync Service ID, Device type, User Agent (device operating system), Authorized user, and ActiveSync Command.

The default configuration supports a combination of static and dynamic groups. You maintain static groups by using the SMG Controller Configuration utility. The static groups may consist of known categories of devices, such as all devices using a given user agent.
An external source called a Gateway Configuration Provider maintains dynamic groups. The connector for Exchange ActiveSync connects the groups on a periodic basis. Endpoint Management can export groups of allowed and blocked devices and users to the connector for Exchange ActiveSync.

Dynamic groups are maintained by an external source called a Gateway Configuration Provider and collected by the connector for Exchange ActiveSync on a periodic basis. Endpoint Management can export groups of allowed and blocked devices and users to the connector.

A policy is an ordered list of groups in which each group has an associated action (allow or block) and a list of group members. A policy may have any number of groups. Group ordering within a policy is important because when a match is found the action of the group is taken, and subsequent groups are not evaluated.

A member defines a way to match the properties of a request. It can match a single property, such as device ID, or multiple properties, such as device type and user agent.

**Choosing a Security Model for Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync**

Establishing a security model is essential to a successful mobile device deployment for organizations of any size. It is common to use protected or quarantined network control to allow access to a user, computer, or device by default. This practice is not always ideal. Every organization that manages IT security may have a slightly different or tailored approach to security for mobile devices.

The same logic applies to mobile device security. Using a permissive model is a weak choice due to the multitude of mobile devices and types, mobile devices per user, and available operating system platforms and apps. In most organizations, the restrictive model will be the most logical choice.

The configuration scenarios that Citrix allows for integrating the connector for Exchange ActiveSync with Endpoint Management are as follows:

**Permissive Model (Permit Mode)**

The permissive security model operates on the premise that everything is either allowed or granted access by default. Only through rules and filtering is something blocked and a restriction applied. The permissive security model is good for organizations that have a relatively loose security concern about mobile devices. The model only applies restrictive controls to deny access where appropriate (when a policy rule is failed).

**Restrictive Model (Block Mode)**

The restrictive security model is based on the premise that nothing is allowed or granted access by default. Everything passing through the security check point is filtered and inspected, and is denied
access unless the rules allowing access are passed. The restrictive security model is good for organizations that have a relatively tight security criterion about mobile devices. The mode only grants access for use and functionality with the network services when all rules to allow access have passed.

**Managing Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync**

You can use Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync to build access control rules. The rules either allow or block access to ActiveSync connection requests from managed devices. Access is based on device status, app blacklists or whitelists, and other compliance conditions.

By using the connector for Exchange ActiveSync configuration utility, you can build dynamic and static rules that enforce corporate email policies, allowing you to block users who are in violation of compliance standards. You can also set up email attachment encryption, so that all attachments that pass through your Exchange Server to managed devices are encrypted and only viewable on managed devices by authorized users.

**To uninstall the XNC**

1. Run XncInstaller.exe with an administrator account.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions to complete the uninstallation.

**To install, upgrade, or uninstall the connector for Exchange ActiveSync**

1. Run XncInstaller.exe with an administrator account to install the connector for Exchange ActiveSync or allow for upgrade or removal of an existing connector.
2. Follow the onscreen instructions to complete the installation, upgrade, or uninstallation.

After you install the connector for Exchange ActiveSync, you must manually restart the Endpoint Management configuration service and the notification service.

**Installing Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync**

You can install the connector for Exchange ActiveSync on its own server or on the same server where you installed Endpoint Management.

You can consider installing the connector for Exchange ActiveSync on its own server (separate from Endpoint Management) for the following reasons:

- If your Endpoint Management server is hosted remotely in the cloud (physical location).
- If you do not want the connector for Exchange ActiveSync to be affected by restarts of the Endpoint Management server (availability).

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
• If you want a server’s system resources to be devoted entirely to the connector for Exchange ActiveSync (performance).

The CPU load that the connector for Exchange ActiveSync puts on a server depends on how many devices are managed. A general recommendation is to provision for one more CPU core if the connector is deployed on the same server as Endpoint Management. For large numbers of devices (more than 50,000), you may need to provision more cores if you do not have a clustered environment. The memory footprint of the connector is not significant enough to warrant more memory.

**Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync system requirements**

Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync communicates with NetScaler over an SSL bridge configured on the NetScaler appliance. The bridge enables the appliance to bridge all secure traffic directly to Endpoint Management. The connector for Exchange ActiveSync the following minimum system configuration:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Computer and processor</td>
<td>733 MHz Pentium III 733 MHz or higher processor. 2.0 GHz Pentium III or higher processor (recommended)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NetScaler</td>
<td>NetScaler appliance with software version 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory</td>
<td>1 GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard disk</td>
<td>NTFS-formatted local partition with 150 MB of available hard-diskspace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating system</td>
<td>Microsoft Windows Server 2008 R2, Microsoft Windows Server 2008 SP2, Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other devices</td>
<td>Network adapter compatible with the host operating system for communication with the internal network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsoft .NET Framework</td>
<td>Version 8.5.1.11 requires Microsoft .NET Framework 4.5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display</td>
<td>VGA or higher-resolution monitor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The host computer for the connector for Exchange ActiveSync requires the following minimum available hard disk space:

• **Application**: 10 - 15 MB (100 MB recommended)
• Logging: 1 GB (20 GB recommended)

For information about platform support for the connector for Exchange ActiveSync, see Supported device operating systems.

Device email clients

Not all email clients consistently return the same ActiveSync ID for a device. Because the connector for Exchange ActiveSync expects a unique ActiveSync ID for each device, the following is true: Only email clients that consistently generate the same, unique ActiveSync ID for each device are supported. Citrix has tested these email clients and the clients have performed without errors:

- HTC native email client
- Samsung native email client
- iOS native email client
- TouchDown

Deploying Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync

Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync enables you to use NetScaler to proxy and load balance Endpoint Management server communication with Endpoint Management managed devices. The connector for Exchange ActiveSync communicates periodically with Endpoint Management to synchronize policies. The connector for Exchange ActiveSync and Endpoint Management can be clustered, together or independently, and can be load-balanced by NetScaler.

The connector for Exchange ActiveSync components

- The connector for Exchange ActiveSync service: This service provides a REST web service interface that can be invoked by NetScaler to determine if an ActiveSync request from a device is authorized.
- Endpoint Management configuration service: This service communicates with Endpoint Management to synchronize Endpoint Management policy changes with the connector for Exchange ActiveSync.
- Endpoint Management notification service: This service sends notifications of unauthorized device access to Endpoint Management. In this way, Endpoint Management can take appropriate measures, such as notifying the user why the device was blocked.
- The connector for Exchange ActiveSync configuration utility: This application allows the administrator to configure and monitor the connector for Exchange ActiveSync.
To set up listening addresses for Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync

For Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync to receive requests from NetScaler to authorize ActiveSync traffic, do the following. Specify the port on which the connector for Exchange ActiveSync listens to NetScaler web service calls.

1. From the Start menu, select the connector for Exchange ActiveSync configuration utility.
2. Click the Web Service tab and then type the listening addresses for the connector web service. You can select HTTP or HTTPS or both. If the connector for Exchange ActiveSync is co-resident with Endpoint Management (installed on the same server), select port values that do not conflict with Endpoint Management.
3. After the values are configured, click Save and then click Start Service to start the web service.

To configure device access control policies in Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync

To configure the access control policy you want to apply to your managed devices, do the following:

1. In the connector for Exchange ActiveSync configuration utility, click the Path Filters tab.
2. Select the first row, Microsoft-Server-ActiveSync is for ActiveSync and then click Edit.
3. From the Policy list, select the desired policy. For a policy that is inclusive of Endpoint Management policies, select Static + ZDM: Permit Mode or Static + ZDM: Block Mode. These policies combine local (or, static) rules with the rules from Endpoint Management. Permit Mode means that all devices not explicitly identified by the rules are permitted access to ActiveSync. Block Mode means that such devices are blocked.
4. After setting the policies, click Save.

To configure communication with Endpoint Management

Specify the name and properties of the Endpoint Management server (also known as a Config Provider) that you want to use with Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync and NetScaler.

Note: This task assumes that you have already installed and configured Endpoint Management.

1. In the connector for Exchange ActiveSync configuration utility, click the Config Providers tab and then click Add.
2. Enter the name and URL of the Endpoint Management server you are using in this deployment. If you have multiple Endpoint Management servers deployed in a multi-tenant deployment, this name must be unique for each server instance. For example, for Name, you could type CEM.
3. In Url, enter the Web address of the Endpoint Management GlobalConfig Provider (GCP), typically in the format https://<FQDN>/<instanceName>/services/<MagConfigService>. The MagConfigService name is case-sensitive.
4. In **Password**, enter the password that will be used for basic HTTP authorization with the Endpoint Management web server.

5. In **Managing Host**, enter the server name where you installed the connector for Exchange ActiveSync.

6. In **Baseline Interval**, specify a time period for when a new refreshed dynamic ruleset is pulled from Endpoint Management.

7. In **Request Timeout**, specify the server request timeout interval.

8. In **Config Provider**, select if the config provider server instance is providing the policy configuration.

9. In **Events Enabled**, enable this option if you want Secure Mobile Gateway to notify Endpoint Management when a device is blocked. This option is required if you are using Secure Mobile Gateway rules in any of your Endpoint Management Automated Actions.

10. After configuring the server, click **Test Connectivity** to test the connection to Endpoint Management.

11. When connectivity has been established, click **Save**.

**Deploying Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync for redundancy and scalability**

If you want to scale your Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync and Endpoint Management deployment, you can install instances of the connector for Exchange ActiveSync on multiple Windows Servers, all pointing to the same Endpoint Management instance. Then you can use NetScaler to load balance the servers.

There are two modes for the connector for Exchange ActiveSync configuration:

- In non-shared mode, each connector for Exchange ActiveSync instance communicates with a Endpoint Management server and keeps its own private copy of the resulting policy. For example, if you had a cluster of Endpoint Management servers, you could run a connector instance on each Endpoint Management server and the connector would get policies from the local Endpoint Management instance.

- In shared mode, one connector for Exchange ActiveSync node is designated the primary node. The connector communicates with Endpoint Management. The resulting configuration is shared among the other nodes either by a Windows network share or by Windows (or third-party) replication.

The entire connector for Exchange ActiveSync configuration is in a single folder (consisting of a few XML files). The connector process detects changes to any file in this folder and automatically reloads the configuration. There is no failover for the primary node in shared mode. But the system can tolerate the primary server being down for a few minutes (for example, to restart) because the last known good configuration is cached in the connector process.
Advanced concepts

August 21, 2018

The Endpoint Management Advanced Concepts articles offer a deeper dive into product information about Endpoint Management. The aim is to help reduce deployment time through expert techniques. The articles may cite the technical expert or experts who have authored the content.

For decision points, recommendations, common questions, and use cases for your end-to-end Endpoint Management environment, see Endpoint Management deployment in this section.

For community support forums on Endpoint Management, see Citrix Discussions.

Endpoint Management deployment

November 5, 2018

There’s a lot to consider when you’re planning an Endpoint Management deployment. What devices should you choose? How should you manage them? How do you ensure that your network remains secure while still providing a good user experience? What hardware do you need in place and how do you troubleshoot it? This handbook aims to help answer those questions and more. The articles in this section provide use cases and recommendations on topics that cover your deployment concerns.

Keep in mind that a guideline or recommendation might not apply to all environments or use cases. Be sure to set up a test environment before going live with an Endpoint Management deployment.

The handbook has three main sections:

- **Assess:** Common use cases and questions to consider when planning your deployment.
- **Design & Configure:** Recommendations for designing and configuring your environment
- **Operate & Monitor:** Ensuring the smooth operation of your running environment.

Assess

As with any deployment, assessing your needs should be your first priority. What is your primary need for Endpoint Management? Is it necessary to manage every device in your environment, just the apps, or both? What level of security is needed for your Endpoint Management environment? Let’s look at common use cases and questions for you to consider when planning your deployment.

- Management modes
- Device requirements
- Security and user experience
- Apps
• User communities
• Email strategy
• Endpoint Management integration

Design & Configure

Once you finish assessing your deployment needs, you can decide how to design and configure your environment. The items to plan include:

• Choosing the hardware for your server
• Setting up policies for apps and devices
• Getting users enrolled

This section includes use cases and recommendations for each of these scenarios and more.

• Integrating with Citrix Gateway and Citrix ADC
• SSO and proxy considerations for MDX apps
• Authentication
• Server properties
• Device and app policies
• User enrollment options

Operate & Monitor

After your Endpoint Management environment is up and running, you’ll want to monitor it to ensure smooth operation. The monitoring section discusses where you can find the various logs and messages Endpoint Management and its components generate, and how to read those logs. This section also includes various common troubleshooting steps you can follow to reduce customer support feedback time.

• App provisioning and deprovisioning
• Dashboard-based operations
• Role-based Access Control and Endpoint Management support
• Systems monitoring
• Citrix support process

Management modes

January 23, 2019
With Endpoint Management, you can choose whether to manage devices, apps, or both. Endpoint Management uses the following terms for device and app management modes, sometimes also referred to as deployment modes:

- Mobile device management mode (MDM mode)
- Mobile app management mode (MAM mode)
- MDM+MAM mode (Enterprise mode)

**Mobile device management (MDM Mode)**

With MDM, you can configure, secure, and support mobile devices. MDM enables you to protect devices and data on devices at a system level. You can configure policies, actions, and security functions. For example, you can wipe a device selectively if the device is lost, stolen, or out of compliance. Although app management is not available with MDM mode, you can deliver mobile apps, such as public app store and enterprise apps, in this mode. Following are common use cases for MDM mode:

- MDM is a consideration for corporate-owned devices where device-level management policies or restrictions, such as full wipe, selective wipe, or geo-location are required.
- When customers require management of an actual device, but do not require MDX policies, such as app containerization, controls on app data sharing, or micro VPN.
- When users only need email delivered to their native email clients on their mobile devices, and Exchange ActiveSync or Client Access Server is already externally accessible. In this use case, you can use MDM to configure email delivery.
- When you deploy native enterprise apps (non-MDX), public app store apps, or MDX apps delivered from public stores. Consider that an MDM solution alone might not prevent data leakage of confidential information between apps on the device. Data leakage might occur with copy and paste or Save As operations in Office 365 apps.

**Mobile app management (MAM Mode)**

MAM protects app data and lets you control app data sharing. MAM also allows for the management of corporate data and resources, separately from personal data. With Endpoint Management configured for MAM mode, you can use MDX-enabled mobile apps to provide per-app containerization and control. MAM mode is also called MAM-only mode.

By leveraging MDX policies, Endpoint Management provides app-level control over network access (such as micro VPN), app and device interaction, data encryption, and app access.

MAM mode is often suitable for bring-your-own (BYO) devices because, although the device is unmanaged, corporate data remains protected. MDX has more than 50 MAM-only policies that you can set without needing an MDM control or relying on device passcodes for encryption.
MAM also supports the Citrix mobile productivity apps. This support includes secure email delivery to Citrix Secure Mail, data sharing between the secured Citrix mobile productivity apps, and secure data storage in Citrix Files. For details, see Mobile productivity apps.

MAM is often suitable for the following examples:

- You deliver mobile apps, such as MDX apps, managed at the app level.
- You are not required to manage devices at a system level.

**MDM+MAM (Enterprise Mode)**

MDM+MAM is a hybrid mode, also called Enterprise Mode, which enables all feature sets available in the Endpoint Management Enterprise Mobility Management (EMM) solution. Configuring Endpoint Management with MDM+MAM mode enables both MDM and MAM features.

MDM+MAM is suitable for the following examples:

- You have a single use case in which both MDM and MAM are required. MDM is required to access your MAM resources.
- Some use cases require MDM while some do not.
- Some use cases require MAM while some do not.

**Device Management and MDM Enrollment**

An Endpoint Management Enterprise environment can include a mixture of use cases, some of which require device management through MDM policies to allow access to MAM resources. Before deploying Citrix mobile productivity apps to users, fully assess your use cases and decide whether to require MDM enrollment. If you later decide to change the requirement for MDM enrollment, it is likely that users must re-enroll their devices.

Following is a summary of the advantages and disadvantages (along with mitigations) of requiring MDM enrollment in a Endpoint Management Enterprise mode deployment.

**When MDM enrollment is optional**

**Advantages:**

- Users can access MAM resources without putting their devices under MDM management. This option can increase user adoption.
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Ability to secure access to MAM resources to protect enterprise data.
- MDX policies such as App Passcode can control app access for each MDX app.
- Configuring Citrix Gateway, Endpoint Management, and per-application time-outs, along with Citrix PIN, provide an extra layer of protection.
- While MDM actions do not apply to the device, some MDX policies are available to deny MAM access. The denial would be based on system settings, such as jailbroken or rooted devices.
- Users can choose whether to enroll their device with MDM during first-time use.

Disadvantages:

- MAM resources are available to devices not enrolled in MDM.
- MDM policies and actions are available only to MDM-enrolled devices.

Mitigation options:

- Have users agree to a company terms and conditions that holds them responsible if they choose to go out of compliance. Have administrators monitor unmanaged devices.
- Manage application access and security by using application timers. Decreased time-out values increase security, but may affect user experience.

When MDM enrollment is required

Advantages:

- Ability to restrict access to MAM resources only to MDM-managed devices.
- MDM policies and actions can apply to all devices in the environment as desired.
- Users are not able to opt out of enrolling their device.

Disadvantages:

- Requires all users to enroll with MDM.
- Might decrease adoption for users who object to corporate management of their personal devices.

Mitigation options:

- Educate users about what Endpoint Management actually manages on their devices and what information administrators can access.

Device requirements

August 21, 2018
An important point to consider for any deployment is the set of devices you plan to roll out. On the iOS, Android, and Windows platforms, the options are numerous. For a list of devices that Endpoint Management supports, see Supported device platforms.

In a bring your own device (BYOD) environment, a mixture of supported platforms is possible. Consider the limitations in the Supported device platform article, however, when informing users about the devices they can enroll. Even if you only allow one or two devices in your environment, Endpoint Management functions slightly differently on iOS, Android, and Windows devices. Different feature sets are available on each platform.

Also, not all app designs target both tablet and phone form factors. Before you make widespread changes, test the apps to ensure that they fit the device screen you want to roll out.

You can consider enrollment factors as well. Apple and Google offer enterprise enrollment programs. Through the Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) and Google Android Enterprise, you can purchase devices that are preconfigured and ready for employees to use. Even when you don’t use these programs, consider whether you want to send invitation links to your users through SMS. You cannot use SMS on tablets.

For more information about enrollment, see User enrollment options.

Security and user experience

January 11, 2019

Security is important to any organization, but you need to strike a balance between security and user experience. On one hand, you may have a very secure environment that is very difficult for users to use. On the other hand, your environment may be so user-friendly that access control is not as strict. The other sections in this virtual handbook cover security features in detail, but the purpose of this article is to give a general overview of the security options available to you and to get you thinking about common security concerns in Endpoint Management.

Here are some key considerations to keep in mind for each use case:

- Do you want to secure certain apps, the entire device, or both?
- How do you want your users to authenticate their identity? Will you be using LDAP, certificate-based authentication, or a combination of the two?
- How much time should pass before a user’s session times out? Keep in mind that there are different time-out values for background services, Citrix ADC, and for being able to access apps while offline.
- Do you want users to set up a device-level passcode and/or an app-level passcode? How many logon attempts do you want to afford to users? Keep in mind the additional per-app authentication requirements that may be implemented with MAM and how users may perceive them.
What other restrictions do you want to place on users? Should they be able to access cloud services such as Siri? What can they do with each app you make available to them and what can they not do? Should you deploy corporate WiFi policies to prevent cellular data plans from being eaten up while inside office spaces?

**App vs. Device**

One of the first things you should consider is whether you should only secure certain apps (mobile app management, or MAM) or if you want to manage the entire device (mobile device management or MDM). Most commonly, if you don’t require device-level control, you’ll only need to manage mobile apps, especially if your organization supports Bring Your Own Device (BYOD).

With a MAM-only environment, users can access resources made available to them. MAM policies secure and manage the apps themselves.

MDM allows you to secure an entire device, including the ability to take inventory of all the software on a device and prevent enrollment if the device is jailbroken, rooted, or has unsafe software installed. Taking this level of control, however, makes users leery of allowing that much power over their personal devices and may reduce enrollment rates.

It is possible to have MDM required for some devices and not for others, but keep in mind that this choice may involve setting up two dedicated environments, which requires additional resources and upkeep.

**Authentication**

Authentication is where a great deal of the user experience takes place. If your organization is already running Active Directory, using Active Directory is the simplest way to have your users access the system.

Another big part of the authentication user experience is time-outs. A high security environment may have users log on every time they access the system, but that option may not be ideal for all organizations. For example, having users enter their credentials every time they want to access their email can be very frustrating and may not be necessary.

**User Entropy**

For added security, you can enable a feature called *user entropy*. Citrix Secure Hub and some other apps often share common data like passwords, PINs, and certificates to ensure everything functions properly. This information is stored in a generic vault within Secure Hub. If you enable user entropy through the **Encrypt Secrets** option, Endpoint Management creates a new vault called UserEntropy,
Citrix Endpoint Management

and moves the information from the generic vault into this new vault. In order for Secure Hub or another app to access the data, users must enter a password or PIN.

Enabling user entropy adds another layer of authentication in a number of places. This means, however, that whenever an app requires access to shared data in the UserEntropy vault—which includes passwords, PINs, and certificates—users need to enter a password or PIN.

You can learn more about user entropy by reading About the MDX Toolkit. To turn on user entropy, you can find the related settings in the Client properties.

Policies

Both MDX and MDM policies give a great deal of flexibility to organizations, but they can also restrict users. You may want this in some situations, but policies may also make a system unusable. For instance, you may want to block access to cloud applications such as Siri or iCloud that have the potential to send sensitive data where you don’t want it going. You can set up a policy to block access to these services, but keep in mind that such a policy may have unintended consequences. The iOS keyboard mic is also reliant on cloud access and you may block access to that feature as well.

Apps

Enterprise Mobility Management (EMM) segments into Mobile Device Management (MDM) and Mobile Application Management (MAM). While MDM enables organizations to secure and control mobile devices, MAM facilitates application delivery and management. With the increasing adoption of BYOD, you can typically implement a MAM solution, such as Endpoint Management, to assist with application delivery, software licensing, configuration, and application life cycle management.

With Endpoint Management, you can go a step further to secure these apps by configuring specific MAM policies and VPN settings to prevent data leak and other security threats. Endpoint Management provides organizations with the flexibility to deploy their solution as a MAM-only or a MDM-only environment, or to implement Endpoint Management as a unified Endpoint Management Enterprise environment that provides both MDM and MAM functionality within in the same platform.

In addition to the ability to deliver apps to mobile devices, Endpoint Management offers app containerization through MDX technology. MDX secures apps through encryption that is separate from device level encryption; you can wipe or lock the app, and the apps are subject to granular policy-based controls. Independent software vendors (ISVs) can apply these controls using the Mobile Apps SDK.

In a corporate environment, users use a variety of mobile apps to aid in their job role. The apps can include apps from the public app store, in-house developed apps, or native apps as well, in some cases. Endpoint Management categorizes these apps as follows:
Public apps: These apps include free or paid apps available in a public app store, such as iTunes or Google Play. Vendors outside of the organization often make their apps available in public app stores. This option lets their customers download the apps directly from the Internet. You may use numerous public apps in your organization depending on users’ needs. Examples of such apps include GoToMeeting, Salesforce, and EpicCare apps.

Citrix does not support downloading app binaries directly from public app stores, and then wrapping them with the MDX Toolkit for enterprise distribution. If you need to wrap third-party applications, work with your app vendor to obtain the app binaries which you can wrap using the MDX Toolkit.

In-house apps: Many organizations have in-house developers who create apps that provide specific functionality and are independently developed and distributed within the organization. In certain cases, some organizations may also have apps that ISVs provide. You can deploy such apps as native apps or you can containerize the apps by using a MAM solution, such as Endpoint Management. For example, a healthcare organization may create an in-house app that allows physicians to view patient information on mobile devices. An organization can then use the MDX Service or MDX Toolkit to wrap the app to secure patient information and enable VPN access to the back-end patient database server.

Web and SaaS apps: These apps include apps accessed from an internal network (web apps) or over a public network (SaaS). Endpoint Management also allows you to create custom web and SaaS apps using a list of app connectors. These app connectors can facilitate single sign-on (SSO) to existing Web apps. For details, see App connector types. For example, you can use Google Apps SAML for SSO based on Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) to Google Apps.

Mobile productivity apps: These are Citrix-developed apps that are included with the Endpoint Management license. For details, see About mobile productivity apps. Citrix also offers other business-ready apps that ISVs develop by using the Mobile Apps SDK.

HDX apps: These are Windows-hosted apps that you publish with StoreFront. If you have a Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops environment, you can integrate the apps with Endpoint Management to make the apps available to the enrolled users.

Depending of the type of mobile apps you plan to deploy and manage with Endpoint Management, the underlying configuration and architecture will differ. For example, if multiple groups of users with different level of permissions will consume a single app, you may have to create separate delivery groups to deploy two separate versions of the same app. In addition, you must make sure the user group membership is mutually exclusive to avoid policy mismatches on users’ devices.

You may also want to manage iOS application licensing by using the Apple Volume Purchase Program (VPP). This option will require you to register for the VPP program and configure Endpoint Management VPP settings in the Endpoint Management console to distribute the apps with the VPP licenses. A variety of such use cases makes it important to assess and plan your MAM strategy prior to implementing the Endpoint Management environment. You can start planning your MAM strategy by defining the following:
Types of apps: List the different types of apps you plan to support and categorize them, such as public, native, Citrix mobile productivity apps, Web, in-house, ISV apps, and so on. Also, categorize the apps for different device platforms, such as iOS and Android. This categorization will help with aligning different Endpoint Management settings that are required for each type of app. For example, certain apps may not qualify for wrapping, or a few apps may require the use of the Mobile Apps SDK to enable special APIs for interaction with other apps.

Network requirements: You need to configure apps with specific network access requirements with the appropriate settings. For example, certain apps may need access to your internal network through VPN. Some apps may require Internet access to route access via the DMZ. In order to allow such apps to connect to the required network, you have to configure various settings accordingly. Defining per-app network requirements help in finalizing your architectural decisions early on, which will streamline the overall implementation process.

Security requirements: Defining the security requirements that apply to either individual apps or all the apps is critical. Although settings, such as the MDX policies, apply to individual apps, session and authentication settings apply across all apps, and some apps may have specific encryption, containerization, wrapping, encryption, authentication, geo fencing, passcode or data sharing requirements that you will need to outline in advance to simplify your deployment.

Deployment requirements: You may want to use a policy-based deployment to allow only compliant users to download the published apps. For example, you may want certain apps to require that device encryption is enabled or the device is managed, or that the device meets a minimum operating system version. You may also want certain apps to be available only to corporate users. You need to outline such requirements in advance so that you can configure the appropriate deployment rules or actions.

Licensing requirements: You should record app-related licensing requirements. These notes will help you to manage license usage effectively and to decide if you need to configure specific features in Endpoint Management to facilitate licensing. For example, if you deploy an iOS app, irrespective of whether it is a free or a paid app, Apple enforces licensing requirements on the app by making the users sign into their iTunes account. You can register for Apple VPP to distribute and manage these apps via Endpoint Management. VPP allows users to download the apps without having to sign into their iTunes account. Additionally, tools, such as Samsung SAFE and Samsung KNOX, have special licensing requirements, which you need to complete prior to deploying those features.

Blacklist/whitelist requirements: There may be apps that you do not want users to install or use at all. Creating a blacklist will define an out of compliance event. You can then set up policies to trigger in case such a thing happens. On the other hand, an app may be acceptable for use but may fall under the blacklist for one reason or another. If this is the case, you can add the app to a whitelist and indicate that the app is acceptable to use but is not required. Also, keep in mind that the apps pre-installed on new devices can include some commonly used apps that are not part of the operating system. This may conflict with your blacklisting strategy.
Apps use case

A healthcare organization plans to deploy Endpoint Management to serve as a MAM solution for their mobile apps. Mobile apps are delivered to corporate and BYOD users. IT decides to deliver and manage the following apps:

- **Mobile productivity apps**: iOS and Android apps provided by Citrix.
- **Citrix Files**: App to access shared data and to share, sync, and edit files.

Public app store

- **Secure Hub**: Client used by all mobile devices to communicate with Endpoint Management. IT pushes security settings, configurations, and mobile apps to mobile devices via the Secure Hub client. Android and iOS devices enroll in Endpoint Management through Secure Hub.
- **Citrix Workspace app**: Mobile app that allows users to open on mobile devices apps hosted by Citrix Virtual Apps.
- **GoToMeeting**: An online meeting, desktop sharing, and video conferencing client that lets users meet with other computer users, customers, clients, or colleagues via the Internet in real time.
- **SalesForc1e1**: Salesforce! lets users access Salesforce from mobile devices and brings all Chatter, CRM, custom apps, and business processes together in a unified experience for any Salesforce user.
- **RSA SecurID**: Software-based token for two-factor authentication.
- **EpicCare apps**: These apps give healthcare practitioners secure and portable access to patient charts, patient lists, schedules, and messaging.
  - **Haiku**: Mobile app for the iPhone and Android phones.
  - **Canto**: Mobile app for the iPad
  - **Rover**: Mobile apps for iPhone and iPad.

**HDX**: HDX apps are delivered by Citrix Virtual Apps to Citrix workspace.

- **Epic Hyperspace**: Epic client application for electronic health record management.

**ISV**

- **Vocera**: HIPAA compliant voice-over IP and messaging mobile app that extends the benefits of Vocera voice technology anytime, anywhere via iPhone and Android smartphones.

In-house apps

- **HCMail**: App that helps compose encrypted messages, search address books on internal mail servers, and send the encrypted messages to the contacts using an email client.
In-house web apps

- **PatientRounding**: Web application used to record patient health information by different departments.
- **Outlook Web Access**: Allows the access of email via a web browser.
- **SharePoint**: Used for organization-wide file and data sharing.

The following table lists the basic information required for MAM configuration.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App Name</th>
<th>App Type</th>
<th>MDX Wrapping</th>
<th>iOS</th>
<th>Android</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secure Mail</td>
<td>Mobile productivity app</td>
<td>No for version 10.4.1 and later</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Web</td>
<td>Mobile productivity app</td>
<td>No for version 10.4.1 and later</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Notes</td>
<td>Mobile productivity app</td>
<td>No for version 10.4.1 and later</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrix Files</td>
<td>Mobile productivity app</td>
<td>No for version 10.4.1 and later</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Hub</td>
<td>Public App</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrix Workspace app</td>
<td>Public App</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GoToMeeting</td>
<td>Public App</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SalesForce1</td>
<td>Public App</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSA SecurID</td>
<td>Public App</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Haiku</td>
<td>Public App</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Canto</td>
<td>Public App</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Rover</td>
<td>Public App</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Hyperspace</td>
<td>HDX App</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocera</td>
<td>ISV App</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCMail</td>
<td>In-House App</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PatientRounding</td>
<td>Web App</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:

Secure Notes and Secure Tasks reached End of Life (EOL) status on December 31, 2018. For details, see [EOL and deprecated apps](#).
The following tables list specific requirements you can consult when configuring MAM policies in Endpoint Management.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App Name</th>
<th>App Type</th>
<th>MDX Wrapping</th>
<th>iOS</th>
<th>Android</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Outlook Web Access</td>
<td>Web App</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SharePoint</td>
<td>Web App</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App Name</th>
<th>VPN Required</th>
<th>Interaction (with apps outside of container)</th>
<th>Interaction (from apps outside of container)</th>
<th>Device Encryption</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secure Mail</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Selectively Allowed</td>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>Not required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Web</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>Not required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Notes</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>Not required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrix Files</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>Not required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Hub</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrix Workspace app</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GoToMeeting</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SalesForce1</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSA SecurID</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Haiku</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Canto</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Rover</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Hyperspace</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocera</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Disallowed</td>
<td>Disallowed</td>
<td>Not required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCMail</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Disallowed</td>
<td>Disallowed</td>
<td>Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PatientRounding</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outlook Web Access</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Citrix Endpoint Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App Name</th>
<th>VPN Required</th>
<th>Interaction (with apps outside of container)</th>
<th>Interaction (from apps outside of container)</th>
<th>Device Encryption</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SharePoint</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App Name</th>
<th>Proxy Filtering</th>
<th>Licensing</th>
<th>Geo-fencing</th>
<th>Mobile Apps SDK</th>
<th>Minimum Operating System Version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secure Mail</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Selectively Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Web</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Notes</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrix Files</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Hub</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrix Workspace app</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GoToMeeting</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salesforce1</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSA SecurID</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Haiku</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Canto</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Rover</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Hyperspace</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocera</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HC Mail</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient Round</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outlook Web</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
Every organization consists of diverse user communities that operate in different functional roles. These user communities perform different tasks and office functions using various resources that you provide through the users' mobile devices. Users may work from home or in remote offices using mobile devices that you provide, or using their personal mobile devices, which allows them to access tools that are subject to certain security compliance rules.

As more and more user communities start using mobile devices to either simplify or aid in their job role, Enterprise Mobility Management (EMM) becomes critical to prevent data leak and to enforce an organization's security restrictions. In order for efficient and more sophisticated mobile device management, you can categorize your user communities. Doing so simplifies the mapping of users to resources and ensures that the right security policies apply to the right users.

The following example illustrates how the user communities of a healthcare organization are classified for EMM.

**User communities use case**

This example healthcare organization provides technology resources and access to multiple users, including network and affiliate employees and volunteers. The organization has chosen to roll out the EMM solution to non-executive users only.

User roles and functions for this organization can be broken into subgroups including: clinical, non-clinical, and contractors. A selected set of users receive corporate mobile devices, while others can access limited company resources from their personal devices. In order to enforce the right level of security restrictions and prevent data leak, the organization decided that corporate IT manages each enrolled device, Corporate and Bring Your Own Device (BYOD). Additionally, users can only enroll a single device.

The following section provides an overview of the roles and functions of each subgroup:

**Clinical**

- Nurses

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App Name</th>
<th>Proxy Filtering</th>
<th>Licensing</th>
<th>Geo-fencing</th>
<th>Mobile Apps</th>
<th>Minimum Operating System Version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SharePoint</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• Physicians (Doctors, Surgeons, and so on)
• Specialists (Dieticians, phlebotomists, anesthesiologists, radiologists, cardiologists, oncologists, and so on)
• Outside physicians (Non-employee physicians and office workers that work from remote offices)
• Home Health Services (Office and mobile workers performing physician services for patient home visits)
• Research Specialist (Knowledge Workers and Power Users at six Research Institutes performing clinical research to find answers to issues in medicine)
• Education and Training (Nurses, physicians, and specialists in education and training)

Non-Clinical

• Shared Services (Office workers performing various back office functions including: HR, Payroll, Accounts Payable, Supply Chain Service, and so on)
• Physician Services (Office workers performing a variety of health care management, administrative services, and business process solutions to providers, including: Administrative Services, Analytics and Business Intelligence, Business Systems, Client Services, Finance, Managed Care Administration, Patient Access Solutions, Revenue Cycle Solutions, and so on)
• Support Services (Office workers performing a variety of non-clinical functions including: Benefits Administration, Clinical Integration, Communications, Compensation & Performance Management, Facility & Property Services, HR Technology Systems, Information Services, Internal Audit & Process Improvement, and so on.)
• Philanthropic Programs (Office and mobile workers that perform various functions in support of philanthropic programs)

Contractors

• Manufacturer and vendor partners (Onsite and remotely connected via site-to-site VPN providing various non-clinical support functions)

Based on the preceding information, the organization created the following entities. For more information about delivery groups in Endpoint Management, see Deploy resources.

Active Directory Organizational Units (OUs) and Groups

For OU = Endpoint Management Resources:

• OU = Clinical; Groups =
  – XM-Nurses
  – XM-Physicians
  – XM-Specialists
Citrix Endpoint Management

- XM-Outside Physicians
- XM-Home Health Services
- XM-Research Specialist
- XM-Education and Training

• OU = Non-Clinical; Groups =
  - XM-Shared Services
  - XM-Physician Services
  - XM-Support Services
  - XM-Philanthropic Programs

Endpoint Management Local Users and Groups

For Group= Contractors, Users =

• Vendor1
• Vendor2
• Vendor 3
• … Vendor 10

Endpoint Management Delivery Groups

• Clinical-Nurses
• Clinical-Physicians
• Clinical-Specialists
• Clinical-Outside Physicians
• Clinical-Home Health Services
• Clinical-Research Specialist
• Clinical-Education and Training
• Non-Clinical-Shared Services
• Non-Clinical-Physician Services
• Non-Clinical-Support Services
• Non-Clinical-Philanthropic Programs

Delivery Group and User Group mapping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active Directory Groups</th>
<th>Endpoint Management Delivery Groups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XM-Nurses</td>
<td>Clinical-Nurses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XM-Physicians</td>
<td>Clinical-Physicians</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
The following tables illustrate the resources assigned to each delivery group in this use case. The first table shows the mobile app assignments; the second table shows the public app, HDX apps, and device management resources.

### Delivery Group and Resource Mapping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endpoint Management Delivery Groups</th>
<th>Citrix Mobile Apps</th>
<th>Public Mobile Apps</th>
<th>HDX Mobile Apps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Nurses</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Physicians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Specialists</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Outside Physicians</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Home Health Services</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Research Specialist</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Education and Training</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Clinical-Shared Services</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Clinical-Physician Services</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Clinical-Support Services</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Clinical-Philanthropic Programs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
## Endpoint Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Delivery Groups</th>
<th>Citrix Mobile Apps</th>
<th>Public Mobile Apps</th>
<th>HDX Mobile Apps</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-Clinical-Physician</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Clinical-Support</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Clinical-Philanthropic</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractors</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Endpoint Management Delivery Groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Nurses</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Physicians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Specialists</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Outside Physicians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Home Health</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Research Specialist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Notes and considerations

- Endpoint Management creates a default delivery group named All Users during the initial configuration. If you do not disable this Delivery Group, all Active Directory users will have rights to enroll into Endpoint Management.
- Endpoint Management synchronizes Active Directory users and groups on demand using a dynamic connection to the LDAP server.
- If a user is part of a group that is not mapped in Endpoint Management, that user cannot enroll. Likewise, if a user is a member of multiple groups, Endpoint Management will only categorize the user as being in the groups mapped to Endpoint Management.
- In order to make MDM enrollment mandatory, you must set the Enrollment Required option to True in Server Properties in the Endpoint Management console. For details, see [Server properties](#).
- You can delete a user group from an Endpoint Management delivery group by deleting the entry in the SQL Server database, under dbo.userlistgrps.

**Caution:** Before you perform this action, create a backup of Endpoint Management and the...
About device ownership in Endpoint Management

You can group users according to the owner of a user device. Device ownership includes corporate-owned devices and user-owned devices, also known as bring your own device (BYOD). You can control how BYOD devices connect to your network in two places in the Endpoint Management console: in Deployment Rules and through Endpoint Management server properties on the Settings page. For details about deployment rules, see Configuring Deployment Rules. For details about server properties, see Server properties.

By setting server properties, you can require all BYOD users to accept corporate management of their devices before they can access apps, or you can give users access to corporate apps without also managing their devices.

When you set the server setting wsapi.mdm.required.flag to true, Endpoint Management manages all BYOD devices, and any user who declines enrollment is denied access to apps. You should consider setting wsapi.mdm.required.flag to true in environments in which enterprise IT teams need high security along with a positive user experience, which comes from enrolling user devices in Endpoint Management.

If you leave wsapi.mdm.required.flag as false, which is the default setting, users can decline enrollment, but may still access apps on their devices through the app store. You should consider setting wsapi.mdm.required.flag to false in environments in which privacy, legal, or regulatory constraints require no device management, only enterprise app management.

Users with devices that Endpoint Management doesn’t manage can install apps through the app store. Instead of device-level controls, such as selective or full wipe, you control access to the apps through app policies. The policies, depending on the values you set, require the device to check Endpoint Management routinely to confirm that the apps are still allowed to run.

Security requirements

The amount of security considerations when deploying a Endpoint Management environment can quickly become overwhelming. There are many interlocking pieces and settings, that you may not know where to begin or what to choose to ensure an acceptable level of protection is available. To make these choices simpler, Citrix provides recommendations for High, Higher, and Highest Security, as outlined in the following table.

Note that security concerns alone should not dictate your deployment mode choice. It is important to also review the requirements of the use case and decide if you can mitigate security concerns before choosing your deployment mode.
**Citrix Endpoint Management**

**High:** Using these settings provides an optimal user experience while maintaining a basic level of security acceptable to most organizations.

**Higher:** These settings strike a stronger balance between security and usability.

**Highest:** Following these recommendations will provide a very high level of security at the cost of usability and user adoption.

**Deployment mode security considerations**

The following table specifies the deployment modes for each security level.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>High Security</th>
<th>Higher Security</th>
<th>Highest Security</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MAM and/or MDM</td>
<td>MDM+MAM</td>
<td>MDM+MAM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

- Depending on the use case, a MDM-only or MAM-only deployment could meet security requirements and provide a good user experience.
- If there is no need for app containerization, micro VPN or app specific policies, MDM should be sufficient to manage and secure devices.
- For use cases like BYOD in which all business and security requirements may be satisfied with app containerization only, Citrix recommends MAM-only mode.
- For high security environments (and corporate issued devices), Citrix recommends MDM+MAM to take advantage of all security capabilities available. You should enforce MDM enrollment through a server property in the Endpoint Management console.

**Citrix ADC and Citrix Gateway security considerations**

The following table specifies the Citrix ADC and Citrix Gateway recommendations for each security level.
Citrix Endpoint Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>High Security</th>
<th>Higher Security</th>
<th>Highest Security</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Citrix ADC is recommended. Citrix Gateway is required for MAM and ENT; recommended for MDM</td>
<td>Standard NetScaler for XenMobile wizard configuration with SSL bridge if Endpoint Management is in the DMZ; or SSL offload if required to meet security standards when Endpoint Management server is in the internal network.</td>
<td>SSL Offload with end-to-end encryption</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

- Exposing Endpoint Management server to the Internet via NAT or existing third-party proxies/load-balancers could be an option for MDM as long as the SSL traffic terminates on Endpoint Management server, but this choice poses a potential security risk.
- For high security environments, Citrix Gateway with the default Endpoint Management configuration should meet or exceed security requirements.
- For MDM environments with the highest security needs, SSL termination at Citrix Gateway provides the ability to inspect traffic at the perimeter, while maintaining end-to-end SSL encryption.
- Options to define SSL/TLS ciphers.
- For more information, see Integrating with Citrix Gateway and Citrix ADC.

### Enrollment security considerations

The following table specifies the Citrix ADC and Citrix Gateway recommendations for each security level.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>High Security</th>
<th>Higher Security</th>
<th>Highest Security</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Directory Group membership only. All users Delivery Group disabled.</td>
<td>Invitation only enrollment mode. Active Directory Group membership only. All users Delivery Group disabled</td>
<td>Enrollment mode tied to Device ID. Active Directory Group membership only. All users Delivery Group disabled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

- Citrix generally recommends that you restrict enrollment to users in predefined Active Directory...
groups only. This requires disabling the built-in All users Delivery Group.

- You can use enrollment invitations to restrict enrollment to users with an invitation only.
- You can use one-time PIN (OTP) enrollment invites as a two-factor solution and to control the number of devices a user may enroll.
- For environments with the highest security requirements, you can tie enrollment invitations to a device by SN/UDID/EMEI. A two-factor option is also available to require Active Directory password and OTP. (Note that OTP is not currently an option for Windows devices.)

**Device PIN security considerations**

The following table specifies the device PIN recommendations for each security level.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Security Level</th>
<th>High Security</th>
<th>Higher Security</th>
<th>Highest Security</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Recommended</td>
<td>High security is required for device-level encryption. May be enforced with MDM. Can be set as required for MAM-only by using an MDX policy.</td>
<td>Enforced by using MDM and/or MDX policy.</td>
<td>Enforced by using MDM and MDX policy. MDM Complex passcode policy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

- Citrix recommends the use of a device PIN.
- You can enforce a device PIN via an MDM policy.
- You can use an MDX policy to make a device PIN a requirement for using managed apps; for example, for BYOD use cases.
- Citrix recommends combining the MDM and MDX policy options for increased security in MDM+MAM environments.
- For environments with the highest security requirements, you can configure complex passcode policies and enforced them with MDM. You can configure automatic actions to notify administrators or issue selective/full device wipes when a device doesn’t comply with a passcode policy.

**Apps**

January 11, 2019

Enterprise Mobility Management (EMM) segments into Mobile Device Management (MDM) and Mobile Application Management (MAM). While MDM enables organizations to secure and control mobile devices, MAM facilitates application delivery and management. With the increasing adoption of BYOD,
you can typically implement a MAM solution, such as Endpoint Management, to assist with application delivery, software licensing, configuration, and application life cycle management.

With Endpoint Management, you can go a step further to secure these apps by configuring specific MAM policies and VPN settings to prevent data leak and other security threats. Endpoint Management provides organizations with the flexibility to deploy their solution as a MAM-only or a MDM-only environment, or to implement Endpoint Management as a unified Endpoint Management Enterprise environment that provides both MDM and MAM functionality within in the same platform.

In addition to the ability to deliver apps to mobile devices, Endpoint Management offers app containerization through MDX technology. MDX secures apps through encryption that is separate from device level encryption; you can wipe or lock the app, and the apps are subject to granular policy-based controls. Independent software vendors (ISVs) can apply these controls using the Mobile Apps SDK.

In a corporate environment, users use a variety of mobile apps to aid in their job role. The apps can include apps from the public app store, in-house developed apps, or native apps as well, in some cases. Endpoint Management categorizes these apps as follows:

- **Public apps:** These apps include free or paid apps available in a public app store, such as iTunes or Google Play. Vendors outside of the organization often make their apps available in public app stores. This option lets their customers download the apps directly from the Internet. You may use numerous public apps in your organization depending on users’ needs. Examples of such apps include GoToMeeting, Salesforce, and EpicCare apps.

  Citrix does not support downloading app binaries directly from public app stores, and then wrapping them with the MDX Toolkit for enterprise distribution. If you need to wrap third-party applications, work with your app vendor to obtain the app binaries which you can wrap using the MDX Toolkit.

- **In-house apps:** Many organizations have in-house developers who create apps that provide specific functionality and are independently developed and distributed within the organization. In certain cases, some organizations may also have apps that ISVs provide. You can deploy such apps as native apps or you can containerize the apps by using a MAM solution, such as Endpoint Management. For example, a healthcare organization may create an in-house app that allows physicians to view patient information on mobile devices. An organization can then use the MDX Service or MDX Toolkit to wrap the app in order to secure patient information and enable VPN access to the back-end patient database server.

- **Web and SaaS apps:** These apps include apps accessed from an internal network (web apps) or over a public network (SaaS). Endpoint Management also allows you to create custom web and SaaS apps using a list of app connectors. These app connectors can facilitate single sign-on (SSO) to existing Web apps. For details, see App connector types. For example, you can use Google Apps SAML for SSO based on Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) to Google
Apps.

- **Mobile productivity apps:** These are Citrix-developed apps that are included with the Endpoint Management license. For details, see About mobile productivity apps. Citrix also offers other business-ready apps that ISVs develop by using the Mobile Apps SDK.

- **HDX apps:** These are Windows-hosted apps that you publish with StoreFront. If you use Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops and Citrix workspace, HDX apps are available to enrolled users.

Depending on the type of mobile apps you plan to deploy and manage with Endpoint Management, the underlying configuration and architecture will differ. For example, if multiple groups of users with different levels of permissions will consume a single app, you may have to create separate delivery groups to deploy two separate versions of the same app. In addition, you must make sure the user group membership is mutually exclusive to avoid policy mismatches on users’ devices.

You may also want to manage iOS application licensing by using the Apple Volume Purchase Program (VPP). This option will require you to register for the VPP program and configure Endpoint Management VPP settings in the Endpoint Management console to distribute the apps with the VPP licenses. A variety of such use cases makes it important to assess and plan your MAM strategy prior to implementing the Endpoint Management environment. You can start planning your MAM strategy by defining the following:

- **Types of apps:** List the different types of apps you plan to support and categorize them, such as public, native, Worx, Web, in-house, ISV apps, and so on. Also, categorize the apps for different device platforms, such as iOS and Android. This categorization will help with aligning different Endpoint Management settings that are required for each type of app. For example, certain apps may not qualify for wrapping, or a few apps may require the use of the Mobile Apps SDK to enable special APIs for interaction with other apps.

- **Network requirements:** You need to configure apps with specific network access requirements with the appropriate settings. For example, certain apps may need access to your internal network through VPN; some apps may require Internet access to route access via the DMZ. In order to allow such apps to connect to the required network, you have to configure various settings accordingly. Defining per-app network requirements help in finalizing your architectural decisions early on, which will streamline the overall implementation process.

- **Security requirements:** Defining the security requirements that apply to either individual apps or all the apps is critical. Although settings, such as the MDX policies, apply to individual apps, session and authentication settings apply across all apps, and some apps may have specific encryption, containerization, wrapping, encryption, authentication, geo fencing, passcode or data sharing requirements that you will need to outline in advance to simplify your deployment. For details on security in Endpoint Management, see Security and user experience.

- **Deployment requirements:** You may want to use a policy-based deployment to allow only compliant users to download the published apps. For example, you may want certain apps to require that device encryption is enabled or the device is managed, or that the device meets
a minimum operating system version. You may also want certain apps to be available only to corporate users. You need to outline such requirements in advance so that you can configure the appropriate deployment rules or actions.

- **Licensing requirements:** You should record app-related licensing requirements. These notes will help you to manage license usage effectively and to decide if you need to configure specific features in Endpoint Management to facilitate licensing. For example, if you deploy an iOS app, irrespective of whether it is a free or a paid app, Apple enforces licensing requirements on the app by making the users sign into their iTunes account. You can register for Apple VPP to distribute and manage these apps via Endpoint Management. VPP allows users to download the apps without having to sign into their iTunes account. Additionally, tools, such as Samsung SAFE and Samsung KNOX, have special licensing requirements, which you need to complete prior to deploying those features.

- **Blacklist/whitelist requirements:** There may be apps that you do not want users to install or use at all. Creating a blacklist will define an out of compliance event. You can then set up policies to trigger in case such a thing happens. On the other hand, an app may be acceptable for use but may fall under the blacklist for one reason or another. If this is the case, you can add the app to a whitelist and indicate that the app is acceptable to use but is not required. Also, keep in mind that the apps pre-installed on new devices can include some commonly used apps that are not part of the operating system. This may conflict with your blacklisting strategy.

**Use Case**

A healthcare organization plans to deploy Endpoint Management to serve as a MAM solution for their mobile apps. Mobile apps are delivered to corporate and BYOD users. IT decides to deliver and manage the following apps:

**Mobile productivity apps:** iOS and Android apps provided by Citrix. For details, see Mobile productivity apps.

**Citrix Secure Hub:** For customers who onboarded prior to Endpoint Management 10.18.14: IT pushes security settings, configurations, and mobile apps to mobile devices via Secure Hub. Android and iOS devices enroll in Endpoint Management through Secure Hub.

For new customers as of Endpoint Management 10.18.14: Secure Hub supports the use of the Workspace apps store. When opening Secure Hub, users no longer see the Secure Hub store. Now, an Add Apps button takes users to the Workspace apps store.

Following is a video that shows an iOS device performing an enrollment to Citrix Endpoint Management using the Citrix Workspace app.
Citrix Workspace app: The Citrix Workspace app incorporates existing Citrix Receiver technology, Secure Hub, and other Citrix Workspace client technologies. Workspace app provides end users with a unified, contextual experience.

GoToMeeting: An online meeting, desktop sharing, and video conferencing client that lets users meet with other computer users, customers, clients, or colleagues via the Internet in real time.

SalesForce1: Salesforce1 lets users access Salesforce from mobile devices and brings all Chatter, CRM, custom apps, and business processes together in a unified experience for any Salesforce user.

RSA SecurID: Software-based token for two-factor authentication.

EpicCare apps: These apps give healthcare practitioners secure and portable access to patient charts, patient lists, schedules, and messaging.

Haiku: Mobile app for the iPhone and Android phones.

Canto: Mobile app for the iPad

Rover: Mobile apps for iPhone and iPad.

HDX: These apps are delivered via Citrix Virtual Apps in Citrix workspace.

- Epic Hyperspace: Epic client application for electronic health record management.
ISV:

- **Vocera**: HIPAA compliant voice-over IP and messaging mobile app that extends the benefits of Vocera voice technology anytime, anywhere via iPhone and Android smartphones.

In-house apps:

- **HCMail**: App that helps compose encrypted messages, search address books on internal mail servers, and send the encrypted messages to the contacts using an email client.

In-house web apps:

- **PatientRounding**: Web application used to record patient health information by different departments.
- **Outlook Web Access**: Allows the access of email via a web browser.
- **SharePoint**: Used for organization-wide file and data sharing.

The following table lists the basic information required for MAM configuration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App Name</th>
<th>App Type</th>
<th>MDX Wrapping</th>
<th>iOS</th>
<th>Android</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secure Mail</td>
<td>Mobile productivity app</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Web</td>
<td>Mobile productivity app</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Notes</td>
<td>Mobile productivity app</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Secure Notes reached End of Life (EOL) status on December 31, 2018. For details, see [EOL and deprecated apps](#).
The following table lists specific requirements you can consult configuring MAM policies in Endpoint Management.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App Name</th>
<th>Interaction (with apps outside of container)</th>
<th>Interaction (from apps outside of container)</th>
<th>Device Encryption</th>
<th>Proxy Filtering</th>
<th>Licensing</th>
<th>Geo-fencing</th>
<th>Minimum Operating System</th>
<th>Mobile Apps SDK</th>
<th>Mobile Version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secure Mail</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>Required N/A</td>
<td>Selective Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Enforced</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Web</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>Required N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Enforced</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Citrix Endpoint Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App Name</th>
<th>VPN Required</th>
<th>Interaction (with apps outside of container)</th>
<th>Interaction (from apps outside of container)</th>
<th>Device Encryption</th>
<th>Proxy Filtering</th>
<th>Geo-Fencing</th>
<th>Mobile Apps Licensing</th>
<th>Minimum Operating System Version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Secure Notes</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>Enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: Secure Notes reached End of Life (EOL) status on December 31, 2018. For details, see EOL and deprecated apps.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrix Files</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>Enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secure Hub</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citrix Workspace app</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GoToMeeting</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Citrix Endpoint Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>App Name</th>
<th>VPN Required</th>
<th>Interaction (with apps outside of container)</th>
<th>Interaction (from apps outside of container)</th>
<th>Device Encryption</th>
<th>Proxy Filtering</th>
<th>Licensing</th>
<th>Geo-fencing</th>
<th>Mobile Apps</th>
<th>Minimum Operating System Version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SalesForce</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSA SecurityID</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Haiku</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Canto</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Rover</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>VPP</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epic Hyperspace</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocera</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Disallowed</td>
<td>Disallowed</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCMail</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Disallowed</td>
<td>Disallowed</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PatientRounding</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SharePoint</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>Required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td>Not enforced</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### User communities

January 11, 2019
Every organization consists of diverse user communities that operate in different functional roles. These user communities perform different tasks and office functions using various resources that you provide through user mobile devices. Users might work from home or in remote offices using mobile devices that you provide. Or, users might use personal mobile devices, which allows them to access tools that are subject to certain security compliance rules.

With more user communities using mobile devices, Enterprise Mobility Management (EMM) becomes critical to prevent data leak and to enforce organizational security restrictions. In order for efficient and more sophisticated mobile device management, you can categorize your user communities. Doing so simplifies the mapping of users to resources and ensures that the right security policies apply to the right users.

Categorizing user communities can include use of the following components:

- **Active Directory Organizational Units (OUs) and Groups**
  Users added to specific Active Directory security groups can receive policies and resources such as apps. Removing users from the Active Directory security groups removes access to previously allowed Endpoint Management resources.

- **Endpoint Management local users and groups**
  For users who don’t have an account in Active Directory, you can create the users as local Endpoint Management users. You can add local users to delivery groups and provision resources to them in the same manner as Active Directory users.

- **Endpoint Management delivery groups**
  If multiple groups of users with different level of permissions are to consume a single app, you might need to create separate delivery groups. With separate delivery groups, you can deploy two separate versions of the same app.

- **Delivery group and user group mapping**
  Delivery group to Active Directory group mappings can be either one-to-one, or one-to-many. Assign base policies and apps to a one-to-many delivery group mapping. Assign function-specific policies and apps to one-to-one delivery group mappings.

- **Delivery Group and Resource Mapping of Apps**
  Assign specific apps to each delivery group.

- **Delivery Group and Resource Mapping of MDM Resources**
  Assign apps and specific device management resources to each delivery group. For example, configure a delivery group with any mix of the following: Types of apps (public, HDX, and so on), specific apps per app type, and resources such as device policies and automated actions.

The following example illustrates how the user communities of a healthcare organization are classified for EMM.
Use case

This example healthcare organization provides technology resources and access to multiple users, including network and affiliate employees and volunteers. The organization has chosen to roll out the EMM solution to non-executive users only.

You can divide user roles and functions for this organization into subgroups including: clinical, non-clinical, and contractors. A selected set of users receive corporate mobile devices, while others can access limited company resources from their personal devices (BYOD). To enforce the appropriate level of security restrictions and prevent data leak, the organization decided that corporate IT manages each enrolled device. Also, users can only enroll a single device.

The following sections provide an overview of the roles and functions of each subgroup.

Clinical

- Nurses
- Physicians (Doctors, Surgeons, and so on)
- Specialists (Dieticians, phlebotomists, anesthesiologists, radiologists, cardiologists, oncologists, and so on)
- Outside physicians (Non-employee physicians and office workers that work from remote offices)
- Home Health Services (Office and mobile workers performing physician services for patient home visits)
- Research Specialist (Knowledge Workers and Power Users at six Research Institutes performing clinical research to find answers to issues in medicine)
- Education and Training (Nurses, physicians, and specialists in education and training)

Non-clinical

- Shared Services (Office workers performing various back-office functions including: HR, Payroll, Accounts Payable, Supply Chain Service, and so on)
- Physician Services (Office workers performing various health care management, administrative services, and business process solutions to providers, including: Administrative Services, Analytics and Business Intelligence, Business Systems, Client Services, Finance, Managed Care Administration, Patient Access Solutions, Revenue Cycle Solutions, and so on)
- Support Services (Office workers performing various non-clinical functions including: Benefits Administration, Clinical Integration, Communications, Compensation & Performance Management, Facility & Property Services, HR Technology Systems, Information Services, Internal Audit & Process Improvement, and so on.)
• Philanthropic Programs (Office and mobile workers that perform various functions in support of philanthropic programs)

Contractors

• Manufacturer and vendor partners (Onsite and remotely connected via site-to-site VPN providing various non-clinical support functions)

Based on the preceding information, the organization created the following entities. For more information about delivery groups in Endpoint Management, see Deploy resources in the Endpoint Management product documentation.

Active Directory Organizational Units (OUs) and Groups

For OU = Endpoint Management Resources

• OU = Clinical; Groups =
  – XM-Nurses
  – XM-Physicians
  – XM-Specialists
  – XM-Outside Physicians
  – XM-Home Health Services
  – XM-Research Specialist
  – XM-Education and Training

• OU = Non-Clinical; Groups =
  – XM-Shared Services
  – XM-Physician Services
  – XM-Support Services
  – XM-Philanthropic Programs

Endpoint Management Local Users and Groups

For Group= Contractors, Users =

• Vendor1
• Vendor2
• Vendor 3
• … Vendor 10
Endpoint Management Delivery Groups

- Clinical-Nurses
- Clinical-Physicians
- Clinical-Specialists
- Clinical-Outside Physicians
- Clinical-Home Health Services
- Clinical-Research Specialist
- Clinical-Education and Training
- Non-Clinical-Shared Services
- Non-Clinical-Physician Services
- Non-Clinical-Support Services
- Non-Clinical-Philanthropic Programs

Delivery Group and User Group mapping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active Directory Groups</th>
<th>Endpoint Management Delivery Groups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XM-Nurses</td>
<td>Clinical-Nurses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XM-Physicians</td>
<td>Clinical-Physicians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XM-Specialists</td>
<td>Clinical-Specialists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XM-Outside Physicians</td>
<td>Clinical-Outside Physicians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XM-Home Health Services</td>
<td>Clinical-Home Health Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XM-Research Specialist</td>
<td>Clinical-Research Specialist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XM-Education and Training</td>
<td>Clinical-Education and Training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XM-Shared Services</td>
<td>Non-Clinical-Shared Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XM-Physician Services</td>
<td>Non-Clinical-Physician Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XM-Support Services</td>
<td>Non-Clinical-Support Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XM-Philanthropic Programs</td>
<td>Non-Clinical-Philanthropic Programs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Delivery Group and Resource mapping of apps
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Role</th>
<th>Secure Mail</th>
<th>Secure Web</th>
<th>Citrix Files</th>
<th>Workspace app</th>
<th>RSA SecureID</th>
<th>EpicCare</th>
<th>Haiku</th>
<th>Hyperspace</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinical Nurses</td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
<td>√</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical Physicians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical Specialist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical Outside Physicians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical Home Health Services</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical Research Specialist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical Education and Training</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Clinical Shared Services</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Clinical Physician Services</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
## Citrix Endpoint Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Secure Mail</th>
<th>Secure Web</th>
<th>Citrix Files</th>
<th>Workspace app</th>
<th>Salesforce URL</th>
<th>RSA SecurID</th>
<th>Epic Care Haiku</th>
<th>Epic Hyper-space</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non-Clinical-Support Services</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Clinical-Philanthropic Programs</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contractor</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Delivery Group and Resource mapping of MDM Resources

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Delivery Group</th>
<th>MDM: Passcode policy</th>
<th>MDM: Device Restrictions</th>
<th>MDM: Automated Actions</th>
<th>MDM: WiFi policy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Nurses</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Physicians</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Specialists</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Outside Physicians</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Home Health Services</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Research Specialist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical-Education and Training</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
## Notes and considerations

- Endpoint Management creates a default delivery group named All Users during the initial configuration. If you do not disable this Delivery Group, all Active Directory users have rights to enroll into Endpoint Management.
- Endpoint Management synchronizes Active Directory users and groups on demand using a dynamic connection to the LDAP server.
- If a user is part of a group that is not mapped in Endpoint Management, that user cannot enroll. Likewise, if a user is a member of multiple groups, Endpoint Management only categorizes the user as being in the groups mapped to Endpoint Management.
- To make MDM enrollment mandatory, set the **Enrollment Required** option to **True** in **Server Properties** in the Endpoint Management console. For details, see **Server properties**.
- To delete a user group from a Endpoint Management delivery group, delete the entry in the SQL Server database, under dbo.userlistgrps.

**Caution:**

Before you perform this action, create a backup of Endpoint Management and the database.
About device ownership in Endpoint Management

You can group users according to the owner of a user device. Device ownership includes corporate-owned devices and user-owned devices, also known as bring your own device (BYOD). You can control how BYOD devices connect to your network in two places in the Endpoint Management console: in Deployment Rules and through Endpoint Management properties on the Settings page. For details about deployment rules, see Deploy resources. For details about server properties, see Server properties.

By setting server properties, you can require all BYOD users to accept corporate management of their devices before they can access apps. Or, you can give users access to corporate apps without also managing their devices.

When you set the server property `wsapi.mdm.required.flag` to `true`, Endpoint Management manages all BYOD devices, and any user who declines enrollment is denied access to apps. Consider setting `wsapi.mdm.required.flag` to `true` in environments in which enterprise IT teams need high security plus a positive user experience during enrolling.

If you leave `wsapi.mdm.required.flag` as `false`, which is the default setting, users can decline enrollment. However, they can access apps on their devices through the app store. Consider setting `wsapi.mdm.required.flag` to `false` in environments in which privacy, legal, or regulatory constraints require no device management, only enterprise app management.

Users with devices that Endpoint Management doesn’t manage can install apps through the app store. Instead of device-level controls, such as selective or full wipe, you control access to the apps through app policies. Some policy settings require the device to check Endpoint Management routinely to confirm that the apps are still allowed to run.

Email strategy

January 23, 2019

Secure access to email from mobile devices is one of the main drivers behind any organization’s mobility management initiative. Deciding on the proper email strategy is often a key component of any Endpoint Management design. Endpoint Management offers several options to accommodate different use cases, based on security, user experience, and integration requirements. This article covers the typical design decision process and considerations for choosing the right solution, from client selection to mail traffic flow.
Choosing your email clients

Client selection is generally at the top of the list for the overall email strategy design. You can choose from several clients: Citrix Secure Mail, native mail that is included with a particular mobile platform operating system, or other third-party clients available through the public app stores. Depending on your needs, you can possibly support the user communities with a single (standard) client or you may need to use a combination of clients.

The following table outlines design considerations for the different client options available:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Secure Mail</th>
<th>Native (for example, iOS Mail)</th>
<th>Third-party mail (for example, TouchDown)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuration</td>
<td>Exchange account profiles configured via an MDX policy.</td>
<td>Exchange account profiles configured via an MDM policy. Android support is limited to: SAFE/KNOX, HTC, and Android Enterprise. All other clients are considered third-party clients.</td>
<td>Generally requires manual configuration by the user. Configuration of Exchange account profiles via an MDM policy for TouchDown only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td>Secure by design, providing the highest security. Uses MDX policies with added data encryption levels. Secure Mail is a fully managed app via an MDX policy. Added layer of authentication with Citrix PIN.</td>
<td>Based on vendor/app feature set. Provides higher security. Uses device encryption settings (with no security via MDX policies). Relies on device-level authentication for access to the app.</td>
<td>Based on vendor/app feature set. Provides high security.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Citrix Endpoint Management

**Integration**

- Allows interaction with managed (MDX) apps by default. Open web URLs with Citrix Secure Web. Save files to and attach files from Citrix Files. Directly join and dial in to GoToMeeting.
- Can only interact with other unmanaged (non-MDX) apps by default.

### Deployment/Licensing

- You can push Secure Mail through MDM, directly from public app stores. Included with Endpoint Management Advanced and Enterprise licensing.
- Client app included with platform operating system. No additional licensing requirements.
- Can push via MDM, as an enterprise app or directly from public app stores. Associated licensing model/costs based on app vendor.

### Support

- Single vendor support for the client and EMM solution (Citrix). Embedded support contact info in Secure Hub/app debug logging capabilities. One client to support.
- Vendor defined support (Apple/Google). May need to support different clients based on device platform.
- Vendor-defined support. One client to support, assuming that the third-party client is supported on all managed device platforms.

---

**Mail traffic flow and filtering considerations**

This section discusses the three main scenarios and design considerations regarding the flow of mail (ActiveSync) traffic in the context of Endpoint Management.

### Scenario 1: Exposed Exchange

Environments that support external clients commonly have Exchange ActiveSync services exposed to the internet. Mobile ActiveSync clients connect through this externally facing path through a reverse
Citrix Endpoint Management

proxy (for example, Citrix Gateway) or through an edge server. This option is required for the use of native or third-party mail clients, making these clients the popular choice for this scenario. Although not a common practice, you can also use the Secure Mail client in this scenario. By doing so, you benefit from the security features offered by the use of MDX policies and management of the app.

**Scenario 2: Tunneled via Citrix Gateway (micro VPN and STA)**

This scenario is the default when using the Secure Mail client, due to its micro VPN capabilities. In this case, the Secure Mail client establishes a secure connection to ActiveSync via Citrix Gateway. In essence, you can consider Secure Mail to be the client connecting directly to ActiveSync from the internal network. Citrix customers often standardize on Secure Mail as the mobile ActiveSync client of choice. That decision is part of an initiative to avoid exposing ActiveSync services to the internet on an exposed Exchange Server, as described in the first scenario.

Only managed (MDX wrapped) apps can use the micro VPN function. Therefore, this scenario does not apply to native clients. Even though it may be possible to wrap third-party clients with the MDX Toolkit, this practice is not common. The use of device-level VPN clients to allow tunneled access for native or third-party clients has proven to be cumbersome and not a viable solution.

**Scenario 3: Cloud-hosted Exchange services**

Cloud-hosted Exchange services, such as Microsoft Office 365, are becoming more popular. In the context of Endpoint Management, this scenario may be treated in the same way as the first scenario, because the ActiveSync service is also exposed to the internet. In this case, cloud service provider requirements dictate client choices. The choices generally include support for most ActiveSync clients, such as Secure Mail and other native or third-party clients.

Endpoint Management can add value in three areas for this scenario:

- Client wrapping with MDX policies and app management with Secure Mail
- Client configuration with the use of an MDM policy on supported clients (native, such as Touch-Down)
- ActiveSync filtering options with the use of Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync

**Mail traffic filtering considerations**

As with most services exposed to the internet, you must secure the path and provide filtering for authorized access. The Endpoint Management solution includes two components designed specifically to provide ActiveSync filtering capabilities for native and third-party clients: Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync and Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync.
Citrix Endpoint Management

**Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync**

The use of Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync provides ActiveSync filtering at the perimeter, by using Citrix Gateway as a proxy for ActiveSync traffic. As a result, the filtering component sits in the path of mail traffic flow, intercepting mail as it enters or leaves the environment. The connector for Exchange ActiveSync acts an intermediary between Citrix Gateway and Endpoint Management. When a device communicates with Exchange through the ActiveSync virtual server on the Citrix Gateway, Citrix Gateway performs an HTTP callout to the connector for Exchange ActiveSync service. That service then checks the device status with Endpoint Management. Based on the status of the device, the connector for Exchange ActiveSync replies to Citrix Gateway to either allow or deny the connection. You may also configure static rules to filter access based on user, agent, and device type or ID.

This setup allows Exchange ActiveSync services to be exposed to the internet with an added layer of security to prevent unauthorized access. Design considerations include the following:

- **Windows Server**: The connector for Exchange ActiveSync component requires a Windows Server.
- **Filtering rule set**: The connector for Exchange ActiveSync is designed for filtering based on device state and information, rather than user information. Although you may configure static rules to filter by user ID, no options exist for filtering based on Active Directory group membership, for example. If there is a requirement for Active Directory group filtering, you can use Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync instead.
- **Citrix Gateway scalability**: Given the requirement to proxy ActiveSync traffic via Citrix Gateway: Proper sizing of the Citrix Gateway instance is critical to support the added workload of all ActiveSync SSL connections.
- **Citrix Gateway Integrated Caching**: The connector for Exchange ActiveSync configuration on the Citrix Gateway uses the Integrated Caching function to cache responses from the connector. As a result of that configuration, Citrix Gateway doesn’t need to issue a request to the connector for every ActiveSync transaction in a given session. That configuration is also critical for adequate performance and scale. Integrated Caching is available with the Citrix Gateway Platinum Edition.
- **Custom filtering policies**: You might need to create custom Citrix Gateway policies to restrict certain ActiveSync clients outside of the standard native mobile clients. This configuration requires knowledge on ActiveSync HTTP requests and Citrix Gateway responder policy creation.
- **Secure Mail clients**: Secure Mail has micro VPN capabilities which eliminate the need for filtering at the perimeter. The Secure Mail client would generally be treated as an internal (trusted) ActiveSync client when connected through the Citrix Gateway. If support for both native and third-party (with the connector for Exchange ActiveSync) and Secure Mail clients is required: Citrix recommends that Secure Mail traffic does not flow via the Citrix Gateway virtual server used for the connector. You can accomplish this traffic flow via DNS and keep the connector
policy from affecting Secure Mail clients.

For a diagram of Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync in an Endpoint Management deployment, see Architecture.

**Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync**

Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync is a Endpoint Management component that provides ActiveSync filtering at the Exchange service level. As a result, filtering only occurs once the mail reaches the exchange service, rather than when it enters the Endpoint Management environment. Mail Manager uses PowerShell to query Exchange ActiveSync for device partnership information and control access through device quarantine actions. Those action take devices in and out of quarantine based on Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync rule criteria.

Similar to Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync, the connector for Exchange ActiveSync checks the device status with Endpoint Management to filter access based on device compliance. You may also configure static rules to filter access based on device type or ID, agent version, and Active Directory group membership.

This solution does not require the use of Citrix Gateway. You can deploy the connector for Exchange ActiveSync without changes routing for the existing ActiveSync traffic. Design considerations include:

- **Windows Server:** The connector for Exchange ActiveSync requires you to deploy Windows Server.
- **Filtering rule set:** Just like Citrix Gateway connector for Exchange ActiveSync, the connector for Exchange ActiveSync includes filtering rules to evaluate device state. Additionally, the connector for Exchange ActiveSync also supports static rules to filter based on Active Directory group membership.
- **Exchange integration:** The connector for Exchange ActiveSync requires direct access to the Exchange Client Access Server (CAS) hosting the ActiveSync role and control over device quarantine actions. This requirement might present a challenge depending on the environment architecture and security posture. It is critical that you evaluate this technical requirement up front.
- **Other ActiveSync clients:** Because the connector for Exchange ActiveSync is filtering at the ActiveSync service level, consider other ActiveSync clients outside the Endpoint Management environment. You can configure the connector for Exchange ActiveSync static rules to avoid unintended impact to other ActiveSync clients.
- **Extended Exchange functions:** Through direct integration with Exchange ActiveSync, the connector for Exchange ActiveSync provides the ability for Endpoint Management to perform an Exchange ActiveSync wipe on a mobile device. The connector for Exchange ActiveSync also allows Endpoint Management to access information about Blackberry devices and to perform other control operations.
Citrix Endpoint Management

For a diagram of Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync in an Endpoint Management deployment, see Architecture.

**Email platform decision tree**

The following figure helps you distinguish the pros and cons between using native email or Secure Mail solutions in your Endpoint Management deployment. Each choice allows for associated Endpoint Management options and requirements to enable server, network, and database access. The pros and cons include details on security, policy, and user interface considerations.
Endpoint Management integration

January 23, 2019

This article covers what to consider when planning how Endpoint Management is to integrate with your existing network and solutions. For example, if you’re already using Citrix Gateway for Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops:

• Should you use the existing Citrix Gateway instance or a new, dedicated instance?
• Do you want to integrate with Endpoint Management the HDX apps that are published using StoreFront?
• Do you plan to use Citrix Files with Endpoint Management?
• Do you have a Network Access Control solution that you want to integrate into Endpoint Management?

Citrix Gateway

Citrix Gateway is required for Endpoint Management. Citrix Gateway provides a micro VPN path for access to all corporate resources and provides strong multi-factor authentication support.

You can use existing Citrix Gateway instances or set up new ones for Endpoint Management. The following sections note the advantages and disadvantages of using existing or new, dedicated Citrix Gateway instances.

Shared Citrix Gateway MPX with a Citrix Gateway VIP created for Endpoint Management

Advantages:

• Uses a common Citrix Gateway instance for all Citrix remote connections: Citrix Virtual Apps, full VPN, and clientless VPN.
• Uses the existing Citrix Gateway configurations, such as for certificate authentication and for accessing services like DNS, LDAP, and NTP.
• Uses a single Citrix Gateway platform license.

Disadvantages:

• It is more difficult to plan for scale when you handle two very different use cases on the same Citrix Gateway.
• Sometimes you need a specific Citrix Gateway version for a Citrix Virtual Apps use case. That same version might have known issues for Endpoint Management. Or Endpoint Management might have known issues for the Citrix Gateway version.
• If a Citrix Gateway exists, you cannot run the NetScaler for XenMobile wizard a second time to create the Citrix Gateway configuration for Endpoint Management.
• Except when Platinum licenses are used for Citrix Gateway 11.1 or later: User access licenses installed on Citrix Gateway and required for VPN connectivity are pooled. Because those licenses are available to all Citrix Gateway virtual servers, services other than Endpoint Management can potentially consume them.

**Dedicated Citrix Gateway VPX/MPX instance**

**Advantages:**

Citrix recommends using a dedicated instance of Citrix Gateway.

- Easier to plan for scale and separates Endpoint Management traffic from a Citrix Gateway instance that might already be resource constrained.
- Avoids issues when Endpoint Management and Citrix Virtual Apps need different Citrix Gateway software versions. The recommendation generally is to use the latest compatible Citrix Gateway version and build for Endpoint Management.
- Allows Endpoint Management configuration of Citrix Gateway through the built-in NetScaler for XenMobile wizard.
- Virtual and physical separation of services.

**Disadvantages:**

- Requires setup of extra services on Citrix Gateway to support Endpoint Management configuration.
- Requires another Citrix Gateway platform license. License each Citrix Gateway instance for Citrix Gateway.

For information about what to consider when integrating Citrix Gateway and Citrix ADC with each Endpoint Management server mode, see [Integrating with Citrix Gateway and Citrix ADC](#).

**StoreFront**

If you have a Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops environment, you can integrate HDX applications with Endpoint Management using StoreFront. When you integrate HDX apps with Endpoint Management:

- The apps are available to users who are enrolled with Endpoint Management.
- The apps display in the app store along with other mobile apps.
- Endpoint Management uses the legacy PNAgent (services) site on StoreFront.
- When the Citrix Workspace app is installed on a device, HDX apps start using that app.

StoreFront has a limitation of one services site per StoreFront instance. Suppose that you have multiple stores and want to segment it from other production usage. In that case, Citrix generally recommends that you consider a new StoreFront Instance and services site for Endpoint Management.

**Considerations include:**
• Are there any different authentication requirements for StoreFront? The StoreFront services site requires Active Directory credentials for logon. Customers only using certificate-based authentication cannot enumerate applications through Endpoint Management using the same Citrix Gateway.

• Use the same store or create a new one?

• Use the same or a different StoreFront server?

The following sections note the advantages and disadvantages of using separate or combined store-fronts for Citrix Workspace and Citrix mobile productivity apps.

Integrate your existing StoreFront instance with Endpoint Management

Advantages:

• Same store: No additional configuration of StoreFront is required for Endpoint Management, assuming that you use the same Citrix Gateway VIP for HDX access. Suppose that you choose to use the same store and want to direct Citrix Workspace access to a new Citrix Gateway VIP. In that case, add the appropriate Citrix Gateway configuration to StoreFront.

• Same StoreFront server: Uses the existing StoreFront installation and configuration.

Disadvantages:

• Same store: Any reconfiguration of StoreFront to support Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops workloads may adversely affect Endpoint Management as well.

• Same StoreFront server: In large environments, consider the additional load from Endpoint Management usage of PNAgent for app enumeration and start-up.

Use a new, dedicated StoreFront instance for integration with Endpoint Management

Advantages:

• New store: Any configuration changes of the StoreFront store for Endpoint Management should not affect existing Virtual Apps and Desktops workloads.

• New StoreFront server: Server configuration changes should not affect Virtual Apps and Desktops workflows. Additionally, load outside of Endpoint Management usage of PNAgent for app enumeration and launch should not affect scalability.

Disadvantages:

• New store: StoreFront store configuration.

• New StoreFront server: Requires new StoreFront installation and configuration.

For more information, see Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops through the app store.
Citrix Endpoint Management

**Citrix Files**

Citrix Files enables users to access and sync all of their data from any device. With Citrix Files, users can securely share data with people both inside and outside the organization. If you integrate Citrix Files with Endpoint Management, Endpoint Management can provide Citrix Files with:

- Single sign-on authentication for mobile productivity app users.
- Active Directory-based user account provisioning.
- Comprehensive access control policies.

Mobile users can benefit from the full Citrix Files Enterprise feature set.

Alternatively, you can configure Endpoint Management to integrate only with StorageZone Connectors. Through StorageZone Connectors, Citrix Files provides access to:

- Documents and folders
- Network file shares
- In SharePoint sites: Site collections and document libraries.

Connected file shares can include the same network home drives used in Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops environments. You use the Endpoint Management console to configure the integration with Citrix Files Enterprise or StorageZones Connectors. For more information, see [Citrix Files use with Endpoint Management](#).

The following sections note the questions to ask when making design decisions for Citrix Files.

**Integrate with Citrix Files Enterprise or only StorageZone Connectors**

**Questions to ask:**

- Do you need to store data in Citrix-managed StorageZones?
- Do you want to provide users with file sharing and sync capabilities?
- Do you want to enable users to access files on the Citrix Files website? Or to access Office 365 content and Personal Cloud connectors from mobile devices?

**Design decision:**

- If the answer to any of those questions is “yes,” integrate with Citrix Files Enterprise.
- An integration with only StorageZone Connectors gives iOS users secure mobile access to existing on-premises storage repositories, such as SharePoint sites and network file shares. In this configuration, you don’t set up a Citrix Files subdomain, provision users to Citrix Files, or host Citrix Files data. Using StorageZones Connectors with Endpoint Management complies with security restrictions against leaking user information outside of the corporate network.
**Citrix Endpoint Management**

**StorageZones Controller server location**

**Questions to ask:**

- Do you require on-premises storage or features such as StorageZone Connectors?
- If using on-premises features of Citrix Files, where will the StorageZones Controllers sit in the network?

**Design decision:**

- Determine whether to locate the StorageZones Controller servers in the Citrix Files cloud, in your on-premises single-tenant storage system, or in supported third-party cloud storage.
- StorageZones Controllers require some internet access to communicate with the Citrix Files Control Plane. You can connect in several ways, including direct access or NAT/PAT configurations.

**StorageZone Connectors**

**Questions to ask:**

- What are the CIFS share paths?
- What are the SharePoint URLs?

**Design decision:**

- Determine if on-premises StorageZones Controllers are required to access those locations.
- Due to StorageZone Connector communication with internal resources such as file repositories, CIFS shares, and SharePoint: Citrix recommends that StorageZones Controllers reside in the internal network behind DMZ firewalls and fronted by Citrix Gateway.

**SAML integration with Endpoint Management Enterprise**

**Questions to ask:**

- Is Active Directory authentication required for Citrix Files?
- Does first time use of the Citrix Files app for Endpoint Management require SSO?
- Is there a standard IdP in your current environment?
- How many domains are required to use SAML?
- Are there multiple email aliases for Active Directory users?
- Are there any Active Directory domain migrations in progress or scheduled soon?

**Design decision:**

Endpoint Management Enterprise environments may choose to use SAML as the authentication mechanism for Citrix Files. The authentication options are:

- Use the Endpoint Management server as the Identity Provider (IdP) for SAML
Citrix Endpoint Management

This option can provide excellent user experience and automate Citrix Files account creation, as well as enable mobile app SSO features.

- The Endpoint Management server is enhanced for this process: It does not require the synchronization of Active Directory.
- Use the Citrix Files User Management Tool for user provisioning.
- Use a supported third-party vendor as the IdP for SAML

If you have an existing and supported IdP and don’t require mobile app SSO capabilities, this option might be the best fit for you. This option also requires the use of the Citrix Files User Management Tool for account provisioning.

Using third-party IdP solutions such as ADFS may also provide SSO capabilities on the Windows client side. Be sure to evaluate use cases before choosing your Citrix Files SAML IdP.

Additionally, to satisfy both use cases, you can Configure and ADFS and Endpoint Management as a Dual IdP.

Mobile apps

Questions to ask:

- Which Citrix Files mobile app do you plan to use (public, MDM, MDX)?

Design decision:

- You distribute Citrix mobile productivity apps from the Apple App Store and Google Play Store. With that public app store distribution, you obtain wrapped apps from the Citrix downloads page.
- If security is low and you don’t require containerization, the public Citrix Files application may not be suitable. In an MDM-only environment, you can deliver the MDM version of the Citrix Files app using Endpoint Management in MDM mode.
- For more information, see Apps and Citrix Citrix Files for Endpoint Management.

Security, policies, and access control

Questions to ask:

- What restrictions do you require for desktop, web, and mobile users?
- What standard access control settings do you want for users?
- What file retention policy do you plan to use?

Design decision:

- Citrix Files lets you manage employee permissions and device security. For information, see Employee Permissions and Managing Devices and Apps.
Some Citrix Files device security settings and MDX policies control the same features. In those cases, Endpoint Management policies take precedence, followed by the Citrix Files device security settings. Examples: If you disable external apps in Citrix Files, but enable them in Endpoint Management, the external apps get disabled in Citrix Files. You can configure the apps so that Endpoint Management doesn’t require a PIN/passcode, but the Citrix Files app requires a PIN/passcode.

Standard vs. restricted Storage Zones

Questions to ask:

- Do you require Restricted Storage Zones?

Design decision:

- A standard Storage Zone is intended for non-sensitive data and enables employees to share data with non-employees. This option supports workflows that involve sharing data outside of your domain.
- A restricted Storage Zone protects sensitive data: Only authenticated domain users can access the data stored in the zone.

Access control

Enterprises can now manage mobile devices inside and outside of networks. Enterprise Mobility Management solutions such as Endpoint Management are great at providing security and controls for mobile devices, independent of location. However, when coupled with a Network Access Control (NAC) solution, you can add QoS and more fine-grained control to devices that are internal to your network. That combination enables you to extend the Endpoint Management device security assessment through your NAC solution. Your NAC solution then can use the Endpoint Management security assessment to facilitate and handle authentication decisions. Citrix has validated NAC integration with Endpoint Management for Cisco Identity Services Engine (ISE) or ForeScout. Citrix doesn’t guarantee integration for other NAC solutions.

Advantages of a NAC solution integration with Endpoint Management include the following:

- Better security, compliance, and control for all endpoints on an enterprise network.
- A NAC solution can:
  - Detect devices at the instant they attempt to connect to your network.
  - Query Endpoint Management for device attributes.
  - Then use that information to determine whether to allow, block, limit, or redirect those devices. Those decisions depend on the security policies you choose to enforce.
A NAC solution provides IT administrators with a view of unmanaged and non-compliant devices.

For a description of the NAC compliance filters supported by Endpoint Management, see Network Access Control.

**Integrating with Citrix Gateway and Citrix ADC**

January 23, 2019

When integrated with Endpoint Management, Citrix Gateway provides an authentication mechanism for remote device access to the internal network for MAM devices. The integration enables Citrix mobile productivity apps to connect to corporate servers in the intranet through a micro VPN created from the apps on the mobile device to Citrix Gateway.

Citrix Cloud Operations manages Citrix ADC load balancing.

**Integration requirements for Endpoint Management server modes**

The integration requirements for Citrix Gateway and Citrix ADC differ based on the Endpoint Management server modes: MAM, MDM, and ENT.

**MAM**

With the Endpoint Management server in MAM mode:

- Citrix Gateway is required. Citrix Gateway provides a micro VPN path for access to all corporate resources and provides strong multi-factor authentication support.

**MDM**

With the Endpoint Management server in MDM mode:

- Citrix Gateway isn’t required. For MDM deployments, Citrix recommends Citrix Gateway for mobile device VPN.

**ENT (MAM+MDM)**

With the Endpoint Management server in ENT mode:

- Citrix Gateway is required. Citrix Gateway provides a micro VPN path for access to all corporate resources and provides strong multi-factor authentication support.
When the Endpoint Management server mode is ENT and a user opts out of MDM enrollment, devices enroll using the Citrix Gateway FQDN.

**Design Decisions**

The following sections summarize the many design decisions to consider when planning a Citrix Gateway integration with Endpoint Management.

**Certificates**

Decision detail:
- Do you require a higher degree of security for enrollments and access to the Endpoint Management environment?
- Is LDAP not an option?

Design guidance:
The default configuration for Endpoint Management is user name and password authentication. To add another layer of security for enrollment and access to Endpoint Management environment, consider using certificate-based authentication. You can use certificates with LDAP for two-factor authentication, providing a higher degree of security without needing an RSA server.

If you don’t allow LDAP and use smart cards or similar methods, configuring certificates allows you to represent a smart card to Endpoint Management. Users then enroll using a unique PIN that Endpoint Management generates for them. After a user has access, Endpoint Management creates and deploys the certificate subsequently used to authenticate to the Endpoint Management environment.

Endpoint Management supports Certificate Revocation List (CRL) only for a third party Certificate Authority. If you have a Microsoft CA configured, Endpoint Management uses Citrix Gateway to manage revocation. When you configure client certificate-based authentication, consider whether you need to configure the Citrix Gateway Certificate Revocation List (CRL) setting, **Enable CRL Auto Refresh**. This step ensures that the user of a device in MAM-only mode can’t authenticate using an existing certificate on the device; Endpoint Management re-issues a new certificate, because it doesn’t restrict a user from generating a user certificate if one is revoked. This setting increases the security of PKI entities when the CRL checks for expired PKI entities.

**Dedicated or shared Citrix Gateway VIPs**

Decision detail:
- Do you currently use Citrix Gateway for Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops?
• Will Endpoint Management leverage the same Citrix Gateway as Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops?
• What are the authentication requirements for both traffic flows?

Design guidance:

When your Citrix environment includes Endpoint Management, plus Virtual Apps and Desktops, you can use the same Citrix Gateway virtual server for both. Due to potential versioning conflicts and environment isolation, a dedicated Citrix Gateway is recommended for each Endpoint Management environment.

If you use LDAP authentication, Citrix Workspace and Secure Hub can authenticate to the same Citrix Gateway with no issues. If you use certificate-based authentication, Endpoint Management pushes a certificate in the MDX container and Secure Hub uses the certificate to authenticate with Citrix Gateway. The Workspace app is separate from Secure Hub and can’t use the same certificate as Secure Hub to authenticate to the same Citrix Gateway.

You might consider this work around, which allows you to use the same FQDN for two Citrix Gateway VIPs. You can create two Citrix Gateway VIPs with the same IP address, but the one for Secure Hub uses the standard 443 port and the one for Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops (which deploys the Citrix Workspace app) uses port 444. Then, one FQDN resolves to the same IP address. For this workaround, you might need to configure StoreFront to return an ICA file for port 444, instead of the default, port 443. This workaround doesn’t require users to enter a port number.

**Citrix Gateway time-outs**

Decision detail:

• How do you want to configure the Citrix Gateway time-outs for Endpoint Management traffic?

Design guidance:

Citrix Gateway includes the settings Session time-out and Forced time-out. For details, see Recommended configurations. Keep in mind that there are different time-out values for background services, Citrix Gateway, and for accessing applications while offline.

**Enrollment FQDN**

| Important: |
| To change the enrollment FQDN requires a new SQL Server database and Endpoint Management server re-build. |
Secure Web traffic

Decision detail:

• Will you restrict Secure Web to internal web browsing only?
• Will you enable Secure Web for both internal and external web browsing?

Design guidance:

If you will use Secure Web for internal web browsing only, Citrix Gateway configuration is straightforward, assuming that Secure Web can reach all internal sites by default; you might need to configure firewalls and proxy servers.

If you will use Secure Web for both internal and external browsing, you must enable the SNIP to have outbound internet access. Because IT generally views enrolled devices (using the MDX container) as an extension of the corporate network, IT typically wants Secure Web connections to come back to Citrix Gateway, go through a proxy server, and then go out to Internet. By default, Secure Web access tunnels to the internal network, which means that Secure Web uses a per-application VPN tunnel back to the internal network for all network access and Citrix Gateway uses split tunnel settings.

For a discussion of Secure Web connections, see Configuring User Connections.

Push Notifications for Secure Mail

Decision detail:

• Will you use push notifications?

Design guidance for iOS:

If your Citrix Gateway configuration includes Secure Ticket Authority (STA) and split tunneling is off, Citrix Gateway must allow traffic from Secure Mail to the Citrix listener service URLs specified in Push Notifications for Secure Mail for iOS.

Design guidance for Android:

Use Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM) to control how and when Android devices need to connect to Endpoint Management. With FCM configured, any security action or deploy command triggers a push notification to Secure Hub to prompt the user to reconnect to the Endpoint Management server.

HDX STAs

Decision detail:

• What STAs to use if you will integrate HDX application access?
Design guidance:

HDX STAs must match the STAs in StoreFront and must be valid for the Virtual Apps and Desktops site.

**Citrix Files and Citrix Content Collaboration**

Decision detail:

- Will you use StorageZone Controllers in the environment?
- What Citrix Files VIP URL will you use?

Design guidance:

If you will include StorageZone Controllers in your environment, ensure that you correctly configure the following: Citrix Files Content Switch VIP (used by the Citrix Files Control Plane to communicate with the StorageZone Controller servers), Citrix Files Load Balancing VIPs, and all required policies and profiles. For information, see the Citrix StorageZones Controller documentation.

**SAML IdP**

Decision detail:

- If SAML is required for Citrix Files, do you want to use Endpoint Management as the SAML IdP?

Design guidance:

The recommended best practice is to integrate Citrix Files with Endpoint Management, a simpler alternative to configuring SAML-based federation. When you use Citrix Files with those Endpoint Management, Endpoint Management provides Citrix Files with single sign-on (SSO) authentication of Citrix mobile productivity apps users, user account provisioning based on Active Directory, and comprehensive access control policies. The Endpoint Management console enables you to perform Citrix Files configuration and to monitor service levels and license usage.

Note that there are two types of Citrix Files clients: Citrix Files for Endpoint Management (also referred to as wrapped Citrix Files) and Citrix Files mobile clients (also referred to as unwrapped Citrix Files). To understand the differences, see [How Citrix Files for Endpoint Management Clients differ from Citrix Files mobile clients](#).

You can configure Endpoint Management and Citrix Files to use SAML to provide SSO access to Citrix Files mobile apps you wrap with the MDX Service, as well as to non-wrapped Citrix Files clients, such as the web site, Outlook plugin, or sync clients.

If you want to use Endpoint Management as the SAML IdP for Citrix Files, ensure that the proper configurations are in place. For details, see [SAML for SSO with Citrix Files](#).
ShareConnect direct connections

Decision detail:

- Will users access a host computer from a computer or mobile device running ShareConnect using direct connections?

Design guidance:

ShareConnect enables users to connect securely to their computers through iPads, Android tablets, and Android phones to access their files and applications. For direct connections, Endpoint Management uses Citrix Gateway to provide secure access to resources outside of the local network. For configuration details, see ShareConnect.

Enrollment FQDN for each deployment type

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deployment type</th>
<th>Enrollment FQDN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise (MDM+MAM) with mandatory MDM enrollment</td>
<td>Endpoint Management server FQDN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise (MDM+MAM) with optional MDM enrollment</td>
<td>Endpoint Management server FQDN or Citrix Gateway FQDN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDM only</td>
<td>Endpoint Management server FQDN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAM-only (legacy)</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway FQDN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAM-only</td>
<td>Endpoint Management server FQDN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Deployment Summary

Citrix recommends that you use the NetScaler for XenMobile wizard to ensure proper configuration. Be aware that you can use the wizard only one time. If you have multiple Endpoint Management instances, such as for test, development, and production environments, you must configure Citrix Gateway for the additional environments manually. When you have a working environment, take note of the settings before attempting to configure Citrix Gateway manually for Endpoint Management.

The key decision you make when using the wizard is whether to use HTTPS or HTTP for communication to the Endpoint Management server. HTTPS provides secure back-end communication, as traffic between Citrix Gateway and Endpoint Management is encrypted; the re-encryption impacts Endpoint Management server performance. HTTP provides better Endpoint Management server performance; traffic between Citrix Gateway and Endpoint Management is not encrypted. The following tables show
Citrix Endpoint Management

the HTTP and HTTPS port requirements for Citrix Gateway and Endpoint Management server.

**HTTPS**

Citrix typically recommends SSL Bridge for Citrix Gateway MDM virtual server configurations. For Citrix Gateway SSL Offload use with MDM virtual servers, Endpoint Management supports only port 80 as the backend service.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deployment type</th>
<th>Citrix Gateway load balancing method</th>
<th>SSL re-encryption</th>
<th>Endpoint Management server port</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MDM</td>
<td>SSL Bridge</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>443, 8443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAM</td>
<td>SSL Offload</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>8443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise</td>
<td>MDM: SSL Bridge</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>443, 8443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise</td>
<td>MAM: SSL Offload</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>8443</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**HTTP**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deployment type</th>
<th>Citrix Gateway load balancing method</th>
<th>SSL re-encryption</th>
<th>Endpoint Management server port</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MDM</td>
<td>SSL Offload</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAM</td>
<td>SSL Offload</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>8443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise</td>
<td>MDM: SSL Offload</td>
<td>Not supported</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enterprise</td>
<td>MAM: SSL Offload</td>
<td>Enabled</td>
<td>8443</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For diagrams of Citrix Gateway in Endpoint Management deployments, see Architecture.

**SSO and proxy considerations for MDX apps**

January 24, 2019
Endpoint Management integration with Citrix Gateway enables you to provide users with single sign-on (SSO) to all backend HTTP/HTTPS resources. Depending on your SSO authentication requirements, you can configure user connections for an MDX app to use either of these options:

- Secure Browse (Tunneled - Web SSO), which is a type of clientless VPN
- Full VPN Tunnel

Important:
The MDX Toolkit version 18.12.0 release included new policies that combined or replaced older policies.
The Network Access policy combines Network access, Preferred VPN mode, and Permit VPN mode switching. The Exclusion list policy replaces Split tunnel exclusion list. The micro VPN session required policy replaces micro VPN session required. For details, see What’s new in the MDX Toolkit 18.12.0.

Tunneled - Web SSO is the name for Secure Browse in the settings. The behavior is the same.

If Citrix Gateway isn’t the best way to provide SSO in your environment, you can set up an MDX app with policy-based local password caching. This article explores the various SSO and proxy options, with a focus on Secure Web. The concepts apply to other MDX apps.

The following flow chart summarizes the decision flow for SSO and user connections.
Determine the SSO method to use for Citrix Gateway

New Citrix Gateway

Determine the authentication method supported by back-end apps

Verify that Citrix Secure Web supports the authentication method you want to use

Configure Citrix Gateway for the chosen authentication method

Existing Citrix Gateway

Determine the authentication method configured for Citrix Gateway

Do the back-end apps and Citrix Secure Web support that authentication method?

No

Consider changing your Citrix Gateway configuration or using a new, dedicated one for Endpoint Management

Yes

Determine the user connection type

Secure Browse

- Recommended
- Provides SSO through Citrix Gateway to HTTP and HTTPS sites.
- Citrix Secure Web does not prompt for credentials.

Full VPN Tunnel

- Required if end-to-end connections from Citrix Secure Web to an app server is required, such as for certificate authentication to an internal web server.
- Provides SSO through Citrix Gateway to HTTP and HTTPS sites.
- Citrix Secure Web does not prompt for credentials.

Full VPN Tunnel with PAC

- Applies only to Citrix Secure Web on iOS and Android devices.

For HTTP sites:
- Provides SSO through Citrix Gateway.
- Citrix Secure Web does not prompt for credentials.

For HTTPS sites:
- Does not support SSO through Citrix Gateway.
- Use Citrix Secure Web MDX policy "Enable web password caching" instead. Citrix Secure Web will prompt for credentials on first access of a website or after a password change.
**Citrix Gateway authentication methods**

This section provides general information about the authentication methods supported by Citrix Gateway.

**SAML authentication**

When you configure Citrix Gateway for Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML), users can connect to web apps that support the SAML protocol for single sign-on. Citrix Gateway supports the identity provider (IdP) single sign-on for SAML web apps.

Required configuration:

- Configure SAML SSO in the Citrix Gateway Traffic profile.
- Configure the SAML iDP for the requested service.

**NTLM authentication**

If SSO to web apps is enabled in the session profile, Citrix Gateway performs NTLM authentication automatically.

Required configuration:

- Enable SSO in the Citrix Gateway Session or Traffic profile.

**Kerberos impersonation**

Endpoint Management supports Kerberos for Secure Web only. When you configure Citrix Gateway for Kerberos SSO, Citrix Gateway uses impersonation when a user password is available to Citrix Gateway. Impersonation means that Citrix Gateway uses user credentials to get the ticket required to gain access to services, such as Secure Web.

Required configuration:

- Configure the Citrix Gateway “Worx” Session policy to allow it to identify the Kerberos Realm from your connection.
- Configure a Kerberos Constrained Delegation (KCD) account on Citrix Gateway. Configure that account with no password and bind it to a traffic policy on your Endpoint Management gateway.
- For those and other configuration details, see the Citrix blog: WorxWeb and Kerberos Impersonation SSO.
Kerberos Constrained Delegation

Endpoint Management supports Kerberos for Secure Web only. When you configure Citrix Gateway for Kerberos SSO, Citrix Gateway uses constrained delegation when a user password is not available to Citrix Gateway.

With constrained delegation, Citrix Gateway uses a specified administrator account to get tickets on behalf of users and services.

Required configuration:

- Configure a KCD account in Active Directory with the required permissions and a KDC account on Citrix Gateway.
- Enable SSO in the Citrix Gateway Traffic profile.
- Configure the back-end website for Kerberos authentication.
- For those and other configuration details, see the Citrix blog, Configuring Kerberos Single Sign-on for WorxWeb.

Form Fill Authentication

When you configure Citrix Gateway for Form-based single sign-on, users can log on one time to access all protected apps in your network. This authentication method applies to apps that use Tunneled - Web SSO or Full VPN modes.

Required configuration:

- Configure Form-based SSO in the Citrix Gateway Traffic profile.

Digest HTTP authentication

If you enable SSO to web apps in the session profile, Citrix Gateway performs digest HTTP authentication automatically. This authentication method applies to apps that use Tunneled - Web SSO or Full VPN modes.

Required configuration:

- Enable SSO in the Citrix Gateway Session or Traffic profile.

Basic HTTP authentication

If you enable SSO to web apps in the session profile, Citrix Gateway performs basic HTTP authentication automatically. This authentication method applies to apps that use Tunneled - Web SSO or Full VPN modes.

Required configuration:
Enabling SSO in the Citrix Gateway Session or Traffic profile.

**Secure Tunneled - Web SSO, Full VPN Tunnel, or Full VPN Tunnel with PAC**

The following sections describe the user connection types for Secure Web.

**Full VPN Tunnel**

Connections that tunnel to the internal network can use a full VPN tunnel. Use the Secure Web Preferred VPN mode policy to configure full VPN tunnel. Citrix recommends Full VPN tunnel for connections that use client certificates or end-to-end SSL to a resource in the internal network. Full VPN tunnel handles any protocol over TCP. You can use full VPN tunnel with Windows, Mac, iOS, and Android devices.

In Full VPN Tunnel mode, Citrix Gateway does not have visibility inside an HTTPS session.

**Tunneled - Web SSO**

Connections that tunnel to the internal network can use a variation of a clientless VPN, referred to as Tunneled - Web SSO. Tunneled - Web SSO is the default configuration specified for the Secure Web Preferred VPN mode policy. Citrix recommends Tunneled - Web SSO for connections that require single sign-on (SSO).

In Tunneled - Web SSO mode, Citrix Gateway breaks the HTTPS session into two parts:

- From the client to Citrix Gateway
- From Citrix Gateway to the back-end resource server.

In this manner, Citrix Gateway has full visibility into all transactions between the client and server, enabling it to provide SSO.

You can also configure proxy servers for Secure Web when used in Tunneled - Web SSO mode. For details, see the blog [Endpoint Management WorxWeb Traffic Through Proxy Server in Secure Browse Mode](#).

**Full VPN Tunnel with PAC**

You can use a Proxy Automatic Configuration (PAC) file with a full VPN tunnel deployment for Secure Web on iOS and Android devices. Endpoint Management supports proxy authentication provided by Citrix Gateway. A PAC file contains rules that define how web browsers select a proxy to access a given URL. PAC file rules can specify handling for both internal and external sites. Secure Web parses PAC.
file rules and sends the proxy server information to Citrix Gateway. Citrix Gateway is unaware of the PAC file or proxy server.

For authentication to HTTPS web sites: The Secure Web MDX policy, Enable web password caching, enables Secure Web to authenticate and provide SSO to the proxy server through MDX.

**Citrix Gateway Split Tunneling**

When planning your SSO and proxy configuration, you must also decide whether to use Citrix Gateway split tunneling. Citrix recommends that you use Citrix Gateway split tunneling only if needed. This section provides a high-level look at how split tunneling works: Citrix Gateway determines the traffic path based on its routing table. When Citrix Gateway split tunneling is on, Secure Hub distinguishes internal (protected) network traffic from Internet traffic. Secure Hub makes that determination based on the DNS suffix and Intranet applications. Secure Hub then tunnels only the internal network traffic through the VPN tunnel. When Citrix Gateway split tunneling is off, all traffic goes through the VPN tunnel.

- If you prefer to monitor all the traffic due to security considerations, turn off Citrix Gateway split tunneling. As a result, all traffic goes through the VPN tunnel.
- If you use Full VPN Tunnel with PAC, you must disable Citrix Gateway split tunneling. If split tunneling is on and you configure a PAC file, the PAC file rules override the Citrix Gateway split tunneling rules. A proxy server configured in a traffic policy does not override Citrix Gateway split tunneling rules.

By default, the **Network access** policy is set to Tunneled to the internal network for Secure Web. With that configuration, MDX apps use Citrix Gateway split tunnel settings. The **Network access** policy default differs for some other Citrix mobile productivity apps.

Citrix Gateway also has a micro VPN reverse split tunnel mode. This configuration supports an exclusion list of IP addresses that aren’t tunneled to the Citrix Gateway. Instead, those addresses are sent by using the device internet connection. For more information about reverse split tunneling, see the Citrix Gateway documentation.

Endpoint Management includes a **Reverse split tunnel exclusion list**. To prevent certain websites from tunneling through Citrix Gateway: Add a comma-separated list of fully qualified domain names (FQDN) or DNS suffixes that connect by using the local area network (LAN) instead. This list applies only to Tunneled - Web SSO mode with Citrix Gateway configured for reverse split tunneling.

**Authentication**

January 24, 2019
In an Endpoint Management deployment, several considerations come into play when deciding how to configure authentication. This section will help you understand the various factors that affect authentication by discussing the following:

- The main MDX policies, Endpoint Management client properties and Citrix Gateway settings involved with authentication.
- The ways these policies, client properties, and settings interact.
- The tradeoffs of each choice.

This article also includes three examples of recommended configurations for increasing degrees of security.

Broadly speaking, stronger security results in a less-optimal user experience, because users have to authenticate more often. How you balance those concerns depends on your organization’s needs and priorities. By reviewing the three recommended configurations, you should gain a greater understanding of the interplay of authentication measures available to you, and how to best deploy your own Endpoint Management environment.

### Authentication Modes

**Online authentication:** Allows users into the Endpoint Management network. Requires an Internet connection.

**Offline authentication:** Happens on the device. Users unlock the secure vault and have offline access to items, such as downloaded mail, cached websites, and notes.

### Methods of Authentication

#### Single Factor

**LDAP:** You can configure a connection in Endpoint Management to one or more directories, such as Active Directory that are compliant with the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP). This is a commonly used method to provide single sign-on (SSO) for company environments. You might opt for Citrix PIN with Active Directory password caching to improve the user experience with LDAP while still providing the security of complex passwords on enrollment, password expiration, and account lockout.

For more details, see Domain or domain plus STA.

**Client certificate:** Endpoint Management can integrate with industry-standard certificate authorities to use certificates as the sole method of online authentication. Endpoint Management provides this certificate after user enrollment, which requires either a one-time password, invitation URL, or LDAP credentials. When using a client certificate as the primary method of authentication, a Citrix PIN is required in client certificate-only environments to secure the certificate on the device.
Endpoint Management supports Certificate Revocation List (CRL) only for a third-party Certificate Authority. If you have a Microsoft CA configured, Endpoint Management uses Citrix Gateway to manage revocation. When you configure client certificate-based authentication, consider whether you need to configure the Citrix Gateway Certificate Revocation List (CRL) setting, Enable CRL Auto Refresh. This step ensures that the user of a device in MAM-only mode can’t authenticate using an existing certificate on the device; Endpoint Management re-issues a new certificate, because it doesn’t restrict a user from generating a user certificate if one is revoked. This setting increases the security of PKI entities when the CRL checks for expired PKI entities.

For a diagram that shows the deployment needed if you plan to use certificate-based authentication for users or if you need to use your enterprise Certificate Authority (CA) for issuing device certificates, see Architecture.

Two Factor

LDAP + Client Certificate: In the Endpoint Management environment, this configuration is the best combination of security and user experience, with the best SSO possibilities coupled with security provided by two-factor authentication at Citrix Gateway. Using both LDAP and client certificate provides security with both something users know (their Active Directory passwords) and something they have (client certificates on their devices). Secure Mail (and some other Citrix mobile productivity apps) can automatically configure and provide a seamless first-time user experience with client certificate authentication, with a properly configured Exchange client access server environment. For optimal usability, you can combine this option with Citrix PIN and Active Directory password caching.

LDAP + Token: This configuration allows for the classic configuration of LDAP credentials, plus a one-time password, using the RADIUS protocol. For optimal usability, you can combine this option with Citrix PIN and Active Directory password caching.

Important Policies, Settings and Client Properties Involved in Authentication

The following policies, settings, and client properties come into play with the following three recommended configurations:

MDX policies

App passcode: If On, a Citrix PIN or passcode is required to unlock the app when it starts or resumes after a period of inactivity. Default is On.

To configure the inactivity timer for all apps, set the INACTIVITY_TIMER value in minutes in the Endpoint Management console in Client Properties on the Settings tab. The default is 15 minutes. To disable the inactivity timer, so that a PIN or passcode prompt appears only when the app starts, set the value to zero.
Note:
If you select Secure offline for the Encryption keys policy, this policy is automatically enabled.

**micro VPN session required:** If On, the user must have a connection to the enterprise network and an active session in order to access the app on the device. If Off, an active session is not required to access the app on the device. Default is Off.

**Maximum offline period (hours):** Defines the maximum period an app can run without reconfirming app entitlement and refreshing policies from Endpoint Management. When you set the Maximum offline period, if Secure Hub for iOS has a valid Citrix Gateway token, the app retrieves new policies for MDX apps from Endpoint Management without any interruption to users. If Secure Hub does not have a valid Citrix Gateway token, users must authenticate through Secure Hub in order for app policies to update. The Citrix Gateway token may become invalid due to a Citrix Gateway session inactivity or a forced session time-out policy. When users sign on to Secure Hub again, they can continue running the app.

Users are reminded to sign on at 30, 15, and 5 minutes before the period expires. After expiration, the app is locked until users sign on. Default is **72 hours (3 days)**. Minimum period is 1 hour.

Note:
Keep in mind that in a scenario in which users travel often and may use international roaming, the default of 72 hours (3 days) may be too short.

**Background services ticket expiration:** The time period that a background network service ticket remains valid. When Secure Mail connects through Citrix Gateway to an Exchange Server running ActiveSync, Endpoint Management issues a token that Secure Mail uses to connect to the internal Exchange Server. This property setting determines the duration that Secure Mail can use the token without requiring a new token for authentication and the connection to the Exchange Server. When the time limit expires, users must log on again to generate a new token. Default is **168 hours (7 days)**. When this time-out expires, mail notifications will discontinue.

**micro VPN session required grace period:** Determines how many minutes a user can use the app offline before the micro VPN session required policy prevents them from further use (until the online session is validated). Default is 0 (no grace period).

For more information about MDX Toolkit authentication policies, see [Endpoint Management MDX Policies for iOS](#) and [Endpoint Management MDX Policies for Android](#).

**Endpoint Management client properties**

Note:
Client properties are a global setting that apply to all devices that connect to Endpoint Manage-
Citrix Endpoint Management

Citrix PIN: For a simple sign-on experience, you might choose to enable the Citrix PIN. With the PIN, users do not have to enter other credentials repeatedly, such as their Active Directory user names and passwords. You can configure the Citrix PIN as a standalone offline authentication only, or combine the PIN with Active Directory password caching to streamline authentication for optimal usability. You configure the Citrix PIN in Settings > Client > Client Properties in the Endpoint Management console.

Following is a summary of a few important properties. For more information, see Client properties.

ENABLE_PASSCODE_AUTH

Display name: EnableCitrix PIN Authentication

This key allows you to turn on Citrix PIN functionality. With the Citrix PIN or passcode, users are prompted to define a PIN to use instead of their Active Directory password. You should enable this setting if ENABLE_PASSWORD_CACHING is enabled or if Endpoint Management is using certificate authentication.

Possible values: true or false

Default value: false

ENABLE_PASSWORD_CACHING

Display name: Enable User Password Caching

This key lets you allow the users’ Active Directory password to be cached locally on the mobile device. When you set this key to true, users are prompted to set a Citrix PIN or passcode. The ENABLE_PASSCODE_AUTH key must be set to true when you set this key to true.

Possible values: true or false

Default value: false

PASSCODE_STRENGTH

Display name: PIN Strength Requirement

This key defines the strength of the Citrix PIN or passcode. When you change this setting, users are prompted to set a new Citrix PIN or passcode the next time they are prompted to authenticate.

Possible values: Low, Medium, or Strong

Default value: Medium

INACTIVITY_TIMER

Display name: Inactivity timer

This key defines the time in minutes that users can leave their devices inactive and then access an app without being prompted for a Citrix PIN or passcode. To enable this setting for an MDX app, you must set the App Passcode setting to On. If the App Passcode setting is set to Off, users are redirected to
Secure Hub to perform a full authentication. When you change this setting, the value takes effect the next time users are prompted to authenticate. The default is 15 minutes.

ENABLE_TOUCH_ID_AUTH

**Display name:** Enable Touch ID Authentication

Allows the use of the fingerprint reader (in iOS only) for offline authentication. Online authentication will still require the primary authentication method.

ENCRYPT_SECRETS_USING_PASSCODE

**Display name:** Encrypt secrets using Passcode

This key lets sensitive data be stored on the mobile device in a secret vault instead of in a platform-based native store, such as the iOS keychain. This configuration key enables strong encryption of key artifacts, but also adds user entropy (a user-generated random PIN code that only the user knows).

**Possible values:** true or false

**Default value:** false

Citrix Gateway Settings

**Session time-out:** If you enable this setting, Citrix Gateway disconnects the session if Citrix Gateway detects no network activity for the specified interval. This setting is enforced for users who connect with the Citrix Gateway Plug-in, Citrix Workspace, Secure Hub, or through a web browser. Default is 1440 minutes. If you set this value to zero, the setting is disabled.

**Forced time-out:** If you enable this setting, Citrix Gateway disconnects the session after the time-out interval elapses no matter what the user is doing. When the time-out interval elapses, there is no action the user can take to prevent the disconnection. This setting is enforced for users who connect with the Citrix Gateway Plug-in, Citrix Workspace, Secure Hub, or through a web browser. If Secure Mail is using STA, a special Citrix Gateway mode, the Forced time-out setting does not apply to Secure Mail sessions. Default is no value, which means sessions will be extended if there’s any activity.

For more information about time-out settings in Citrix Gateway, see the Citrix Gateway documentation.

For more information on the scenarios that prompt users to authenticate with Endpoint Management by entering credentials on their devices, see Authentication Prompt Scenarios.

**Default configuration settings**

These settings are the defaults provided by the NetScaler for XenMobile wizard, by the MDX Service or MDX Toolkit, and in the Endpoint Management console.
### Recommended Configurations

This section gives examples of three Endpoint Management configurations that range from lowest security and optimal user experience, to the highest security and more intrusive user experience. These examples should provide you with helpful reference points to determine where on the scale you want to place your own configuration. Be aware that modifying these settings may require you to alter other settings as well. For instance, the maximum offline period should always be less than the session time-out.
Highest Security

This configuration offers the highest level of security but contains significant usability trade-offs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Where to Find the Setting</th>
<th>Recommended Setting</th>
<th>Behavior Impact</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Session time-out</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway</td>
<td>1440</td>
<td>Users enter their Secure Hub credentials only when online authentication is required—every 24 hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forced time-out</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway</td>
<td>No value</td>
<td>Sessions will be extended if there's any activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum offline period</td>
<td>MDX Policies</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>Requires policy refresh every day.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Background services</td>
<td>MDX Policies</td>
<td>72 hours</td>
<td>Time out for STA, which allows for long-lived sessions without a Citrix Gateway session token. In the case of Secure Mail, making the STA time-out longer than the session time-out avoids having mail notifications stop without prompting the user if they don’t open the app before the session expires.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>micro VPN session</td>
<td>MDX Policies</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Ensures a valid network connection and Citrix Gateway session to use apps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>required</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Property</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>micro VPN session required grace period</td>
<td>MDX Policies</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>No grace period (if you enabled micro VPN session required).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App passcode</td>
<td>MDX Policies</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Require passcode for application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encrypt secrets using passcode</td>
<td>Endpoint Management client properties</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>A key derived from user entropy protects the vault.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Citrix PIN Authentication</td>
<td>Endpoint Management client properties</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Enable Citrix PIN for simplified authentication experience.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIN Strength Requirement</td>
<td>Endpoint Management client properties</td>
<td>Strong</td>
<td>High password complexity requirements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIN Type</td>
<td>Endpoint Management client properties</td>
<td>Alphanumeric</td>
<td>PIN is an alphanumeric sequence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Password Caching</td>
<td>Endpoint Management client properties</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Active Directory password is not cached and Citrix PIN will be used for offline authentications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inactivity Timer</td>
<td>Endpoint Management client properties</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>If user does not use MDX apps or Secure Hub for this period of time, prompt for offline authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Touch ID Authentication</td>
<td>Endpoint Management client properties</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Disables Touch ID for offline authentication use cases in iOS.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Higher Security**

A more middle-of-the-road approach, this configuration requires users to authenticate more often - every 3 days, at most, instead of 7 - and stronger security. The increased number of authentications lock the container more often, ensuring data security when devices aren’t in use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Where to Find the Setting</th>
<th>Recommended Setting</th>
<th>Behavior Impact</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Session time-out</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway</td>
<td>4320</td>
<td>Users enter their Secure Hub credentials only when online authentication is required - every 3 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forced time-out</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway</td>
<td>No value</td>
<td>Sessions will be extended if there's any activity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum offline period</td>
<td>MDX Policies</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>Requires policy refresh every 3 days. The hour difference is to allow for refresh ahead of session time-out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Policy</td>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Background services ticket expiration</td>
<td>MDX Policies</td>
<td>168 hours</td>
<td>Time out for STA, which allows for long-lived sessions without a Citrix Gateway session token. In the case of Secure Mail, making the STA time-out longer than the session time-out avoids having mail notifications stop without prompting the user if they don’t open the app before the session expires.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>micro VPN session required</td>
<td>MDX Policies</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Ensures a valid network connection and Citrix Gateway session to use apps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>micro VPN session required grace period</td>
<td>MDX Policies</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>No grace period (if you enabled micro VPN session required).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App passcode</td>
<td>MDX Policies</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Require passcode for application.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encrypt secrets using passcode</td>
<td>Endpoint Management client properties</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>Do not require user entropy to encrypt the vault.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Citrix PIN Authentication</td>
<td>Endpoint Management client properties</td>
<td>true</td>
<td>Enable Citrix PIN for simplified authentication experience.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIN Strength Requirement</td>
<td>Endpoint Management client properties</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Enforces medium password complexity rules.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PIN Type | Endpoint Management client properties | Numeric | PIN is a numeric sequence.
---|---|---|---
Enable Password Caching | Endpoint Management client properties | true | The user PIN caches and protects the Active Directory password.
Inactivity Timer | Endpoint Management client properties | 30 | If user does not use MDX apps or Secure Hub for this period of time, prompt for offline authentication.
Enable Touch ID Authentication | Endpoint Management client properties | true | Enables Touch ID for offline authentication use cases in iOS.

**High Security**

This configuration, the most convenient to users, provides base-level security.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Where to Find the Setting</th>
<th>Recommended Setting</th>
<th>Behavior Impact</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Session time-out</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway</td>
<td>10080</td>
<td>Users enter their Secure Hub credentials only when online authentication is required - every 7 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forced time-out</td>
<td>Citrix Gateway</td>
<td>No value</td>
<td>Sessions will be extended if there’s any activity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Maximum offline period

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy</th>
<th>MDX Policies</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Requires policy refresh every week (every 7 days). The hour difference is to allow for refresh ahead of session time-out.</td>
<td>167</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Background services ticket expiration

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy</th>
<th>MDX Policies</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time out for STA, which allows for long-lived sessions without a Citrix Gateway session token. In the case of Secure Mail, making the STA time-out longer than the session time-out avoids having mail notifications stop without prompting the user if they don’t open the app before the session expires.</td>
<td>240</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### micro VPN session required

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy</th>
<th>MDX Policies</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ensures a valid network connection and Citrix Gateway session to use apps.</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### micro VPN session required grace period

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy</th>
<th>MDX Policies</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No grace period (if you enabled micro VPN session required).</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### App passcode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy</th>
<th>MDX Policies</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Require passcode for application.</td>
<td>On</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Encrypt secrets using passcode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy</th>
<th>Endpoint Management client properties</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Do not require user entropy to encrypt the vault.</td>
<td>false</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Citrix Endpoint Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Endpoint Management client properties</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enable Citrix PIN Authentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enable Citrix PIN for simplified authentication experience.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIN Strength Requirement</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td></td>
<td>No password complexity requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIN Type</td>
<td>Numeric</td>
<td></td>
<td>PIN is a numeric sequence.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Password Caching</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
<td>The user PIN caches and protects the Active Directory password.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inactivity Timer</td>
<td>90</td>
<td></td>
<td>If user does not use MDX apps or Secure Hub for this period of time, prompt for offline authentication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enable Touch ID Authentication</td>
<td>true</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enables Touch ID for offline authentication use cases in iOS.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Using Step-Up Authentication**

Some apps may require enhanced authentication (for example, a secondary authentication factor, such as a token or aggressive session time-outs). You control this authentication method through an MDX policy. The method also requires a separate virtual server to control the authentication methods (on either the same or on separate Citrix Gateway appliances).
If a user opens an app that logs on to the alternate Citrix Gateway instance, all other apps will use that Citrix Gateway instance for communicating with the internal network. The session will only switch back to the lower security Citrix Gateway instance when the session times out from the Citrix Gateway instance with enhanced security.

**Using micro VPN session required**

For certain applications, such as Secure Web, you may want to ensure that users run an app only when they have an authenticated session and while the device is connected to a network. This policy enforces that option and allows for a grace period so users can finish their work.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Where to Find the Setting</th>
<th>Recommended Setting</th>
<th>Behavior Impact</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>micro VPN session required</td>
<td>MDX Policies</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Ensures device is online and has a valid authentication token.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>micro VPN session required grace period</td>
<td>MDX Policies</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Allows a 15-minute grace period before the user can no longer use apps.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Server properties**

November 5, 2018

Server properties are global properties that apply to operations, users, and devices across an entire Endpoint Management instance. Citrix recommends that you evaluate for your environment the
server properties covered in this article. Be sure to consult with Citrix before changing other server properties.

**Server Property Definitions**

**Add Device Always**

- If **true**, Endpoint Management adds a device to the Endpoint Management console, even if it fails enrollment, so you can see which devices attempted to enroll. Defaults to **false**.

**AG Client Cert Issuing Throttling Interval**

- The grace period between generating certificates. This interval prevents Endpoint Management from generating multiple certificates for a device in a short time period. Citrix recommends that you don’t change this value. Defaults to **30** minutes.

**Audit Logger**

- If **False**, does not log user interface (UI) events. Defaults to **False**.

**Block Enrollment of Rooted Android and Jailbroken iOS Devices**

When this property is **true**, Endpoint Management blocks enrollments for rooted Android devices and jailbroken iOS devices. Recommended setting is **true** for all security levels. Defaults to **true**.

**Certificate Renewal in Seconds**

- The number of seconds before a certificate expires that Endpoint Management starts to renew certificates. For example, if a certificate will expire December 30 and this property is set to 30 days: If the device connects between December 1 and December 30, Endpoint Management attempts to renew the certificate. Defaults to **2592000** seconds (30 days).

**Connection Timeout**

- The session inactivity timeout, in minutes, after which Endpoint Management closes the TCP connection to a device. The session remains open. Applies to Android and Windows CE devices. Defaults to **5** minutes.
Default deployment channel

- Determines how Endpoint Management deploys a resource to a device: At the user-level (DEFAULT_TO_USER) or device-level. Defaults to DEFAULT_TODEVICE.

Disable Hostname Verification

- By default, hostname verification is enabled on outgoing connections except for the Microsoft PKI server. When hostname verification fails, the server log includes errors such as: “Unable to connect to the VPP Server: Host name ‘192.0.2.0’ does not match the certificate subject provided by the peer”. If hostname verification breaks your deployment, change this property to true. Defaults to false.

Disable SSL Server Verification

- If True, disables SSL server certificate validation when all the following conditions are met:
  - You enabled certificate-based authentication on Endpoint Management
  - The Microsoft CA server is the certificate issuer
  - An internal CA, whose root Endpoint Management doesn’t trust, signed your certificate.

  Defaults to True.

Enable Console

- If true, enables user access to the Self Help Portal Console. Defaults to true.

Enable Crash Reporting

- If true, Citrix collects crash reports and diagnostics to help troubleshoot issues with Secure Hub for iOS and Android. If false, no data is collected. Default value is true.

Enable/Disable Hibernate statistics logging for diagnostics

- If True, enables Hibernate statistics logging to assist with troubleshooting application performance issues. Hibernate is a component used for Endpoint Management connections to Microsoft SQL Server. By default, the logging is disabled because it impacts application performance. Enable logging only for a short duration to avoid creating a huge log file. Endpoint Management writes the logs to /opt/sas/logs/hibernate_stats.log. Defaults to False.
Enable macOS OTAE

- If false, prevents the use of an enrollment link for macOS devices, meaning macOS users can enroll only by using an enrollment invitation. Defaults to true.

Enable Notification Trigger

- Enables or disables Secure Hub client notifications. The value true enables notifications. Defaults to true.

Enrollment required

This property, which applies only when the Endpoint Management server Mode is ENT, specifies whether you require users to enroll in MDM. The property applies to all users and devices for the Endpoint Management instance. Requiring enrollment provides a higher level of security; however, that decision depends on whether you want to require MDM. By default, enrollment is not required.

When this property is False, users can decline enrollment, but may still access apps on their devices through the app store. When this property is True, any user who declines enrollment is denied access to apps.

If you change this property after users enroll, the users must re-enroll.

force.server.push.required.apps

- Enables the forced deployment of required apps on Android and iOS devices in situations such as the following:
  - You upload a new app and mark it as required.
  - You mark an existing app as required.
  - As user deletes a required app.
  - A Secure Hub update is available.

Forced deployment of required apps is false by default. Create the custom key and set Value to true to enable forced deployment. During forced deployment, MDX-enabled required apps, including enterprise apps and public app store apps, upgrade immediately. The upgrade occurs even if you configure an MDX policy for an app update grace period and the user chooses to upgrade the app later.

- Key: Custom Key
- Key: force.server.push.required.apps
- Value: false
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Display Name: `force.server.push.required.apps`
- Description: Force required apps to deploy

**Full Pull of ActiveSync Allowed and Denied Users**

- The interval in (in seconds) that Endpoint Management pulls a complete list (baseline) of ActiveSync allowed and denied users. Defaults to 28800 seconds.

**Identifies if telemetry is enabled or not**

- Identifies if telemetry (Customer Experience Improvement Program, or CEIP) is enabled. You can opt in to CEIP when you install or upgrade Endpoint Management. If Endpoint Management has 15 consecutive failed uploads, it disables telemetry. Defaults to `false`.

**Inactivity Timeout in Minutes**

- The number of minutes after which Endpoint Management logs out an inactive user who used the Endpoint Management Public API to access the Endpoint Management console or any third-party app. A time-out value of 0 means an inactive user remains logged in. For third-party apps that access the API, remaining logged in is typically necessary. Default is 5.

- If the `WebServices timeout type` server property is `INACTIVITY_TIMEOUT`: This property defines the number of minutes after which Endpoint Management logs out an inactive administrator who did the following:
  - Used the Public API for REST Services to access the Endpoint Management console
  - Used the Public API for REST Services to access any third-party app. A timeout of 0 means that an inactive user remains logged in.

**ios.delayBeforeDeclareUnreachable; macos.delayBeforeDeclareUnreachable**

- Specifies the number of days after which an offline iOS or macOS device is considered unreachable. When an iOS or macOS device reaches the limit specified, they stop checking back with Endpoint Management. Both properties default to 45 days.

**iOS Device Management Enrollment Auto-Install Enabled**

- If true, this property reduces the amount of user interaction required during device enrollment. Users must click `Root CA install` (if needed) and `MDM Profile install`.
iOS Device Management Enrollment Install Root CA if Required

- If True, Endpoint Management checks if the user has the root CA installed on the device and, if the root certificate is missing, installs it. A third-party public certificate trusted by iOS is required. Default is True.

If you are using trusted certificates and the iOS device trusts the issuer, setting this property to False improves the MDM user enrollment experience because Secure Hub doesn’t prompt the user to install another certificate and enter their PIN. However, we don’t recommend setting the property to False if you are using a self-signed SSL Listener certificate on the Endpoint Management server.

iOS Device Management Enrollment First Step Delayed

- After a user enters their credentials during device enrollment, this value specifies how long to wait before prompting for the root CA. Citrix recommends that you edit this property only for network latency or speed issues. In that case, don’t set to the value to more than 5000 milliseconds (5 seconds). Defaults to 1000 milliseconds (1 second).

iOS Device Management Enrollment Last Step Delayed

- During device enrollment, this property value specifies the amount of time to wait between installing the MDM profile and starting the Agent on the device. Citrix recommends that you edit this property only for network latency or speed issues. In that case, don’t set to the value to more than 5000 milliseconds (5 seconds). Defaults to 1000 milliseconds (1 second).

iOS Device Management Identity Delivery Mode

- Specifies whether Endpoint Management distributes the MDM certificate to devices using SCEP (recommended for security reasons) or PKCS12. In PKCS12 mode, the key pair is generated on the server and no negotiation is performed. Defaults to SCEP.

iOS Device Management Identity Key Size

- Defines the size of private keys for MDM identities, iOS profile service, and Endpoint Management iOS agent identities. Defaults to 1024.
iOS Device Management Identity Renewal Days

- Specifies the number of days before the certificate expiration that Endpoint Management starts renewing certificates. For example: If a certificate expires in 10 days and this property is 10 days, when a device connects 9 days before expiration, Endpoint Management issues a new certificate. Defaults to 30 days.

iOS MDM APNS Private Key Password

- This property contains the APNs password, which is required for Endpoint Management to push notifications to Apple servers.

Length of Inactivity Before Device Is Disconnected

- Specifies how long a device can remain inactive, including the last authentication, before Endpoint Management disconnects it. Defaults to 7 days.

MAM Only Device Max

- This Custom Key limits the number of MAM-only devices that each user can enroll. Configure the key as follows. A Value of 0 allows unlimited device enrollments.
  
  Key = number.of.mam.devices.per.user
  
  Value = 5
  
  Display name = MAM Only Device Max
  
  Description = Limits the number of MAM devices each user can enroll.

MaxNumberOfWorker

- The number of threads used when importing many VPP licenses. Defaults to 3. If you need further optimization, you can increase the number of threads. However, with a larger number of threads, such as 6, a VPP import results in very high CPU usage.

Citrix Gateway (NetScaler) Single Sign-On

- If False, disables the Endpoint Management callback feature during single sign-on from Citrix Gateway to Endpoint Management. If the Citrix Gateway configuration includes a callback URL, Endpoint Management uses the callback feature to verify the Citrix Gateway session ID. Defaults to False.
Number of consecutive failed uploads

- Displays the number of consecutive failures during Customer Experience Improvement Program (CEIP) uploads. Endpoint Management increments the value when an upload fails. After 15 upload failures, Endpoint Management disables CEIP, also called telemetry. For more information, see the server property Identifies if telemetry is enabled or not. Endpoint Management resets the value to 0 when an upload succeeds.

Number of Users Per Device

- The maximum number of users who can enroll the same device in MDM. The value 0 means that an unlimited number of users can enroll the same device. Defaults to 0.

Pull of Incremental Change of Allowed and Denied Users

- The number of seconds that Endpoint Management waits for a response from the domain when executing a PowerShell command to get a delta of ActiveSync devices. Defaults to 60 seconds.

Read Timeout to Microsoft Certification Server

- The number of seconds that Endpoint Management waits for a response from the certificate server when performing a read. If the certificate server is slow and has much traffic, you can increase this value to 60 seconds or more. A certificate server that doesn’t respond after 120 seconds requires maintenance. Defaults to 15000 milliseconds (15 seconds).

REST Web Services

- Enables the REST Web Service. Defaults to true.

Retrieves devices information in chunks of specified size

- This value is used internally for multithreading during device exports. If the value is higher, a single thread parses more devices. If the value is lower, more threads fetch the devices. Reducing the value might increase the performance of exports and device list fetches, yet might reduce available memory. Defaults to 1000.

Session Log Cleanup (in Days)

- The number of days that Endpoint Management retains the session log. Defaults to 7.
Citrix Endpoint Management

Citrix Files configuration type

- Specifies the Citrix Files storage type. **ENTERPRISE** enables Citrix Files Enterprise mode. **CONNECTORS** provides access only to StorageZone Connectors that you create through the Endpoint Management console. Defaults to **NONE**, which shows the initial view of the Configure > Citrix Files screen where you choose between Citrix Files Enterprise and Connectors. Defaults to **NONE**.

Static Timeout in Minutes

- If the **WebServices timeout type** server property is **STATIC_TIMEOUT**: This property defines the number of minutes after which Endpoint Management logs out an administrator after using the following:
  - The Public API for REST Services to access the Endpoint Management console.
  - The Public API for REST Services to access any third-party app.

  Defaults to **60**.

Trigger Agent Message Suppression

- Enables or disables Secure Hub client messaging. The value **false** enables messaging. Defaults to **true**.

Trigger Agent Sound Suppression

- Enables or disables Secure Hub client sounds. The value **false** enables sounds. Defaults to **true**.

Unauthenticated App Download for Android Devices

- If **True**, you can download self-hosted apps to Android devices running Android Enterprise. Endpoint Management needs this property if the Android Enterprise option to provide a download URL in the Google Play Store statically is enabled. In that case, download URLs can’t include a one-time ticket (defined by the **XAM One-Time Ticket server** property) which has the authentication token. Defaults to **False**.

Unauthenticated App Download for Windows Devices

- Used only for older Secure Hub versions which don’t validate one-time tickets. If **False**, you can download unauthenticated apps from Endpoint Management to Windows devices. Defaults to **False**.
Use ActiveSync ID to Conduct an ActiveSync Wipe Device

- If true, Endpoint Management connector for Exchange ActiveSync uses the ActiveSync identifier as an argument for the `asWipeDevice` method. Defaults to false.

User-Defined Device Properties N

- Used for Windows CE devices only. This custom key enables you to obtain properties that you create in the registry of Windows CE devices. After those properties are in the Endpoint Management database, you can create deployment rules based on the value of the properties.
  - Key: Custom Key
  - Key: `device.properties.userDefinedN`
  - Value: `administrator-defined`
  - Display Name: `administrator-defined`
  - Description: `administrator-defined`

Users only from Exchange

- If true, disables user authentication for ActiveSync Exchange users. Defaults to false.

VPP baseline interval

- The minimum interval that Endpoint Management reimports VPP licenses from Apple. Refreshing license information ensures that Endpoint Management reflects all changes, such as when you manually delete an imported app from VPP. By default, Endpoint Management refreshes the VPP license baseline a minimum of every 720 minutes.

If you have many VPP licenses installed (for example, more than 50,000): Citrix recommends that you increase the baseline interval to reduce the frequency and overhead of importing licenses. If you expect frequent VPP license changes from Apple: Citrix recommends that you lower the value to keep Endpoint Management updated with the changes. The minimum interval between two baselines is 60 minutes. In addition, Endpoint Management performs a delta import every 60 minutes, to capture the changes since the last import. Therefore, if the VPP baseline interval is 60 minutes, the interval between baselines might be delayed up to 119 minutes.

WebServices Timeout Type

- Specifies how to expire an authentication token retrieved from the public API. If `STATIC_TIMEOUT`, Endpoint Management considers an authentication token as expired after the value specified
in the server property **Static Timeout in Minutes**.

If **INACTIVITY_TIMEOUT**, Endpoint Management considers an authentication token as expired after the token is inactive for the value specified in the server property **Inactivity Timeout in Minutes**. Defaults to **STATIC_TIMEOUT**.

**Windows Phone MDM Certificate Extended Validity (5y)**

- The validity period of the device certificate issued by MDM for Windows Phone and Tablet. Devices use a device certificate to authenticate to the MDM server during device management. If **true**, the validity period is five years. If **false**, the validity period is two years. Defaults to **true**.

**Windows WNS Channel - Number of Days Before Renewal**

- The renewal frequency for the ChannelURI. Defaults to **10** days.

**Windows WNS Heartbeat Interval**

- How long Endpoint Management waits before connecting to a device after connecting to it every three minutes five times. Defaults to **6** hours.

**XAM One-Time Ticket**

- The number of milliseconds that a one-time authentication token (OTT) is valid for downloading an app. This property and the properties **Unauthenticated App download for Android** and **Unauthenticated App download for Windows** work together. Those properties specify whether to allow unauthenticated app downloads. Defaults to **3600000**.

**Endpoint Management MDM Self Help Portal console max inactive interval (minutes)**

- This property name reflects the older Endpoint Management versions. The property controls the Endpoint Management console max inactive interval. That interval is the number of minutes after which Endpoint Management logs an inactive user out of the Endpoint Management console. A time-out of 0 means an inactive user remains logged in. Default is **30**.

**Adding, Editing, or Deleting Server Properties**

In Endpoint Management, you can apply properties to the server.
1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The Settings page appears.

2. Under Server, click Server Properties. The Server Properties page appears. You can add, edit, or delete server properties from this page.

To add a server property

2. Configure these settings:
   - Key: In the list, select the appropriate key. Keys are case-sensitive. Contact Citrix Support before you edit property values or to request a special key.
   - Value: Enter a value depending on the key you selected.
   - Display Name: Enter a name for the new property value that appears in the Server Properties table.
   - Description: Optionally, type a description for the new server property.

3. Click Save.

To edit a server property

1. In the Server Properties table, select the server property you want to edit.

   When you select the check box next to a server property, the options menu appears above the server property list. Click anywhere else in the list to open the options menu on the right side of the listing.

2. Click Edit. The Edit New Server Property page appears.
3. Change the following information as appropriate:
   - **Key**: You cannot change this field.
   - **Value**: The property value.
   - **Display Name**: The property name.
   - **Description**: The property description.

4. Click **Save** to save your changes or **Cancel** to leave the property unchanged.

**To delete a server property**

1. In the **Server Properties** table, select the server property you want to delete.

   You can select more than one property to delete by selecting the check box next to each property.

2. Click **Delete**. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** again.

**Device and app policies**

January 24, 2019

Endpoint Management device and app policies enable you to optimize a balance between factors, such as:

- Enterprise security
Citrix Endpoint Management

- Corporate data and asset protection
- User privacy
- Productive and positive user experiences

The optimum balance between those factors can vary. For example, highly regulated organizations, such as finance, require stricter security controls than other industries, such as education and retail, in which user productivity is a primary consideration.

You can centrally control and configure policies based on users’ identity, device, location, and connectivity type to restrict malicious usage of corporate content. In the event a device is lost or stolen, you can disable, lock, or wipe business applications and data remotely. The overall result is a solution that increases employee satisfaction and productivity, while ensuring security and administrative control.

The primary focus of this article is the many device and app policies related to security.

**Policies that address security risks**

Endpoint Management device and app policies address many situations that may pose a security risk, such as the following:

- When users try to access apps and data from untrusted devices and unpredictable locations.
- When users pass data from device to device.
- When an unauthorized user tries to access data.
- When a user who has left the company had used their own device (BYOD).
- When a user misplaces a device.
- When users need to access the network securely at all times.
- When users have their own device managed and you need to separate work data from personal data.
- When a device is idle and requires verification of user credentials again.
- When users copy and paste sensitive content into unprotected email systems.
- When users receive email attachments or web links with sensitive data on a device that holds both personal and company accounts.

Those situations relate to two main areas of concern when protecting company data, which are when data is:

- At rest
- In transit

**How Endpoint Management protects data at rest**

Data stored on mobile devices is referred to as data at rest. The mobile application management (MAM) capabilities in Endpoint Management enable complete management, security, and control
Citrix Endpoint Management

over Citrix mobile productivity apps, MDX-enabled apps, and their associated data. The Mobile Apps SDK, which enables apps for Endpoint Management deployment, leverages Citrix MDX app container technology to separate corporate apps and data from personal apps and data on the user’s mobile device. This allows you to secure any custom developed, third-party, or BYO mobile app with comprehensive policy-based controls.

In addition to an extensive MDX policy library, Endpoint Management also includes app-level encryption. Endpoint Management separately encrypts data stored within any MDX-enabled app without requiring a device PIN code and without requiring that you manage the device to enforce the policy.

Policies and the Mobile Apps SDK enable you to:

• Separate business and personal apps and data in a secure mobile container.
• Secure apps with encryption and other mobile Data Loss Prevention (DLP) technologies.

MDX policies provide many operational controls, so you can enable seamless integration between MDX-wrapped apps, while also controlling all communication. In this way, you can enforce policies, such as ensuring that data only is accessible by MDX-enabled apps.

Beyond device and app policy control, the best way to safeguard data at rest is encryption. Endpoint Management adds a layer of encryption to any data stored in an MDX-enabled app, giving you policy control over features such as public file encryption, private file encryption, and encryption exclusions. The Mobile Apps SDK uses FIPS 140-2 compliant AES 256-bit encryption with keys stored in a protected Citrix Secret Vault.

How Endpoint Management protects data in transit

Data on the move between your user’s mobile devices and your internal network is referred to as data in transit. MDX app container technology provides application-specific VPN access to your internal network through Citrix Gateway.

Consider the situation where an employee wants to access the following resources residing in the secure enterprise network from a mobile device: the corporate email server, an SSL-enabled web application hosted on the corporate intranet, and documents stored on a file server or Microsoft SharePoint. MDX enables access to all these enterprise resources from mobile devices through an application-specific micro VPN. Each device has its own dedicated micro VPN tunnel.

Micro VPN functionality does not require a device-wide VPN, which can compromise security on untrusted mobile devices. As a result, the internal network is not exposed to malware or attacks that could infect the entire corporate system. Corporate mobile apps and personal mobile apps are able to coexist on one device.

To offer even stronger levels of security, you can configure MDX-enabled apps with an Alternate Citrix Gateway policy, used for authentication and for micro VPN sessions with an app. You can use an Alternate Citrix Gateway with the micro VPN session required policy to force apps to reauthenticate to
the specific gateway. Such gateways would typically have different (higher assurance) authentication requirements and traffic management policies.

In addition to security features, micro VPN also offers data optimization techniques, including compression algorithms to ensure that only minimal data is transferred and that the transfer is done in the quickest time possible, thereby improving user experience, which is a key success factor in mobile project success.

You should reevaluate your device policies periodically, such as in these situations:

- When a new version of Endpoint Management includes new or updated policies due to the release of device operating system updates.
- When you add a new device type. Although many policies are common to all devices, each device has a set of policies specific to its operating system. As a result, you may find differences between iOS, Android, and Windows devices, and even between different manufacturers' devices running Android.
- To keep Endpoint Management operation in sync with enterprise or industry changes, such as new corporate security policies or compliance regulations.
- When a new version of MDX Service includes new or updated policies.
- When you add or update an app.
- When you need to integrate new workflows for your users as a result of new apps or new requirements.

App policies and Use case scenarios

Although you can choose which apps are available through Secure Hub, you might also want to define how those apps interact with Endpoint Management. If you want users to authenticate after a certain time period passes or you want to provide users offline access to their information, you do so through app policies. The following list includes some of the policies and discusses how you might use them. For a list of all MDX policies per platform, see MDX Policies at a Glance.

Authentication policies

- **Device passcode**
  
  **Why use this policy:** Enable the Device passcode policy to enforce that a user can access an MDX app only if the device has a device PIN enabled. This feature ensures use of iOS encryption at the device level and for the MDX container.
  
  **User example:** Enabling this policy means that the user must set a PIN code on their iOS device before they can access the MDX app.
• **App passcode**

**Why use this policy:** Enable the App passcode policy to have Secure Hub prompt a user to authenticate to the managed app before they can open the app and access data. The user might authenticate with their Active Directory password, Citrix PIN, or iOS TouchID, depending what you configure under **Settings > Client Properties** in the Endpoint Management console. You can set an inactivity timer in Client Properties so that, with continued use, Secure Hub doesn’t prompt the user to authenticate to the managed app again until the timer expires.

The app passcode differs from a device passcode in that, with a device passcode policy pushed to a device, Secure Hub prompts the user to configure a passcode or PIN, which they must unlock before they can gain access to their device when they turn on the device or when the inactivity timer expires. For more information, see **Authentication in Endpoint Management**.

**User example:** When opening the Citrix Secure Web application on the device, the user must enter their Citrix PIN before they can browse web sites if the inactivity period is expired.

• **micro VPN session required**

**Why use this policy:** If an application requires access to a web app (web service) to run, enable this policy so that Endpoint Management prompts the user to connect to the enterprise network or have an active session before using the app.

**User example:** When a user attempts to open an MDX app that has the micro VPN session required policy enabled, they can’t use the app until they connected to the network using a cellular or wifi service.

• **Maximum offline period**

**Why use this policy:** Use this policy as an additional security option, to ensure that users can’t run an app offline for long time periods without reconfirming app entitlement and refreshing policies from Endpoint Management.

**User example:** If you configure an MDX app with a Maximum offline period, the user can open and use the app offline until the offline timer period expires. At that point, the user must connect back to the network via cellular or wifi service and reauthenticate, if prompted.

**Miscellaneous access policies**

• **App update grace period (hours)**

**Why use this policy:** The app update grace period is the time available to the user before they must update an app that has a newer version released in the app store. At the point of expiry, the user must update the app before they can gain access to the data in the app. When setting this value, keep in mind the needs of your mobile workforce, particularly those who might experience long periods offline when traveling internationally.
User example: You load a new version of Secure Mail in the app store and then set an app update grace period of 6 hours. All Secure Mail users will see a message asking them to update their Secure Mail app, until the 6 hours expires. When the 6 hours expires, Secure Hub routes users to the app store.

• Active poll period (minutes)

Why use this policy: The active poll period is the interval at which Endpoint Management checks apps for when to perform security actions, such as App Lock and App Wipe.

User example: If you set the Active poll period policy to 60 minutes, when you send the App Lock command from Endpoint Management to the device, the lock occurs within 60 minutes of when the last poll took place.

Encryption policies

Why use these policies: Endpoint Management includes a secret vault with a strong encryption layer that Secure Hub and other Citrix mobile productivity apps use to persist their sensitive data, such as passwords and encryption keys, on the device without depending on the platform native keystores. As a result, if the device becomes compromised in any way, corporate data remains encrypted in the MDX container and Endpoint Management obfuscates the data before transferring it outside of the container.

User example: If the device owner did not set a device PIN or the device PIN becomes compromised, the corporate data inside the Secure Hub container remains secure.

App interaction policies

Why use these policies: Use App Interaction policies to control the flow of documents and data from MDX apps to other apps on the device. For example, you can prevent a user from moving data to their personal apps outside of the container or from pasting data from outside of the container into the containerized apps.

User example: You set an App interaction policy to Restricted, which means a user can copy text from Secure Mail to Secure Web but can't copy that data to their personal Safari or Chrome browser that is outside the container. In addition, a user can open an attached document from Secure Mail into Citrix Files or QuickEdit but can't open the attached document in their own personal file viewing apps that are outside the container.

App Restrictions policies

Why use these policies: Use App Restriction policies to control what features users can access from an MDX app while it is open. This helps to ensure that no malicious activity can take place while the
app is running. The App Restriction policies vary slightly between iOS and Android. For example, in iOS you can block access to iCloud while the MDX app is running. In Android, you can stop NFC use while the MDX app is running.

**User example:** If you enable the App Restriction policy to block dictation on iOS in an MDX app, the user can’t use the dictate function on the iOS keyboard while the MDX app is running. Thus, data users dictate isn’t passed to the unsecure third-party cloud dictation service. When the user opens their personal app outside of the container, the dictate option remains available to the user for their personal communications.

### App Network Access policies

**Why use these policies:** Use the App Network Access policies to provide access from an MDX app in the container on the device to data sitting inside your corporate network. For the Network access policy, set the **Tunneled to the internal network** option to automate a micro VPN from the MDX app through the Citrix Gateway to a back-end web service or datastore.

**User example:** When a user opens an MDX app, such as Secure Web, that has tunneling enabled, the browser opens and launches an intranet site without the user needing to start a VPN. The Secure Web app automatically accesses the internal site using micro VPN technology.

### App Geolocation and Geofencing policies

**Why use these policies:** The policies that control app geolocation and geofencing include center point Longitude, center point Latitude, and Radius. Those policies contain access to the data in the MDX apps to a specific geographical area. The policies define a geographic area by a radius of latitude and longitude coordinates. If a user attempts to use an app outside of the defined radius, the app remains locked and the user cannot access the app data.

**User example:** A user can access merger and acquisition data while they are in their office location. When they move outside of their office location, this sensitive data becomes inaccessible.

### Secure Mail App policies

- **Background network services**

  **Why use this policy:** Background network services in Secure Mail leverage Secure Ticket Authority (STA), which is effectively a SOCKS5 proxy to connect through Citrix Gateway. STA supports long-lived connections and provides better battery life compared to micro VPN. Thus, STA is ideal for mail that connects constantly. Citrix recommends that you configure these settings for Secure Mail. The NetScaler for XenMobile wizard automatically sets up STA for Secure Mail.
User example: When STA isn’t enabled and an Android user opens Secure Mail, they are prompted to open a VPN, which remains open on the device. When STA is enabled and the Android user opens Secure Mail, Secure Mail connects seamlessly with no VPN required.

- Default sync interval

Why use this policy: This setting specifies the default days of email that synchronize to Secure Mail when the user accesses Secure Mail for the first time. Be aware that 2 weeks of email takes longer to sync than 3 days and prolongs the setup process for the user.

User example: If the default sync interval is set to 3 days when the user first sets up Secure Mail, they can see any emails in their Inbox that they received from the present to 3 days in the past. If a user wants to see emails that are older than 3 days, they can do a search. Secure Mail then shows the older emails stored on the server. After installing Secure Mail, each user can change this setting to better suit their needs.

Device policies and Use Case Behavior

Device policies, sometimes referred to as MDM policies, determine how Endpoint Management works with devices. Although many policies are common to all devices, each device has a set of policies specific to its operating system. The following list includes some of the device policies and discusses how you might use them. For a list of all device policies, see the articles under Device policies.

- App inventory policy

Why use this policy: Deploy the App inventory policy to a device if you need to see the apps installed by a user. If you don’t deploy the App inventory policy, you can see only the apps that a user installed from the app store and not any personally installed applications. You must use this policy if you want to blacklist certain apps from running on corporate devices.

User example: A user with an MDM-managed device cannot disable this functionality. The user’s personally installed applications are visible to Endpoint Management administrators.

- App lock policy

Why use this policy: The App Lock policy, for Android, allows you to blacklist or whitelist apps. For example, by whitelisting apps you can configure a kiosk device. Typically, you deploy the App lock policy only to corporate owned devices, because it limits the apps that users can install. You can set an override password to provide user access to blocked apps.

User example: Suppose that you deploy an App lock policy that blocks the Angry Birds app. The user can install the Angry Birds app from Google Play, yet when they open the app a message advises them that their administrator blocked the app.

- Connection scheduling policy
**Why use this policy:** You must use the Connection scheduling policy so that Windows Mobile devices can connect back to Endpoint Management for MDM management, app push, and policy deployment. For Android, Android Enterprise, and Chrome OS devices, use Google Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM), instead of this policy, to control connections to Endpoint Management. The Scheduling options are as follows:

- **Never:** Connect manually. Users must initiate the connection from Endpoint Management on their devices. Citrix doesn’t recommend this option for production deployments because it prevents you from deploying security policies to devices, which means users never receive any new apps or policies. The Never option is enabled by default.

- **Every:** Connects at the designated interval. When this option is in effect and you send a security policy, such as a lock or a wipe, Endpoint Management processes the policy on the device the next time the device connects.

- **Define schedule:** When enabled, Endpoint Management attempts to reconnect the user’s device to the Endpoint Management server after a network connection loss and monitors the connection by transmitting control packets at regular intervals within the timeframe you define.

**User example:** You want to deploy a passcode policy to enrolled devices. The scheduling policy ensures that the devices connect back to the server at a regular interval to collect the new policy.

**• Credentials Policy**

**Why use this policy:** Often used in conjunction with a WiFi policy, the Credentials policy lets you deploy certificates for authentication to internal resources that require certificate authentication.

**User example:** You deploy a WiFi policy that configures a wireless network on the device. The WiFi network requires a certificate for authentication. The Credentials policy deploys a certificate that is then stored in the operating system keystore. The user can then select the certificate when connected to the internal resource.

**• Exchange policy**

**Why use this policy:** With Endpoint Management, you have two options to deliver Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync email.

- **Secure Mail app:** Deliver email by using the Secure Mail app that you distribute from the public app store or the app store.

- **Native email app:** Use the Exchange policy to enable ActiveSync email for the native email client on the device. With the Exchange policy for native email, you can use macros to populate the user data from their Active Directory attributes, such as ${user.username} to populate the user name and ${user.domain} to populate the user domain.
User example: When you push the Exchange policy, you send Exchange Server details to the device. Secure Hub then prompts the user to authenticate and email begins to sync.

• Location policy

Why use this policy: The Location policy lets you geolocate devices on a map, if the device has GPS enabled for Secure Hub. After you deploy this policy and then send a locate command from Endpoint Management, the device responds back with the location coordinates.

User example: When you deploy the location policy and GPS is enabled on the device, if users misplace their device, they can log on to the Endpoint Management Self Help Portal and choose the locate option to see the location of their device on a map. Note that the user makes the choice to allow Secure Hub to use location services. You cannot enforce the use of location services when users enroll a device themselves. Another consideration for using this policy is the effect on battery life.

• Passcode policy

Why use this policy: The passcode policy allows you to enforce a PIN code or password on a managed device. This passcode policy allows you to set the complexity and time-outs for the passcode on the device.

User example: When you deploy a passcode policy to a managed device, Secure Hub prompts the user to configure a passcode or PIN, which they must unlock before they can gain access to their device when they turn on the device or when the inactivity timer expires.

• Profile removal policy

Why use this policy: Suppose that you deploy a policy to a group of users and later need to remove that policy from a subset of the users. You can remove the policy for selected users by creating a Profile removal policy and using deployment rules to deploy the Profile removal policy only to specified user names.

User example: When you deploy a Profile removal policy to user devices, users might not notice the change. For example, if the Profile removal policy removes a restriction that disabled the device camera, the user won’t know that camera use is now allowed. Consider letting users know when changes affect their user experience.

• Restrictions policy

Why use this policy: The restriction policy gives you many options to lock down and control features and functionality on the managed device. You can enable hundreds of restriction options for supported devices, from disabling the camera or microphone on a device to enforcing roaming rules and access to third-party services like app stores.

User example: If you deploy a restriction to an iOS device, the user may not be able to access iCloud or the iTunes store.
• **Terms and conditions policy**

  **Why use this policy:** You might need to advise users of the legal implications of having their device managed. In addition, you may want to ensure that users are aware of the security risks when corporate data is pushed to the device. The custom Terms and Conditions document allows you to publish rules and notices before the user enrolls.

  **User example:** A user sees the Terms and Conditions information during the enrollment process. If they decline to accept the conditions stated, the enrollment process ends and they cannot access corporate data. You can generate a report to provide to HR/Legal/Compliance teams to show who accepted or declined the terms.

• **VPN policy**

  **Why use this policy:** Use the VPN policy to provide access to backend systems using older VPN Gateway technology. The policy supports a number of VPN providers, including Cisco AnyConnect, Juniper, as well as Citrix VPN. It is also possible to link this policy to a CA and enabled VPN on-demand, if the VPN gateway supports this option.

  **User example:** With the VPN policy enabled, a user’s device opens a VPN connection when the user accesses an internal domain.

• **Webclip policy**

  **Why use this policy:** Use the Webclip policy if you want to push to devices an icon that opens directly to a website. A webclip contains a link to a website and can include a custom icon. On a device a webclip looks like an app icon.

  **User example:** A user can click on a webclip icon to open an internet site that provides services they need to access. Using a web link is more convenient than needing to open a browser app and type a link address.

• **WiFi policy**

  **Why use this policy:** The WiFi policy lets you deploy WiFi network details, such as the SSID, authentication data, and configuration data, to a managed device.

  **User example:** When you deploy the WiFi policy, the device automatically connects to the WiFi network and authenticates the user so they can gain access to the network.

• **Windows Information Protection policy**

  **Why use this policy:** Use the Windows Information Protection (WIP) policy to protect against the potential leakage of enterprise data. You can specify the apps that require Windows Information Protection at the enforcement level you set. For example, you can block any inappropriate data sharing or warn about inappropriate data sharing and allow users to override the policy. You can run WIP silently while logging and permitting inappropriate data sharing.
User example: Suppose that you configure the WIP policy to block inappropriate data sharing. If a user copies or saves a protected file to a non-protected location, a message similar to the following appears: You can’t place work protected content in this location.

- **Endpoint Management Store policy**

  Why use this policy: The app store is a unified app store where administrators can publish all the corporate apps and data resources needed by their users. An administrator can add Web apps, SaaS apps, MDX wrapped apps, Citrix mobile productivity apps, native mobile apps such as .ipa or .apk files, iTunes and Google play apps, web links, and Citrix Virtual Apps published using Citrix StoreFront.

  User example: After a user enrolls their device into Endpoint Management, they access the app store through the Citrix Secure Hub app or, if using Citrix workspace, through the workspace. The user can then see all the corporate apps and services available to them. Users can click on an app to install it, access the data, rate and review the app, and download app updates from the app store.

**Client properties**

December 17, 2018

Client properties contain information that is provided directly to Secure Hub on user devices. You can use these properties to configure advanced settings, such as the Citrix PIN. You obtain client properties from Citrix support.

Client properties are subject to change with every release of Secure Hub and occasionally for client apps. For details about more commonly configured client properties, see Client property reference, later in this article.

1. In the Endpoint Management console, click the gear icon in the upper-right corner. The **Settings** page appears.

2. Under **Client**, click **Client Properties**. The **Client Properties** page appears. You can add, edit, and delete client properties from this page.
To add a client property

1. Click Add. The Add New Client Property page appears.

2. Configure these settings:
   - **Key**: In the list, click the property key that you want to add. **Important**: Contact Citrix Support before updating the settings. You can request a special key.
   - **Value**: The value of the selected property.
   - **Name**: A name for the property.
   - **Description**: A description of the property.
3. Click **Save**.

**To edit a client property**

1. In the **Client Properties** table, select the client property you want to edit.

   When you select the check box next to a client property, the options menu appears above the client property list. When you click anywhere else in the list, the options menu appears on the right side of the listing.

2. Click **Edit**. The **Edit Client Property** page appears.

3. Change the following information as appropriate:

   - **Key**: You cannot change this field.
   - **Value**: The property value.
   - **Name**: The property name.
   - **Description**: The property description.

4. Click **Save** to save your changes or **Cancel** to leave the property unchanged.

**To delete a client property**

1. In the **Client Properties** table, select the client property you want to delete.

   You can select more than one property to delete by selecting the check box next to each property.

2. Click **Delete**. A confirmation dialog box appears. Click **Delete** again.
Client property reference

The Endpoint Management predefined client properties and their default settings are as follows.

- **CONTAINER_SELF_DESTRUCT_PERIOD**
  - Display name: MDX Container Self Destruct Period
  - Self-destruct prevents access to Secure Hub and managed apps, after a specified number of days of inactivity. After the time limit, apps are no longer usable. Wiping the data includes clearing the app data for each installed app, including the app cache and user data.
  - The inactivity time is when the server does not receive an authentication request to validate the user over a specific length of time. For example, if this property is 30 days and the user doesn’t use the apps for more than 30 days, the policy takes effect.
  - This global security policy applies to iOS and Android platforms and is an enhancement of the existing app lock and wipe policies.
  - To configure this global policy, go to Settings > Client Properties and add the custom key CONTAINER_SELF_DESTRUCT_PERIOD.
  - Value: Number of days

- **DEVICE_LOGS_TO_ITHELP_DESK**
  - Display name: Send device logs to IT help desk
  - This property enables or disables the ability to send logs to the IT help desk.
  - Possible values: **true** or **false**
  - Default value: **false**

- **DISABLE_LOGGING**
  - Display name: Disable Logging
  - Use this property to prevent users from collecting and uploading logs from their devices. This property disables logging for Secure Hub and for all installed MDX apps. Users can’t send logs for any app from the Support page. Even though the mail composition dialog box appears, logs aren’t attached. A message indicates that logging is disabled. This setting also prevents you from updating log settings in the Endpoint Management console for Secure Hub and MDX apps.
  - When this property is set to **true**, Secure Hub sets Block application logs to **true**. As a result, MDX apps stop logging when the new policy is applied.
  - Possible values: **true** or **false**
  - Default value: **false** (logging is not disabled)
• **ENABLE_CRASH_REPORTING**
  - Display name: Enable Crash Reporting
  - If `true`, Citrix collects crash reports and diagnostics to help troubleshoot issues with Secure Hub for iOS and Android. If `false`, no data is collected.
  - Possible values: `true` or `false`
  - Default value: `true`

• **ENABLE_CREDENTIAL_STORE**
  - Display name: Enable Credential Store
  - Enabling the credential store means that Android or iOS users enter their password one time when accessing Citrix mobile productivity apps. You can use the credential store whether or not you enable Citrix PIN. If you don’t enable Citrix PIN, users enter their Active Directory password. Endpoint Management supports use of Active Directory passwords with the credential store only for Secure Hub and public store apps. If you use Active Directory passwords with the credential store, Endpoint Management doesn’t support PKI authentication.
  - Automatic enrollment in Secure Mail requires that you set this property to `true`.
  - To configure this custom client policy, go to Settings > Client Properties, add the custom key `ENABLE_CREDENTIAL_STORE`, and set the Value to `true`.

• **ENABLE_NETWORK_EXTENSION**
  - This property is deprecated as of November 30, 2018.

• **ENABLE_PASSCODE_AUTH**
  - Display name: Enable Citrix PIN Authentication
  - This property allows you to turn on Citrix PIN functionality. With the Citrix PIN or passcode, users are prompted to define a PIN to use instead of their Active Directory password. This setting is automatically enabled when `ENABLE_PASSWORD_CACHING` is enabled or when Endpoint Management is using certificate authentication.

    For offline authentication, the Citrix PIN is validated locally and users are allowed to access the app or content they requested. For online authentication, the Citrix PIN or passcode unlocks the Active Directory password or certificate, which is then sent to perform authentication with Endpoint Management.

    If `ENABLE_PASSCODE_AUTH` is true and `ENABLE_PASSWORD_CACHING` is false, online authentication always prompts for the password because Secure Hub doesn’t save it.
  - Possible values: `true` or `false`
  - Default value: `false`

• **ENABLE_PASSWORD_CACHING**
- Display name: Enable User Password Caching
  - This property enables Active Directory passwords to cache locally on the mobile device. When you set this property to true, you must also set the ENABLE_PASSCODE_AUTH property to true. With user password caching enabled, Endpoint Management prompts users to set a Citrix PIN or passcode.
  - Possible values: true or false
  - Default value: false

- **ENABLE_TOUCH_ID_AUTH**
  - Display name: Enable Touch ID Authentication
  - For devices that support Touch ID authentication, this property enables or disables Touch ID authentication on the device. Requirements:
    User devices must have Citrix PIN or LDAP enabled. If LDAP authentication is off (for example, because only certificate-based authentication is used), users must set a Citrix PIN. In this case, Endpoint Management requires the Citrix PIN even if the client property ENABLE_PASSCODE_AUTH is false.
    Set ENABLE_PASSCODE_AUTH to false so that when users launch an app, they must respond to a prompt to use Touch ID.
  - Possible values: true or false
  - Default value: false

- **ENABLE_WORXHOME_CEIP**
  - Display name: Enable Worx Home CEIP
  - This property turns on the Customer Experience Improvement Program. That feature sends anonymous configuration and usage data to Citrix periodically. The data helps Citrix improve the quality, reliability, and performance of Endpoint Management.
    - Value: true or false
    - Default value: false

- **ENABLE_WORXHOME_GA**
  - Display name: Enable Google Analytics in Worx Home
  - This property enables or disables the ability to collect data using Google Analytics in Secure Hub. When you change this setting, the new value is set only when the user next logs on to Secure Hub (previously named Worx Home).
    - Possible values: true or false
    - Default value: true

- **ENCRYPT_SECRETS_USING_PASSCODE**
  - Display name: Encrypt secrets using Passcode
This property stores sensitive data on the device in a secret vault instead of in a platform-based native store, such as the iOS keychain. This property enables strong encryption of key artifacts and adds user entropy. User entropy is a user-generated random PIN code that only the user knows.

Citrix recommends that you enable this property to help provide higher security on user devices. As a result, users experience more authentication prompts for the Citrix PIN.

- Possible values: **true** or **false**
- Default value: **false**

### INACTIVITY_TIMER

- Display name: Inactivity Timer
- This property defines how long users can leave their device inactive and then access an app without a prompt for a Citrix PIN or passcode. To enable this setting for an MDX app, set the App Passcode setting to On. If the App Passcode setting is set to Off, users are redirected to Secure Hub to perform a full authentication. When you change this setting, the value takes effect the next time that users are prompted to authenticate.

On iOS, the Inactivity Timer also governs access to Secure Hub for MDX and non-MDX apps.

- Possible values: Any positive integer
- Default value: **15** (minutes)

### ON_FAILURE_USE_EMAIL

- Display name: On failure Use Email to Send device logs to IT help desk
- This property enables or disables the ability to use email to send device logs to IT.
- Possible values: **true** or **false**
- Default value: **true**

### PASSCODE_EXPIRY

- Display name: PIN Change Requirement
- This property defines how long the Citrix PIN or passcode is valid, after which the user is forced to change their Citrix PIN or passcode. When you change this setting, the new value is set only when the current Citrix PIN or passcode expires.

- Possible values: **1** through **99** recommended. To eliminate PIN resets, set the value to a very high number (for example, 100,000,000,000). If you originally set the expiry period to between 1 and 99 days and then change to the large number during that period: PINs still expire at the end of the initial period, but never again afterward.
- Default value: **90** (days)

### PASSCODE_HISTORY
- Display name: PIN History
  - This property defines the number of previously used Citrix PINs or passcodes that users cannot reuse when changing their Citrix PIN or passcode. When you change this setting, the new value is set the next time that users reset their Citrix PIN or passcode.
  - Possible values: 1 through 99
  - Default value: 5

**PASSCODE_MAX_ATTEMPTS**

- Display name: PIN Attempts
  - This property defines how many wrong Citrix PIN or passcode attempts users can make before being prompted for full authentication. After users successfully perform a full authentication, they are prompted to create a Citrix PIN or passcode.
  - Possible values: Any positive integer
  - Default value: 15

**PASSCODE_MIN_LENGTH**

- Display name: PIN Length Requirement
  - This property defines the minimum length of Citrix PINs.
  - Possible values: 1 through 99
  - Default value: 6

**PASSCODE_STRENGTH**

- Display name: PIN Strength Requirement
  - This property defines the strength of Citrix PIN or passcode. When you change this setting, users are prompted to create a Citrix PIN or passcode the next time they are prompted to authenticate.
  - Possible values: **Low**, **Medium**, or **Strong**
  - Default value: **Medium**
  - The password rules for each strength setting based on the PASSCODE_TYPE setting are as follows:

Rules for numeric passcodes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passcode strength</th>
<th>Rules for numeric passcode type</th>
<th>Allowed</th>
<th>Not allowed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>All numbers, any sequence allowed</td>
<td>444444, 123456, 654321</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium (default setting)</td>
<td>All numbers cannot be the same or consecutive.</td>
<td>444333, 124567, 136790, 555556, 788888</td>
<td>444444, 123456, 654321</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Citrix Endpoint Management

### Passcode strength

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passcode strength</th>
<th>Rules for numeric passcode type</th>
<th>Allowed</th>
<th>Not allowed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>Same as for the Medium Passcode strength.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strong</td>
<td>Same as for the Medium Passcode strength.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Rules for alphanumeric passcodes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passcode strength</th>
<th>Rules for alphanumeric passcode type</th>
<th>Allowed</th>
<th>Not allowed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Must contain at least one number and one letter</td>
<td>aa11b1, Abcd1#, Ab123~, aaaa11, aa11aa</td>
<td>AAAaaa, aaaaaa, abcddef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medium (default setting)</td>
<td>In addition to the rules for Low passcode strength, letters and all numbers cannot be the same. Letters cannot be consecutive and numbers cannot be consecutive.</td>
<td>aa11b1, aa11b, aa11b2, abc145, xyz135, sdf1213, ab12c3, a1b2c3, Abcd1#, Ab123~</td>
<td>aaaa11, aa11aa, or aa1111; abcd12, bcd123, 123abc, xy1234, xyz345, or cba123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>Include at least one capital letter</td>
<td>Abcd12, jkrtA2, 23Bc#, AbCd</td>
<td>abcd12, DFGH2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strong</td>
<td>Include at least one number, one special symbol, one capital letter, and one small letter.</td>
<td>Abcd1#, Ab123~, xY12#3, Car12#, AAbc1#</td>
<td>abcd12, Abcd12, dfgh12, jkrtA2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **PASSCODE_TYPE**
- Display name: PIN Type
  - This property defines whether users are able to define a numerical Citrix PIN or an alphanumeric passcode. When you select **Numeric**, users can use numbers only (Citrix PIN). When you select **Alphanumeric**, users can use a combination of letters and numbers (passcode).
  - If you change this setting, users must set a new Citrix PIN or passcode the next time that they are prompted to authenticate.
  - Possible values: **Numeric** or **Alphanumeric**
  - Default value: **Numeric**

- **REFRESHINTERVAL**
  - Display name: REFRESHINTERVAL
  - By default, Endpoint Management pings the Auto Discovery Server (ADS) for pinned certificates every 3 days. To change the refresh interval, go to **Settings > Client Properties**, add the custom key **REFRESHINTERVAL**, and set the **Value** to the number of hours.
  - Default value: **72 hours (3 days)**

- **SEND_LDAP_ATTRIBUTES**
  - For MAM-only deployments of Android, iOS, or macOS devices: You can configure Endpoint Management so that users who enroll in Secure Hub with email credentials are automatically enrolled in Secure Mail. As a result, users don’t provide extra information or take extra steps to enroll in Secure Mail.
  - To configure this global client policy, go to **Settings > Client Properties**, add the custom key **SEND_LDAP_ATTRIBUTES**, and set the **Value** as follows.
  - **Value:** `userPrincipalName=${ user.userprincipalname } , sAMAccountName=${ user.samaccountname } , displayName=${ user.displayName } , mail=${ user.mail }`
  - The attribute values are specified as macros, similar to MDM policies.
  - Here is a sample account service response for this property:
    ```xml
    <property value="userPrincipalName=eng1@xmslab.com,sAMAccountName=eng1,displayName=eng1\,test1,email=eng1@xmslab.com\,eng1@xmslab.com" name="SEND_LDAP_ATTRIBUTES"/>
    ```
  - For this property, Endpoint Management treats comma characters as string terminators. Therefore, if an attribute value includes a comma, precede it with a backslash. The backslash prevents the client from interpreting the embedded comma as the end of the attribute value. Represent backslash characters with `\\`

- **HIDE_THREE_FINGER_TAP_MENU**
- When this property is not set or is set to false, users can access the hidden features menu by performing a three-finger tap on their devices. The hidden features menu allowed users to reset application data. Setting this property to true disables users access to the hidden features menu.
- To configure this global client policy, go to Settings > Client Properties, add the custom key HIDE_THREE_FINGER_TAP_MENU, and set the Value.

**TUNNEL_EXCLUDE_DOMAINS**
- Display name: Tunnel Exclude Domains
- By default, MDX excludes from micro VPN tunneling some service endpoints that Mobile Apps SDKs and apps use for various features. For example, those endpoints include services that don’t require routing through enterprise networks, such as Google Analytics, Citrix Cloud services, and Active Directory services. Use this client property to override the default list of domains excluded.
- To configure this global client policy, go to Settings > Client Properties, add the custom key TUNNEL_EXCLUDE_DOMAINS, and set the Value.
- Value: To replace the default list with the domains that you want to exclude from tunneling, type a comma-separated list of domain suffixes. To include all domains in tunneling, type none. Default is:


**User enrollment options**

December 12, 2018

You can have users enroll their devices in Endpoint Management in a number of ways. Before considering the specifics, you must decide if the devices in your environment will enroll in Enterprise mode (MDM+MAM), MDM mode, or MAM mode (also referred to as MAM-only mode). For more information about the management modes, see Management modes.

At the highest level, there are four enrollment options:

- **Enrollment Invitation**: Send an enrollment invitation or invitation link to users.
- **Self Help Portal**: Set up a portal that users can visit to download Secure Hub and enroll their devices or send themselves an enrollment invitation.
• **Manual Enrollment:** Send out an email, handbook, or some other communication letting users know that the system is up and that they can enroll. Users then download Secure Hub and enroll their devices manually.

• **Enterprise:** Another option for device enrollment is through the Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP) and Google Android Enterprise. Through each of these programs, you can purchase devices that are pre-configured and ready for employees to use. For more information, see [Apple Device Enrollment Program (DEP)](#) and [Google Android Enterprise](#).

### Enrollment Invitation

You can email an enrollment invitation to users with iOS, macOS, or Android devices. You can also send an installation link through SMTP or SMS to users with iOS, macOS, Android, or Windows devices. For more information, see [Enroll devices](#).

If you choose to use the enrollment invitation method: You can choose from up to seven enrollment modes (depending on platform), and you can use any combination of the modes. You can enable or disable the modes from the Endpoint Management Settings page, and you can select a default from Username + Password, Two Factor, and Username + PIN. For information on each enrollment mode, see [Configure enrollment modes](#).

If you choose certificate-based, consider excluding Username + Password traditional authentication from the allowed options, because this mode may expose a weak onboarding vector into your environment and potentially void the mandated security quality.

Invitations serve many purposes. The most common use of invitations is to notify users that the system is available, and that they can enroll. Invitation URLs are unique; once a user uses an invitation URL, the URL cannot be used again. You can use this property to limit the users or devices enrolling to your system.

You can set up Endpoint Management so that iOS users provide credentials during enrollment in one of the following ways:

- Users type their credentials during enrollment.
- Users insert a smart card from a derived credentials provider into a reader attached to their desktop. For information about derived credentials, see [Derived credentials for iOS](#).

In the Endpoint Management console, you can also choose the option for Enrollment Profiles, through which you can control the number of devices specific users can enroll, based on Active Directory groups. For instance, if you want to allow your Finance division only one device per user, you can configure that scenario through enrollment profiles.

Be aware of the extra costs and pitfalls of certain enrollment options. If you want to send invitations using SMS, you need to set up an additional infrastructure. For more information on this option, see [Notifications](#).
In addition, if you plan to send invitations by email, ensure that users have a way of accessing email outside of Secure Hub. You may use one-time password (OTP) enrollment modes as an alternative to Active Directory passwords for MDM enrollment. Note that OTP is available on iOS and Android devices only and is not currently available on Windows devices.

**Self Help Portal**

Users can request an enrollment invitation through the Self Help Portal. The default mode is Username + Password, but you can also change that requirement to Two Factor or Username + PIN. For information about setting up the Self Help Portal, see [Configure enrollment modes](#).

**Manual Enrollment**

With manual enrollment, users connect to Endpoint Management either through autodiscovery or by entering the server information. With autodiscovery, users log on to the server with only their email address or Active Directory credentials in User Principal Name format. Without autodiscovery, they must enter the server address and their Active Directory credentials. For more information about setting up autodiscovery, see [Set up Endpoint Management AutoDiscovery Service](#).

You can facilitate manual enrollment in a number of ways. You can create a guide, distribute it to users, and have them enroll themselves. You can have your IT department manually enroll groups of users in certain time slots. You can use any similar method where users must enter their credentials and/or server information.

**User Onboarding**

After you have your environment set up, you need to decide how to get users into your environment. An earlier section in this article discusses the specifics of user enrollment modes. This section discusses the way you reach out to users.

**Open Enrollment vs. Selective Invitation**

When onboarding users, you can allow enrollment through two basic methods: You can allow open enrollment in which, by default, any user with LDAP credentials and the Endpoint Management environment information can enroll. Or, you can limit the number of users by only allowing users with invitations to enroll. You can also limit open enrollment by Active Directory group.

With the invitation method, you can also limit the number of devices a user can enroll. In most situations, open enrollment is acceptable, but there are a few things to consider:
If you are rolling out a MAM environment, you can easily limit enrollment through Active Directory group membership.

With an MDM environment, the only way to limit enrollment is to limit the number of devices that can enroll based on Active Directory group membership. If you only allow corporate devices in your environment, this shouldn’t be an issue. You may want to consider this method, however, in a BYOD workplace where you want to limit the number of devices in your environment.

You also want to keep in mind whether you have user or device licenses. With user licenses, each user can have multiple devices and only one license is consumed. With device licenses, each device enrolled consumes one license.

Selective invitation is typically performed less often because it requires a bit more work than open enrollment. In order for users to enroll their devices in your environment, you must send an invitation unique to each user. For information on how to send an enrollment invitation, see Enrollment invitations.

You’ll need to send an invite for each user or group whom you want enrolled in your environment, which can take a long time depending on the size of your organization. It is possible to use Active Directory groups to create invitations in batches, but you must carry out this approach in waves.

First Contact with Users

When you have decided whether you want to use open enrollment or selective invitation and have set up those environments, you’ll need to make users aware of their enrollment options.

If you use the selective invitation method, email and SMS messages are a part of the process. You can send emails through the Endpoint Management console for open enrollment as well. For details, see Enrollment invitations.

In either case, keep in mind that for email, you need an SMTP server. For text messages, you need an SMS server. These may be extra costs to consider when making your decision. In addition, before you select a method, consider how you expect new users to access information, like email. If you want all users to access their email through Endpoint Management, sending them an invitation email would be problematic.

You may also send communication by another means outside of Endpoint Management for an open enrollment environment, as long as you include all the relevant information, such as where users can get the Secure Hub app and what method they should use to enroll. If you have autodiscovery turned off, you need to tell them the Endpoint Management server address as well. To learn more about autodiscovery, see Set up Endpoint Management AutoDiscovery Service](/en-us/citrix-endpoint-management/auto-discovery-service.html).
# App provisioning and deprovisioning

December 17, 2018

Application provisioning revolves around mobile app lifecycle management, which mainly consists of wrapping, configuring, delivering, and managing mobile apps within an Endpoint Management environment. In some instances, developing or modifying application code may also be part of the provisioning process. Endpoint Management is equipped with various tools and processes that you can use for app provisioning.

Before you read this article on app provisioning, it is recommended that you read the articles on Apps and User communities. When you have finalized the type of apps your organization plans to deliver to users, you can then outline the process for managing the apps throughout their lifecycle.

Consider the following points when defining your app provisioning process:

- **App profiling:** Your organization may start with a limited number of apps; however, the number of apps you manage could rapidly increase as user adoption rates increase and your environment grows. You should define specific app profiles right from the beginning in order to make app provisioning easy to manage. App profiling helps you categorize apps into logical groups from a nontechnical perspective. For example, you can create app profiles based on the following factors:
  - Version: App version for tracking
  - Instances: Multiple instances that are deployed for different set of users, for example, with different levels of access
  - Platform: iOS, Android, or Windows
  - Target Audience: Standard users, departments, C-level executives
  - Ownership: Department that owns the app
  - Type: MDX, Public, Web and SaaS, or Web links
  - Upgrade Cycle: How often the app is upgraded
  - Licensing: Licensing requirements and ownership
  - MDX Policies: Wrapped or unwrapped with MDX security policies
  - Network Access: Type of access, such as full VPN (Tunneled - Full VPN) or full VPN with single sign-on (Tunneled - Web SSO).

**Example:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor</th>
<th>Secure Mail</th>
<th>Mail</th>
<th>In-House</th>
<th>Epic Rover</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>X.x</td>
<td>X.x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instance</td>
<td>VIP</td>
<td>Physicians</td>
<td>Clinical</td>
<td>Clinical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platform</td>
<td>iOS</td>
<td>iOS</td>
<td>iOS</td>
<td>iOS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• **App versioning:** Maintaining and tracking app versions is a critical part of the provisioning process. Versioning is usually transparent to users. They only receive notifications when a new version of the app is available for download. From your perspective, reviewing and testing each app version in a non-production capacity is also critical in order to avoid production impact.

It is also important to evaluate if a specific upgrade is actually required. App upgrades are usually of two types: One is a minor upgrade, such as a fix to a specific bug; the second is a major release, which introduces significant changes and improvements to the app. In either case, you should carefully review the release notes of the app to evaluate if the upgrade is necessary.

• **App signing and wrapping:** With Endpoint Management, you can use MDX policies with managed apps to secure the corporate data through app wrapping. For more information about app wrapping, see [Endpoint Management MDX Service](#). The app provisioning process for a wrapped app is significantly different from the provisioning process for a standard non-wrapped app.

• **App security:** You define security requirements of individual apps or app profiles as part of the provisioning process. You can map security requirements to specific MDM or MAM policies prior to deploying the apps, which greatly simplifies and expedites app deployment. You may deploy certain apps differently, or you may need to make architectural changes to your Endpoint Management environment depending on the type of security compliance that the apps require. For example, you may want the device to be encrypted in order to allow the use of a critical business intelligence app, or a certain app may require end-to-end SSL encryption or geo-fencing.

• **App delivery:** Endpoint Management allows you to deliver apps as MDM apps or as MAM apps. The MDM apps appear in the app store. This store allows you to conveniently deliver public or native apps to users without controlling the app apart from enforcing device level restrictions. On the other hand, the MAM mode of delivering apps allows full control over app delivery and over the app itself. Delivering the apps in MAM mode is more suitable in most cases. When you deliver apps in MAM mode, the mobile device must be enrolled either into XME (MDM+MAM) or MAM-only mode.
- **Application maintenance:**
  - Perform an initial audit: You should keep track of the app version that is present in your production environment, as well as the last upgrade cycle. Make note of specific features or bug fixes that required the upgrade to take place.
  - Establish baselines: You should maintain a list of the latest stable release of each app. This app version should be fall back in case unexpected issues occur post upgrade. You should also develop a rollback plan. You should test app upgrades in a test environment prior to your production deployment; if possible, you should deploy the upgrade to a subset of production users first and then to the entire user base.
  - Subscribe to Citrix software update notifications and any third-party software vendor notifications: This is critical in order to keep up to date with the latest release of the apps. In some cases, an early access release (EAR) build may also be available for testing ahead of time.
  - Devise a strategy to notify users: You should define a strategy to notify users when app upgrades are available. Prepare users with training prior to deployment. You may send multiple notifications prior to updating the apps. Depending on the app, the best notification method might be email notifications or web sites.

App lifecycle management represents the completed lifecycle of an app from its initial deployment through the retirement of the app. The lifecycle of an app can be broken down into these five phases:

1. Requirements for specifications: Start with business case and user requirements.
2. Development: Validate that the app meets business needs.
4. Deployment: Deploy the app to production users.
5. Maintenance: Update app version. Deploy the app in a test environment before updating the app in a production environment.

### Dashboard-based operations

October 24, 2018

You can view information at a glance by accessing your Endpoint Management console dashboard. With this information, you can see issues and successes quickly by using widgets.

The dashboard is usually the screen that appears when you first sign on to the Endpoint Management console. To access the dashboard from elsewhere in the console, click **Analyze**. Click **Customize** on the dashboard to edit the layout of the page and to edit the widgets that appear.

- **My Dashboards:** You can save up to four dashboards. You can edit these dashboards separately and view each one by selecting the saved dashboard.
• **Layout Style**: In this row, you can select how many widgets appear on your dashboard and how the widgets are laid out.

• **Widget Selection**: You can choose which information appears on your dashboard.
  - **Notifications**: Mark the check box above the numbers on the left to add a Notifications bar above your widgets. This bar shows the number of compliant devices, inactive devices, and devices wiped or enrolled in the last 24 hours.
  - **Devices By Platform**: Displays the number of managed and unmanaged devices by platform.
  - **Devices By Carrier**: Displays the number of managed and unmanaged devices by carrier. Click each bar to see a breakdown by platform.
  - **Managed Devices By Platform**: Displays the number of managed devices by platform.
  - **Unmanaged Devices By Platform**: Displays the number of unmanaged devices by platform. Devices that appear in this chart may have an agent installed on them, but have had their privileges revoked or have been wiped.
  - **Devices By ActiveSync Gateway Status**: Displays the number of devices grouped by ActiveSync Gateway status. The information shows Blocked, Allowed, or Unknown status. You can click each bar to break down the data by platform.
  - **Devices By Ownership**: Displays the number of devices grouped by ownership status. The information shows corporate-owned, employee-owned, or unknown ownership status.
  - **Android TouchDown License Status**: Displays the number of devices that have a TouchDown license.
  - **Failed Delivery Group Deployments**: Displays the total number of failed deployments per package. Only packages that have failed deployments appear.
  - **Devices By Blocked Reason**: Displays the number of devices blocked by ActiveSync
  - **Installed Apps**: By using this widget, you can type an app name, and a graph displays information about that app.
  - **VPP Apps License Usage**: Displays license usage statistics for Apple Volume Purchase Program apps.

**Use cases**

Some examples for the many ways you can use dashboard widgets to monitor your environment are as follows.

• You have deployed Citrix mobile productivity apps and are receiving support tickets regarding mobile productivity apps failing to install on devices. Use the **Out of Compliance Devices** and **Installed Apps** widgets to see the devices that do not have Citrix mobile productivity apps installed.

• You’d like to monitor inactive devices so that you can remove the devices from your environment and reclaim licenses. Use the **Inactive Devices** widget to track this statistic.
• You are receiving support tickets concerning data not being synced properly. You may want to use the **Devices by ActiveSync Gateway Status** and **Devices By Blocked Reason** widgets to determine whether the issue is ActiveSync related.

**Reporting**

After your environment is set up and users enroll, you can run reports to learn about your deployment. Endpoint Management comes with a number of reports built in to help you get a better picture of the devices running on your environment. For details, see [Reports](#).

**Role-based access control and Endpoint Management support**

**August 21, 2018**

Endpoint Management uses role-based access control (RBAC) to restrict user and group access to Endpoint Management system functions, such as the Endpoint Management console, Self Help Portal, and public API. This article describes the roles built in to Endpoint Management and includes considerations for deciding on a support model for Endpoint Management that leverages RBAC.

**Built-In roles**

You can change the access granted to the following built-in roles and you can add roles. For the full set of access and feature permissions associated with each role and their default setting, download [Role-Based Access Control Defaults](#). For a definition of each feature, see [Configure roles with RBAC](#).

**Admin role**

Default access granted:

- Full system access except to the Self-Help Portal.
- By default, administrators can perform some support tasks, such as check connectivity and create support bundles.

Considerations:

- Do some or all of your administrators need access to the Self-Help Portal? If so, you can edit the Admin role or add Admin roles.
- To restrict access further for some administrators or administrator groups, add roles based on the Admin template and edit the permissions.
Device provisioning

Default access granted:

- Access to the Endpoint Management console to perform basic administration on Windows CE devices: add, change, and remove devices; use the Settings page.

Considerations:

- Applies only to Windows CE devices.

User

Default access granted:

- Access to the Self-Help Portal, which lets authenticated users generate enrollment links. The links allow them to enroll their devices or send themselves an enrollment invitation.
- Restricted access to the Endpoint Management console: device features (such as wipe, lock/unlock device; lock/unlock container; see location and set geographic restrictions; ring the device; reset container password); add, remove, and send enrollment invitations.

Considerations:

- The User role enables you to enable users to help themselves.
- To support shared devices, create a user role for shared device enrollment.

Considerations for a Endpoint Management support model

The support models that you can adopt can vary widely and might involve third parties who handle level 1 and 2 support while employees handle level 3 and 4 support. Regardless of how you distribute the support load, keep in mind the considerations in this section specific to your Endpoint Management deployment and user base.

Do users have corporate-owned or BYO devices?

The primary question that influences support is who owns the user devices in your Endpoint Management environment. If your users have corporate-owned devices, you might offer a lower level of support, as a way to lock down the devices. In that case, you might provide a help desk that assists users with device issues and how to use the devices. Depending on the types of devices you need to support, consider how you might use the RBAC Device Provisioning and Support roles for your help desk.

If your users have BYO devices, your organization might expect users to find their own sources for device support. In that case, the support your organization provides is more of an administrative role focused around Endpoint Management-specific issues.
What is your support model for desktops?
Consider whether your support model for desktops is appropriate for other corporate-owned devices. Can you use the same support organization? What additional training will they need?

Do you want to give users access to the Endpoint Management Self Help Portal?
Although some organizations prefer not to grant users access to Endpoint Management, giving users some self-support capabilities can ease the load on your support organization. If the default User role for RBAC includes permissions that you don’t want to grant, consider creating a new role with only the permissions you want to include. You can create as many roles as needed to meet your requirements.

Citrix Support process

October 26, 2018
You can turn Citrix Technical Support Services to help with issues related to Citrix products. The group offers workarounds and resolutions and works hand in hand with development teams to offer solutions.

Citrix Consulting Services or Citrix Education Services offer help related to product training, advice on product usage, configuration, installation, or environment design and architecture.

Citrix Consulting helps with Citrix product-related projects, including proof of concepts, economic impact assessment, infrastructure health checks, design requirements analysis, architecture design verification, integration, and operational process development.

Citrix Education offers best-in-class IT training and certification on Citrix Virtualization, Cloud, and networking technologies.

Citrix recommends that you take full advantage of the Citrix Self-Help Resources and recommendations before creating a support case. For instance, there are several places where you can access articles and bulletins written by Citrix technical experts, see product documentation for Citrix solutions and technologies, or read straight talk from Citrix executives, product teams, and technical experts. See the Knowledge Center, Product documentation, and Blogs pages respectively.

For more interactive assistance, you can participate in discussion forums where you can ask questions and get real-world answers from other customers, share ideas, opinions, technical information, and best practices within user groups and interest groups, or interact with Citrix Support engineers who monitor Citrix Support social networking sites. See the Support Forums, Citrix Community, and Citrix Support on Twitter pages respectively.

You also have access to training and certification courses to build your skills. See Citrix Education.

Citrix Insight Services provides a simple, online troubleshooting platform and health-checker for your Citrix environment. Available for Citrix Endpoint Management, Citrix Virtual Apps and Desktops, XenServer, and Citrix Gateway. See Analysis Tool.

© 1999-2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
To seek technical support, you can create a support case either by phone or via the web. You can use the web for low- and medium-severity issues and use the phone option for high-severity issues. For information on contacting support for Endpoint Management issues, see How to Contact Support.

If you seek a highly trained single point of contact with extensive experience delivering Citrix solutions, Citrix Services offers a Technical Relationship Manager. For more information about Citrix services offering and benefits, see Citrix Worldwide Services.

Sending group enrollment invitations in Endpoint Management

August 21, 2018

John Bartel III

You can send enrollment invitations to groups in Endpoint Management. You can send invitations to your nested groups as well. When setting up the group invitation, you can specify one or multiple device platforms. You can also tag devices so that you can, for example, distinguish corporate-owned devices from employee-owned devices. Then, you set the authentication type for user devices.

Note:

If you plan to use custom notification templates, you must set up the templates before you configure enrollment modes. For more information about notification templates, see Create and update notification templates.

For more information on basic configurations on user accounts, roles, and enrollment modes and invitations, see User accounts, roles, and enrollment.

General steps

1. Within the Endpoint Management console, navigate to Manage > Enrollment Invitations.
2. Click Add toward the upper left of the screen and then click Add Invitation.
3. Click Group from the Recipient menu.
   
   This step lets you choose one or multiple platforms. If you have a mix of different operating system platforms within your company, choose all platforms. Only clear the platform selection if you are sure that no users are using the particular platform.
4. You can choose to tag devices during the invite process. Choose Corporate or Employee.
   
   Tagging makes it easy to separate corporate-owned devices and employee-owned devices.
5. In the Domain list, choose the domain in which the group exists.
6. In the Group list, select the Active Directory group you want to send the invites to.
7. The **Enrollment mode** allows you to set the type of authentication you prefer for users.

- User name + Password
- High Security
- Invitation URL
- Invitation URL + PIN
- Invitation URL + Password
- Two Factor
- User name + PIN

8. For the **Agent Download**, **Enrollment URL**, **Enrollment PIN**, and **Enrollment Confirmation** templates, choose the custom notification template that you have created in the past. Or, choose the default that is listed.

   If you plan to use custom notification templates, you must set up the templates before you configure enrollment modes. For more information about notification templates, see **Notifications**.

   For these notification templates, use your configured SMTP server setup within Endpoint Management. Set your SMTP information first before proceeding.

   **Note:**

   The **Expire after** and **Maximum Attempts** options change based on the **Enrollment mode** option that you choose. You cannot change these options.

9. Select ON for **Send invitation** and then click **Save and Send** to complete the process.

**Nested group support**

You can use nested groups to send invites. Typically, nested groups are used in large-scale environments where groups with similar permissions are bound to each other.

Navigate to **Settings > LDAP** and then enable the **Support nested group** option.

**Troubleshooting and known limitations**

**Issue:** Invites are being sent out to users even though they have been removed from an Active Directory group.

**Solution:** Depending on how large your Active Directory environment is, it could take up to six hours for changes to propagate to all servers. If a user or nested group is removed recently, Endpoint Management may still consider those users as a part of the group.

Therefore, it's best to wait up to six hours before sending out another group invite to your group.
Configuring certificate-based authentication with EWS for Secure Mail push notifications

August 21, 2018
Vijay Kumar Kunchakuri

To make sure that Secure Mail push notifications work, you must configure Exchange Server for certificate-based authentication. This requirement is especially necessary when Secure Hub is enrolled in Endpoint Management with certificate-based authentication.

You need to configure the Active Sync and Exchange Web Services (EWS) virtual directory on the Exchange Mail Server with certificate-based authentication.

Unless you complete these configurations, the subscription to Secure Mail push notifications fails and no badge updates occur in Secure Mail.

This article describes the steps to configure certificate-based authentication. The configurations are specifically against the EWS virtual directory on Exchange Server.

To get started with the configuration, do the following:

1. Log on to the server or servers where the EWS virtual directory is installed.
2. Open the IIS Manager Console.
3. Under the **Default Web Site**, click the EWS virtual directory.

   The Authentication, SSL, Configuration Editor snap-ins are on the right side of the IIS Manager Console.
4. Ensure that the **Authentication** settings for EWS are configured as shown in the following figure.

5. Configure the **SSL Settings** for the EWS virtual directory.
   a) Select the **Require SSL** check box.
   b) Under **Client Certificates**, click **Require**. You can set this option to **Accept** if other EWS mail clients connect with username and password as credentials to authenticate and connect to the Exchange Server.
6. Click Configuration Editor and in the Section drop-down list, navigate to the following section:
   • system.webServer/security/authentication/clientCertificateMappingAuthentication

7. Set the enabled value to True.

8. Click Configuration Editor and in the Section drop-down list, navigate to the following section:
   • system.webServer/serverRuntime

9. Set the uploadReadAheadSize value to 10485760 (10 MB) or 20971520 (20 MB) or to a value as required by your organization.

   **Important:**
   If you don’t set this value correctly, certificate-based authentication while subscribing to EWS push notifications may fail with an error code of 413.
   Do not set this value to 0.

For more information, see the following third-party resources:

   • Microsoft IIS server runtime
   • Butsch Client Management Blog
For more information about troubleshooting Secure Mail issues with iOS push notifications, see this Citrix Support Knowledge Center article.

Related information

Push notifications for Secure Mail for iOS

Configuring an on-premises Device Health Attestation server

August 21, 2018

Sanket Mishra

You can enable Device Health Attestation (DHA) for Windows 10 mobile devices through an on-premises Windows server. To enable DHA on-premises, you first configure a DHA server.

After you configure the DHA server, you create an Endpoint Management policy to enable the on-premises DHA service. For information, see Device Health Attestation device policy.

Prerequisites for a DHA server

- A server running Windows Server Technical Preview 5 or later, installed using the Desktop Experience installation option.
- One or more Windows 10 client devices. These devices must be have TPM 1.2 or 2.0 running the latest version of Windows.
- These certificates:
  - DHA SSL certificate. An x.509 SSL certificate that chains to an enterprise trusted root with an exportable private key. This certificate protects DHA data communications in transit including server to server (DHA service and MDM server) and server to client (DHA service and a Windows 10 device) communications.
– **DHA signing certificate.** An x.509 certificate that chains to an enterprise trusted root with an exportable private key. The DHA service uses this certificate for digital signing.

– **DHA encryption certificate.** An x.509 certificate that chains to an enterprise trusted root with an exportable private key. The DHA service also uses this certificate for encryption.

- Choose one of these certificate validation modes:
  - **EKCert.** EKCert validation mode is optimized for devices in organizations that are not connected to the Internet. Devices connecting to a DHA service running in EKCert validation mode do not have direct access to the Internet.
  - **AIKCert.** AIKCert Validation Mode is optimized for operational environments that do have access to the Internet. Devices connecting to a DHA service running in AIKCert validation mode must have direct access to the Internet and are able to get an AIK certificate from Microsoft.

### Add the DHA server role to the Windows server

1. On the Windows server, if the Server Manager is not already open, click **Start** and then click **Server Manager**.
2. Click **Add roles and features**.
3. On the **Before you begin** page, click **Next**.
4. On the **Select installation type** page, click **Role-based or feature-based installation**, and then click **Next**.
5. On the **Select destination server** page, click **Select a server from the server pool**, select the server, and then click **Next**.
6. On the **Select server roles** page, select the Device Health Attestation check box.
7. Optional: Click **Add Features** to install other required role services and features.
8. Click **Next**.
9. On the **Select features** page, click **Next**.
10. On the **Web Server Role (IIS)** page, click **Next**.
11. On the **Select role services** page, click **Next**.
12. On the **Device Health Attestation Service** page, click **Next**.
13. On the **Confirm installation selections** page, click **Install**.
14. When the installation is done, click **Close**.

### Add the SSL certificate to the certificate store of the server

1. Go to the SSL certificate file and select it.
2. Select **Current user** as the store location and click **Next**.
3. Type the password for the private key.

4. Ensure the import option **Include all extended properties** is selected. Click **Next**.

5. When this window appears, click **Yes**.
6. Confirm that the certificate is installed:
   
   a) Open a Command Prompt window.
   
   b) Type `mmc` and press the Enter key. To view certificates in the local machine store, you must be in the Administrator role.
   
   c) On the File menu, click Add/Remove Snap In.
   
   d) Click Add.
   
   e) In the Add Standalone Snap-in dialog box, select Certificates.
   
   f) Click Add.
   
   g) In the Certificates snap-in dialog box, select My User account. (If you are signed in as service account holder, select Service account.)
   
   h) In the Select Computer dialog box, click Finish.
7. Go to **Server Manager > IIS** and select **Server Certificates** from the list of icons.

8. From the Action menu, select **Import...** to import the SSL certificate.
Retrieve and save the thumbprint of the certificate

1. In the File Explorer search bar, type **mmc**.

2. In the Console Root window, click **File > Add/Remove Snap-in**....

3. Select the certificate from available snap-in and add it to selected snap-ins.
4. Select **My user account**.

5. Select the certificate and click **OK**.

6. Double-click on the certificate and select the **Details** tab. Scroll down to see the certificate thumbprint.
7. Copy the thumbprint to a file. Remove the spaces when using the thumbprint in PowerShell commands.

**Install the signing and encryption certificates**

Run these PowerShell commands on the Windows server to install the signing and encryption certificates.

Replace the placeholder ReplaceWithThumbprint and enclose it inside double-quotations marks as shown.

```powershell
$key = Get-ChildItem Cert:\LocalMachine\My | Where-Object { 
	_.Thumbprint -like "ReplaceWithThumbprint" }

$keyname = $key.PrivateKey.CspKeyContainerInfo.UniqueKeyContainerName

$keypath = $env:ProgramData + "\Microsoft\Crypto\RSA\MachineKeys\" + $keyname icacls $keypath /grant IIS_IUSRS:R
```
**Extract the TPM roots certificate and install the trusted certificate package**

Run these commands on the Windows server:

```plaintext
1 mkdir .\TrustedTpm
2 expand -F:* .\TrustedTpm.cab .\TrustedTpm
3 cd .\TrustedTpm
4 .\setup.cmd
```

**Configure the DHA service**

Run this command on the Windows server to configure the DHA service.

Replace the placeholder ReplaceWithThumbprint.

```plaintext
Install-DeviceHealthAttestation -EncryptionCertificateThumbprint ReplaceWithThumbprint
-SigningCertificateThumbprint ReplaceWithThumbprint
-SslCertificateStoreName My -SslCertificateThumbprint ReplaceWithThumbprint
-SupportedAuthenticationSchema "AikCertificate"
```

Run these commands on the Windows server to set up the certificate chain policy for the DHA service:

```plaintext
$policy = Get-DHASCertificateChainPolicy
$policy.RevocationMode = "NoCheck"
Set-DHASCertificateChainPolicy -CertificateChainPolicy $policy
```

Respond to these prompts, as follows:

```plaintext
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Install-DeviceHealthAttestation" on target "WIN-N27D1FKCEBT".
```
Adding SSL binding to website 'Default Web Site'.

Add SSL binding?

Adding application pool 'DeviceHealthAttestation_APPPool' to IIS.

Add application pool?

Adding web application 'DeviceHealthAttestation' to website 'Default Web Site'.

Add web application?

Adding firewall rule 'Device Health Attestation Service' to allow inbound connections on port(s) '443'.

Add firewall rule?

Setting initial configuration for Device Health Attestation Service.

Set initial configuration?

Registering User Access Logging.

Register User Access Logging?

Registration
Citrix Endpoint Management

Check the configuration

To check whether the DHASActiveSigningCertificate is active, run this command on the server:

```
Get-DHASActiveSigningCertificate
```

If the certificate is active, the certificate type (Signing) and thumbprint is displayed.

To check whether the DHASActiveSigningCertificate is active, run these commands on the server.

Replace the placeholder ReplaceWithThumbprint and enclose it inside double-quotiation marks as shown.

```
Set-DHASActiveEncryptionCertificate -Thumbprint "ReplaceWithThumbprint" -Force
```

If the certificate is active, the thumbprint appears.

To perform a final check, go to this URL:

```
https://<dha.myserver.com>/DeviceHealthAttestation/ValidateHealthCertificate/v1
```

If the DHA service is running, “Method not allowed” appears.
Locations
Corporate Headquarters | 851 Cypress Creek Road Fort Lauderdale, FL 33309, United States
Silicon Valley | 4988 Great America Parkway Santa Clara, CA 95054, United States

© 2018 Citrix Systems, Inc. All rights reserved. Citrix, the Citrix logo, and other marks appearing herein are property of Citrix Systems, Inc. and/or one or more of its subsidiaries, and may be registered with the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and in other countries. All other marks are the property of their respective owner(s).